The Theory of Covert Surveillance: The Surveillance Training Course Handbook

Peter Jenkins

2020

Read Version

Published by the Surveillance Archive

CONTENTS

CHAPTER CONTENTS		PAGE 2
INTRODUCTION		PAGE 7
FOREWORD ABOUT THE QUALIFICATIONS		PAGE 11
1.	COVERT SURVEILLANCE	PAGE 35
2.	PLANNING & PREPARATION (BRIEFING & DEBRIEFINGS)	PAGE 59
3.	COMMUNICATIONS	PAGE 101
4.	TECHNICAL SURVEILLANCE & EQUIPMENT	PAGE 125
5.	FOOT SURVEILLANCE	PAGE 151
6.	MOBILE SURVEILLANCE	PAGE 191
7.	STATIC SURVEILLANCE	PAGE 253
8.	SURVEILLANCE DETECTION	PAGE 271
9.	EVIDENCE & LAW	PAGE 311
10.	SURVEILLANCE WORK & TRAINING	PAGE 357
GLOSSARY OF TERMS		PAGE 378
INDEX		PAGE 384

CHAPTER CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

FOREWORD TO THE QUALIFICATIONS

- Introduction to the qualifications
- Qualification definitions
- History & evolution of the current qualifications
- The assessment process
- Course content and learning outcomes





1. COVERT SURVEILLANCE

- Definitions, types and objectives
- Methods of surveillance
- The surveillance operator
- Personal appearance and dress
- Types of surveillance target
- What gets you noticed
- Third party awareness
- Loss versus gain
- Principle phases of surveillance

2. PLANNING & PREPARATION

- Planning and objectives
- The target person
- Sources of information
- The surveillance start point
- Target reconnaissance
- Recce reports
- Surveillance triggers
- Sample recce report
- Health & safety
- Risk assessments
- Surveillance briefings and debriefings
- Sample team briefing
- Team debriefings

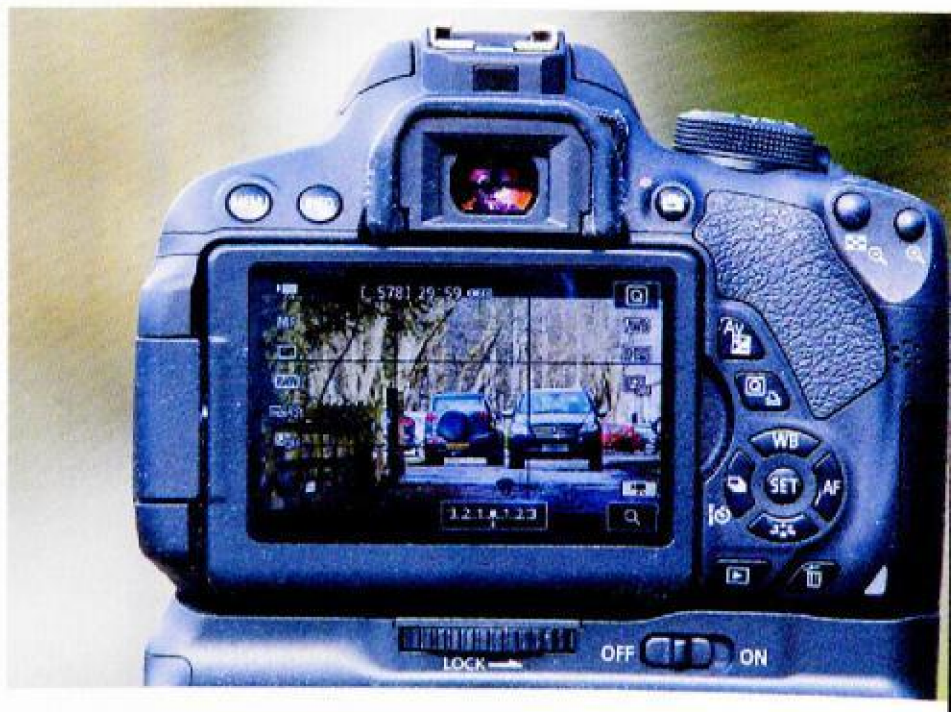


ISS TRAINING LTD



3. COMMUNICATIONS

- Types of communication equipment
- Mobile and handheld radios
- Antennas & frequencies
- Covert systems
- Radio security
- Brevity code systems
- Voice procedure
- Phonetic alphabet
- Radio call signs and networks
- Spot codes
- Encryption
- The click system



4. TECHNICAL SURVEILLANCE & EQUIPMENT

- The car bag
- Basic equipment
- Covert video cameras
- Rapid deployment cameras
- Tracking devices
- Sample technical recce report
- Night vision optics
- UAV drones

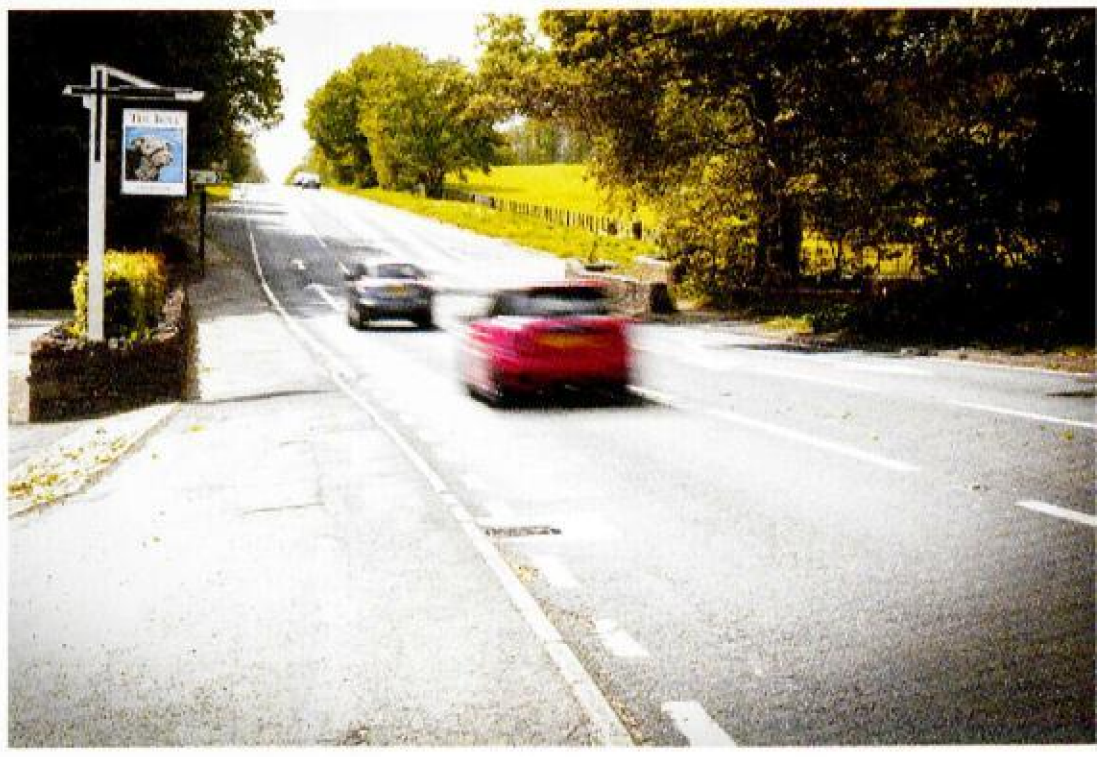


5. FOOT SURVEILLANCE

- Why the surveillance operator becomes noticed
- Foot tactics: stake out, pick-up, follow, housing
- ABC system: follows, handovers, cornering
- Actions when stopping
- Foot surveillance compromises
- Covert communications
- Losses
- The shadow car
- Cafés & public houses
- Buildings with multiple exits
- Indoor shopping malls
- Public transport
- Deploying from a vehicle
- Rolling stakeouts

6. MOBILE SURVEILLANCE PART 1

- The surveillance team
- Surveillance vehicles
- Safety equipment
- Mobile communications
- Stakeouts: primary, secondary, tertiary
- Mobile tactics: stake out, pick-up, follow, housing
- Actions on a standby
- Mobile voice procedure
- Tactics: handovers, losses, changing direction, stops
- Actions on stops
- Car parks
- Loss of contact





MOBILE SURVEILLANCE PART 2

- Multi-storey car parks
- Parallels
- Motorbikes
- Losses
- Motorway tactics
- Night mobile surveillance
- Surveillance compromises
- Single handed surveillance
- Road traffic accidents

7. STATIC SURVEILLANCE

- Observation posts
- Vehicle OP's
- Surveillance vans
- Van compromises
- Covert cars (boot fits)
- Urban observation posts
- Rural observation posts



ISS TRAINING LTD



8. SURVEILLANCE DETECTION

- Definitions: anti-surveillance & counter-surveillance
- Foot anti-surveillance drills
- Mobile anti-surveillance drills
- Planned and unplanned detection routes
- Counter surveillance
- Hostile planning cycle
- The need for counter surveillance
- Counter surveillance detection routes
- Sample debriefing
- Sample SDR team brief

9. EVIDENCE & LAW

- Human Rights Act
- Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act
- Investigatory Powers Tribunal
- Protection from Harassment Act
- Criminal Procedure and investigations Act
- Key definitions
- Trespass
- Data Protection Act
- Use of trackers
- Evidence gathering
- Describing people
- Memory & perception
- Surveillance logs & reports
- Witness statements
- Eye-witness testimony
- Preservation of photographic evidence





10. TRAINING

- The licencing issue & the SIA
- SIA standards of behaviour
- Your training
- Training courses
- Level 3 Award in Professional Investigation
- Open Source Intelligence (OSINT)
- Surveillance Detection (Counter Surveillance)
- Rural Surveillance
- Surveillance Photography
- Professional Witness Training
- Concealed covert CCTV
- Video editing for Surveillance Operators
- Industrial Espionage Training
- Specialist Military Training



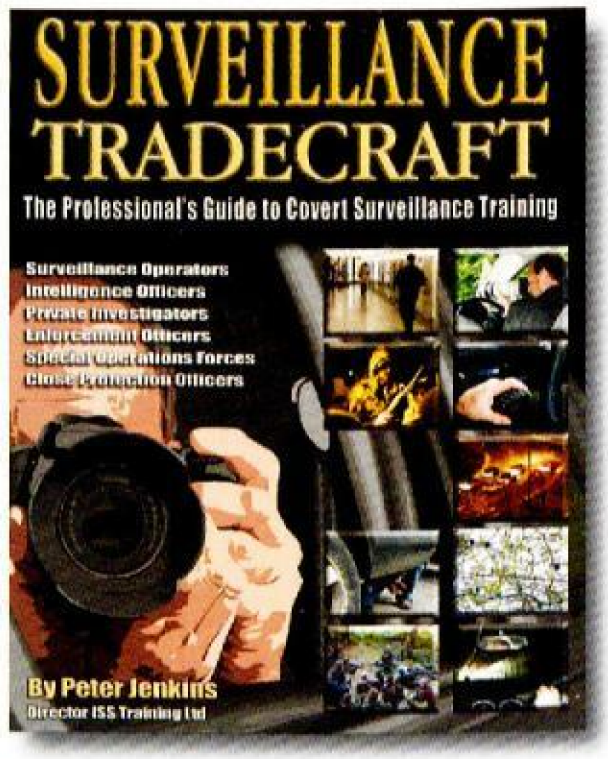
INTRODUCTION TO SURVEILLANCE THEORY

I am very fortunate to have taught and carried out surveillance in 17 different countries worldwide throughout my career. From teaching corporate security teams to Special Forces units, Police and Intelligence Agencies. I would like to list them here, not for the sake of being conceited, but I am extremely proud for our company to be chosen to work with such people and organisations. They have placed their trust in us, to pass on our experience and knowledge.

I have been supported by an exceptionally experienced training team. Instructors who have conducted surveillance at the highest levels and often in hostile areas. They are the backbone of what we do, we are passionate about our work and I am sure anyone who has attended our courses will concur.

I have seen various methods and different ways of conducting surveillance and have heard numerous styles of voice procedure, none of them are wrong. There are no rules in surveillance, only guidelines, and so long as everyone is singing from the same song sheet, it should work.

This book has not been designed to be more comprehensive than my previous book 'Surveillance Tradecraft' but an accompaniment to it. Tradecraft was published in 2010 and has been used worldwide as 'The' surveillance training manual. Although many of the techniques and procedures remain the same; some have progressed, equipment has evolved; especially with communications, imagery and tracking. At the risk of repeating myself, you won't find a section section in this book covering covert photography because my most recent book 'Covert Imagery' is current and still in print.



The Authors previous training manual, published in 2010.

In January 2019, after a lot of effort working with the course designers at accrediting body 'Industry Qualifications', three new surveillance qualifications were designed, accredited and registered on the OFQUAL National Qualifications Framework. And it is these qualifications that this book is based upon as the 'course manual'.



THE INTERACTIVE BOOK

This book covers all the necessary theory and supports the underpinning knowledge required for you to pass the theory element of the level 4 courses in covert surveillance. It is also interactive; throughout the book you will find QR codes that you can 'zap' with your phone or tablet, which instantly takes you to downloads, video tutorials and further information relating to particular subjects.

At the end of each chapter there is a series of questions which you should be able to answer, and you will need to know for any written or practical assessments. Again, using the QR codes these will take you to support pages where you get help with the questions and assignments. Some of the QR codes you may find generic (they take you to our You Tube channel for example), as we are constantly adding new videos.

DISTANCE LEARNING?

Yes, this book is a form of 'distance learning'. After all, what is distance learning? It's where a tutor either sends you reading material (or you download it), you read it at your leisure and then answer questions or complete projects & assignments. This 'theory course' is all in one book and you haven't to pay hundreds of pounds for it.

However, don't be duped into thinking that you can read this book or carry out any online 'Distance Learning' program and be skilled in surveillance with a minimum of a couple of days practical training, it won't happen. I have met students on courses who have read my previous books, they know all the answers off the top of their heads but when it came to actually doing it, they had to work just as hard as everyone else.

The practical element is the hardest part of any training course. Your Workbook and Portfolio assessments can be first class but if you cannot actually perform what you have been taught on the ground, then you should not pass the course. Your voice procedure, control of the target, awareness of the team and the third party, together with gathering intelligence, are all taken into consideration.

A scene from the film 'Good Will Hunting' comes to mind when thinking about distance learning courses; tutor Robin Williams puts student Matt Damon in his place quoting;

"So if I asked you about art, you'd probably give me the skinny on every art book ever written. Michelangelo? You know a lot about him. Life's work, political aspirations, him and the pope, sexual orientation... The whole works, right?

I bet you can't tell me what it smells like in the Sistine Chapel. You never actually stood there and looked up at that beautiful ceiling".



Credit: MIRAMAX

It is not easy; your tutors should be giving you firm but fair constructive criticism throughout your training. Your training cannot just be taught, it has to be 'coached' and there is a big difference that only experienced instructors will produce.

Throughout this book I have referred to the Surveillance Team and the Surveillance Operator. It is appreciated that in the commercial investigation environment there are restrictions in both cost and manpower. A two-man team may be the norm, but it is on a three-man team that I have based the techniques and methods described in this book, so you can adapt.

Surveillance operators are often tasked to obtain evidence. The evidence may be used in legal proceedings and you might have to give evidence in court. The Defence may attempt to discredit you, your evidence and how it was obtained in order to assist their case, you will also be cross-examined on your training and experience. As a professional, you must be a credible witness and able to justify your actions, which means keeping within the law at all times.

A few thank you's are in order: to the ISS training team who work so hard and put in far beyond what is required of them. Charlie Zawadzki at IQ for all his efforts in bringing the qualifications to fruition. Kate, my daughter for her design and artistic skills in typesetting her first book. Elissa Bush for her attention to detail and grammar whilst proofreading and correcting my mistakes. Simon Meyer for his cool idea of using the interactive QR codes which totally changed the concept and look of this book, and all those who have passed through our training school – thank you.

At the age of 58, I am still carrying out live surveillance and put much of my energy into working with various animal welfare charities and organisations in the fight against animal cruelty. This can be tough work but is very rewarding.

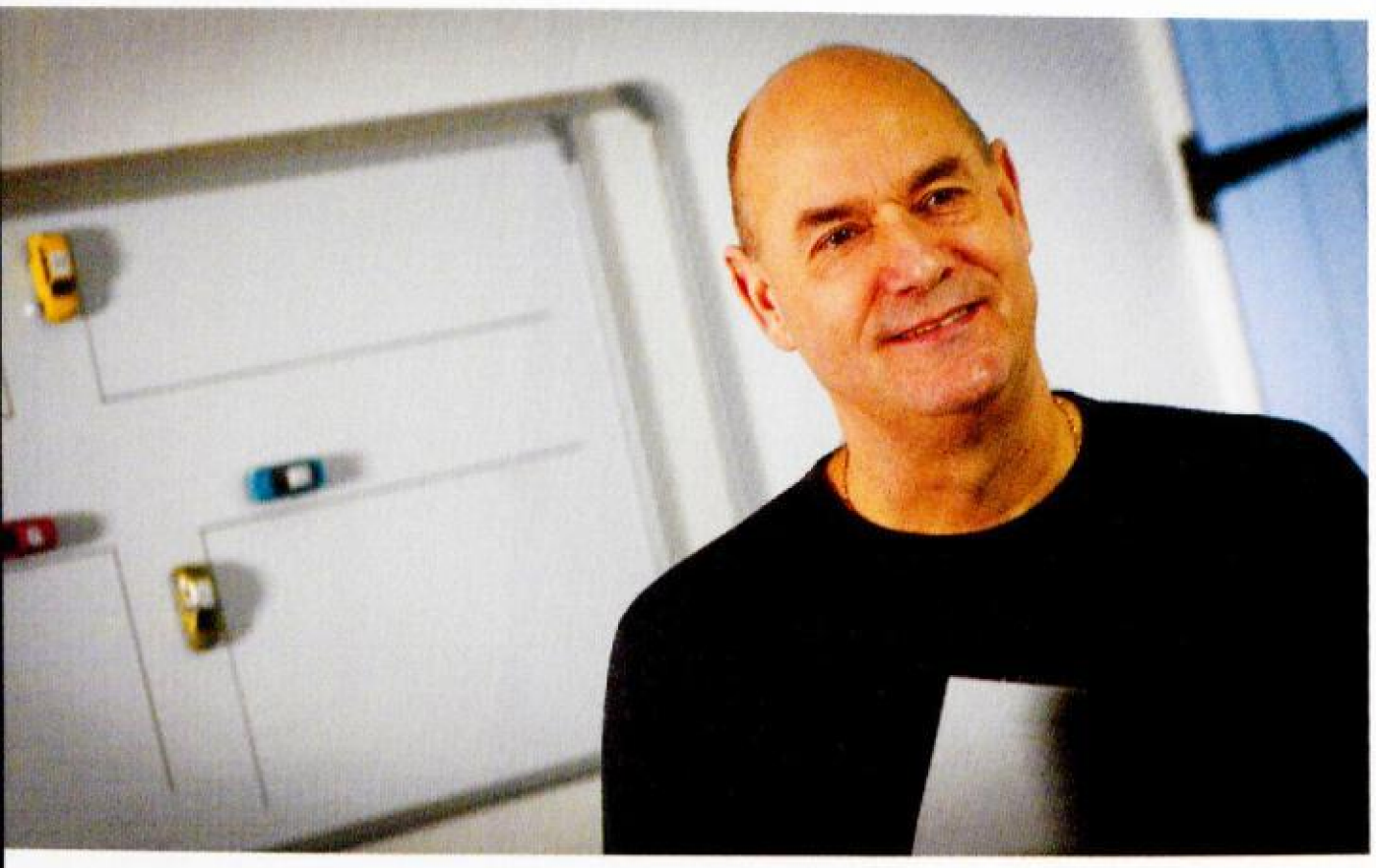
If you would like to know more about what we do, visit our website or even better, visit us on a training course.

Good luck and best wishes.

Peter Jenkins
ISS Training Ltd
Covid19 Lockdown 2020



It's Interactive: When reading this book, you'll need your tablet or phone.



ISS TRAINING LTD

Foreward

THE QUALIFICATIONS

INTRODUCTION TO THE QUALIFICATIONS

For quite a few years, until January 2019, there were many training providers offering certificates in surveillance of varying levels and content. None of them were the same product.

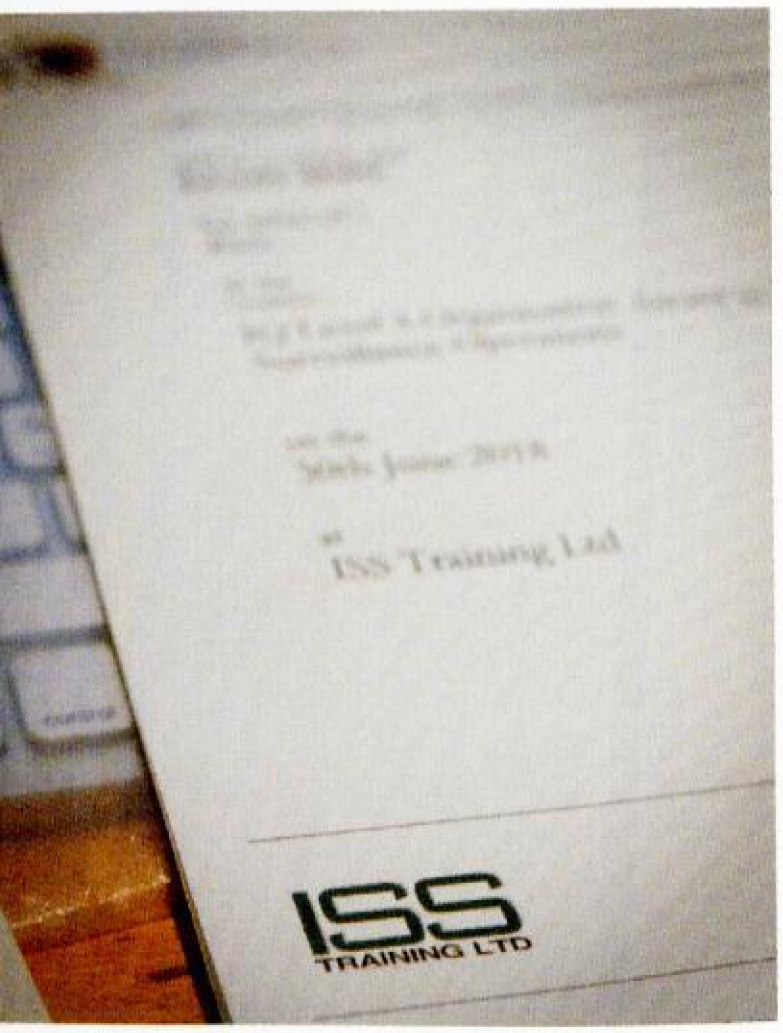
Training providers (TP's) would design their own courses to suit themselves and have an accrediting body such as; Edexcel, Pearson NCFE or Industry Qualifications, endorse it in what is termed as a 'Customised' vocational qualification.

For example: ISS Training Ltd used to offer a 'BTEC Level 4 Award in Foot & Mobile Surveillance' accredited by Edexcel. It is a qualification that ISS designed, devised the content, outcomes, and the assessment process.

Similarly, another surveillance TP may also offer a BTEC Level 3 Award (but their course will be called something slightly different to ISS's, as the title is copyrighted). Their course will also be a 'Customised Award' and it would have been designed by them to cover what THEY feel is right and to their own standards. In a way, its technically their own in-house training package.

Let's look at it like this: On a two week ISS course, a student could carry out 60 hours of mobile exercises in the cars, whereas another TP would only carry out 25 hours in cars because they would have students sat in OP's for the rest of the time. As the course is 'Customised'.





In this instance, no two courses from different providers gave the same qualification or level of skills and this was unfair to those who paid for and undertook surveillance training from 'poor' training companies.

There were people trying to get on the Surveillance Circuit (having attended some of these courses) whose skills were horrifically poor after they had 'passed'. They had had some form of training and thought they were experts because they were given a certificate but in reality, they had been ripped off.

I recieve some customers coming to see me in respect of work, one recently had completed another companies course and obtained a Level 4 in Surveillance. I asked him a few simple questions to which he should have known the answers. I was astounded that he could not confidently answer any of them correctly.

He was a nice bloke but unfortunately had wasted his time and money receiving an inferior product with a poor standard of instruction. Sometime after this, I attended a qualification project meeting at which a representative from this company admitted they had never 'failed' anyone on any of their courses over an eleven-year period. This raises the question of standards (or lack of them). If there is no assessment process and everyone gets a pass, their certificate is worthless.

	Training Area	1700-1800	Assessment Portfolio Briefing

Day Two - Mobile Surveillance

DAY	LOCATION	TIME	EVENT
	Class & Area	0830-0945	Surveillance Triggers, Platforms & Planning
Tuesday	Class	0945-1030	Target Intelligence Requirements
	Rest Room	1030-1045	Break
	Training Area	1045-1600	Mobile Surveillance Tactics Lesson & Exercise
	Class	1600-1630	Exercise Debrief
	Class	1630-1730	Planning & Recce' Reports
	Training Area	Evening	Target Recce' Exercise

Day Three – Mobile & Foot Surveillance

DAY	LOCATION	TIME	EVENT
	Class	0830-0930	Surveillance Briefings & Debriefings
Wednesday	Class	0930-1130	Legal Issues (RIPA), Log Keeping & Evidence
	Class	1130-1200	Transition from Mobile to Foot
	Rest Room	1200-1230	Lunch
	Training Area	1230-1645	Mobile & Foot Surveillance Exercise
	Class	1645-1745	Exercise Debrief
	Training Area	Evening	Night Mobile Surveillance

Day Four – Mobile, Foot & Technical Surveillance

DAY	LOCATION	TIME	EVENT
	Class	0830-0930	Anti Surveillance Drills
Thursday	Class & Area	0930-1045	Satellite Vehicle & Asset Tracking
	Class	1045-1100	Exercise Team Briefing

ISS TRAINING LTD

QUALIFICATION DEFINITIONS

Before we return to the regulated qualifications, let's clarify a few terms that are often misunderstood.

Awards, Certificates, Diplomas

Award = up to 50 hours
Certificate = 50-150 hours
Diploma = 150+ hours

So this shows you how much training in respect of learning hours a person has received. Next, you have the level descriptors from a system called 'Blooms Taxonomy' and this describes what the learner has to achieve and be assessed on.

Scan the code to download the official course specifications

LEVEL 1 – Remember facts & basic concepts
List, define, memorise, duplicate, state

LEVEL 2 – Explain ideas or concepts
Describe, explain, locate, report, classify

LEVEL 3 – Apply information in new situations
Demonstrate, solve, interpret, sketch, solve

LEVEL 4 – Analyse connections among ideas
Differentiate, organise, distinguish, compare

For example a Level 1 question answer would be:

Q. List the items you would carry on a surveillance.

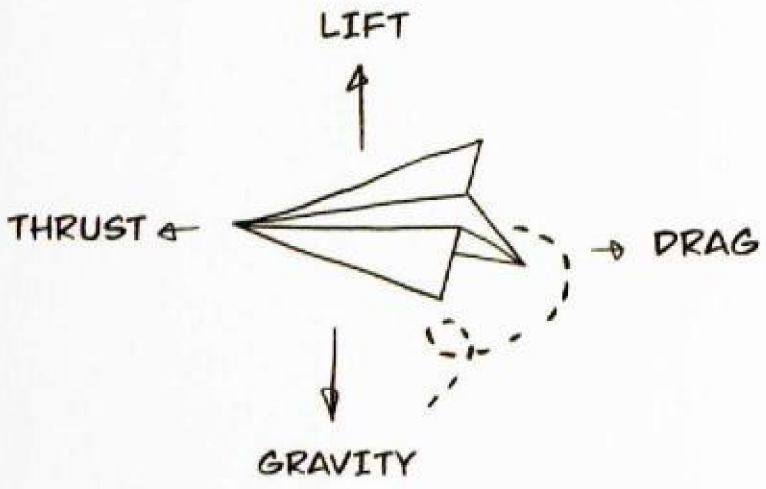
A. Note book & pen, camera, memo recorder, cash, binoculars

Whereas a level 3 question is more likely to be;

Q. Describe the items you would carry on a surveillance.

A. A note book & pen in order to record contemporaneous notes to be used in evidence. A digital camera (video or stills) in order to film illegal or unlawful activity.





I aliken it to this analogy. A lesson on making paper darts.

LEVEL 1:

Watch what I do and copy me, take a sheet of paper and fold it here, here and here like this, now throw it and it should fly – a paper dart.

LEVEL 2:

Do the same again but now I want to see it fly up and down when you throw it. So, to be able to achieve this you will have to do one or a combination of: experimenting (by making folds in the wings or adding a weight to it), and/or research it by reading a manual, by asking an expert or searching online and so on.

LEVEL 3:

I want you to examine and describe how the dart flies through the air considering: lift, drag, low pressure, high pressure, wing angles of attack.

LEVEL 4:

I want you to take charge of those people and supervise them making paper darts analysing their progress.

LEVEL 5:

Discuss and evaluate the types of paper used in making paper darts providing supporting theories and materials.

Do not confuse Police Levels 1, 2, or 3 with those mentioned here, they are completely different and cannot be compared.

QMS: L4 Covert Surveillance Operations Workbook *Sample of a students assessment workbook.*

Question 1 (Assessment Criterion 1.1)
Through answering the following **six questions**, explain how relevant legislation and the Surveillance Codes of Practice relates to surveillance undertaken by Public and Private Bodies: *Additional Guidance: Answer the question in **full sentences** (approximately 25-100 words in total).*
1. Specify under which legislation a Public Body has to obtain authority to conduct surveillance. The Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act 2000 is the legislation created to ensure that investigations performed by public authorities in accordance with The Human Rights Act 1998. In some circumstances public bodies will need authorisation to carry out surveillance operations. RIPA sets out statutory codes of practice to be adhered to, ensuring investigations are carried out legally.
2. Give examples of who has to comply and who doesn't have to with this legislation? Public bodies such as the Police (including MOD police and BTP), local authorities, HM Revenue and Customs, MOD, Social Services, Trading Standings, Environment Agency, must all comply. Private investigations companies, Surveillance Operators or Security Consultants do not have to comply with RIPA unless they are working for the above organisations.
3. Explain Article 8 of the Human Rights Act 1998. Article 8 protects an individual's right to privacy in their private life, in their home and their correspondence. Public

ISS TRAINING LTD

HISTORY AND EVOLUTION OF THE CURRENT QUALIFICATIONS

In January 2019, three new qualifications in surveillance were registered on the National Qualifications Framework and were accredited by Industry Qualifications.

IQ Level 4 Intermediate Award in Covert Surveillance Operations
IQ Level 4 Advanced Award in Covert Surveillance Operations
IQ Level 4 Certificate in Covert Surveillance Operations

The Ministry of Defence (MOD) have a scheme for all service personnel called the 'Enhanced Learning Credit Accreditation Scheme' (ELCAS). This scheme pays for servicemen and women to attend various vocational courses outside of the MOD's remit (plumbing, building, HGV driving etc). One of the criteria for funding is that the course they attend has to be set at a minimum of Level 3 and also listed on the National Qualifications Framework (NQF).

As mentioned above, all qualifications in surveillance were 'customised', they were not on the NQF but the MOD had provided funding for them for many years. When they realised, they pulled the plug on anyone attending any course that was not on the NQF (not just surveillance).

Up until 2018, the Ministry of Defence were providing funding to servicemen and women to attend surveillance courses in surveillance. Under the 'ELCAS' scheme, any military person can go to any training provider for any subject.

A NEW START

As a consequence, ISS Training Ltd and accrediting body 'Industry Qualifications' (IQ) discussed the possibility of converting their already accredited Level 4 customised courses into a new course to go on the OFQUAL National Qualifications Framework.

IQ agreed in principle and carried out their own feasibility study. They stated that due to reasons of impartiality, a number of other surveillance training providers would have to be approached in to form a 'stakeholder working group' so that a balanced and appropriate course, fit for purpose could be created.

There were five companies that were consulted in addition to ISS Training Ltd, two carried out personal injury surveillance (only one of which carried out training), one undertook rural surveillance and a bodyguard training company that didn't advertise surveillance training.

As a baseline to work from, ISS Training Ltd, released their course specifications, outcomes, content and assessments to IQ to form the new courses. As a consequence, all their intellectual property was put into the public domain for any training provider now to use.

Question 5 (Assessment Criteria 1.2 and 1.3)	
Demonstrate the basic tactics used in foot surveillance. The tactics must demonstrate competence in relation to:	
• Trigger positions • Plot up positions • Identification • Directions • Control and positioning • Handovers	• Clearing corners • Stops • Identify housing • Reporting • Logging • Loss and gain

Some of the practical criteria for the foot surveillance assessment.

ISS TRAINING LTD

After a few weeks of hard work by the designer, three of the stakeholders gave no positive input and were removed from the group. It appeared that they were there only for the ride and to have their name on the credits.

After much toing and froing over a number of months the courses were finally created. 90% of the material and work was produced with ISS, the other two remaining stakeholders had minimum input. One wanted to include a unit on rural surveillance, which was declined and the other put up a fight to leave out any mention of vehicle tracking claiming it was 'illegal'. The real reason was because their 'insurance industry' clients do not like trackers and the stakeholder did not want to be associated with it. ISS claimed that if it was illegal (or otherwise) then it should be included in the syllabus so that learners understand the legal implications of using such equipment.

If you have trained with ISS, nothing has materially changed in the way the course is conducted or the topics taught. The assessments are more stringent than they were before, and the tutors more accountable in their marking. Other training providers will now have to up their game like never before and so the shortcuts should now be gone. Telling someone they are 'mobile surveillance trained' after a PowerPoint and only three hours in a car with no radios should also be a thing of the past.

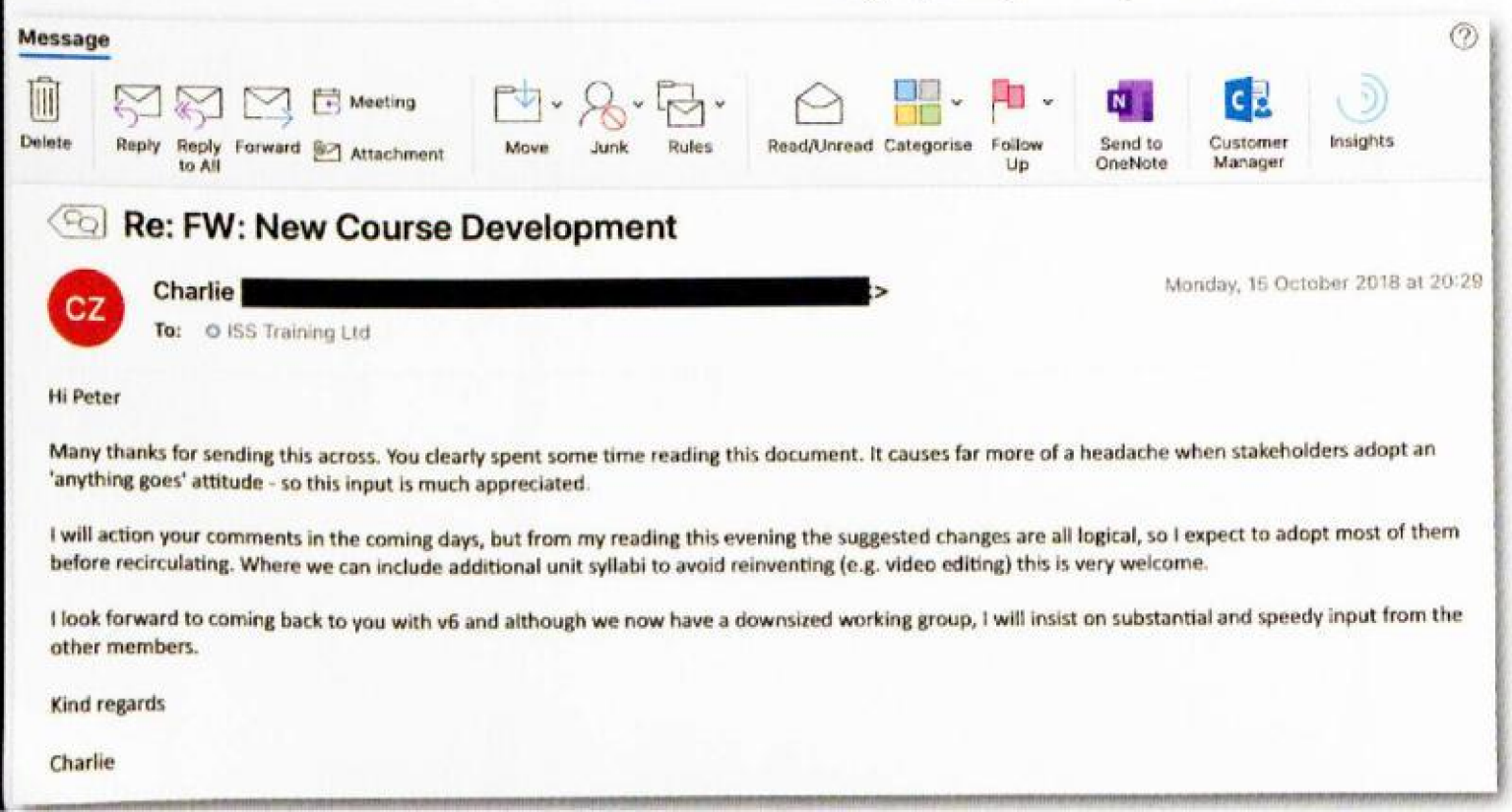
QUALIFIED INSTRUCTORS

One of the main discussion points was the minimum qualifications and experience of the tutors that would be qualified to teach the courses, as laid down in the specification. Concerns were expressed that if the tutor specification wasn't stringent enough (and checked by IQ) every man and his dog will soon be offering these qualifications and the qualification made worthless. We didn't want to go down the same route that happened in the Close Protection (bodyguard) industry when many half-qualified and inexperienced bodyguards set up training companies to hand out certificates.



Having said that, anyone running a security company or training company (or wanting to start one up) will now be able to offer the new surveillance training qualifications. We have already seen people who have attended an ISS course set up their own surveillance training school within months because they misinformed the accrediting body. There is absolutely no way you can teach this syllabus without operational experience.

The chancers no doubt will always get through, as they have in the Close Protection industry. Therefore, choosing the right training provider should be high priority on anyone's list.


Message

Delete | Reply | Reply to All | Forward | Meeting | Attachment | Move | Junk | Rules | Read/Unread | Categorise | Follow Up | Send to OneNote | Customer Manager | Insights

Re: FW: New Course Development

CZ **Charlie** [redacted]> Monday, 15 October 2018 at 20:29

To: ISS Training Ltd

Hi Peter

Many thanks for sending this across. You clearly spent some time reading this document. It causes far more of a headache when stakeholders adopt an 'anything goes' attitude - so this input is much appreciated.

I will action your comments in the coming days, but from my reading this evening the suggested changes are all logical, so I expect to adopt most of them before recirculating. Where we can include additional unit syllabi to avoid reinventing (e.g. video editing) this is very welcome.

I look forward to coming back to you with v6 and although we now have a downsized working group, I will insist on substantial and speedy input from the other members.

Kind regards

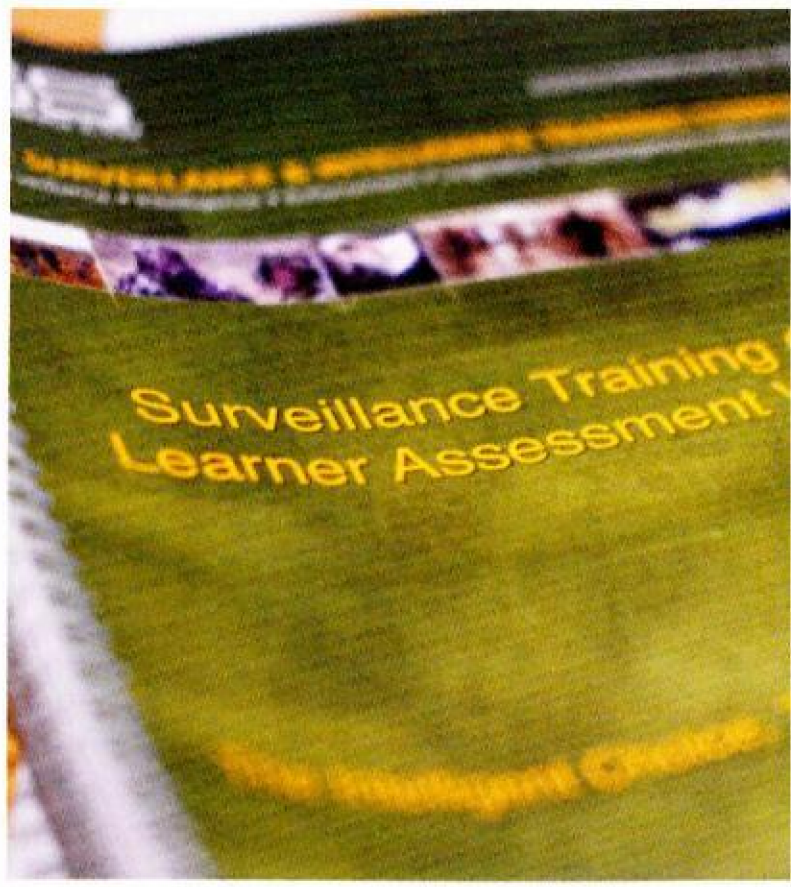
Charlie

The course development was a long process.

THE ASSESSMENT PROCESS

To pass the qualifications, you are assessed in three different ways:

- Question & Answer Workbook
- Portfolio of Evidence
- Practical Assessments



Students are provided with a 'Workbook' (hard copy or electronic) which lists many questions that require answering in full in order to confirm the learners 'underpinning knowledge'. The questions are set at Level 4 and some at Level 3, and have to be answered fully and comprehensively. Single one-line answers are not accepted.

In addition, the Workbook serves as a checklist for the Portfolio and a record of the practical assessments.

PORTFOLIO OF EVIDENCE

Students are required to complete a number of exercises by writing and producing recce reports, briefings, compiling surveillance logs and taking covert photographs. These can be submitted electronically.

All have to be produced covering the learning outcomes in the prescribed format and samples are provided within the relevant chapters of this book.

PRACTICAL ASSESSMENTS

This is the hardest part. Your Workbook and Portfolio can be first class but if you cannot actually perform what you have been taught on the ground, then you will not pass the assessments. It should not be a case of doing something and then getting a 'tick in a box' for it, your voice procedure, your control of the target, awareness of the team and the third party, together with gathering intelligence, are all taken into consideration.

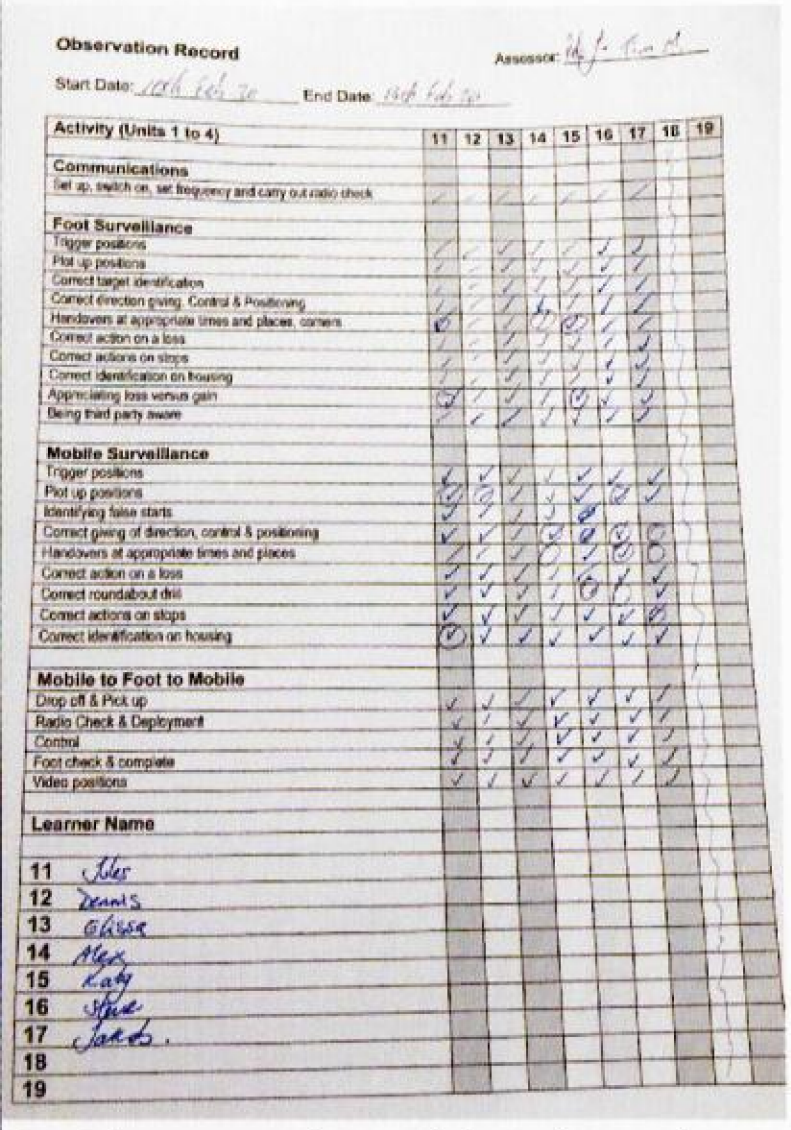
PLAGIARISM

Whether hard copy or electronic, it is not difficult to identify when two students have copied each other's work. Anyone found plagiarising their answers or portfolios get one chance to correct it and then fail. The course is set at Level 4. This means you will have to do some of your own research to support your answers. If you use a text book (like this one), or use the Internet, you must not 'copy & paste' but re-write in your own words, reference the fact that you have done so, and state where you read the original text.

Read the question; answer it fully.

ISS Training Ltd QMS L4 Covert Surveillance Operations Workbook

3. Explain why it is important to know whether the target has been under surveillance previously.		
So that tactics can be changed due to subjects awareness and the team need to counter it.		
To be Completed by the Assessor:		
Does the learner's answer meet the requirements of the assessment criteria?	**Yes**	**No**
Additional Comments (Optional) How?		

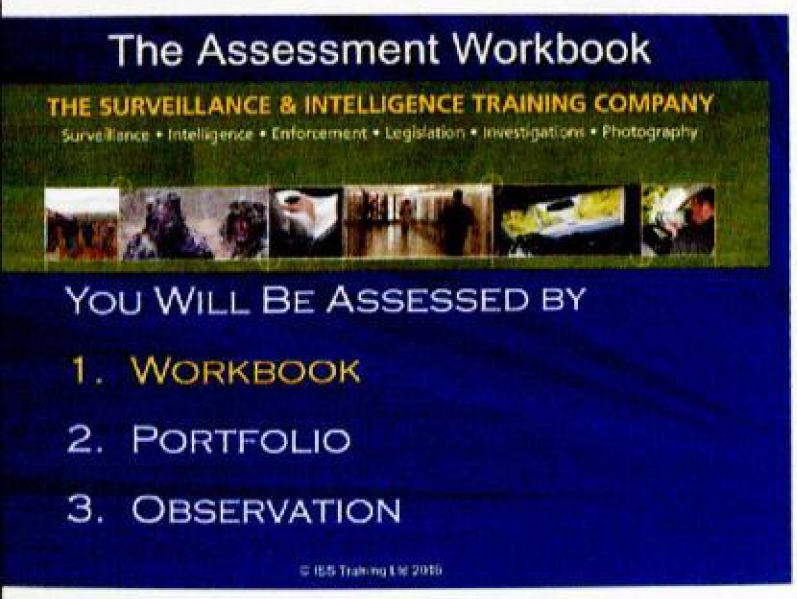


Observation Record Assessor:

Start Date: 12th Feb 20 End Date: 15th Feb 20

Activity (Units 1 to 4)	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
Communications									
Set up, switch on, set frequency and carry out radio check	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Foot Surveillance									
Trigger positions	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Plot up positions	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Correct target identification	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Correct direction giving, Control & Positioning	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Handovers at appropriate times and places, corners	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Correct action on a loss	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Correct actions on stops	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Correct identification on housing	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Appreciating loss versus gain	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Being third party aware	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Mobile Surveillance									
Trigger positions	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Plot up positions	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Identifying false starts	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				
Correct giving of direction, control & positioning	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Handovers at appropriate times and places	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Correct action on a loss	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Correct roundabout drill	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Correct actions on stops	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Correct identification on housing	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Mobile to Foot to Mobile									
Drop off & Pick up	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Radio Check & Deployment	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Control	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Foot check & complete	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Video positions	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Learner Name									
11 Jules									
12 Dennis									
13 Olivia									
14 Alex									
15 Katy									
16 Steve									
17 Jacob.									
18									
19									

Each learner needs to satisfactorily complete the practical elements.



COURSE CONTENT

Set at Level 4, the courses are broken down into three Groups (A, B & C). The intermediate award (Basic) course comprises of Group A subjects. The Advanced award course (which is really intermediate) comprises of Groups A & B and the Certificate (what I would consider the proper 'advanced' course) comprises of Groups A, B & C.

IQ LEVEL 4 INTERMEDIATE AWARD IN COVERT SURVEILLANCE OPERATIONS (61 HOURS)

GROUP A

- Organising Teamwork in Surveillance Operations
- Obtaining and Collating Information by Surveillance
- Organising Foot Surveillance
- Organising Mobile Surveillance

IQ LEVEL 4 ADVANCED AWARD IN COVERT SURVEILLANCE OPERATIONS (117 HOURS)

GROUP A UNITS

- Organising Teamwork in Surveillance Operations
- Obtaining and Collating Information by Surveillance
- Organising Foot Surveillance
- Organising Mobile Surveillance

GROUP B UNITS

- Organising Advanced Mobile Surveillance
- Organising Advanced Foot Surveillance
- Conducting Public Transport Surveillance
- Organising Counter Surveillance Operations

IQ LEVEL 4 CERTIFICATE IN COVERT SURVEILLANCE OPERATIONS (159 HOURS)

GROUP A UNITS

- Organising Teamwork in Surveillance Operations
- Obtaining and Collating Information by Surveillance
- Organising Foot Surveillance
- Organising Mobile Surveillance

GROUP B UNITS

- Organising Advanced Mobile Surveillance
- Organising Advanced Foot Surveillance
- Conducting Public Transport Surveillance
- Organising Counter Surveillance Operations

GROUP C UNITS (ONLY 3 UNITS OUT OF 4)

- Digital Cameras & Photographic Techniques
- Video Editing Skills
- Open Source Intelligence
- Technical Surveillance Methods

THE COURSE UNITS

UNIT ONE
ORGANISING TEAMWORK IN SURVEILLANCE OPERATIONS

This unit is designed to provide learners with the fundamental knowledge, skills and understanding required to perform the role of a Surveillance Operator when operating as part of a team. It underpins the definition of the role and responsibilities that the covert operator will undertake.

LEARNING OUTCOME 1
To understand the effectiveness of surveillance teams

- Explain the different types of surveillance teams and their surveillance methods
- Describe the personal qualities of a surveillance operative
- Explain the basic equipment required to carry out a surveillance operation
- Explain the terms and expressions used in surveillance

LEARNING OUTCOME 2
Be able to communicate with team members

- Demonstrate a surveillance radio in covert mode
- Analyse communication requirements for surveillance operations

LEARNING OUTCOME 3
Be able to organise a surveillance operation and deliver a surveillance plan

- Analyse information required for planning a surveillance operation
- Produce a plan for a surveillance operation

LEARNING OUTCOME 4
To understand how to minimise personal risk during surveillance operations

- Explain how to minimise risk to personal safety
- Evaluate how a surveillance operator can be compromised
- Analyse the principles of Loss -v- Gain
- Produce a health and safety risk assessment for a surveillance operation

LEARNING OUTCOME 5
Be able to present a surveillance operation to a surveillance team

- Deliver a surveillance operation presentation to a team
- Review presentation content constructively
- Debrief the team following a surveillance operation







Constructive coaching is essential.

Students Recce Report

UNIT TWO
OBTAINING & COLLATING INFORMATION BY SURVEILLANCE

This unit provides the knowledge required in order obtain authority to carry out surveillance if acting on behalf of a Public Body and the relevant current legislation and procedures. It covers how to gather and record evidence in a lawful, just and fair manne. Including preserving the integrity of such evidence to be accepted by the Courts. As well as the pitfalls and issues with eyewitness testimony and the capabilities of using photographic equipment in support of conventional surveillance. In particular, covertly obtaining images of Subjects to be used in evidence.

LEARNING OUTCOME 1

Be able to keep accurate surveillance logs in accordance with legislation

- Explain how relevant legislation and the Surveillance Codes of Practice relate to surveillance undertaken by Public and Private Bodies
- Identify the chain of evidence in relation to continuity
- Identify the pitfalls of eye-witness testimony
- Following a surveillance exercise, produce a handwritten surveillance log
- Produce a typed formal surveillance report

LEARNING OUTCOME 2

Be able to participate in taking covert images

- Identify methods of taking covert images and video
- Produce covert images during a surveillance exercise

LEARNING OUTCOME 3

Understand the legalities of using and deploying GPS tracking devices

- Evaluate the legalities of using and deploying trackers

ISS TRAINING LTD

UNIT THREE
ORGANISING FOOT SURVEILLANCE

This unit provides learners with the fundamental knowledge about how to carry out covert surveillance as a member of a foot surveillance team. It covers the basic methods and procedures used in order to gather evidence whilst communicating effectively using surveillance radios and establish effective teamwork plus the importance of personal appearance and dress sense for the environment in which they are working. The unit also covers the mechanics and techniques used in anti-surveillance whilst on foot, how to recognise and establish if a target is carrying out anti-surveillance measures, as well as how to counter them in order to prevent compromising surveillance operations.

LEARNING OUTCOME 1
Be able to participate in foot surveillance

- Analyse the four phases of a surveillance operation and the surveillance cycle
- Demonstrate the basic tactics used in foot surveillance
- Participate in foot surveillance exercises

LEARNING OUTCOME 2
Understand foot anti-surveillance measures

- Explain situations in which targets are more likely to be surveillance aware
- Give examples of the various foot anti-surveillance measures a target may carry out
- Analyse the options that are open to someone who identifies that they are being followed







Being able to multi-task is essential.

This book will certainly help you pass the written theory element of a course, but do not expect to be competent in the practical assessments after only two or three days practical training.

Minimum time in the cars means minimum skill level.

UNIT FOUR
ORGANISING MOBILE SURVEILLANCE

This unit provides learners with the fundamental knowledge about how to carry out covert surveillance as a member of a mobile surveillance team. It covers the basic methods and procedures used in order to gather evidence. The unit also covers the mechanics and techniques used in anti-surveillance whilst in vehicles, how to recognise and establish if a target is carrying out anti-surveillance measures, as well as how to counter them in order to prevent compromising surveillance operations.

LEARNING OUTCOME 1

Be able to organise mobile surveillance operations

- Analyse surveillance vehicle requirements
- Demonstrate the basic tactics used in mobile surveillance
- Coordinate mobile surveillance exercises

LEARNING OUTCOME 2

Understand mobile anti-surveillance measures

- Distinguish between 'anti-surveillance' and 'counter surveillance'
- Analyse mobile anti-surveillance measures
- Evaluate the options available for someone being followed

ISS TRAINING LTD

UNIT FIVE
ORGANISING ADVANCED MOBILE SURVEILLANCE

In this unit we increase the level of tactics used by more advanced procedures and building on those taught in unit four.

The unit also covers the mechanics and techniques used in night surveillance operations, together with navigating in urban and rural areas and the use of motorbikes

LEARNING OUTCOME 1
Be able to organise advanced mobile surveillance operations

- Demonstrate advanced tactics used in mobile surveillance
- Coordinate advanced mobile surveillance exercises

LEARNING OUTCOME 2
Be able to organise night mobile surveillance

- Demonstrate tactics used in night mobile surveillance
- Coordinate night mobile surveillance exercises

LEARNING OUTCOME 3
Be able to navigate in urban and rural areas

- Navigate using hard copy maps and technology
- Produce a GPS navigation system programmed for public transport operations





Foot surveillance includes buses and trains.

UNIT SIX
ORGANISING ADVANCED FOOT SURVEILLANCE

Unit six is designed to provide increased knowledge for organising and carrying out advanced methods of covert surveillance in a foot surveillance team.

LEARNING OUTCOME 1
Be able to organise advanced foot surveillance operations

- Demonstrate advanced tactics used in foot surveillance
- Demonstrate advanced tactics used when using public transport
- Coordinate advanced foot surveillance exercises

UNIT SEVEN
CONDUCTING PUBLIC TRANSPORT SURVEILLANCE

Students are taught how to execute advanced methods of covert surveillance in a foot surveillance team, supported by vehicles, with special regard to operating on public transport by bus, rail, underground and taxis.

LEARNING OUTCOME 1
Understand the requirements of public transport surveillance

- Analyse appropriate situations in public transport surveillance
- Assess communication requirements in public transport surveillance

LEARNING OUTCOME 2
Understand the requirements of conducting surveillance on buses

- Analyse team positions when conducting surveillance on buses

LEARNING OUTCOME 3
Understand the requirements of conducting surveillance on trains and the underground

- Analyse team positions when conducting surveillance on trains and the underground

LEARNING OUTCOME 4
Understand the requirements of conducting surveillance on taxis

- Analyse team positions when conducting surveillance on taxis



ISS TRAINING LTD

UNIT EIGHT
ORGANISING COUNTER SURVEILLANCE OPERATIONS

This unit is designed to give students the knowledge to organise and carry out counter surveillance operations in order to identify whether they (or a principal) is the target of surveillance. Learners will progress from the anti-surveillance methods and procedures previously taught in Units 3 & 4 and thi unit will be of special interest to those carrying out close protection duties. It also requires learners to produce a counter surveillance route plan.

Learners are taught the methods and techniques used to plan a counter surveillance route, to monitor several choke points and surveillance hazards and, to identify whether surveillance is present.

LEARNING OUTCOME 1
Be able to plan counter surveillance routes

- Explain the principles of counter surveillance
- Plan a counter surveillance route for a surveillance team

LEARNING OUTCOME 2
Be able to organise counter surveillance

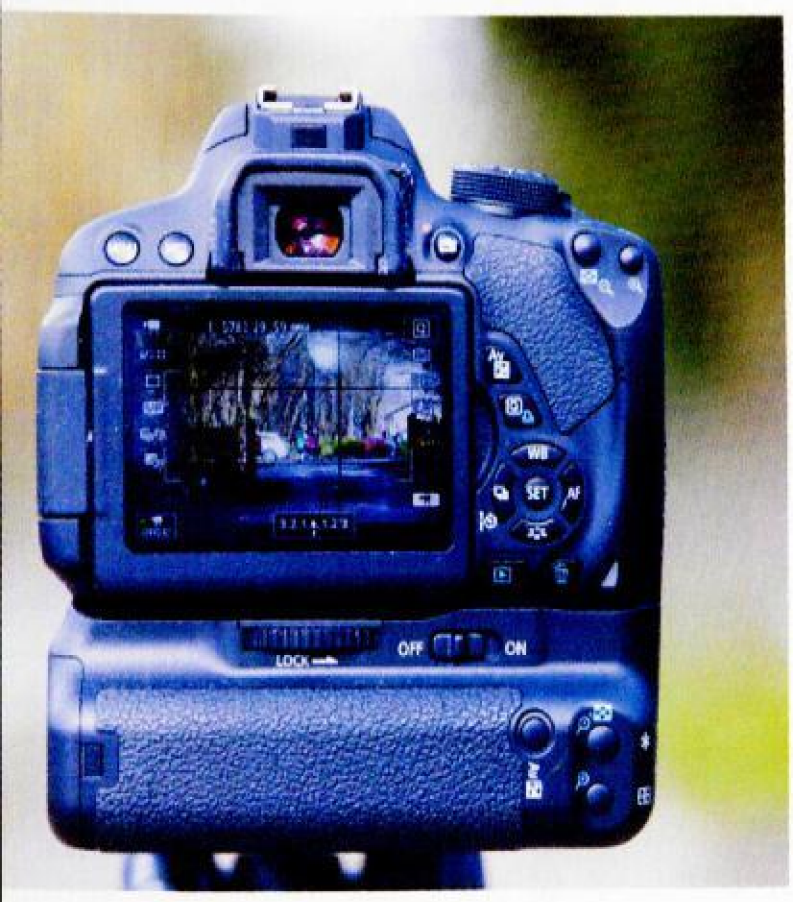
- Coordinate counter surveillance exercises
- Debrief a counter surveillance exercise

Training in Eastern Europe.





Know your camera inside out.



UNIT 9
DIGITAL CAMERAS & PHOTOGRAPHIC TECHNIQUES

This unit teaches the fundamental knowledge, skills and understanding required to use a digital SLR camera in their various modes, and how to understand light and the effect that it plays in photography. Learners are also introduced to post processing software and post-production processes. They will manipulate and edit digital images using various tools and techniques to enhance images and resize them for output purposes. They will follow guidelines for the continuity of digital evidence to be used in evidence.

LEARNING OUTCOME 1

Understand how digital cameras operate in their various modes

- Explain the features, controls, functions and modes of a DSLR camera

LEARNING OUTCOME 2

Understand the characteristics of exposure

- Explain methods of metering
- Explain methods of exposure adjustment
- Explain depth of field
- Produce images displaying the effects of depth of field
- Produce images at different shutter speeds
- Produce images at different exposures

LEARNING OUTCOME 3

Understand the use of lenses

- Identify the characteristics of lenses
- Explain the uses of different lenses

LEARNING OUTCOME 4

Understand how to use post processing software

- Explain the use of post-processing software and identify the tools used
- Explain how to manipulate images by applying adjustments
- Explain how to manipulate digital images to resize and store in various formats
- Produce a portfolio of 15 images

LEARNING OUTCOME 5

Understand how to preserve the integrity of digital images in a chain of evidence

- Explain a continuity audit trail and the process of retaining the original data with reference to digital images

ISS TRAINING LTD

UNIT 10
VIDEO EDITING SKILLS

Learners are introduced to post processing editing software and post-production processes in this unit. They will manipulate and edit raw video footage using various tools and techniques to enhance video film and re-size them for export purposes. Learners will follow guidelines for the continuity of digital evidence to be used in evidence.

LEARNING OUTCOME 1
Be able to operate video cameras and apply various settings

- Identify the features and controls of a video camera and make adjustments to the shooting settings

LEARNING OUTCOME 2
Understand the characteristics of video compression

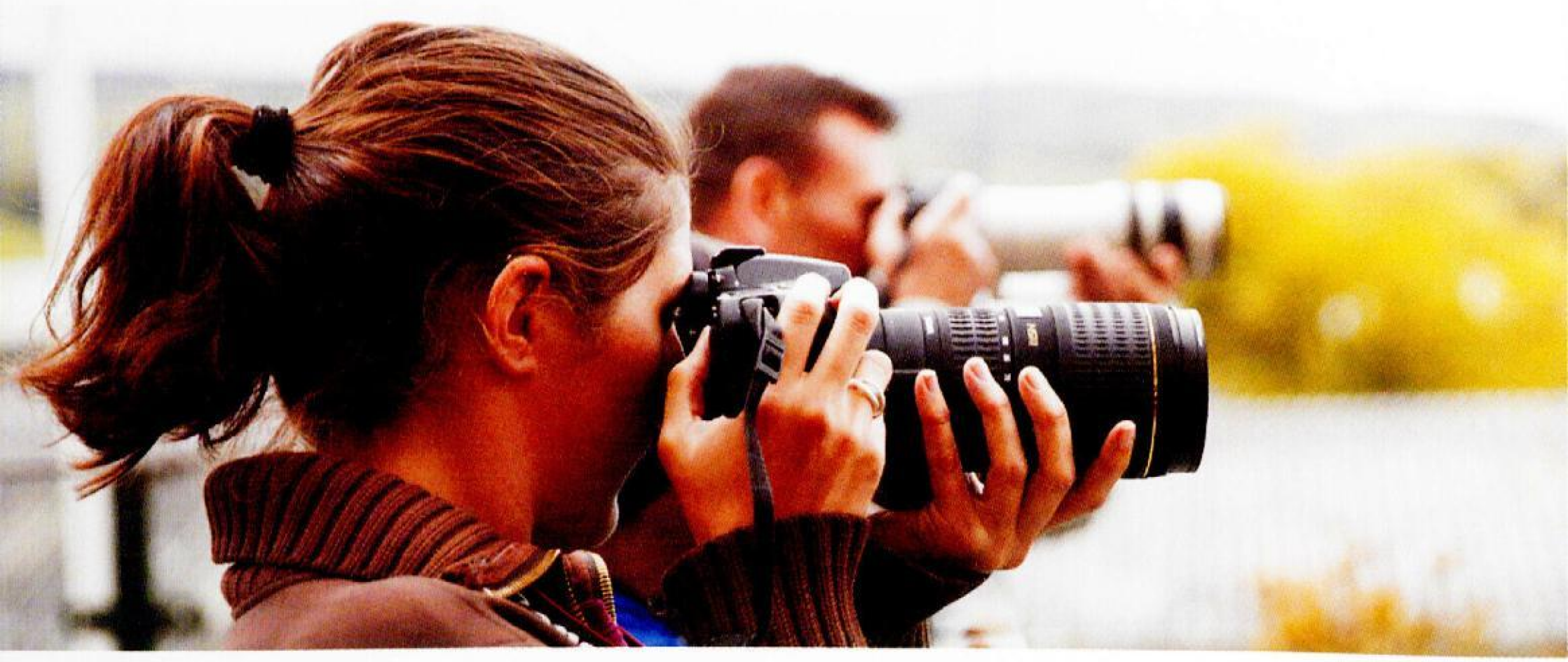
- Explain basic methods of compression

LEARNING OUTCOME 3
Be able to use post-processing editing software

- Explain the use of post-processing software and identify the tools used
- Edit a video by applying adjustments
- Export a digital video, resize it and store it in a different format

LEARNING OUTCOME 4
Understand how to preserve the integrity of digital video in a chain of evidence

- Explain a continuity audit trail and the process of retaining the original data with reference to digital videos





UNIT 11
OPEN SOURCE INTELLIGENCE

This unit is divided into five outcomes and is designed to provide learners with the fundamental knowledge, skills and understanding required to carry out research via the internet. Using various open source websites and search engines, they will research and investigate, people, places, companies and social media sites.

LEARNING OUTCOME 1
Understand the basic principles of how the internet works

- Describe internet and email processes
- Demonstrate how to open full email headers and website source code

LEARNING OUTCOME 2
Be able to use websites and search engines to establish links

- Use open source websites to establish links to other information, intelligence or evidence

LEARNING OUTCOME 3
Be able to conduct research using a variety of methods

- Research vehicle information using a variety of methods
- Research social media information using a variety of methods
- Research properties using a variety of methods
- Research businesses using a variety of methods
- Research people and phone numbers using a variety of methods

LEARNING OUTCOME 4
Be able to search for images and historical data

- Research images and videos using a variety of methods
- Obtain website historical data from old websites

LEARNING OUTCOME 5
Understand how to manage and capture research evidence

- Explain the process of a research audit trail

ISS TRAINING LTD

UNIT 12
TECHNICAL SURVEILLANCE METHODS

This unit is designed to provide learners with the knowledge to operate tracking equipment and use portable covert video cameras disguised as everyday objects. Learners are taught why trackers are used, how they are to be used legally, their limitations plus the methods and techniques used to plan a tracker deployment and recovery. They are also taught how to set up and use covert portable video cameras to obtain information.

LEARNING OUTCOME 1

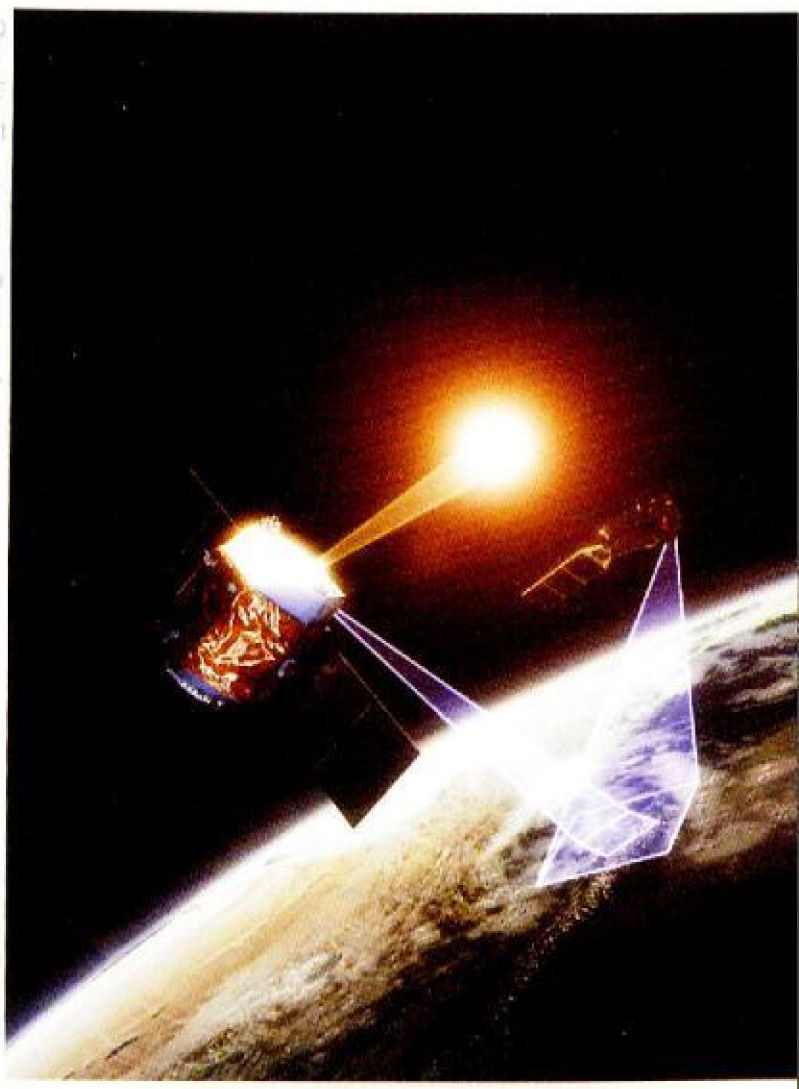
Be able to operate vehicle tracking equipment

- Evaluate information required prior to deploying a vehicle tracking device
- Produce a plan for a vehicle tracking device deployment
- Coordinate a deployment and recovery exercise
- Evaluate the legalities of using and deploying trackers

LEARNING OUTCOME 2

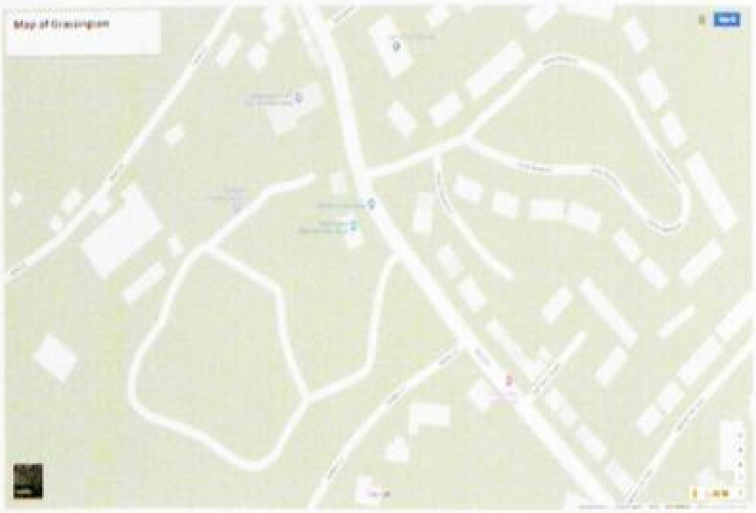
Be able to obtain covert images with portable video cameras

- Evaluate settings to operate a covert portable video camera
- Analyse images in covert video exercises



Credit: European Space Agency







PORTFOLIO REQUIREMENTS

To support the assessment workbook, the following has to be produced as part of a portfolio of evidence which can be hand-written, printed or in electronic format on a memory pen.

UNIT 1: ORGANISING TEAMWORK IN SURVEILLANCE OPERATIONS

Produce a plan for a surveillance operation by carrying out a physical reconnaissance of a target area and complete a recce report and sketch plan.

Produce a health and safety risk assessment for a surveillance operation.

Take active part in surveillance briefings and produce a surveillance briefing.

UNIT 2: OBTAINING AND COLLATING INFORMATION BY SURVEILLANCE

Produce a handwritten surveillance log following a surveillance exercise. The log must encompass all information required in order to complete a subsequent surveillance report.

Produce a typed formal surveillance report. The report must encompass all relevant information from the previous surveillance log. The above log is to be typed up in a manner which is acceptable to a client.

Produce two covert images during a surveillance exercise. The photos must include corresponding notes demonstrating how they have been taken.

UNIT 8: ORGANISING COUNTER SURVEILLANCE OPERATIONS

Produce a plan for a mobile continuous counter surveillance route. The plan will be reconnoitred and briefed to a class displaying the principles of a counter surveillance operation.

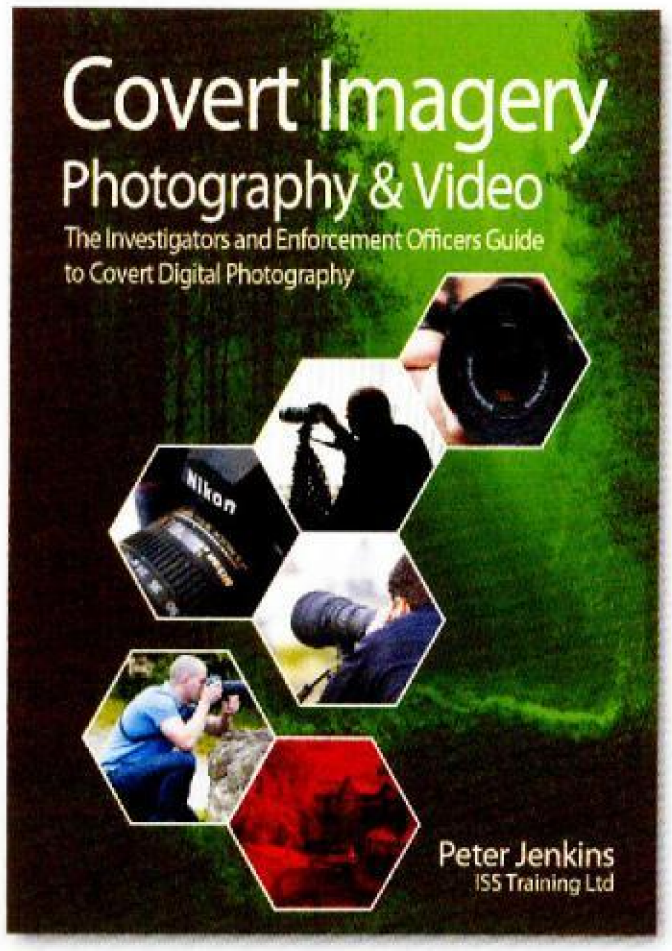
On completion of a counter surveillance exercise. A CS sightings report together with an analysis is to be produced.

Sightings from each choke point.

CP1	CP2	CP3	CP4
~~NX58 YDK Black VW Golf~~	BT62 UPG Red Honda	AJ67 KWZ Audi Q2	GJ08 LVL Black VW Golf
PE13 FRR Black Ford Focus	MJ15 WWH Blue Peugeot	YM64 JUY Mercedes 4X4	~~OW15 UCW Grey Volvo S90~~
PE67 AFU White Toyota	YJ66 OCM White BMW	OV53 WUK Blue Honda	AF16 OCM green Citroen
KU08 FON Grey VW Passat	~~OW15 UCW Grey Volvo S90~~	~~NX58 YDK Black VW Golf~~	YF52 WJJ Blue Mini Cooper
~~OW15 UCW Grey Volvo S90~~	PB15 YKK Red Porshe	AJ02 PXE Grey Nissan	AK17 YUT Pink Audi TT
YD61 LBL Blue Mazda 2	AK12 RTT Blue Fiat Punto	P80 HCB Black Audi A3	BP19 AFT Black BMW X5
YH18 ADM Orange Suzuki	BR07 THL	~~OW15 UCW Grey Volvo S90~~	~~NX58 YDK Black VW Golf~~
YE14 CHL White Ford Transit	OW12 THH	MT63 YYU VW Blue 4X4	AD06 GHH Green VW Polo
PK18 ANV Green Mini Cooper	DN12 UUT	HN12 BNU Grey BMW X3	PK14 UHH Yellow VW Van
AK12 AMN White VW Polo	AF55 OMC black Mondeo	BN62 CNN Grey Ford Focus	BT04 FRT White Ford Van

ISS TRAINING LTD

UNIT 9: DIGITAL CAMERAS AND PHOTOGRAPHIC TECHNIQUES



Illustrate two images displaying the effects of 'depth of field', specifying the camera settings.

Illustrate a slow shutter speed and a fast shutter speed, specifying the camera settings.

Produce three photographs of a building: one at normal exposure, the second over exposed by 2 stops and the final under exposed by 2 stops.

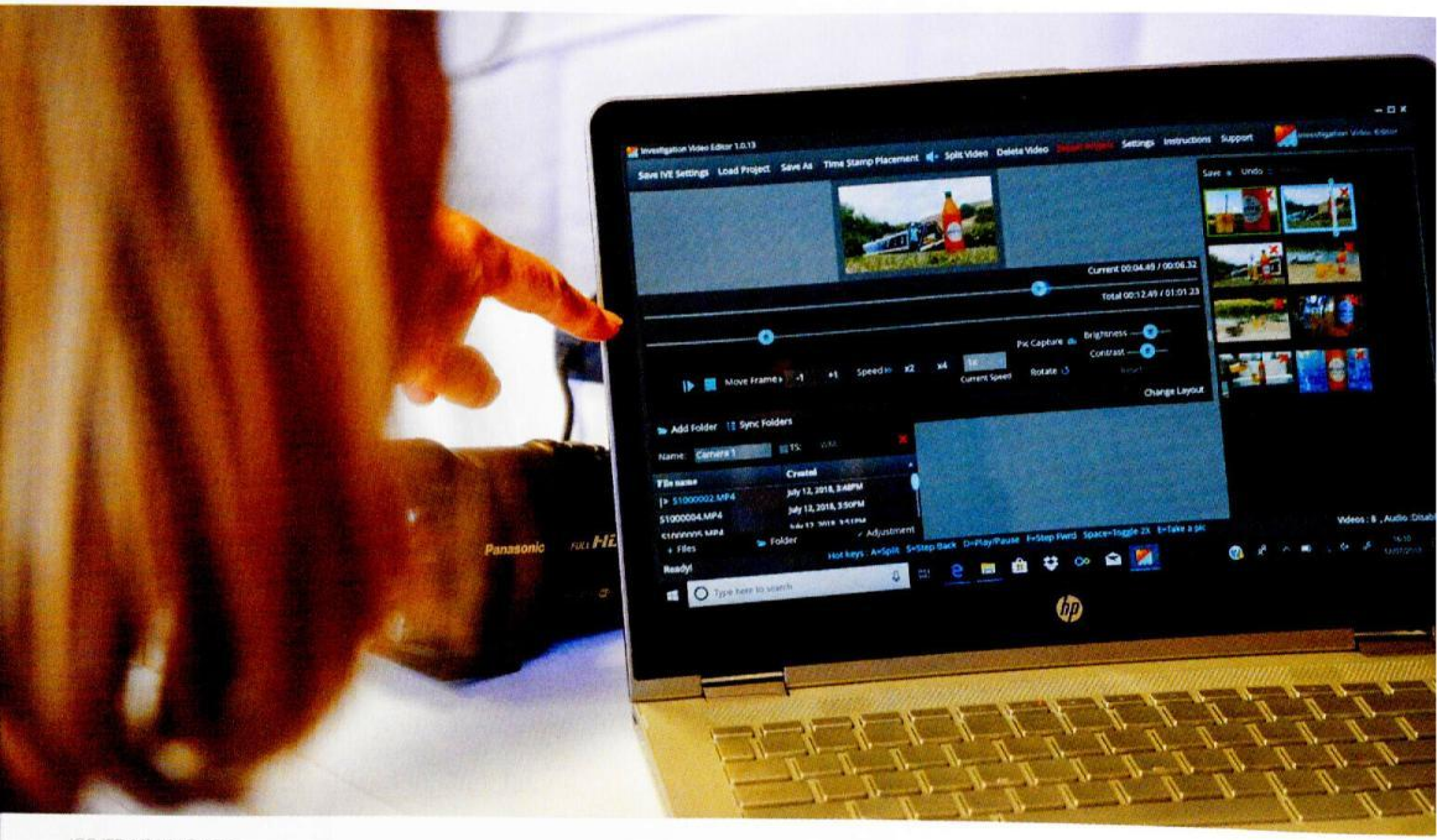
Produce 15 images that show the suitability of selected photographic media, demonstrating an awareness of the following photographic techniques:

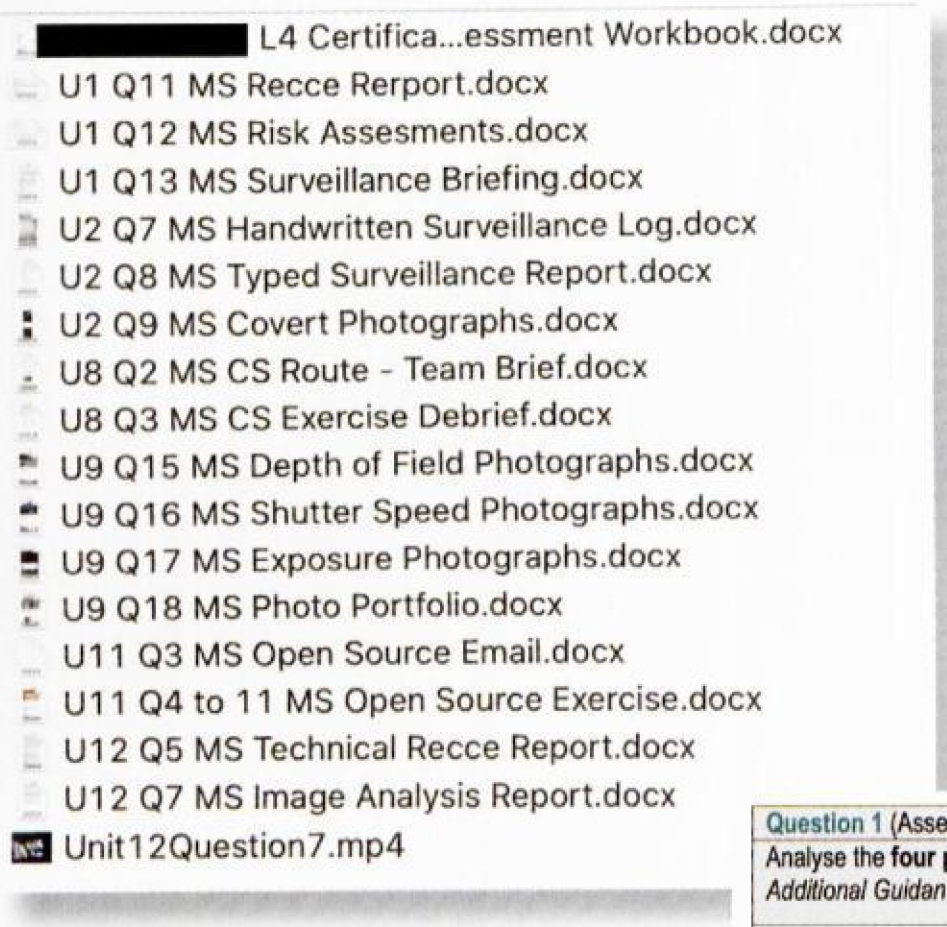
- Use of Shutter Speed
- Use of Aperture and Depth of Field
- Use of ISO Adjustments
- Use of Various Exposure Modes
- Creative use of Composition

UNIT 10: VIDEO EDITING SKILLS

Edit a video by applying adjustments. Leaners will be provided with a brief to shoot a video and then edit the footage taking into account various adjustments. The finished video film should be produced.

Export a digital video, resize it and store it in a different format.





Portfolio assessments indexed correctly.

Question 1 (Assessment Criterion 1.1)

Analyse the **four phases** of a surveillance operation and the surveillance cycle.
*Additional Guidance: Answer the question in **full sentences** (approximately 50-100 words in total).*

The initial phase of a surveillance operation is the **STAKEOUT**. The team will plot up in the surrounding area, creating a 'box' that the subject cannot leave without being seen. The team are positioned so that at least one operative can see the subject and/or their location and will be able provide the 'trigger' when the subject is on the move.

The second phase of the operation is the **PICK UP**. Once the trigger alerts the team that the subject has appeared, the team are now ready to respond. The trigger will then call a standby, along with the direction of travel, allowing the rest of the team to move into action.

Phase three of the surveillance is the **FOLLOW**. The subject is now mobile. The team will follow and will attempt to keep the subject under control at all times.

The fourth phase of the operation is **THE HOUSING**. When a subject enters a premises, enters or parks a vehicle, or ceases to continue their route, this is called a stop. The subject's exact location will be communicated to the team over the radio net and a trigger will be set up as a matter of urgency. There is no way to tell how long the subject will be 'housed' for, therefore it is of great importance to act quickly, establish a trigger and plot up smoothly.

The cycle begins again, and the operation returns to the stakeout. The process is repeated continuously until the teams stands down and the surveillance ends.

Full explanatory answers are required.

Surveillance Log

Log Keeper:
Page No. **of**

Time	Event	Remark
	Standby.	
	A65 Addingham	
	into Ilkley.	
	Stop. stop Tesco Ilkley.	
1405	EXITING POST OFFICE (A1)	
1409	STANDBY - B1	
1411	EXIT CARPARK AT TESCO	
	A65 towards SKIPTON	
	1629 SKIPTO	

Not acceptable work!

ISS TRAINING LTD

UNIT 11: OPEN SOURCE INTELLIGENCE

Demonstrate how to open full email headers and website source code.

Use open source websites to establish links to other information, intelligence or evidence.

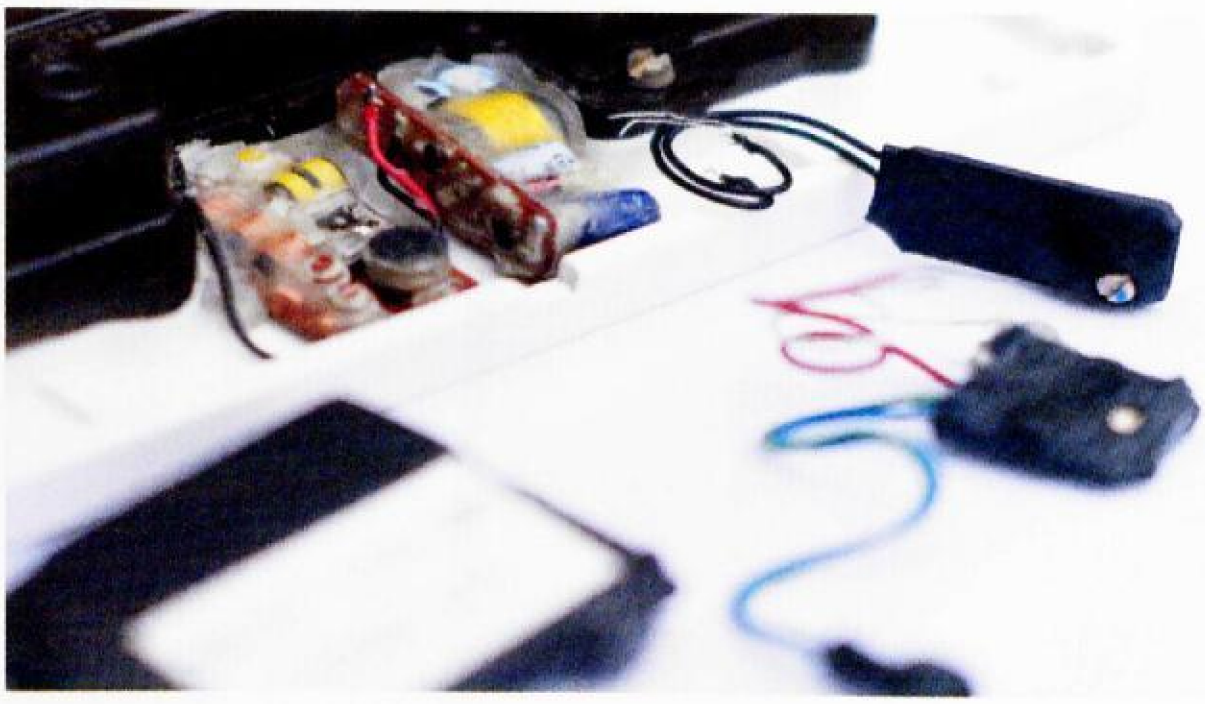
Students will be given a topic to research using various search engines and search terms. A report is to be produced of their findings.



- Research vehicle information
- Trade sites, registrations, DVLA, apps, auction sites
- Research social media information
- Research properties
- Research businesses
- Research people and phone numbers
- Research images and videos
- Obtain website historical data from old websites

UNIT 12: TECHNICAL SURVEILLANCE METHODS

Produce a plan for a vehicle tracking device deployment.



CONCLUSION

There is a big difference in being 'surveillance trained' and having 'attended a training course', so be careful who you part your hard-earned cash with. It will be interesting to see how many companies spring up by this time next year offering the qualification.

ISS are proud to say that they have been at the forefront of this new development.

IQ LEVEL 4 INTERMEDIATE AWARD IN COVERT SURVEILLANCE OPERATIONS (61 HOURS)

IQ LEVEL 4 ADVANCED AWARD IN COVERT SURVEILLANCE OPERATIONS (117 HOURS)

IQ LEVEL 4 CERTIFICATE IN COVERT SURVEILLANCE OPERATIONS (159 HOURS)





Chapter One

COVERT SURVEILLANCE

In this first chapter, we define the types and methods of surveillance, detail the qualities of a good surveillance operator and describe the areas that provide grounding for the chapters to follow. First of all, let us find a generic definition of surveillance:

COVERT SURVEILLANCE DEFINED:

Surveillance is the continuous watching or listening (overtly or covertly) of people, vehicles, places or objects to obtain information concerning the activities and identities of individuals.

CONTINUOUS

If we break this definition down, we say that surveillance is 'continuous' watching. By this we mean that the period of observation(s) has to be unbroken (unless this fact is recorded). An example, if we commence surveillance at 7.30am, follow the target for a number of hours, then at 10.00am we accidentally lose contact in heavy traffic and then half an hour later we manage to relocate again and continue with the surveillance. This in effect has not been a continuous surveillance as the target has been out of your control for a period of time.

WATCHING OR LISTENING

Surveillance can be watching or listening (or both). The majority of our surveillance relies on what we see, therefore your eyesight (aided or unaided) has to be perfect. If we are obtaining information by using our ears, this can be carried out technically using audio listening devices or by being close to the target so that we can overhear conversations and obtain good intelligence.

Getting the 'money shot'

COVERTLY OR OVERTLY

Covert Surveillance:
Covert Surveillance is a secretive watch where the target is not aware of our presence or activities. We are trying to be totally covert, not only should we be hidden from the target but also from anyone else not connected with the surveillance team. This 'anyone else' we call the 'Third Party' and we have to be very 'Third Party' aware whilst carrying out observations. Many surveillances are compromised not because a team member has been seen by the actual target but by other third parties such as local residents and passers-by - more about third party awareness is covered later.

Overt Surveillance:
Closed circuit television cameras (CCTV) found in town centres and car parks could be considered overt because they are easily seen and therefore act as a deterrent, as do uniformed security guards.

PEOPLE

Invariably we are concerned with individuals. There are many reasons why we put people under surveillance, but essentially we need to monitor and record:

- What they do
- Who they meet
- When they do it
- How do they do it
- Why they do it

VEHICLES

Surveillance is often carried out in motor vehicles. This could be to monitor deliveries made by a vehicle or because this is the normal mode of transport used by the target.

Although many people drive today, do not assume that you will be following a target in a car. If a target leaves a house, a number of options are open to them. They can walk, cycle, get picked up, take a taxi or use public transport. Quite often in major cities, targets may take public transport rather than drive.



Often, you only have seconds to get the 'money shot'.

PLACES

Sometimes the surveillance of a place or premises could be the primary source of information and the activities of individuals may be secondary.

This could be a target's house or even a business premises. We have often put surveillance on commercial premises in order to record what deliveries are made and by which company. In this case, we have not been concerned with the actions of individuals.

OBJECTS

We may carry out observations on an object. In a recent case, a mammal trap was kept under surveillance in order to see where it was going to be used, and whether in an illegal manner.

Tracking devices are very useful in this instance.

ISS TRAINING LTD



OBJECTIVES OF A SURVEILLANCE

Surveillance can be carried out in order to:

- **Obtain evidence of a crime or unauthorised activity**

A task may be to obtain evidence of a theft, fraud or other criminal act. That evidence has to be obtained fairly and justifiably, and it's intregrity preserved.

- **Obtain detailed information about the targets activities**

In order to build up 'the big picture', surveillance may have to be carried out in order to identify habits and routines, the places they visit and other people they associate with.

- **Develop leads for investigation**

Surveillance should provide the investigator with other sources or leads that can be followed up to provide further intelligence.

- **To know at all times the whereabouts of an individual**

Surveillance operations may be carried out on a target's premises the night prior to, and the same morning that a search or arrest warrant may be executed. It has happened to some agencies in the past where they have gone along to an address to execute a warrant, only to find no one at home after they have burst through the door.

- **To confirm the reliability of informant information**

At times we are trying to establish the truth and to prove (or disprove) allegations or suspicions. If an allegation is received from an informant, it cannot take it for granted that it is the truth. Therefore, an investigation to establish the truth is needed.



- **Obtain information for later use in an interview**

Enforcement agencies interview suspects or targets in accordance with the Police and Criminal Evidence Act (PACE). A good interviewer should be confident and there is nothing better to boost that confidence than having a surveillance report and photographs or video of the suspect carrying out the 'illicit act'. If there is denial from the suspect or a "not guilty plea", the interviewer will be at a definite advantage.

- **Locate people (by watching their haunts and associates)**

Quite often people provide false addresses if they suspect that they may be under investigation or have a reason to suspect that they may be under surveillance.
Keeping observations on a known place that they frequent, a pub for example, will provide us with a 'starting point' for a surveillance. From this surveillance we may establish where the target is residing. In a similar fashion, if we know that an associate frequently meets with the target, it may be easier to put surveillance on the associate.

- **Secure information for search warrants**

Enforcement Agencies cannot simply apply to a Magistrate for a search warrant. Good evidence needs to be obtained to substantiate the need for such a warrant. Surveillance logs, covert video or photographs can provide the evidence required to obtain a warrant.

- **Obtain evidence for use in Court**

Much of the information obtained by investigators and surveillance operators is for legal purposes and is sought by a solicitor or commercial company. This evidence will often be used in criminal and civil proceedings. Because of this our evidence has to be accurate, truthful and beyond reproach.

- **Identify people**

Often we may carry out a surveillance in order to know what a person looks like, so that further investigations or surveillance can be carried out at a later date.

METHODS OF SURVEILLANCE

Surveillance can be conducted in various ways but the methods are divided into five types. They can be conducted separately but more often different types of surveillance are combined.

Regardless of which surveillance method is used, all rely heavily on teamwork. Surveillance is a team effort and to have effective teamwork you require good communications using radios.

- Foot Surveillance
- Mobile Surveillance
- Static Surveillance
- Public Transport
- Technical Surveillance
- Open Source Intelligence (OSINT)
- Combined Surveillance

ISS TRAINING LTD

FOOT SURVEILLANCE

If we have planned our surveillance correctly, we should have an idea whether our target will be going about their business on foot and so we have to prepare for this. The majority of our information and intelligence may be obtained whilst out on foot. A mobile surveillance by car is only a mode of transport which takes the target from A to B. When they get out of the car at the other end and is on foot is when need to get in close and obtain detailed information.

MOBILE SURVEILLANCE

Mobile surveillance is carried out to follow targets moving by car or other motorised vehicle and this should always be carried out in a team or with at least two operators in separate vehicles.

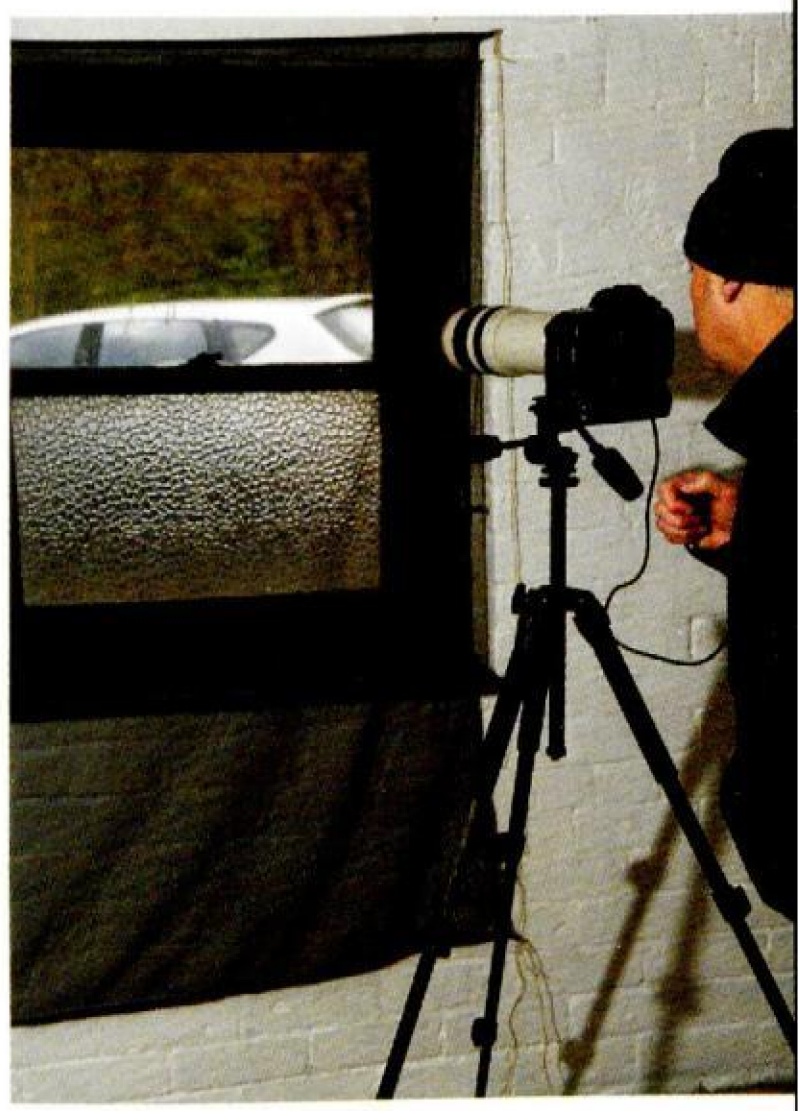
An essential ingredient in mobile surveillance is communication. Communication and radio voice procedure is vital to the success of a mobile surveillance. The mobile operators must be able to observe the target, provide radio commentary, navigate, and record information simultaneously and drive safely at the same time.

The operators must be flexible and be prepared for ever changing situations such as the target leaving their car and proceeding on foot, using public transport or meeting with others.

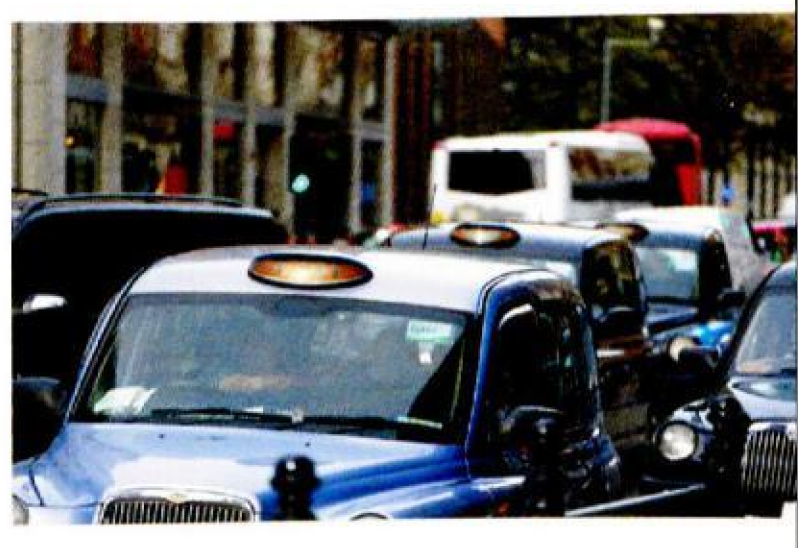
STATIC SURVEILLANCE

Static surveillance is where the surveillance operator(s) are in a static position from where they can keep observations such as: a car, a building, hedgerow, surveillance vehicle, or even whilst on foot. Static Observation Posts (OPs) can be long term or short term and may be divided into a further two groups: Urban and Rural, depending on the local topography.

Static OPs are used when the target comes to your area of observation and you await their arrival with a camera. The Static OP is also used as a 'trigger platform' to inform mobile operators that the target is departing from or arriving at a particular area, such as a home or office.



Static surveillance in a disused garage



PUBLIC TRANSPORT

Surveillance on public transport is often carried out by foot persons who are backed and supported by a mobile team. Targets can travel by:

- Private Hire Cab
- Taxi
- Bus
- Underground Rail
- Overground Rail
- Rickshaws
- Ferry
- Trams & Light Railways
- Aircraft

TECHNICAL SURVEILLANCE

Technical or electronic surveillance is a means of gathering information with the use of technical devices such as:

- Vehicle Trackers
- Covert CCTV
- Covert Video & Photography

Each item will have its limitations, but used purposefully can be a very effective tool in gathering information and providing technical support to the other types of surveillance.

OPEN SOURCE INTELLIGENCE

Open Source Intelligence is a research method used for gathering information prior to any investigation or even whilst a surveillance is underway.

COMBINED SURVEILLANCE

The composition and formation of a surveillance team will be decided at the planning stage. The majority of surveillances are a combination of static (when you initially cover the house), mobile, (when the target drives off), foot (when they proceed on foot) and technical (when you are obtaining imagery or using tracking devices).

So, effectively we are using various types of surveillance and resources in order to make up a combined surveillance team.

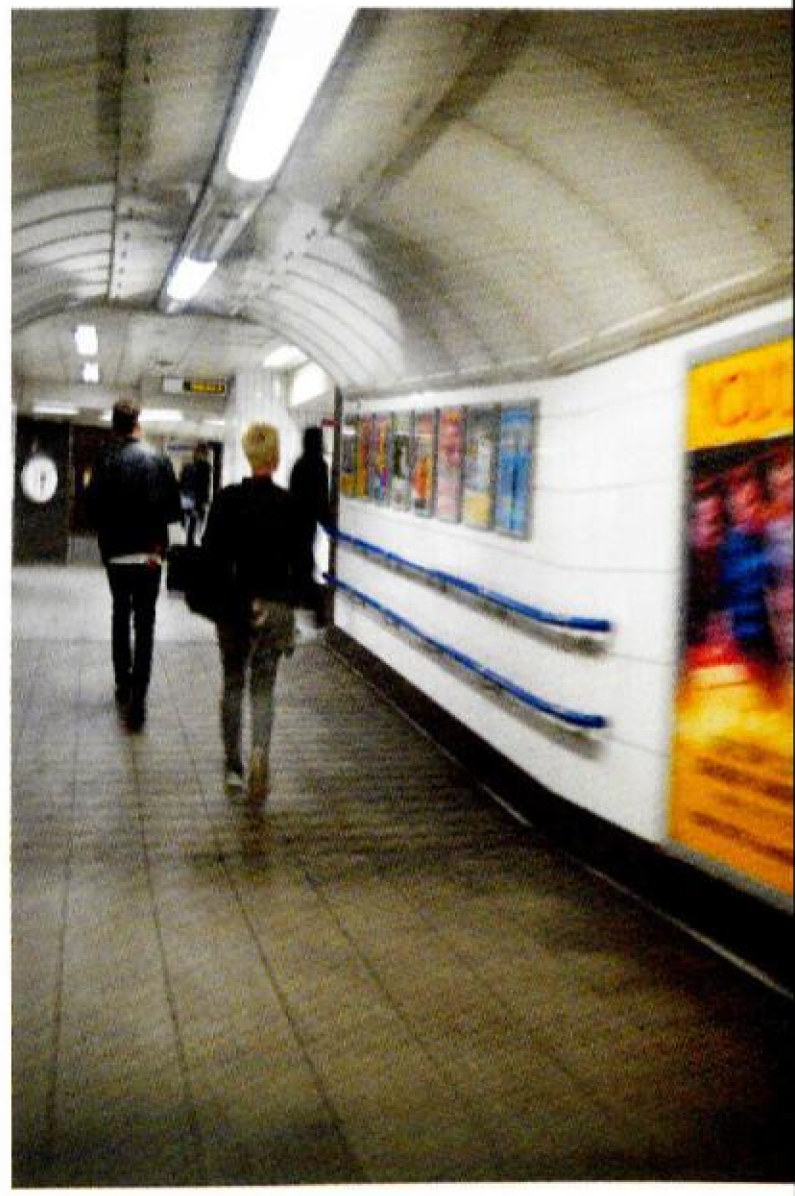
Quick thinking and quick to react.



ISS TRAINING LTD

THE 'IDEAL' SURVEILLANCE OPERATOR

A good standard of surveillance by an individual or team can only be acquired by training, practice and most of all, experience. It is important not to stand out in a crowd and the operator should fit in with their surroundings at all times. Their dress code should suit the area and circumstances in which they are operating and their vehicles should be given the same consideration.



PERSONAL QUALITIES

Not everyone is born as the 'ideal' surveillance operator. The making of a good operator will depend upon that person's aptitude, training, and most of all, experience. The ideal surveillance operator should ideally have the following qualities:

- **Confidence**

Confidence comes with training and experience. A person on a surveillance who lacks in either will be a liability to themselfs and the team. Regardless of what skills we have in life, if we are proficient in what we do we will have confidence in doing it and will operate much more effectively.

- **Be Quick thinking and swift to react**

Targets can be very unpredictable in their movements and actions, therefore we have to adapt immediately to ever changing situations. We also have to react very quickly when using a radio in order to direct the team and let them know of the targets movements and intentions.

- **Multi-tasking**

In the commercial world, surveillance is normally carried out 'one up' in the car. That means that you have to drive safely and anticipate the actions of the target all whilst giving a commentary over the radio. You have to navigate using a map or Satnav, keep an eye out for the third party and obtain video evidence, all at the same time - it takes practise and aptitude to do so many things at once.

- **Patience**

Many people consider surveillance as an exciting occupation. From the operator's point of view many hours are spent doing absolutely nothing, waiting for things to happen and this waiting requires great discipline. When the action starts, you have to put yourself into gear and be where you are supposed to be, doing what you are supposed to be doing. If you are new to surveillance be prepared for spending most of your time waiting for something to happen with little bursts of activity.

- **Capable of acting naturally at all times and move unobtrusively**

What will get you noticed in surveillance more than anything else is unnatural behaviour - especially whilst on foot. You should be seen but not noticed. On surveillance courses we often see students standing in doorways whilst trying to keep observations on the doorway across the other side of the street. After 30 seconds or so, an inexperienced operator starts to get itchy feet and shuffles about, craning their neck, peeping and generally moving about acting unnaturally. When all they had to do was stand still and do absolutely nothing.



- **Able to fit and merge into a variety of backgrounds**

The way you dress and act (including the type of vehicle you use) must suit the area in which you are operating. Carrying out a surveillance wearing a suit and driving a new vehicle will soon show out in a rough housing estate. Conversely, wearing scruffy jeans and T shirt and driving a wreck of a car would soon be noticed in a more up-market setting.

- **Good eyesight and hearing**

The majority of our evidence comes from what we actually see, therefore our eyesight has to be good. At times we may be very close to the target so we can overhear conversations so our hearing has to be very good too.

- **Good memory**

Combined with good eyesight and hearing, we must be able to remember facts and sequences of events. We may not always be in a position to write down events as they happen or commit them to recorder and so memory recall and the information we remember has to be accurate.

- **Good talker and actor**

For a number of reasons, we have to converse with the public. It may be to satisfy the curiosity of someone (third party) who has seen you park in a particular place. It may be to quiz a member of the public for information during your enquiries. You may even have to speak to the target to obtain information, although this is not often done. However, they may approach you if their suspicions are aroused and so you need to be able to act and talk your way out of a situation with confidence.

- **Physically fit and healthy**

We do not necessarily have to be at peak fitness but at least reasonably fit so as not to be out of breath on a long foot surveillance. If you are taking part in an OP you also need to be reasonably healthy, fit in body, fit in mind.

- **Teamwork and initiative**

Surveillance is all about teamwork and communication. The longer you work together with the same team the better you will perform, which will reflect in your results. However, as an individual, you must draw on your knowledge, skill and experience to act on your own initiative in order to make a contribution.

- **Confident and proficient drivering with good navigational skills**

Surveillance operators within the police and military must pass an advanced driving course prior to carrying out any mobile surveillance. In the commercial world, your driving skills have to be good in order to operate safely and effectively. After all, you would not expect a person who has just passed a driving test to be able to operate effectively as part of a mobile team.

Within some Enforcement Agencies, mobile surveillance is often carried out with two operators per car. One operator will drive and control the vehicle whilst the other operates the radio and deploys on foot when required. In this way the responsibilities are shared between the crew. Within military surveillance organisations and especially on the private surveillance circuit, surveillance is often carried out single-handedly or 'one up'.

ISS TRAINING LTD

- **Astute to the local situation**

A mobile surveillance can move at a fast pace and cover a large geographical area. When entering an unfamiliar area, take stock of the situation and consider any 'third party'. You may have entered a rough inner city housing estate where crime could be rife with drugs being dealt and high unemployment. Many people may be on the look-out for anything or anyone that does not fit in or looks suspicious. If you do not notice this quickly or feel the undertone and mood, you will soon find yourself being chased out of the neighbourhood or, at worse, attacked.

- **Proficient in the use of all equipment such as cameras and radios**

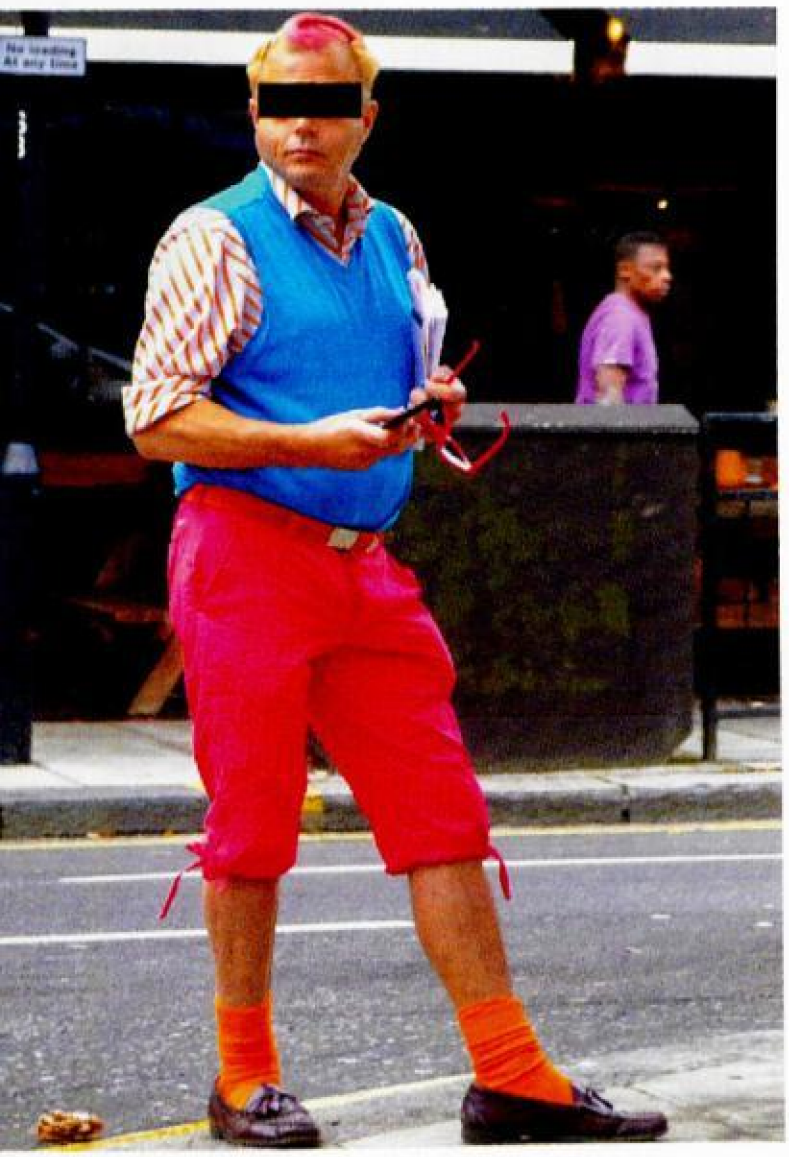
This is an important factor and a surveillance operator has to be an expert in all the equipment that they use.

Being able to follow a target and take them to a destination is only a means to an end; in most cases, it is what actually happens at the destination that provides the evidence and the results - what is called 'The Money Shot'. If you missed that vital piece of evidence because you were unfamiliar with your camera or you did not know how to change batteries at the critical time, the job may have been a complete waste of time. Do not let your team or your client down by providing poor excuses because you were unable to operate your equipment properly.

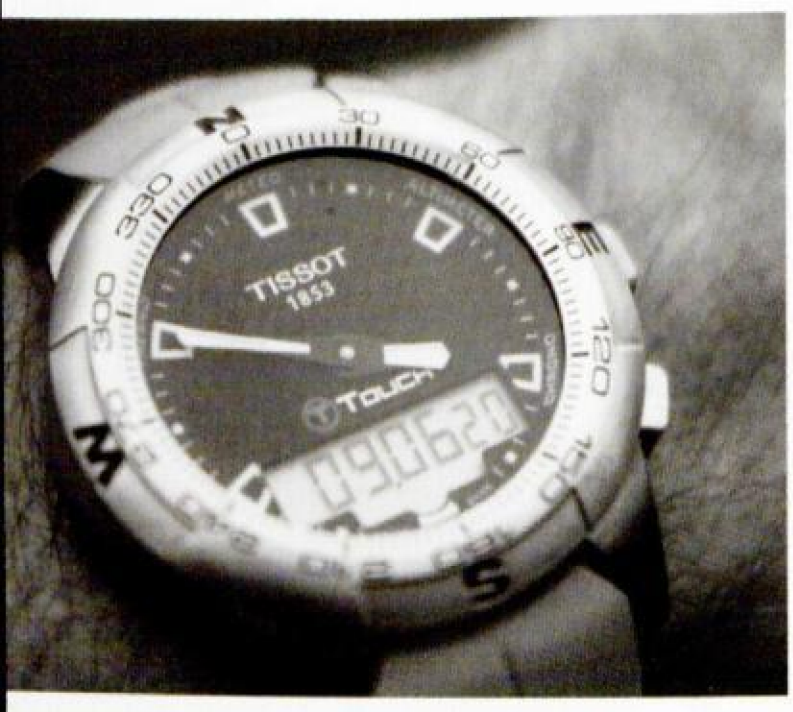
- **A 'sixth sense'**

After training, the most important quality a surveillance operator can possess is experience. An experienced operator will get a 'feel' for the job and the way it is progressing. They will be able to predict possible outcomes, purely because they have 'been there' and seen it before. What we try not do in surveillance is assume what the target will do. An inexperienced operator will regularly guess and assume what may happen. This is dangerous, if you expect a target to do one thing, they will probably do something totally different. Always expect the unexpected!





Keep below the 'Baseline'.



TOP TIP:

Military watches can draw attention to yourself, therefore it is best to dispense with these.

PERSONAL APPEARANCE AND DRESS SENSE

Your target should not be able to remember you, recognise you at a later stage or be able to describe you to another person.

The way that we appear, and dress is very important, especially when operating on foot. The area in which you are working should govern your dress sense. The team should all be dressed differently, if we were all to wear a black fleece, black T shirt, blue jeans and brown boots we may as well carry out the surveillance on our own or at worst wear a uniform.

We have this saying in surveillance that, 'you will be seen often but being noticed is very different'. In all respects, you should observe the other people in your surroundings and try to stay below what is referred to as 'The Baseline'. The way that you behave or appear should never go above the baseline, as you will then become noticed which leads to compromise.

One reason for being spotted is by multiple sightings. You need to minimise being noticed as much as possible and this begins with the way we dress.

- **Contrasting Colours**

Try to avoid clothing with contrasting or bright colours. A dark top over a white shirt or stripes that run down your jacket sleeves can be very noticeable. If you need to wear a suit, consider wearing a darker shirt rather than a white one.

Contrast does not just relate to black & white, the same considerations have to be given to red and white or green and yellow. If you are working at night, consider wearing darker clothing and avoid white trainers.

- **Distinct Clothing**

You should be seen but not noticed, therefore you have to be the grey person that does not stand out in the crowd. Many people who work in the surveillance sector are former military or police. By nature they are practical outdoor people and tend to wear very similar styled clothing, which in essence could be considered a uniform and should be avoided if you dress in this fashion.

Ensure that you also dress for the weather. The last thing you want to do is leave your car to carry out a foot surveillance on a wet and windy day when you have forgotten to take a jacket or coat with you. You will be the only one in the street getting wet and consequently stand out in the crowd.

In a similar manner, you should dress for the occasion at special events. There are many women who carry out surveillance but not significally very many compared to the men. Having a woman on the team can be very advantageous but do not lose the initiative by the way you dress. We see many females on surveillance courses who dress just like the male operators (blue jeans, trainers and a dark fleece) rather than use their wardrobe to make them look different from the rest of the team.

DRESS ACCORDING TO YOUR VEHICLE

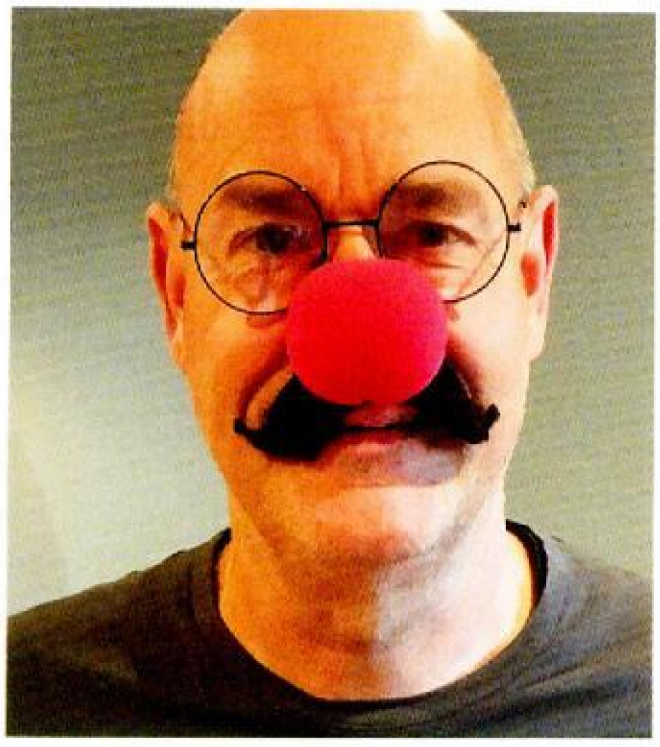
Ensure that the way that you dress suits your vehicle. If you are driving a top of the range car, you do not really want to be dressed scruffily, conversely, you may look out of place wearing a suit whilst driving a wreck of a car.

ISS TRAINING LTD

DISGUISES?

It may be wise to carry a change of clothing with you, such as a lightweight or reversible jacket or a hat. A plastic carrier bag in your pocket can be used to put your jacket in, thus changing your overall appearance. If you have long hair, you could wear it down and then tie it back with a bobble or tuck it under a baseball cap.

A change of outline is recommended by removing a hat or scarf. Putting on or taking off a jacket, plain glass spectacles, or even putting your hands in your pockets to change your overall appearance can help. Do not use disguises, especially wigs, because even the best can look obvious. An alert target will notice a change of appearance and again, this will only help to confirm any suspicions. Do not wear sunglasses unless everyone else near you is also wearing them.



Disguises dont work!

TEAMWORK

Any experienced person trained in surveillance, will tell you that to carry out a surveillance single-handedly is not only difficult but inadvisable. Not only do you run the risk of losing contact with the target in traffic but also, and more importantly, you run the high risk of compromise and possible confrontation. As a rule we do not carry out single handed surveillance. If we did, we wouldn't be doing our clients any favours. We would not be acting professionally and feel that we would be deceiving the client into handing over their money when the odds are against us achieving a successful outcome.

Teamwork is essential in surveillance and in order to have effective teamwork you require effective communication. The team have to be fully conversant with radio voice procedure and radio discipline. You have to trust the other members of the surveillance team and act on your own initiative without being told where to go and what to do.

A team leader has enough to think about and should not have to continually direct the surveillance. If the target stops, the team should carry out a set drill in order to control them. The team leader should not have to constantly direct individuals with particular tasks.

In the early stages of training, all three members of a foot surveillance team tend to get 'eyes on' to the target all at once. This is expected, as they are keen and it is only natural that they all want to be in control of the target and have a piece of the action. Remember, only one person has to see the target at any one time, the 'Eyeball', who is giving a radio commentary and painting a picture of events for the benefit of the others who are out of sight.

These 'rogues' on Westminster bridge are conning tourists with the game 'Find the Lady'.

The 'stooges' who are part of the scam are easily identified by their uniformity in fake brand-new trainers as they flit from one game to another along the bridge. Their 'lookouts' are also dressed the same.



TYPES OF TARGET WHO COME UNDER SURVEILLANCE

Many people can be the target of a surveillance for many different reasons and can come from all walks of life. Listed below are the various categories of awareness levels that the target may fall into. When obtaining a brief from a client, it is very important to know whether the target has been put under surveillance in the past, so do not forget to ask at the briefing stage. If they have, you should be told of the outcome, especially if there was a compromise as you will then have to be on your guard and adapt your tactics accordingly.

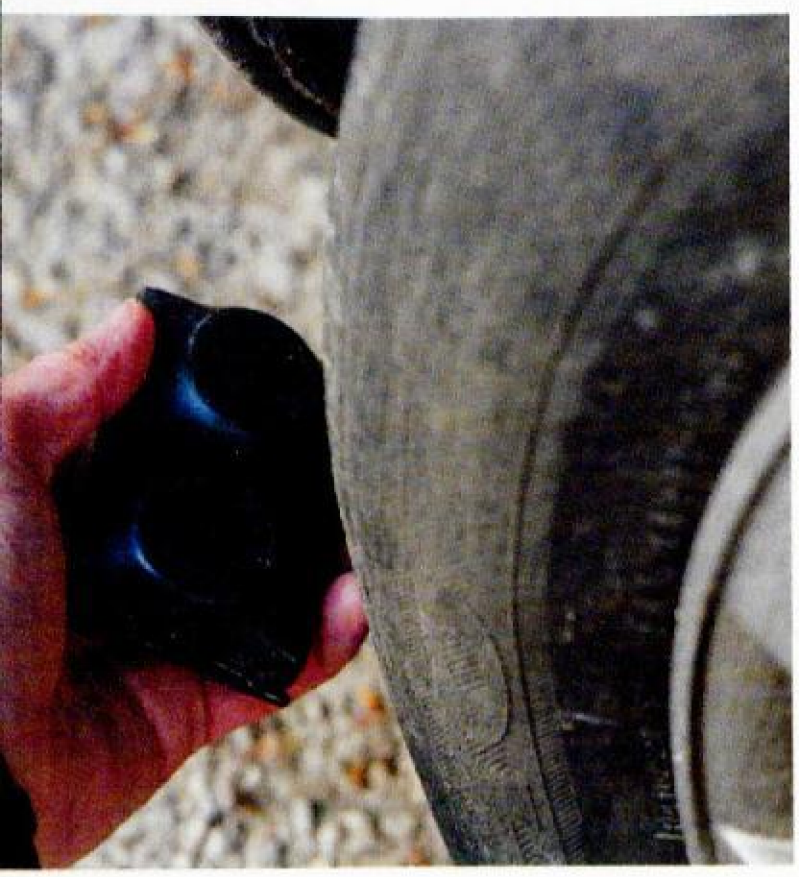
- **Unaware**

This target does not consider or think about being watched or followed and can be very complacent about their activities and is easily caught out. This does not mean that they are guiltless. We have put people under surveillance in the past who were carrying out serious criminal acts, but because they had been carrying out these activities for so long without being caught out they became complacent.

- **Aware**

The aware target disciplines and trains themselves to look for 'watchers' and 'followers' and he may carry out anti-surveillance tactics as a matter of course every time they appear in the open. They will certainly do it prior to an activity. This type of target is usually from the criminal element that has knowledge of surveillance procedures or is a subject who expects to be followed or has been followed in the past.

They can be tricky to put under surveillance but a larger team and more covert tactics will enable you to control them.



Tracking devices are a 'life saver' for controlling aware targets.

- **Semi-Aware**

The target categorised as being semi-aware would expect to be followed or watched as they have a reason for doing so. For example, someone with a large insurance claim for injury may be on the lookout as they are aware that false claims are being investigated. This target will be alerted by noticing things that are out of the ordinary and unusual without having to look too hard. You must not spook them or they will become very aware.

They may adopt some overt anti-surveillance tactics to identify whether they are being followed but they may not really know what to look out for. Their anti-surveillance drills are soon noticed by an experienced team.

The target is more likely to be aware at various times or places.

- When they leaving home or their base
- Just prior to committing a crime or act
- After committing a crime or act
- When they return to their home or base
- When they have been 'spooked'

Be alert and aware at these times and proceed with caution. These awareness levels are described more fully in the chapter on anti-surveillance.

ISS TRAINING LTD

- **A 'Lost' Target**

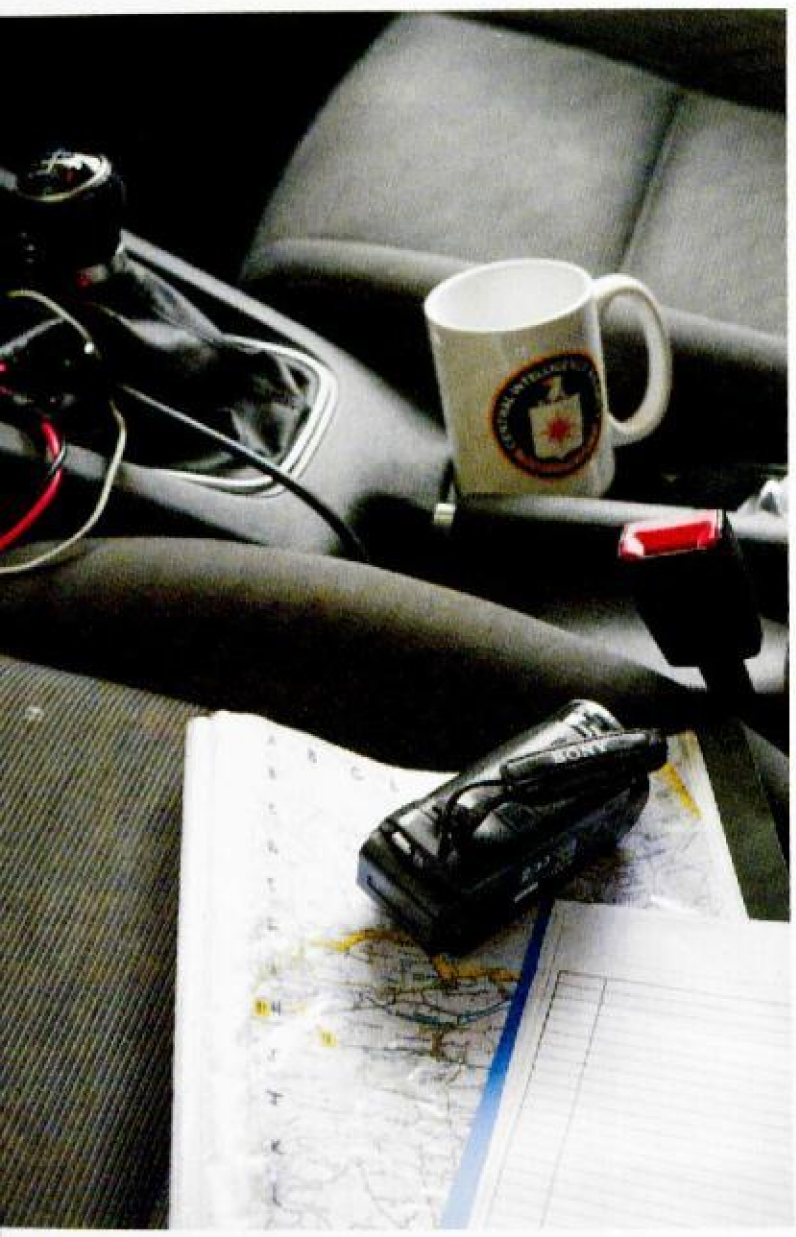
Losing contact with the target is inevitable from time to time even when working with large teams. Losses occur for many reasons, for example, traffic congestion, busy roundabouts, traffic lights and lack of concentration. When this occurs the surveillance team must adopt a search pattern. It assists greatly if the operators draw on knowledge and background of the target in an effort to reaquire and continue the surveillance. The type of target who expects to be followed will undoubtedly attempt to lose the tail. Never let over-enthusiasm in pursuit of the target result in 'showing out' and compromising the surveillance.

If you find yourself following a lost driver, they may carry out manoeuvres that you could consider to be 'anti-surveillance'. This includes; changing speed, suddenly stopping, making 'U' turns or going around a roundabout a few times. These are classic anti-surveillance manoeuvres but are also the signs of a lost driver. So you should decide at an early stage, is the target lost or are they trying to catch you out.

Losses happen, they are a fact of life and an occupational hazard in surveillance.

Housing a target can often be the sole aim of the surveillance.





Make sure equipment is covered or put away. Extra electrical points can be a big giveaway.

THIRD PARTY AWARENESS

Most surveillance work is considered 'covert'. More importantly, we need to remain unobtrusive from the general public and anyone else who is not connected with the surveillance. We call them the 'Third Party' and we have to be third party 'aware' at all times. It is the third party who causes at least 80% of all compromises and if not careful, the surveillance can be blown well before the target has appeared out in the open.

These compromises are not unique to Neighbourhood Watch type areas. Whether we are working on the roughest estates, the remotest rural areas or the sleepiest suburbs, we have to be astute.

You may be quite a distance from the target's house or premises (possibly acting as back-up to the trigger) but you still have to take precautions when deciding where to 'plot up'. During a mobile or foot surveillance act accordingly, never run or drive erratically and try not to be the focus of attention.

WHEN STATIC

Your vehicle has to fit in with the area in which you are working in order not to attract unwanted attention.

If you are not using a surveillance van or an OP to 'trigger' the surveillance it may be that you have to remain sitting in your vehicle. In this event you have to be far away enough from the target for them not to notice you but close enough for you to identify them. There are a number of precautions that we can take to minimise the attention we draw to ourselves. Some of them are common sense but they are easily forgotten.

- Do not carry out multiple 'drive pasts' of the target's address. If you have to take another look at the property get out of the car and walk, or ask another team member to do it.

- Turn your engine off when parked. Don't forget your lights, square off your wheels and take your foot off the foot brake. You do not want to appear as if you are on a mission! Park pretty, a vehicle parked 'unnaturally' will stand out and if you are the only vehicle in the street, you will not last long. Remember to take your seat belt off and lock your doors.

- Park the vehicle where houses or offices do not overlook you. Use hedges, walls and other vehicles as cover. If working on industrial estates be aware of CCTV cameras that may be present.

- Consider sitting in the passenger seat, any passer-by or local would naturally presume that you are waiting for the driver to return. Maybe sit in the rear seat with a jacket on a hanger over a window to provide some temporary cover, especially when taking photographs if there are people about.

- Always have your 'working tools' close to hand so that they can be used at short notice. Your camera, phone, wallet, binoculars, Dictaphone, notebook and pen should always be within easy reach but remember not to have them in view so that passing third parties can see them.

- In warm weather, when windows are open, keep your radio volume turned down, as passers-by may hear transmissions.

ISS TRAINING LTD

After sitting in the same place for a while, you might feel that you have to move your position or bring in a replacement because you've been there too long. If so, your replacement should not position themselves in the same spot. This could only confirm the locals' suspicions and possibly compromise another vehicle. If you are attracting some third party attention, make the team aware so that they don't sit in the same place.

You may be part of a surveillance team and not even be the person that has 'eyes on' whilst waiting for the 'Standby'. The position where you park up and how you act is equally important: take a good look around you and try to see yourself from the 'third party' perspective.

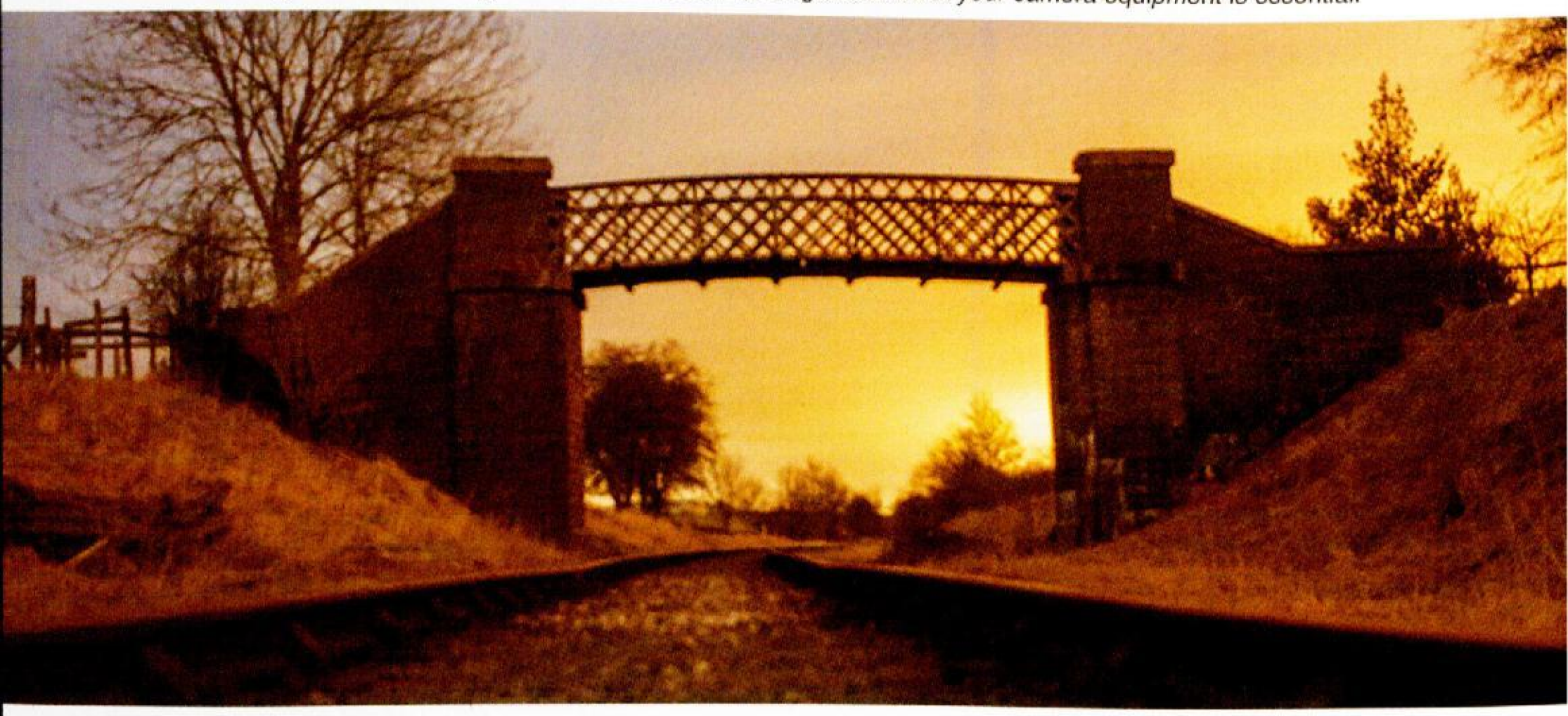
Be prepared to be approached and have a cover story ready. Remember that in everything we do we must always act naturally, adopt an identity and have a reason for being there. Cover stories are many and may be left to the imagination but ensure that your reason for being there is realistic and probable.

Have the right attitude with enquirers, being off hand with people will only irritate them and attract further attention. Be confident and try not to act 'shifty'. Whatever you do, do not pretend to be the Police, not only is it illegal, it will attract more attention than you wished for.

Whenever you come to a halt;

- Check 360 degrees about you,
- Identify an escape route,
- Keep your doors locked.

This image was taken at night in total darkness, Knowing the limits of your camera equipment is essential.



THE REST OF THE STREET

Remember that your target may not be the only person in the street who has a reason to be under surveillance. I am sure that in an average street there is at least one fraudulent social security claim, a personal injury insurance claim, a drug dealer, a criminal, a matrimonial affair, someone that was recently burgled and the local 'paranoid' expecting men from Mars. All of whom have reason to be on their guard. Just because you are watching one property, it does not mean that all the other properties are considered safe. Be careful.

DURING MOBILE SURVEILLANCE

Whilst taking part in a mobile surveillance we have to drive in a manner that will not attract attention. Aggressive, high speed driving is not only dangerous but you will be noticed and reported. If you are in a situation where you are directly behind the target and held at a junction, act naturally and avoid eye contact in their mirrors. Don't slowly creep up behind the target vehicle hoping that they won't not notice you, they will. You are a member of the public on a public road and have every right to be there, so act normally.

WHEN STOPPING

If your target comes to a halt, do not stop directly behind without any cover and definitely do not screech to a halt. You may need to get your camera up and running so have a quick look about you before you start filming including above you. Most passers-by wont even notice you or even care, but it only takes one person to see that you are up to something. Consider jumping into the back seat for cover.

DEPLOYING ON FOOT

If you have to get out on foot, don't ever run (unless you're crossing a road). Anyone seen running in a public place attracts attention, people are naturally curious and they will want to know why. Again, act naturally and give yourself a reason for being there.

As you concentrate on the target's front door, do not forget about everyone else in the street and vicinity.



ISS TRAINING LTD

WHAT GETS A SURVEILLANCE OPERATOR NOTICED?

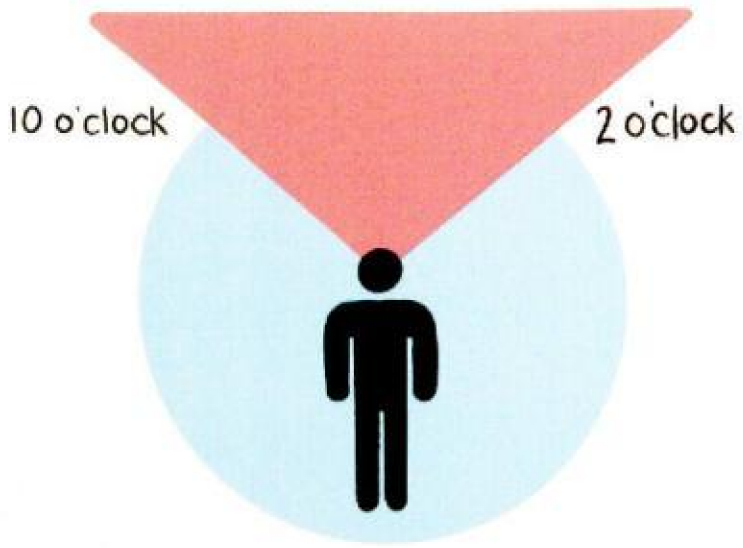
There are three main reasons why you could be compromised and you constantly have to be aware of:

- Multiple Sightings
- Unusual Behaviour
- Cross Contamination

Many people carrying out surveillance related investigations fail to appreciate this. Compromises occur because the operator goes in too close and too hard at the wrong times, so when they really need to go in hard and close they are already burned.

- **Multiple Sightings**

As previously mentioned, you should be seen but not noticed and be the ultimate 'grey' person. After the target has seen you on several separate occasions he will remember you, especially if you give him a reason to by the way you dress or act. Therefore, if you are working as a team, each member should have their share of taking the 'Eyeball', thus sharing the amount of exposure. Always ensure that you are behind or to the side of the target (out of his 10 to 2 o'clock arc of vision), and never in front and avoid eye contact at all costs. If you stay out of the 10-2, you should never be seen or noticed.



- **Unusual Behaviour**

The way that we act and carry ourselves is very important and if not checked will soon get us noticed. During the early stage of surveillance training courses we find that the hardest thing for a student to do whilst on foot is to stand still and do absolutely nothing. The target may have entered a shop and so the team are plotted up waiting for him to emerge. We see them hiding behind shop doorways 'peeping' out, suspiciously leaning against lamp posts, pretending to look in a shop window which has not been used for years or standing against a park bench rather than sitting on it and pretending to be on the phone.

Their actions are unnatural and therefore come to the attention of others. Admittedly, it is not easy trying to act naturally whilst having a hidden agenda (the surveillance) and this only comes with practice and experience - you have to learn to relax.

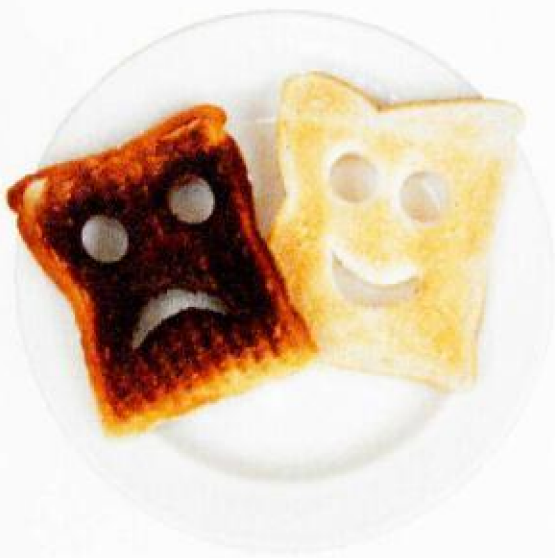
Be aware of fiddling underneath your jacket when adjusting your radio, a passer-by may notice the radio set. Also, try to avoid constantly touching your earpiece, because it is unnatural and an aware target will pick up on it.

- **Cross Contamination**

If a target suspects you of being a surveillance operator, they will most likely keep an eye on you. Therefore, although acting in a team, we should never make physical contact with any other team mates, even using hand signals. This will only 'cross contaminate' the other operator and the target will now be aware of two people following him. Cross contamination is discussed fully in the chapter on foot surveillance.



Ten - Five - Zero



Dont get burned for the sake of it

LOSS VERSUS GAIN (EXPOSURE LEVELS)

During any covert operation there is always a risk of 'showing out' and being compromised but experience and training will help to minimise this. You will either show out personally, your vehicle will be noticed or it will be your actions that draw the targets or a third parties attention. As an operator you will only have so many 'lives' and having too much exposure will lose them one by one.

Every time you go out on a surveillance give yourself 10 'lives' (or heat states as they are often referred to). Now whenever you have any exposure to the target knock off a life or two. For instance, if the target goes into a hotel and you decide to go close in order to overhear what is being said at the reception, you may want to knock off one or two lives, because you have had some exposure to the target. You may now be down to a score of 9 or 8. These 'exposure levels' as we call them have to be monitored and considered wisely and are explained in more detail in the chapter on Evidence.

As we have already discussed, it is imperative that you are aware of the targets surveillance awareness level before embarking on a job. Consider what your aims and objectives are, as these will dictate how you operate on the ground and prevent you from taking unnecessary risks. For example, if we are on foot surveillance in a city centre, investigating a target who is suspected of selling counterfeit tobacco, we do not want to go in too hard and too close when it is not necessary.

The target may go into a clothes shop, mobile phone shop and a chemist. When they do stop, although you have to keep control over them by covering the shop door - you have to decide whether it will be of an advantage to go in too. Unless you are going to achieve anything, I would recommend that you stay out. If they were to visit a tobacconists, then (remembering the aims and objectives) I would most certainly get an operator in close if it was of evidential value. What you have to decide is: *What am I going to 'gain' against what am I going to 'lose'?*

By going in close you may gain some good intelligence but in doing so, you will lose a number of lives. Guard your exposure levels if you have had a 'close encounter' with the target. If it is necessary that you get close again, let the team know that you are 'warm' and so a different operator can go instead, remember, it is all about team-work.

PRINCIPLES OF SURVEILLANCE

Principle Stages or Phases

The surveillance operation can be broken down into the following four stages which is a continuous cycle of events or phases.

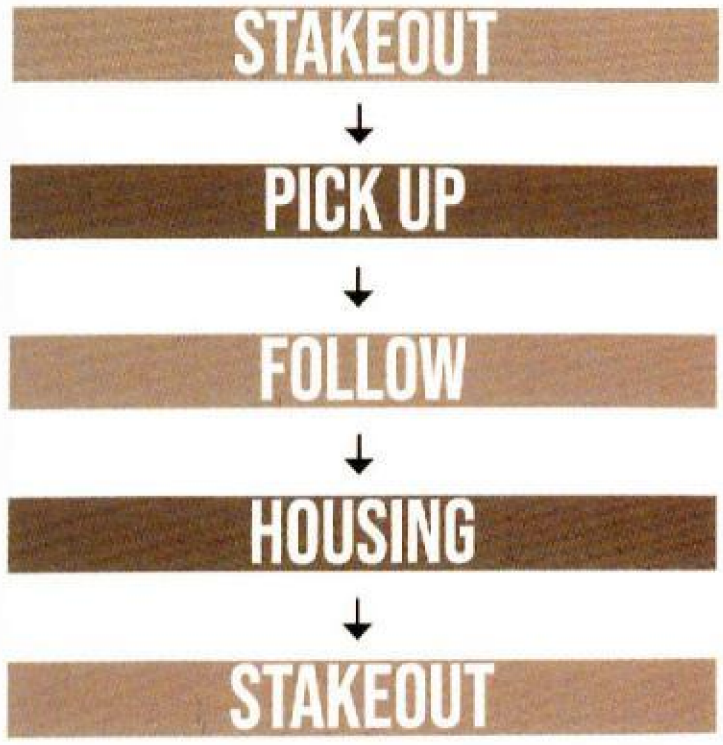
For example, we deploy on a surveillance, arrive at the target location and plot up in the area (the Stakeout). It might be that one person can get in close and get eyes on the house (the Trigger). The target comes out of their house and gets into their car (the Pick Up). They then drive for two minutes (the Follow) and stops at a newsagent shop and enters (the Housing). The cycle then starts again, we obtain a trigger on the newsagent's door, the target comes out and gets into their car (the Pick Up) and drives away (the Follow), after a short while they arrive at their place of work (the Housing). So you see this sequence of phases can happen many, many times during the day. Let us now look at each phase in more detail.

ISS TRAINING LTD

THE STAKEOUT

What this means is that the team plot up in the area and box the target in so that they cannot move through the box without it being noticed. There are various types of stakeout and these are described in more detail later. More often than not, one person will be able to see the target or their premises and will be able to give warning of possible activity, we call this 'The trigger'. Sometimes no one will be able to see the target and so the exits to the target street or particular roads have to be covered until the target is seen to move.

The start of the surveillance can be the most difficult and critical part. The whole operation can go wrong at the outset if the target cannot be 'triggered' and "Standby" called. It is the task of the trigger person to keep the target house or premises under observation in order to alert the remainder of the team when the target departs.



THE PICK UP

As soon as the target appears, the trigger should alert the team of possible movement. The call 'Possible Standby Standby' should be given over the radio net. This alerts the team and puts them on standby for activity. Initially call a 'possible' standby until the target is actually committed to move. Otherwise, if a target comes out of the house, retrieves something from their car and then re-enters the house, you do not want the team to react. If this is the case, come up on the radio net with the call 'Cancel Standby', which all call signs should then acknowledge.

When you are positive of movement, you can then confirm, 'Standby Standby' and give a description and a direction of travel.

THE FOLLOW

The Follow is the term used when the target is on the move. They are considered 'mobile' if they are in a vehicle and 'foxtrot' if they are on foot, this is very important. At this stage you know where the target is and they should be under control at all times so the team can be deployed to the best advantage.

During this phase we do not always follow like ducks in a line, surveillance is 'imposed' upon the target and there is a vast difference, especially when on foot. The various techniques and methods used during the follow are discussed in the respective chapters.



THE HOUSING

Housing the target after a follow can often be a tricky part of any surveillance and could be the most important. The housing could be a very short stop or could be a long wait. Therefore the team have to act with a sense of urgency, re-trigger the target as soon as possible and re-plot at the location straight away. If you happen to get the trigger on a stop, come up on the radio net straight away and tell everyone. Once a trigger is established only then can the team settle down and relax a little knowing the target is under control.

Identifying the address or premises that the target enters could provide that final, vital piece of information you have been waiting for throughout your surveillance. You might have observed the target for many days but they now suddenly arrive and park their vehicle in an unknown street. It is imperative that an operator is close enough to identify the property that they enter so this means deploying an operator on foot as quickly as possible. Whilst doing so the team have to hold their positions in the event they goes mobile again.

In addition, one of the team should now be 'Googling' the address to research for any information about the premises or address.

FOLLOW THE QR CODE TO TAKE YOU TO THE QUESTION & ANSWER 'HELP' PAGES.

CHAPTER ONE QUESTIONS

1) Explain different types of surveillance teams.

2) Explain different methods of surveillance.

3) Explain how a surveillance operator should dress and appear.

4) Explain what clothing should be avoided.

5) Describe the personal qualities of a surveillance operative.

6) Evaluate three ways in which a surveillance operator can become noticed which may lead to compromise.

7) How would you explain the principles of 'Loss -v- Gain'?

8) How would you describe being 'above the baseline'?

ASSESSMENT TIME!

1) Explain different types of surveillance teams.

2) Explain different methods of surveillance.

3) Explain how a surveillance operator should dress and appear.

4) Explain what clothing should be avoided.

5) Describe the personal qualities of a surveillance operative.

6) Evaluate three ways in which a surveillance operator can become noticed which may lead to compromise.

ISS TRAINING LTD

7) How would you explain the principles of 'Loss -v- Gain'?

8) How would you interpret being 'above the baseline'?



Chapter Two

PLANNING & PREPARATION

It is essential that detailed planning and preparation is carried out prior to any surveillance taking place. It would be inadvisable to just turn up at the target address on the morning of surveillance and hope that it goes well, because it probably won't.

IS SURVEILLANCE THE SOLUTION?

When obtaining your brief, decide whether surveillance would provide the answer to your clients' problem. There are many reasons why a surveillance should be carried out but could the answers to your investigation be found out by other means?

Open source research, pretext telephone calls, visits to neighbours, or even speaking to the target of inquiry on a pretext can often lead to the results that you require. In addition, covert video cameras or trackers may provide you with information that you can act upon, without having to resort to lengthy and costly surveillance.



WHAT ARE YOUR OBJECTIVES?

Look at the whole picture. You may have to break the investigation down into phases or objectives so that each one can be achieved realistically, do not expect to achieve the result that you want all at once.

For example, you may be tasked to investigate possible copyright infringement of your clients' product, you may be asked to establish:

- Where the target premises are?
- Who is involved?
- How many staff?
- How are they manufacturing the product?
- What materials are used to make the product?
- Who is supplying the materials?
- What is the level of sales and distribution?
- How are they marketing the product?

Each objective could be tackled individually or put into groups or phases of the investigation. With forethought and planning at the start, you should be able to achieve your aims in a logical order and very often you may find that achieving one aim, will provide information that leads you to another.

The Surveillance Option

If surveillance is the option that you decid to take, you will need as much information as possible from the client about the target of enquiry and the circumstances in order to formulate a plan.

Having decided on your aims and objectives, you should then work in a methodical manner to arrive at a viable plan. Whether the task is a simple short single handed affair, or a complex team task requiring the use of static and mobile operators, all require some form of detailed planning. Essentially there are two main areas that you need to look at prior to going out on the ground: the **Target** and the **Start Point** - often a home address or place of work.

The more information you can gather about the target from the client briefing, the better prepared you'll be.



ISS TRAINING LTD

THE TARGET

Attempt to obtain as much information about the target as possible, this can be provided by the client or by your own enquiries. Ensure that you get as much as possible from the client; with a bit of thought you may be able to gain more information from them - they have a habit of forgetting important facts as they do not always understand our methodology.

Points to consider are:

- **Target name, nickname or aliases**

Ensure that you know what the target is known by. Your target may be called Paul but all his life he may have been known by his middle name or nickname. If you have to make pretext enquiries and you have his name wrong, you might arouse suspicion.

- **Target address and associated addresses**

Ensure that the address that the client provides is correct; you do not want to be watching the wrong property.

- **Telephone numbers**

It is always handy to have the target's telephone number. If you arrive at the address for the surveillance and there has been no movement after four or five hours, or the curtains have not opened, you would be thinking, 'Is anyone at home?' A realistic pretext call to the house could tell if there is anyone about.

- **Description**

A full up to date description of the target should be obtained. Chapter nine details with how a description is given, so use this as your checklist.

- **Is a photograph or video available of the target?**

If you can get a photograph or video then use it. Ensure the photograph is up to date and there have been no changes - hair styles, facial hair and so on.

- **Mode of transport**

Not everyone drives a vehicle, therefore you need to know the target's mode of transport as you will have to prepare for travelling by the same means. They could use public transport, get a lift, walk, or ride a motorbike.

If they use a vehicle you need to know the vehicle, make, model, shape, colour, registration and any other identifying features.

WHATSAPP

This trick does not always work but you may be able to obtain an image of your target from their mobile phone number in 5 easy steps:

1. Add the targets number into your contacts list and call it 'Target'.

2. Open Whattsapp and go through the motions of sending a new message.

3. Search the apps addresss book for Target

4. Their name and personalised icon will appear in the top bar.

5. Click the image, they may have used a picture of themselves.









- **Family details or other occupants of the household**

The Electors Register should identify all the adults in the household, although it is accepted that the records are not always accurate. It would help to know how many male adults live in the house (if your target is male), because you do not want to follow the first one who leaves as it may be the wrong person.

In addition, if there are children living at the house, you can expect them to leave for school on their own or be taken on the 'school run'. This is a time when the team need to be on the alert for possible movement.

- **Employment**

The details of the target's work or trade are required. The type of job, their workplace or area, their position, the shifts and hours they work including overtime. If they are unemployed, the day, time and place they sign on for unemployment benefits may be of use, especially if you have to pick them up there.

- **Habits or routines**

Be aware of any habits or routines that the target may have.

For example, a target would leave their house and religiously stop at a nearby newsagent in the morning to buy a paper and cigarettes, or take a dog for a walk. This would help if the target is aware and you have to consider picking them up elsewhere.

- **Awareness level**

Ensure that you establish whether the target has been under surveillance before and what their awareness is likely to be. It would also be very useful to know whether they could be potentially violent in the event of compromise.

ISS TRAINING LTD

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

There are various sources of information that can assist us at the planning stage:

- **The Client's Brief**

Obtain as much information from the client as possible. Beware of clients who are over zealous with information, it can often be misleading or inaccurate. You should decide what is important and what is not, obtain a full description of the personor vehicle.

- **A pretext visit to the target's address to identify them**
- **Telephone Directories**

There are many online directories available which contain information such as www.192.com. They are very useful and it lists phone numbers, electors information and neighbours.

- **On-Line Computer Searches**

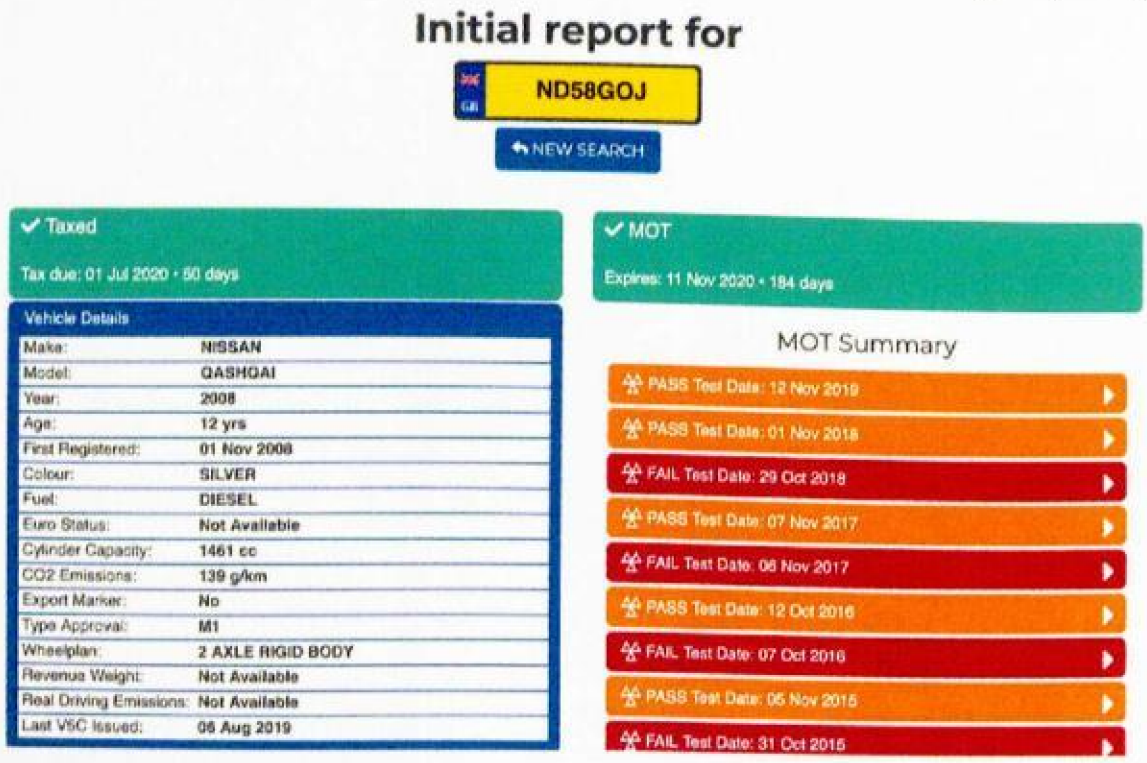
Organisations such as Companies House, Equifax & Experian are extremely useful together with social media sites such as Facebook, Instagram and Twitter.

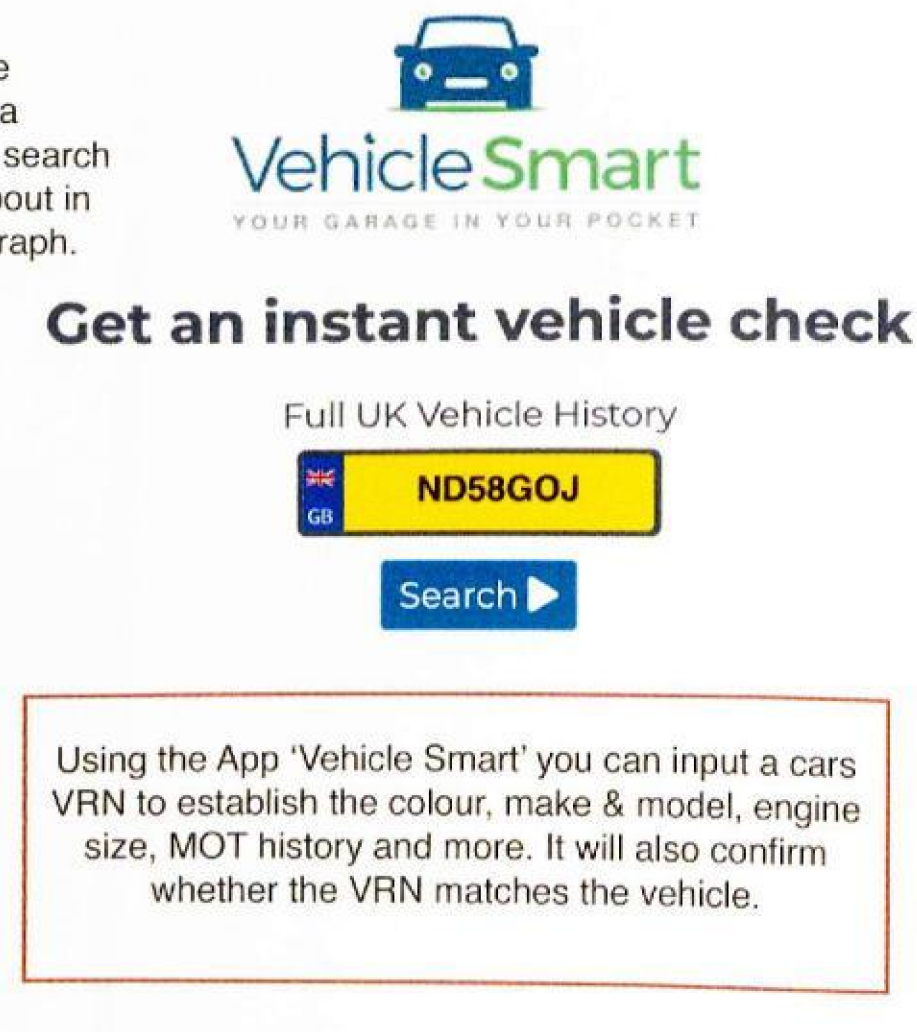
GOOGLE IT!

For all other information, 'Google' it or drop it into a search engine, you'll be surprised at what shows up. Google everything but be wary of just putting in a name on its own or you will have thousands of useless hits. Try to link it with something, for example, rather than just Google 'peter jenkins', input "peter jenkins" in speech marks to link it together followed by a third search term such as a place or something you know about them.

- **Local Press**

The local press can often help you with information, especially if you have a particular date or point of reference. Many local newspapers also have a website so take a look at these in the event that they also have their own search engine. If you search for your target's name and they has been written about in the paper, it should come up with the story, and if you are lucky, a photograph.





Using the App 'Vehicle Smart' you can input a cars VRN to establish the colour, make & model, engine size, MOT history and more. It will also confirm whether the VRN matches the vehicle.

THE SURVEILLANCE START POINT

Prior to any surveillance being carried out a reconnaissance visit should be made to the target location. This visit is made to enable you to plan and organise the task. This could be residential, business premises or an area in which the target is going to be or is likely to visit.

You will carry out a pre-surveillance (or Recce) in order to help you decide:

- Any possible hazards
- Likely trigger points
- Any special equipment
- The size of the team
- Composition of the team and which type of vehicles to use
- Equipment you may need such as cameras and radios
- Dress code to suit the areas and target
- Time spent on the surveillance, which affects the budget
- Length of time to spend on the ground

There are certain things that we can do before actually going out on the ground. By looking at a map, we can establish what type of area we will be operating in such as urban town or rural village. If we use 'Google Earth' or 'Bing Maps' not only do you obtain street maps but also very detailed aerial photographs and even photographs at street level of the roads and buildings.

Once we have arrived in the area, there are certain things that we should look out for and a sample of a recce report is found below on page 74 detailing the factors that should be known or considered.



THE RECCE (DRIVE PAST AND WALK PAST)

Your recce will possibly be conducted by an initial drive past in order to establish the exact address and to obtain any valuable information, this may be conducted with a covert video camera filming the area.

Do not just do a drive past for the sake of it, think, 'what am I going to achieve?' You should be obtaining information such as:

- Gates, paths, driveways, doorways and cut through access routes
- Vehicles (make, model, registration, colour)
- Parked vehicles (which way do they intend to go)
- Signs of life: windows open, curtains closed or open
- Street lighting, security lighting or cameras
- Cooking smells, lights on, steam from windows

After a drive past, you may wish to carry out a walk past in order to observe from a closer point of view and in a much slower time. Do not carry out a walk past as soon as you have driven past, stay away from the area for a short period of time. Depending on how aware the target is, you might only be able to drive or walkpast once before you present yourself as multiple sightings.

On a walk past approach from the other side of the street and cross over in front of the target to give you maximum observation time. Ensure that you have a cover story ready if approached and ensure that your dress and demeanour fit in with the area and walk a natural route.

Covert Walk Past

RECCE AND PRE-SURVEILLANCE REPORT

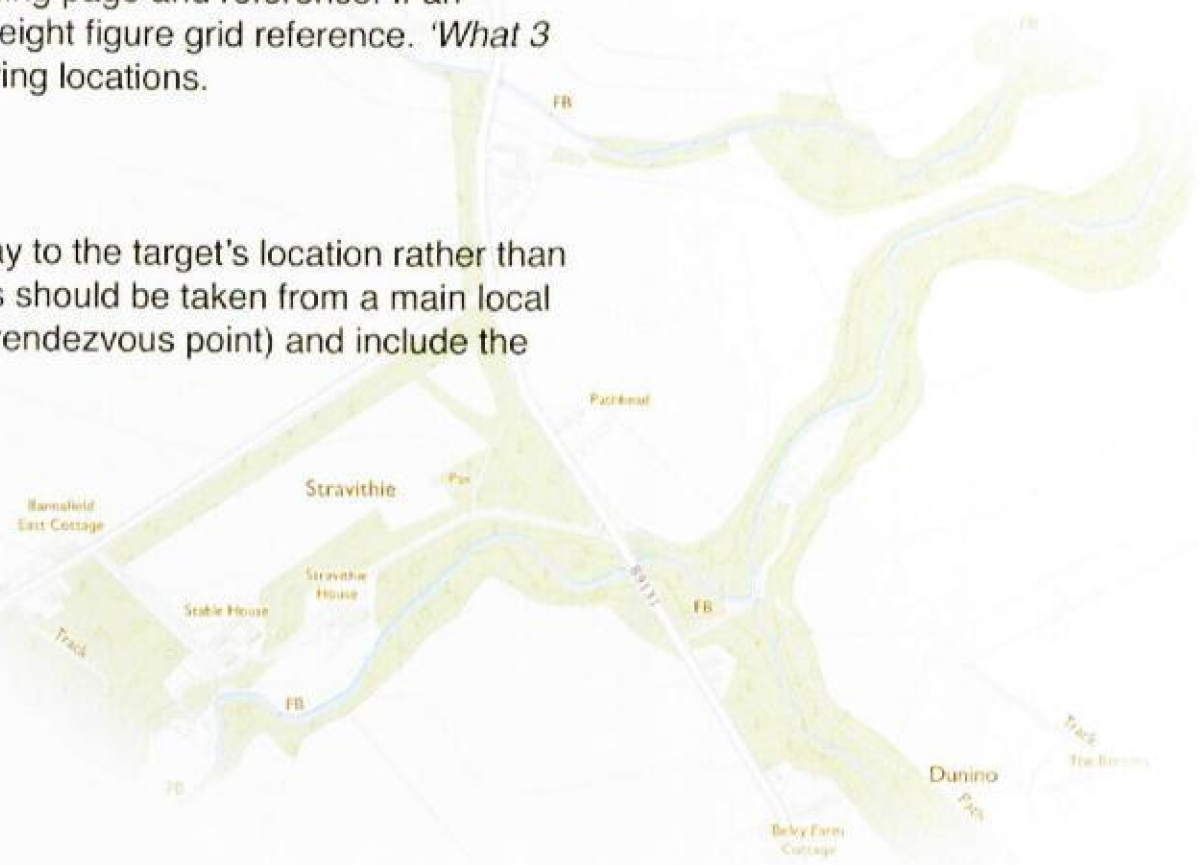
This should comprise of a report together with a sketch map or diagram of the area.

A-Z Map

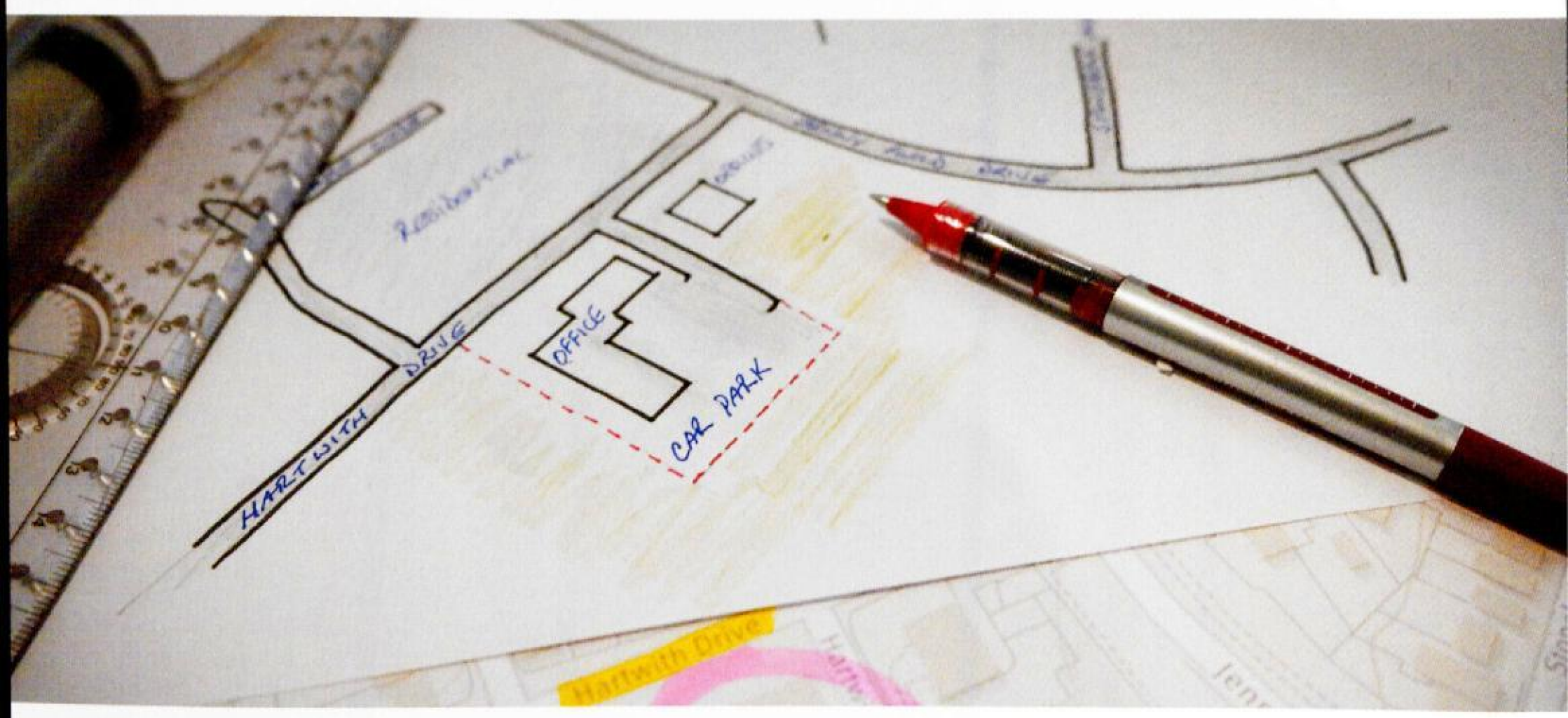
Provide details of the A-Z map book including page and reference. If an ordnance survey map is used, provide an eight figure grid reference. *'What 3 Words'* is also an accurate way for identifying locations.

Approach and Route

Operators may have to make their own way to the target's location rather than be led there by the team leader. Directions should be taken from a main local landmark to the target or to a central RV (rendezvous point) and include the distance.



With advances in digital and online mapping, hand drawn sketches are not always necessary but up to date and current detail is important.



Rendezvous (RV)

The team should not meet up in the target's street for obvious reasons. An area within a short distance should be selected where you can RV on the morning prior to the job starting such as in a car park or lay-by. Ensure that the RV is safe so that the team don't look suspicious by meeting at this location early in the morning.

This RV or another may be selected as an emergency rendezvous (ERV), in the event of the team having to split up and meet at a later time after a loss or a compromise.

Area in General

Ensure the address is correct and provide a description of it, especially if it is difficult to locate. If there isn't a number on the door double check. Carry out a recce 360 degrees surrounding the target premises - do not consider the front of the premises alone, there may be hidden access to the rear.

Draw a sketch plan of the immediate area indicating all routes in and out by vehicle or on foot and consider how many observation (trigger) positions are available and their locations.

Target Address

Provide a detailed description of the address; Point out any identifying features that can easily be recognised from a distance such as prominent satellite dishes, window frames or painted porches.

Escape Routes

All possible routes that the target can take must be identified. Do not just carry out your recce from your car, get out and have a look around. You must identify all mobile (road) routes and any foxtrot (footpath) routes that they can possibly take. Do not forget to look 360 degrees surrounding the target address and check for exits at the rear as these may also have to be covered.

Vehicles

List the details of any vehicles sighted at the time of the recce. You may have to pay a visit early morning or late evening to establish further vehicles. Note how they are parked as this will not only tell you which direction they may go in, but also tell you from which direction they have arrived.

Trigger Locations

Every surveillance needs a trigger. Therefore, you need to decide how you are going to get an 'eyeball' on the house and how you will trigger the surveillance. Consider all the options - these are discussed later in this chapter - but keep it simple, there is no need to have a complex plan in order to get a trigger.

Position for Back Up & Support

Locations could be identified where the mobile units could 'lie up' in a safe area (Lie Up Position or LUP) whilst waiting for a 'standby'. This is often personal preference and left to individual operators once they are on the ground. The position has to be within radio range and should not attract attention from 'third parties'.

ISS TRAINING LTD

Sightings

Sometimes you will see the target and other persons during the recce. Make a note with descriptions and timings.

Miscellaneous

Note anything else of interest that could be of value to the team. Including any particular hazards that may present themselves such as: parking restrictions, schools, traffic conditions, security patrols and neighbourhood watch.

Always take a camera with you to obtain photographs of the area and if the target shows, you may be able to get an ID picture.

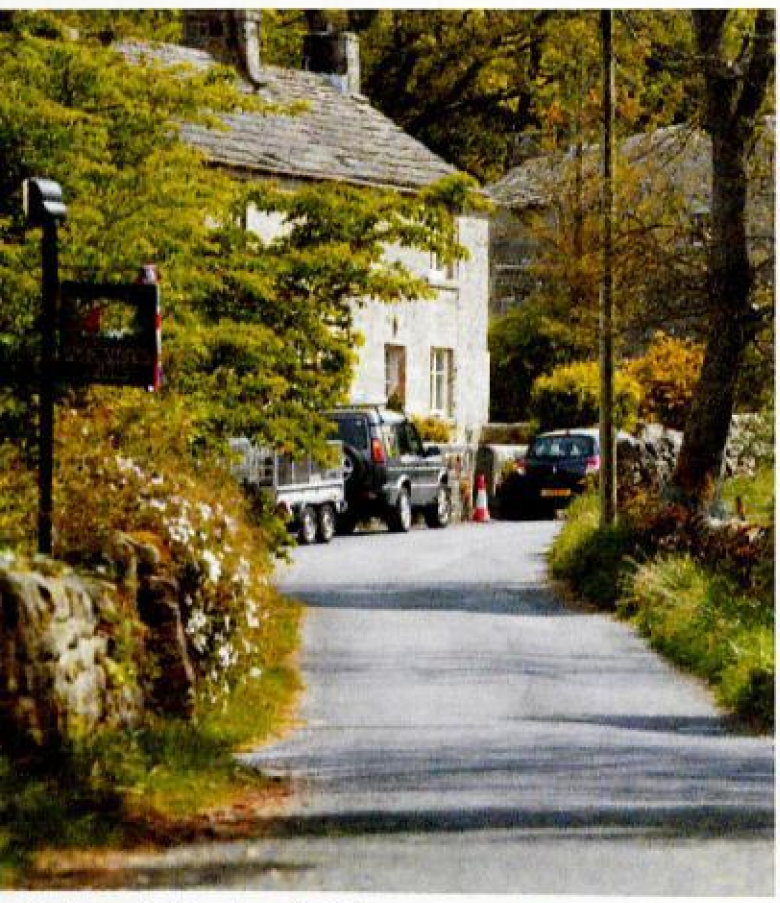
The Plan

On completion of the recce, you will have to formulate a plan of action in order to carry out the task, within the bounds or restrictions placed on you by the client. Points to consider are:

- The size of the surveillance team as this will affect costs
- Gender composition of the team, male or females or both
- Team vehicles, such as cars, a van or a motorbike
- Communications and radios
- Specialist equipment such as night vision optics
- How you will record your findings and evidence (surveillance logs, memo recorders)
- Calculate the man-hours into actual costs to provide an estimate of costs including mileage, accommodation and incidentals

Students 'desk top' planning before conducting recces.





A description is vital from the start, this 'long look' ensures that.

SURVEILLANCE TRIGGERS

How we actually trigger a target away needs to be kept as simple as possible. If you can do it from your car without arousing suspicion, then you do not to have to deploy someone to hide in a ditch. Always consider the easiest and most practical way first.

During the stakeout, the 'trigger man' plays the most important role in the team, he has to be alert at all times and have total concentration on the target premises. He has to be covert and should not be in a position that is obvious. An aware target is more likely to be alert at the pick-up phase and anything unusual will be noticed, remember this will be their territory and will know it better than you do.

Once in position, the trigger should be asking: What is my reason for being here? Do I look natural and how long can I get away with being here?
At the first sign of possible movement by the target, the trigger person puts the team on 'Standby'. They should provide the team with a radio commentary of the targets actions, such as getting into a vehicle. They should also state the targets intended route, the direction being taken and a description of the target.

This is probably the most crucial part of the surveillance, especially if you have no knowledge of the target or his intended movements. A target is likely to know short cuts and back street routes in the local vicinity to their house and may well take them to avoid heavy traffic. Therefore, the target is more at risk of being 'lost' in the first few minutes of the surveillance than at any other time.

There are various ways of triggering a target:

- Car
- Van
- Covert Car
- Foot Person
- Static O.P
- Tracker
- Informant
- Audio Transmissions
- Video Transmissions

CAR

The simplest way to trigger is from your car although you run the risk of being noticed quite easily. Consider sitting in the passenger seat or the rear of the car. Ensure you are parked properly and in a place that does not draw attention.

VAN

Most surveillance teams on the commercial circuit use surveillance vans that can be parked up in a street with someone in the rear. They can then remain for long periods of time in a close position to the target.

COVERT CAR

A car parked up on a street does not attract any attention, especially if it blends in with the area. A covert method we use to trigger away aware targets who may be suspicious of vans is by means of a 'Boot Fit'. By this we mean that an operator is concealed in the boot (trunk) of the car and is able to observe a particular area. The person is likely to have to remain there, in uncomfortable conditions, for many hours.

ISS TRAINING LTD

FOOT PERSON

A trigger may have to be obtained by a foot person, either at the start of a planned operation or they may have to quickly deploy from their car if the target stops. Foot triggers are more likely to be short term and you have to have a reason for being where you are, such as a bus stop, a phone booth, a seating area, cafe etc.

STATIC OP

The various types of static OP's are described in some detail later on but they can be located in a building, hedgerow, caravan or any other static point from where the target's premises can be covertly observed.

TRACKERS

Technical devices such as car trackers are ideal triggers when you have a target who is extremely aware or located in rural areas that are difficult to observe. In this day and age, trackers are probably the most effective way of triggering aware targets.

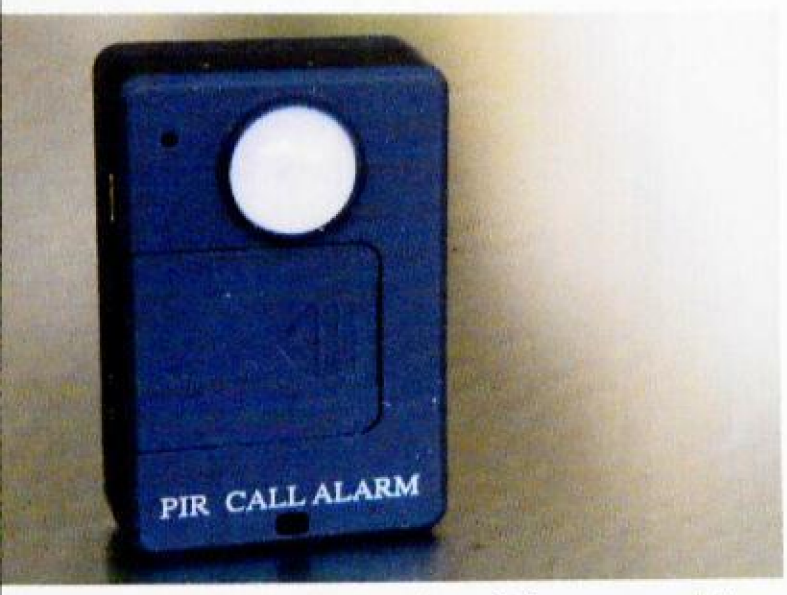
This provides you with the opportunity to keep your distance, especially if the target is looking for watchers when they first go mobile. Trackers are very accurate and can send a signal to your mobile phone when the target moves.

INFORMANT

If the team can be informed of an imminent move by someone close to the target, this could greatly assist their effectiveness at the pick-up stage. The informant is someone who is known to the surveillance team.

A short video about Triggers





A cheap audio device that dials your mobile phone when it detects activity.

AUDIO TRANSMISSIONS

A simple audio transmitter or radio microphone can be covertly placed in the target area such as a garden hedgerow in order for you to listen to what is happening, such as doors opening and closing and vehicle engines starting. Audio triggers have been useful when triggering away targets who live in flats or apartment blocks where there is a risk of missing them coming out.

VIDEO TRANSMISSIONS

A video camera located in a hedgerow or concealed in a car and directed towards the target can transmit video pictures over the mobile phone network. When you see any activity, the team can be put on standby. The camera will be able to tell you in what direction the target is travelling and possibly what he is wearing and other relevant details.

TRIGGER POSITIONS

Now let's spend some time discussing the various trigger options that are available to us. Every mobile or foot surveillance will need an operator to trigger the surveillance and call the 'standby' in order to put the team into action.

Only one person needs to trigger the target away so the remainder of the team have to rely on this person to call a standby. They have to trust them to be alert, not to fall asleep or be distracted.

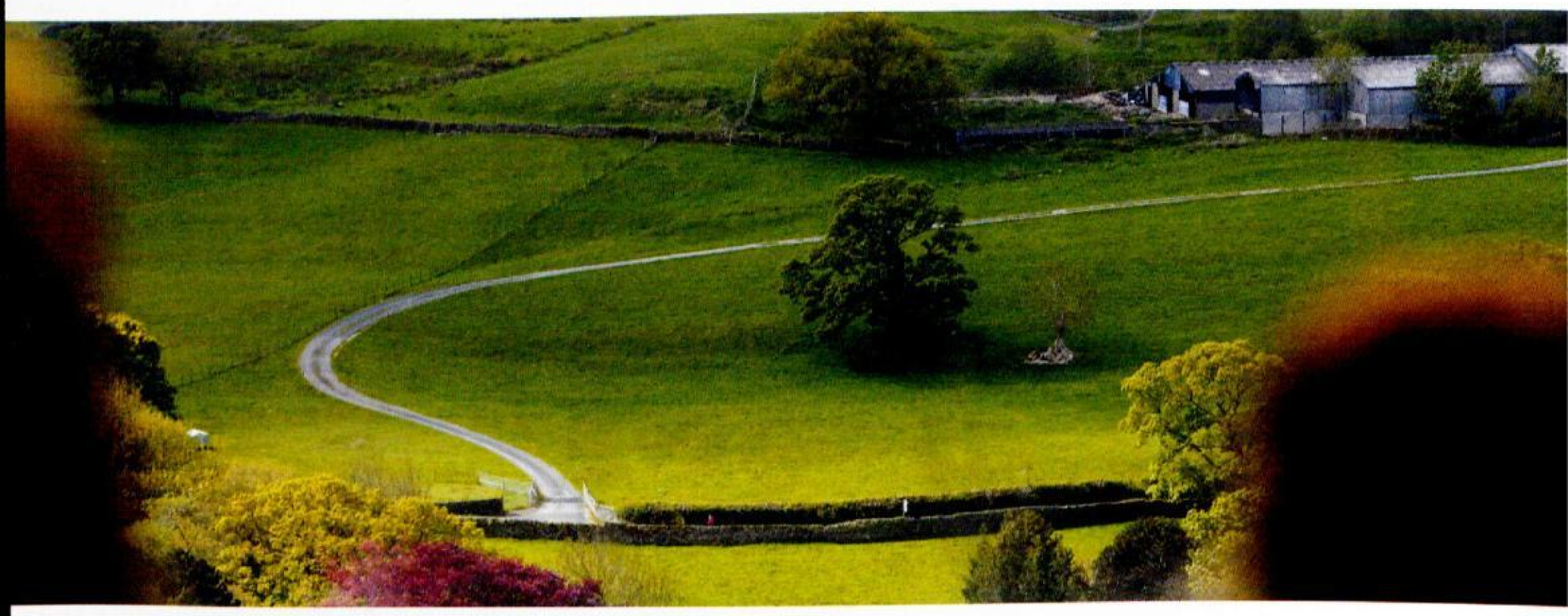
Regardless of which type of trigger you choose you must consider the following from your position:

- **Can you see the Target?**

From your position you must have a clear and unobstructed view of the target, be it the front door of the house, the gate, vehicle or a road junction. Be aware if the view is likely to become obstructed by passing or parked vehicles or pedestrians.

You need to be close enough to identify the target but far away enough for them not to see you.

In rural areas you cannot trigger close up to the target and so the exits and approaches are the only option.



- **Can you observe the approaches?**

The approaches to the target should also be able to be observed. This will help when waiting for a target to arrive and give you that extra time you may need to have your camera up and running. When the target departs you will need to inform the team of their direction of travel. Additionally, you may need to observe if any third party approaches your location.

- **Are you overlooked?**

Be aware of people above you in buildings or offices. If they are constantly looking down on you, you do not want to attract any attention. Be aware of CCTV cameras, especially on industrial estates.

- **Can the target see you?**

In surveillance we say: 'If you can see the target, the target can see you'. You do not want to make your trigger position obvious or attract attention. The trigger's position should not be right outside the target's front door but out of their '10 to 2' arc of vision. This area may be the target's home, their domain and therefore will probably notice anything that is unusual or out of place.

- **Can you move in and out safely?**

You will need to move in and out of this position without attracting attention or curiosity. Remember, for everything that we do in surveillance we have to act naturally and have a reason for being there.

TRIGGERS FOR A MOBILE SURVEILLANCE

Together with the street plan, we can look at the various trigger positions open to us. The scenario we would expect is for the target to leave the house by the front door, depart on foot or get into their vehicle and go mobile.

TRIGGER POSITIONS

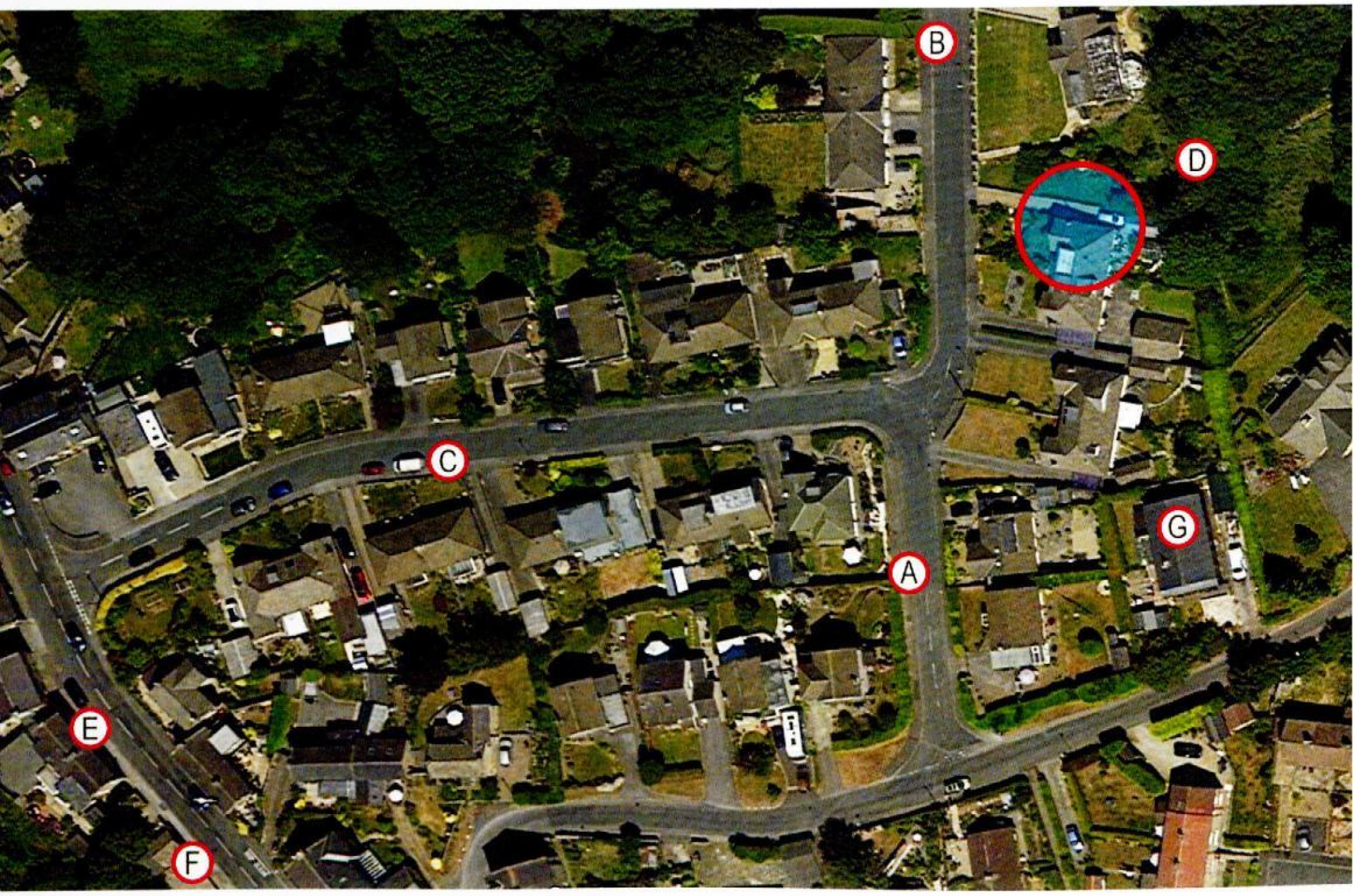


From a car in this position you can see the target house, driveway and call a direction at the first 'T' junction. we are behind the target and so he does not have to pass you when he goes mobile. You can see the front of the house, the car and also the next junction so that you can call a change in direction.

You could position yourself to look directly towards the target or use your mirrors.

Caution on plot:

- To an extent you are in the 10-2. When the target goes mobile they will be towards you and will get a 'free look'.
- Ensure you are not overlooked.
- Do not park right outside someone's window.
- Do not appear as if you are on a mission (turn off lights, engine, square wheels and remove your seatbelt).
- Sit in the passenger seat.
- Have a reason for being there.
- Have a cover story ready.
- Prepare for the target driving past you.





FOLLOW THE QR CODE TO TAKE YOU TO THE STREET.

ISS TRAINING LTD

A2 This could also be an ideal place to insert a surveillance van. Ensure you are driven in and extracted, do not drive in yourself then jump in the back of the van. Think third party.

B This is further into the dead end. This is the sort of position when it is necessary to get close using the 'Boot Fit' covert car.

C Still using the car or van, you do not necessarily have to be in the same street. From this 'long look' position you may be able to cover the house, the first 'T' and also the second 'T' junction where it meets the main road to call a direction.

D A rural OP could be used if the insertion & extraction is safe and covered. Once the trigger is in position, they have to consider what to do after the target goes mobile.

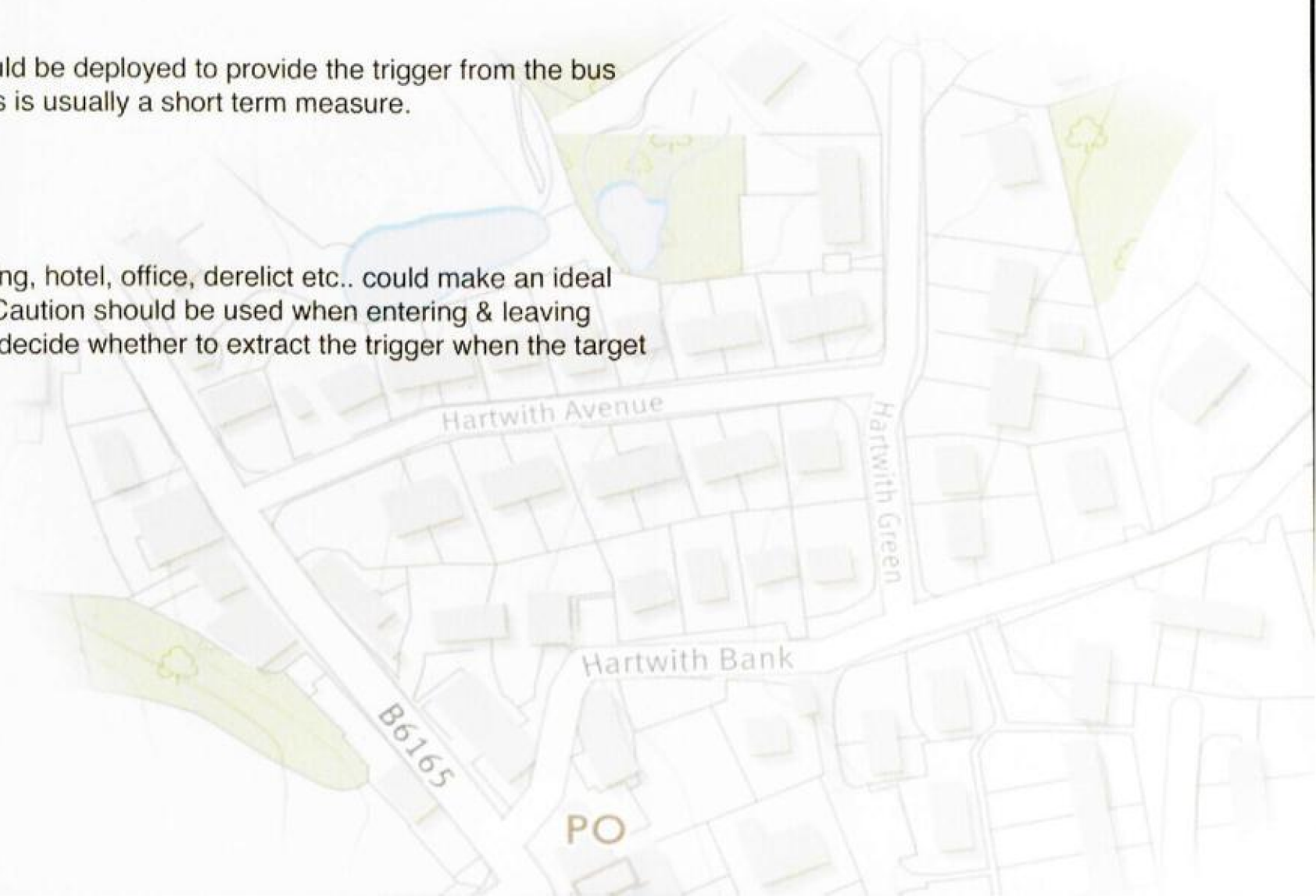
Does he:

- Stay where they are until the end of the day, because they may have to trigger the target in and out numerous times during the day.
- Should they self-extract, return to their vehicle and attempt to re-join the team.
- Should they be extracted by another team member and go with their vehicle.

E A car parked on the main road covering the second 'T'. This can call a direction but gives short notice to the team of any movement.

F A foot person could be deployed to provide the trigger from the bus stop although this is usually a short term measure.

G An OP in a building, hotel, office, derelict etc.. could make an ideal trigger location. Caution should be used when entering & leaving and you have to decide whether to extract the trigger when the target goes mobile.



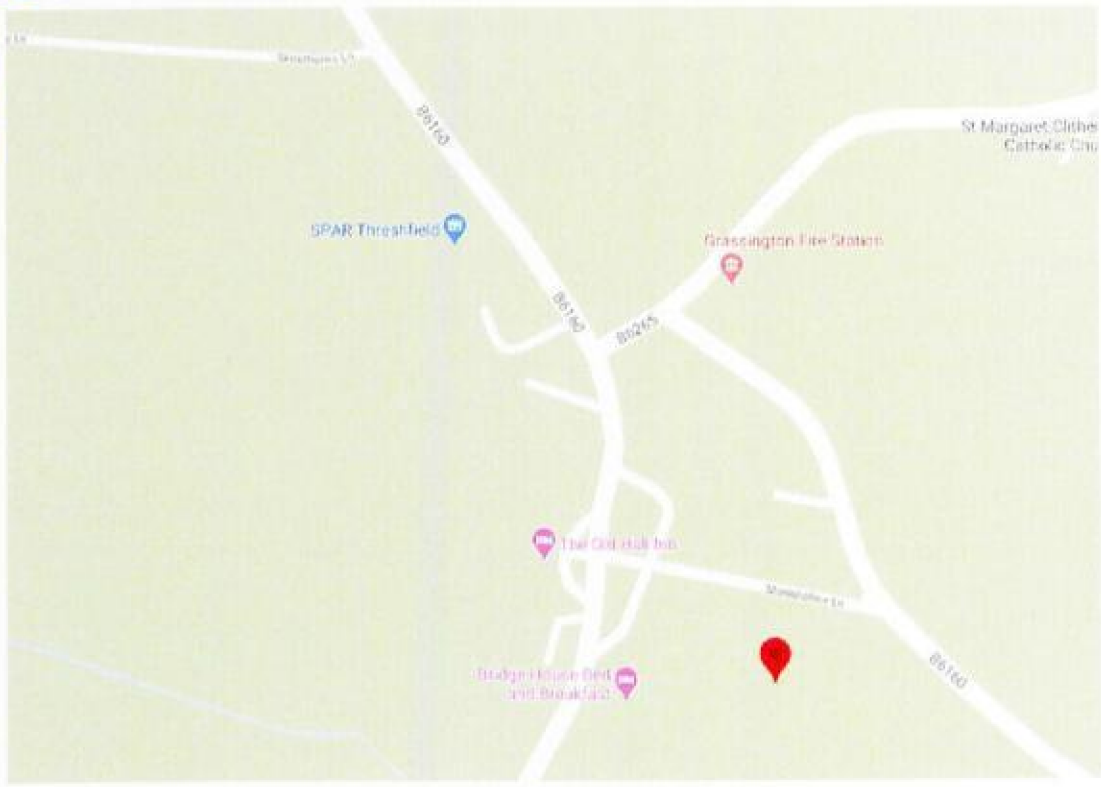
RECCE REPORT

Scenario

Our target has been on long term sick after being involved in a road collision when working for our clients EZI Couriers Ltd. The clients have been led to believe that he is now working part time at the SPAR in Threshfield as a delivery driver where his parents are managers of the store. We have been asked to recce the area, to establish a plan for conducting a mobile surveillance in order to obtain evidence of Mr. Neil Armstrong working and being physically active.



Ordnance Survey maps are extremely accuate and can now be read on a mobile phone.



The 'start point'.



REPORT

Target Name: A1: Neil Armstrong

Target Address: C1: SPAR Shop / Texaco Petrol Station, Threshfield Court, Threshfield Village, Skipton, BD23 5PL. W3W: coconut.decoding.claw

Vehicles: B1: Subject has a Nissan Qashqai YD19 KJP which was seen parked at the rear. A white Ford Transit van with SPAR livery (JK18 BMJ) was seen at the time of the recce also parked at the rear.

Team RV: Grassington National Park Centre, Hebden Road, Grassington, Skipton, BD23 5LB. W3W: sharpen.gripes.finishers

This is a large open area where the public can park and walk dogs, there is a small visitor's information centre and public toilets.

General Area:
Situated in a rural village 12 Km to the north of Skipton within the Yorkshire Dales National Park, the target location is on the outskirts of Threshfield on the B6160.

Immediate Area:
C1 is a detached single-storey building forming the SPAR store. There is a row of 4 petrol pumps at the front and a cash machine. There are two areas for car parking. One is immediately left of the front door (to the south) and the second is along the northern wall/boundary.
Behind the building are several grass fields.

Escape Routes:
There are two ways in/out and onto the main road (Caxton Garth B6160) in normal petrol station style.
There is a back door to the building which is a fire exit only.

Vehicle Sightings:
There were several customer's vehicles the time of the recce, and B1 was sighted in the north side car park parked in the far corner and reversed parked.

Scan the code to download an editable blank recce report.

View from the triggers location.





Sketches are useful for briefings and ensure you have covered all the bases.

KETTLEWELL
LIE UP POSITION
B6160
GRASSINGTON
SPAR
TRIGGER
PARKING
SPAR
PUMPS
PUB
LIE UP POSITION
MAIN ST
SKIPTON

ISS TRAINING LTD

Trigger Positions:
The primary trigger can be given from one of the two parking areas on site, (although in close proximity). Either parking area can call the direction onto the main road.

A secondary trigger could be positioned outside the chapel across the road and slightly south at the junction with Station Road (B6265) where a number of cars were parked up. This secondary position can also call the direction of travel.

From the lie up position on Skirethorns Lane to the North, you can also get a long look of the north side car park from the rear but not call a direction of travel.

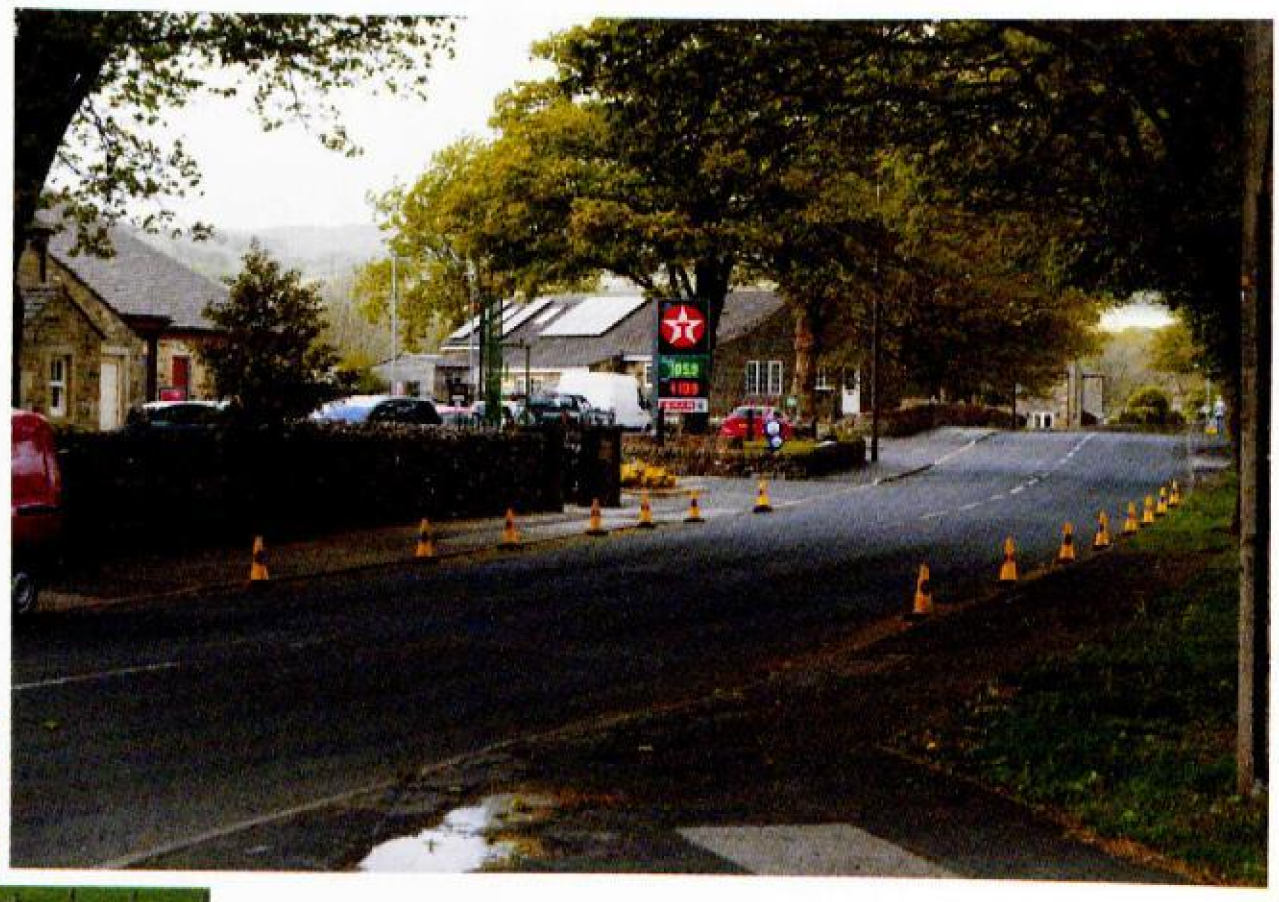
Back Up & Team Plot Locations:
There are a few street parking options to the south on Main Street / Monkholme Lane although it is congested with dwellings. A position on Skirethorns Lane to the north is good and tucked away from third parties.

Drop Off & Pick Up Points:
Not applicable

Emergency RV:
Grassington National Park Centre, Hebden Road, Grassington, Skipton, BD23 5LB.

Hazards/Additional Information:
CCTV cameras cover the car park.

From your trigger position, you should be able to call a direction of travel.



Always check the rear of the property. There may be a secondary trigger position.





Most losses occur at the start of a surveillance. Is is essential that you have a callsign covering the options that the target can escape via, and there should be no ambiguity when calling the direction. In this case; towards the North or towards the South.

FOLLOW THE QR CODE TO TAKE YOU TO THE STREET.



ISS TRAINING LTD

HEALTH & SAFETY

RISK MANAGEMENT & RISK ASSESSMENT

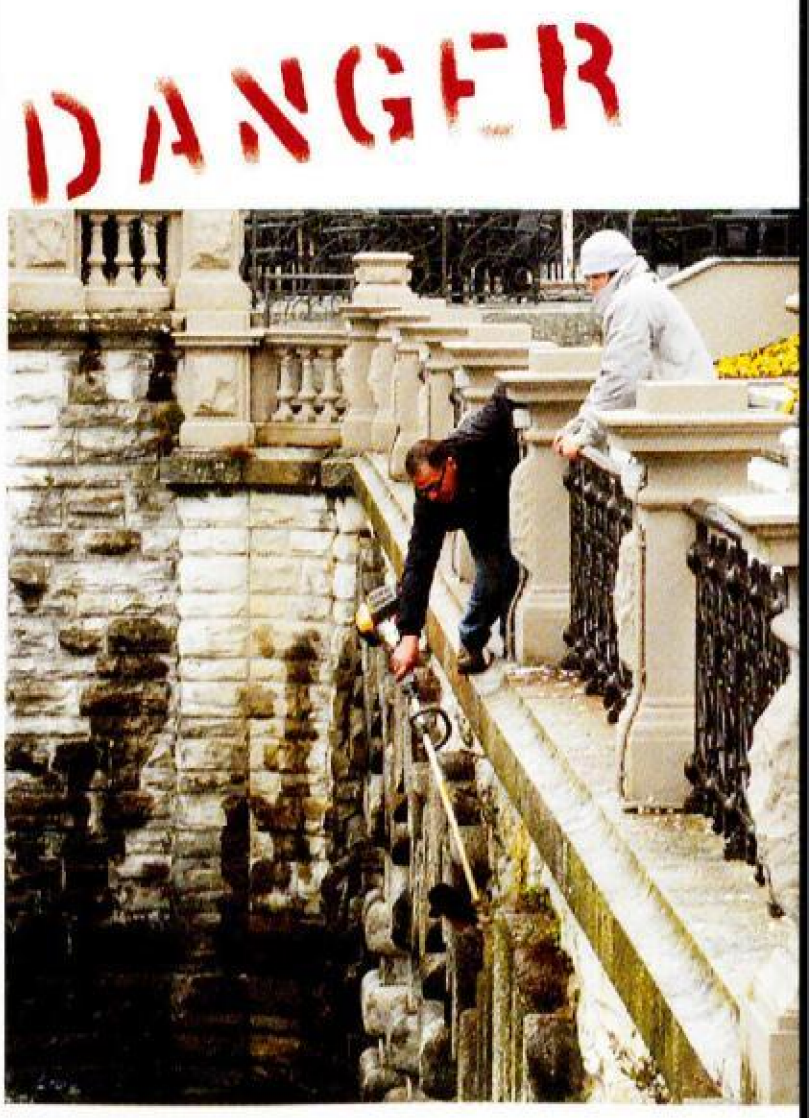
Surveillance is a risky business, there are a lot of factors that occur beyond our control. If you are carrying out mobile surveillance 'one up', you have so much to think about; driving safely, giving a commentary on the radio, establishing where your team are, keeping a log on a Dictaphone, taking video etc... and whilst doing so, being astute to your surroundings in the event of any threats towards you.



Further reading about risk assessments.

Some investigation companies or organisations insist that you carry out a health & safety risk assessment for the task. Risk management is a process for controlling risks caused by hazards. Most documented risk assessments follow these same principles.

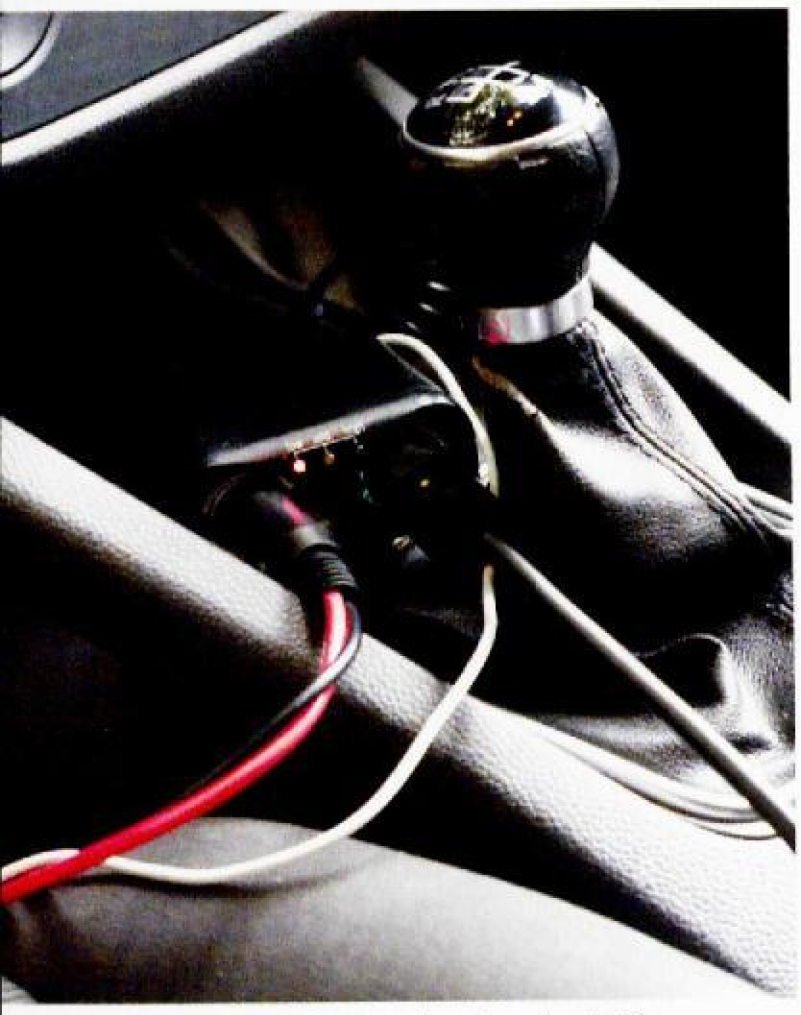
- Identify hazards
- Assess the risks
- Control the risks
- Record your findings
- Review the controls



What do we mean by 'hazard' and 'risk'?

HAZARD: Something that could cause harm to people, such as chemicals, electricity and working at height.

RISK: Is the chance, (however large or small) that a hazard could cause harm.



Having equipment in view is risking compromise.

IDENTIFY HAZARDS

Look around your workplace and think about what may cause harm (these are called hazards).

Think about:

- How people work and how equipment is used
- What chemicals and substances are used
- What safe or unsafe work practices exist
- The general state of your premises

For each hazard, think about how anyone might be harmed.

ASSESS THE RISKS

Once you have identified the hazards, decide how likely it is that someone could be harmed and how serious it could be. This is assessing the level of risk to establish:

- Who might be harmed and how?
- What you're already doing to control the risks?
- What further action you need to take to control the risks?
- Who needs to carry out that action?
- When the action is needed by?

CONTROL THE RISKS

Look at what you're already doing, and the controls you already have in place. Consider:

- Can I get rid of the hazard altogether?
- If not, how can I control the risks to reduce the likleyhood of any harm?

Put the controls you have identified in place. You may not eliminate all the risks but you need to do everything 'reasonably possible' to protect people.

RECORD YOUR FINDINGS

If you employ 5 or more people under the Health & Safety at Work Act, you must record your significant findings, including;

- The hazards (things that may cause harm)
- Who might be harmed and how?
- What you are doing to control the risks?

Even if you have fewer employees, it is good practice to do so.

Scan here for a HSE risk assessment template.

REVIEW THE CONTROLS

You must review the controls you have put in place to make sure they work. You should also review them if there are any changes:

- The controls are no longer effective
- There are changes that could lead to new risks

Also consider a review if your staff have identified any problems or if there have been any accidents.

Update your risk assessment record with any changes you make.

ISS TRAINING LTD

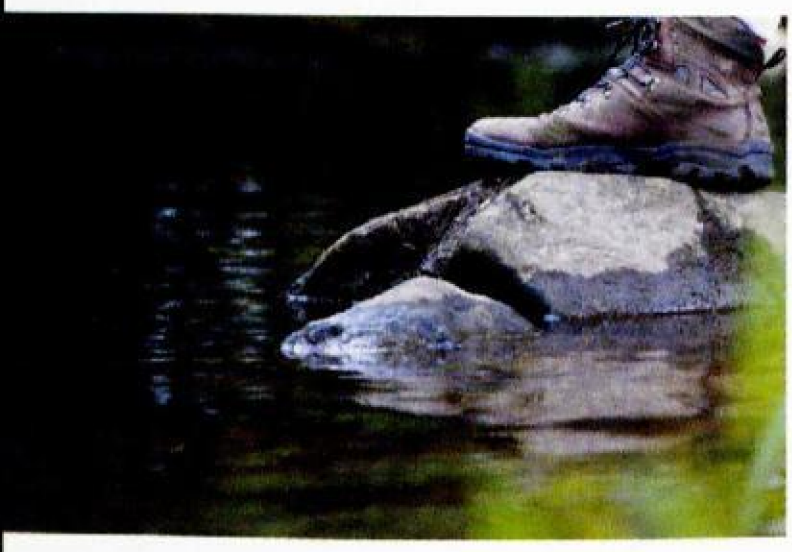
Sample risk assessment for a mobile surveillance.

HAZARDS	SOME OF THE RISK CONTROLS MAY BE:
Traffic & motorists	Obey road traffic signs & legal limits
Pedestrians	Other team members in vehicles to be aware
Third party attention	Carry out loss drill
Compromise	Visit known addresses
Weather	Continue on same route
Visibility	Obey traffic signs
Working at night	Keep within legal limits
Loss of communications	Drive within the conditions
Loss of contact with the team	Drive to suit weather – lights on
Working in cars all day	Car electrics in working order
	Night vision equipment
	Lights & Wipers in working order
	Drive for the conditions
	Cancel in very bad weather
	Regular handovers & check 'heat states'
	Alert team of hazards, inform Police
	Alert team if possible, utilise mobile phones
	All team to have phone number list



DYNAMIC RISK ASSESSMENT

Once on the ground, everything is constantly changing as surveillance is such a dynamic activity. As you move from one area to another or into changing environments, the risks also change and we have to be constantly aware.



A dynamic risk assessment is a process whereby an individual constantly observes and analyses their environment to identify risk. It aids you to make quick decisions about safety in many situations.

Dynamic risk assessments are often carried out without thinking about it, because a lot of the way we go about things is common sense.

For example, you are walking towards an OP and you come across a deep stream (hazard), you look left and right and to your right you see some high rocks running across the stream, which you decide to use to walk across (minimise risks). When you start to cross you realise that some of the rocks are too slippery so decide to take off your rucksack and throw it across to avoid becoming off balance (controlling the risk). It then becomes too slippery so you have to either continue at a high risk of falling in the stream, or you abandon the crossing and walk upstream to find a suitable crossing place (reviewing control).

SURVEILLANCE BRIEFINGS & DEBRIEFINGS

Most briefings in the commercial surveillance world are often sent out by email followed by an informal chat at the rendezvous point (RV) the night before or on the morning of the surveillance. Especially if there are only two or three of you on the team.

If the surveillance is more complex, has a large team or has a number of tasks, a more formal briefing may be given. You can only brief up to the 'stakeout' phase because after that, it is the target that dictates what happens, unless you have various SOP's or 'standard operating procedures' you may want to put into effect a plan if the target visits certain areas or meets up with someone.

The briefing is separated into particular phases and each phase is explained. Quite often something will go wrong in surveillance, especially with large teams because no one knows what the other is doing or what their tasks are. This is down to a lack of communication and information from poor briefings.

If you are responsible for the briefing, take charge of the team, instil order as it will reflect on you if the plan doesn't work. Conduct the brief to all as if they don;t know the situation, assume no prior knowledge.



THE SURVEILLANCE BRIEF

PRELIMS

Prior to the actual brief, the team needs to be seated in a particular order in the briefing room, they should be seated in car teams so that you can refer to one call sign collectively rather than having to keep asking, 'who's in call sign Golf?' and so they can map share if necessary. It is worth putting up the crew list on a wall or flip chart so that everyone knows at the outset who is crewed with who and in what vehicle, especially in large teams.

Tell the team they need to take notes and hand out any relevant documents or photographs. When you have everyone's attention the following format can be given.

ASTEAC

AREA

SITUATION

TASKS

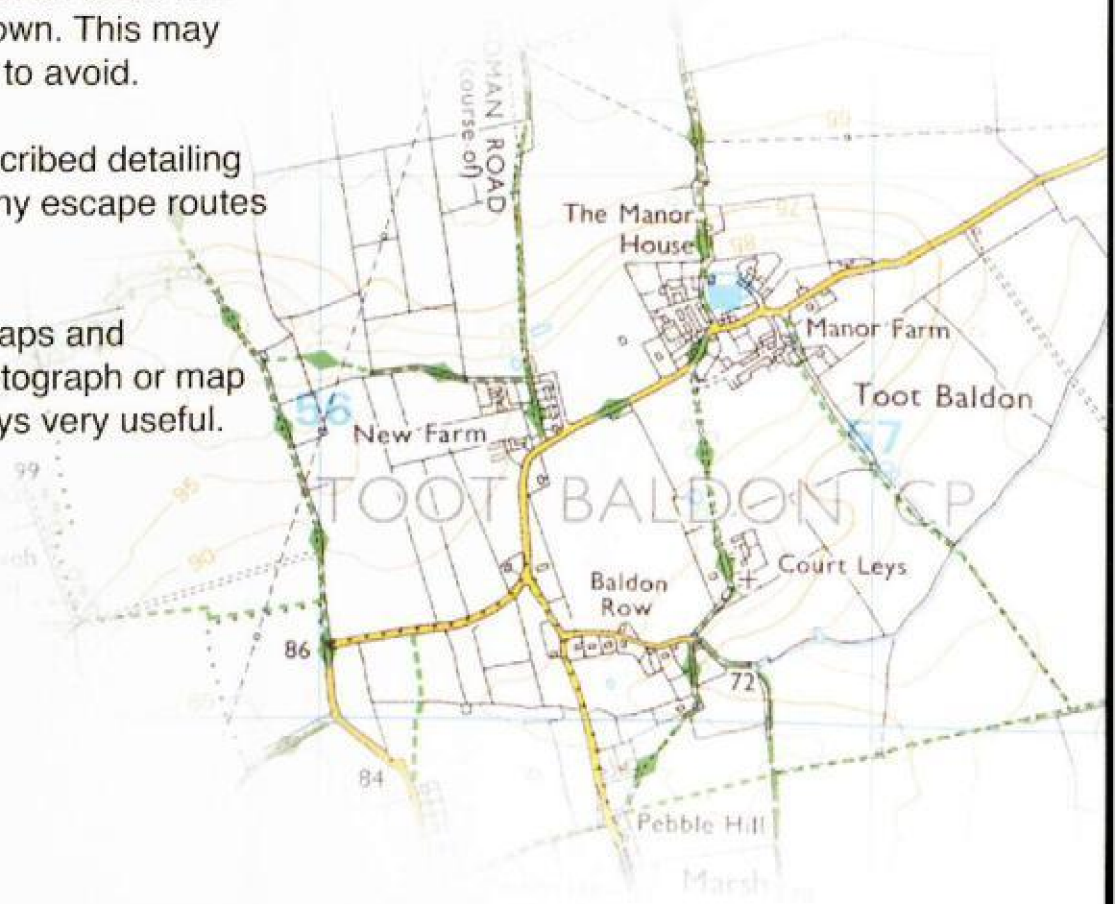
EXECUTION

ADMINISTRATION

COMMAND & COMMUNICATIONS

AREA

- In General, the target area is described so that the team get an initial feel of what the area is like and the extent of the area if it is known. This may also include briefing of any areas that are hostile, or areas to avoid.
- In Detail, the actual start point, e.g. the target house is described detailing the property, garages, out buildings, parking spaces and any escape routes from the building.
- To assist with the descriptions of the area, photographs, maps and sketches are worth a thousand words and so an aerial photograph or map image together with any photos taken on the recce is always very useful.



SITUATION

This is where you provide background information about the target (and associates) which includes a description and his history. Provide the scenario behind the surveillance and what the overall general aims are.

TASKS

Described the specific aims or tasks of the surveillance, what you actually want the team to achieve. It could be to establish whether the target is visiting a certain address or to see if the target is meeting with another person and to obtain video footage of the meeting.

EXECUTION OF TASK (THE PLAN)

In this phase we describe how we are actually going to conduct the surveillance, especially at the stake out or trigger phase. This is the big plan! Firstly give a general outline and then go into more detail, using several seperate phases if needed.

EXECUTION GENERAL OUTLINE

This operation is carried out in 7 phases to put the target under surveillance.

We will move from here to the RV, once all set we will move to the target area, insert the van as the trigger and take up our plot up positions. Put the target under surveillance and lift off on completion and head back to the office for a debrief.



EXECUTION IN DETAIL

Here are the details of how we actually carry out the plan in detail together with timings.

PHASE ONE: Preparation for moving out

PHASE TWO: Move to the target area

PHASE THREE: Insertion of the trigger vehicle

PHASE FOUR: Stake out, where call signs will cover

PHASE FIVE: The surveillance

PHASE SIX: Lift off and return to base

PHASE SEVEN: Debrief

TIMINGS

Timings for briefings, rehearsals, moving out, being set, finish time, no movement.

ROUTES

To the RV and to the target area.

ERV

Where the Emergency RV is to be located or whether it will be designated whilst on the ground.

ACTIONS ON

The actions to be carried out in the event of certain outcomes and a brief for what to do in each circumstance.

Compromises - hard & soft
Breakdowns & Accidents
Target doesn't show
Secondary targets

ADMINISTRATION

Special Equipment: such as tracking devices or night vision scope.
Special Vehicles: such as the observation van.
Safe Haven/Hospital: Identify where the nearest accident and emergency hospital is located and point it out on the map during the brief.



UK Grid Reference Finder works in OS Grids, Lattitude & Longitude coordinates, Post Codes and What 3 Words.

COMMAND & COMMUNICATIONS

TEAM LEADER

Who is in overall command of the team and his or her second in command (or 2i/c). The 2i/c should be in a different vehicle from the team leader.

COMMS CHANNEL

Explain which is the primary radio channel and which is the secondary in the event of someone else being on the same frequency. All mobile phone numbers should be exchanged and a WhatsApp group set up for the team.

QUESTIONS

On completion, you should then ask for any questions. This ensures that anyone who doesn't fully understand the brief has their time to clarify matters. Once done, do not be afraid to ask questions back to the team regarding where they are meant to be, what their task is and so on.

REHEARSALS

At the end of the briefing, use the magboard and model cars to illustrate all the scenarios that may happen when the target goes mobile, in order to put the plan into perspective.

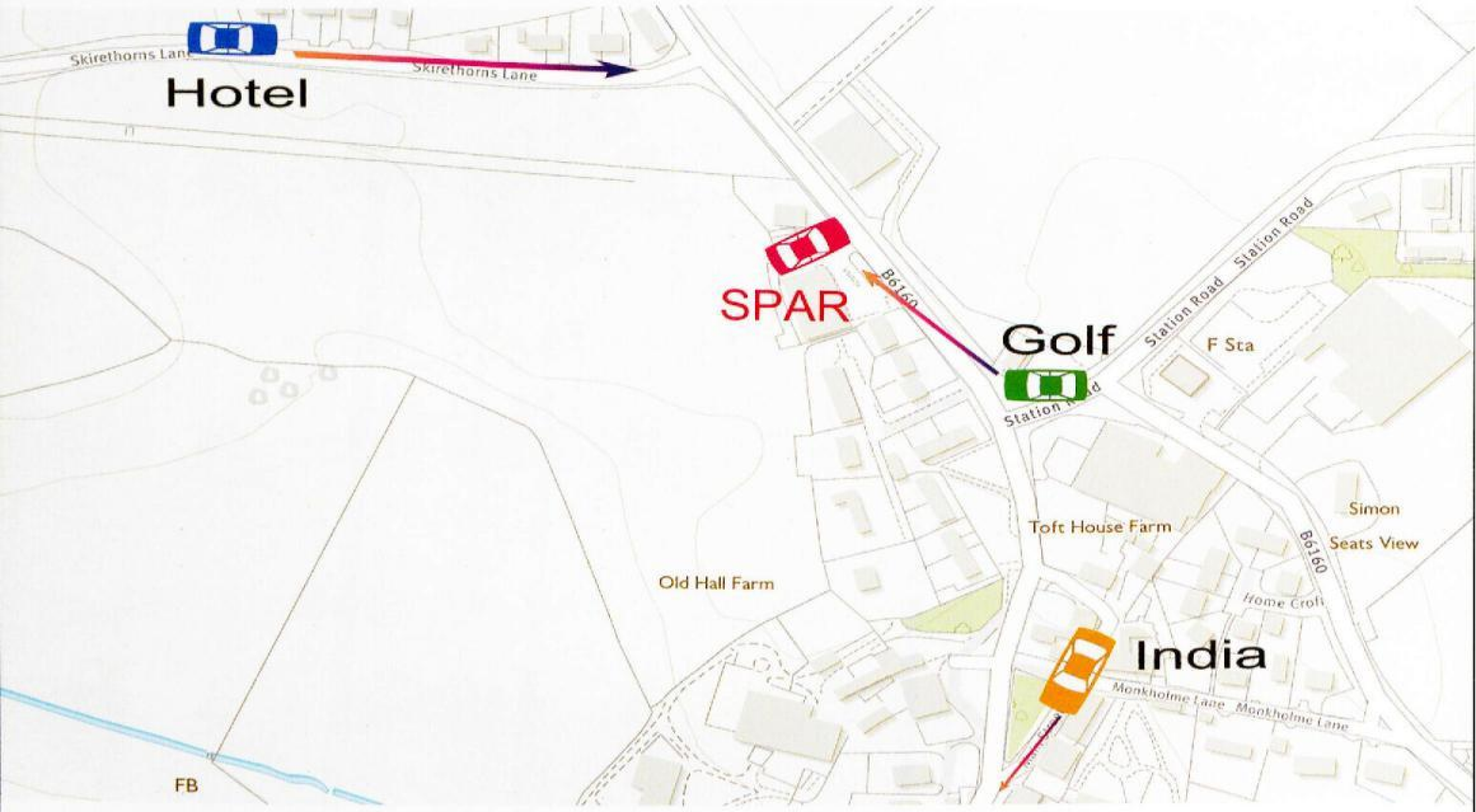
SCAN THE QR CODE TO TAKE YOU THERE.

SAMPLE TEAM BRIEF

EXERCISE 'KILLER QUEEN'

PRELIMS

CALL SIGN	VEHICLE	CREW	RESPONSIBILITES
GOLF	Grey Vauxhall Mokka - VN68 GWG	Freddie	Team Leader
HOTEL	Cream Renault Captur - HV68 VEW	Brian	Loggist
INDIA	White Fiat Van - ME19 CXA	Roger	Van & Tracker



1. AREA

In General: Situated in a rural village 12 Km to the north of Skipton within the Yorkshire Dales National Park, the target location is on the outskirts of Threshfield on the B6160. W3W: coconut.decoding.claw

In Detail: C1 is the Texaco petrol station/SPAR shop on the B6160 in the village of Threshfield, between Grassington and Skipton. It's a single storey, detached building. There is a row of 4 petrol pumps at the front and a cash machine.

There are two areas for car parking. One is immediately left of the front door (to the south) and the second is along the northern wall/boundary. Behind the building are several grass fields. There are two ways in/out and onto the main road (Caxton Garth B6160) in normal petrol station style. There is a back door to the building which is a fire exit only. Bravo 1 is normally parked overnight to the northern side of the store underneath a covered parking bay.

Trigger Positions: The primary trigger can be given from one of the two parking areas on site, (although in close proximity). Either parking area can call the direction onto the main road.

A secondary trigger could be positioned outside the chapel across the road and slightly south at the junction with Station Road (B6265) where a number of cars were parked up. From this position you can also call the direction of travel and cover the turning towards Grassington.

From the lie-up position on Skirethorns Lane to the North, you can also get a long look of the north side car park from the rear but can't call a direction of travel.

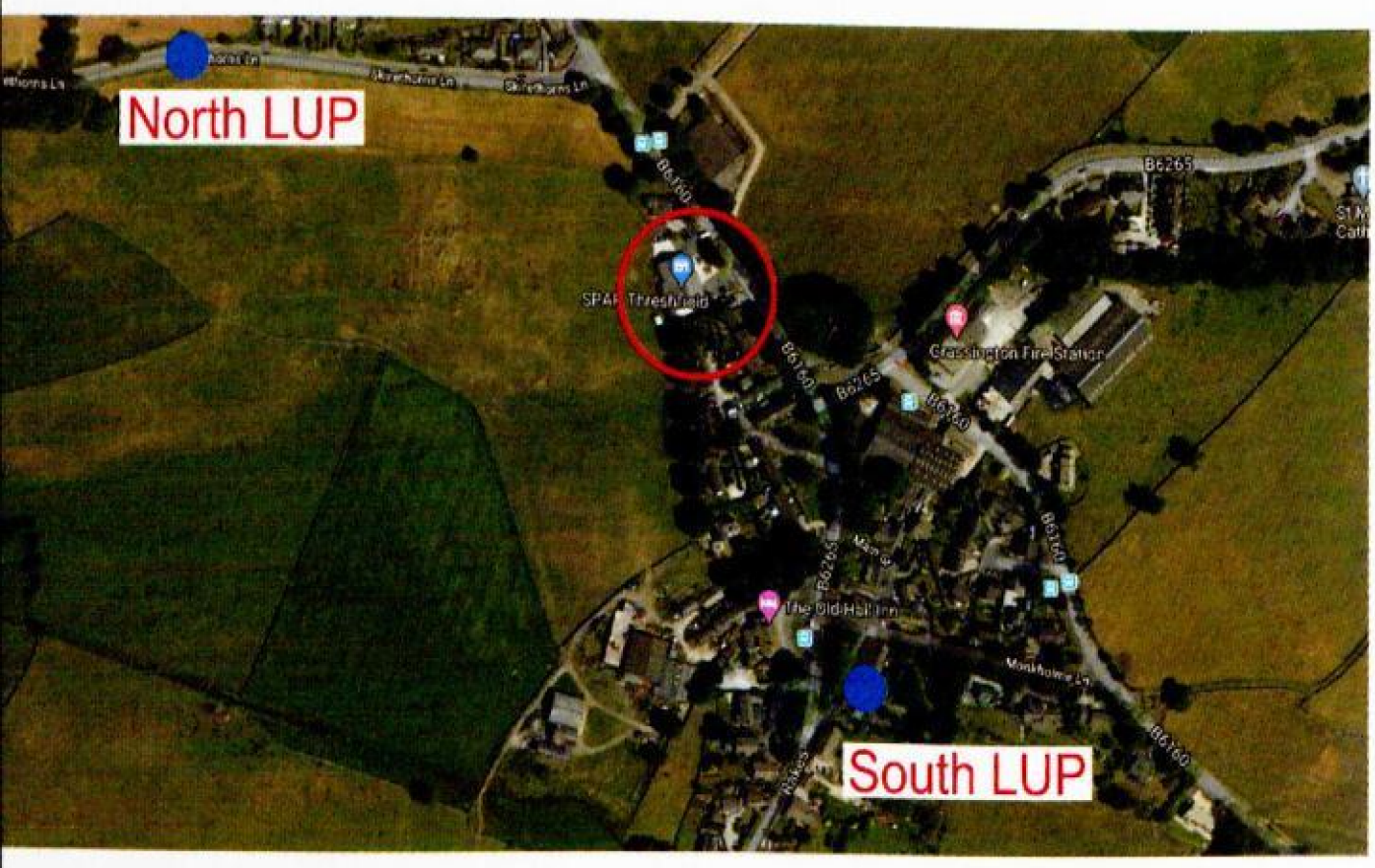
Back Up & Team Plot Locations: There are a few street parking options to the south on Main Street / Monkholme Lane although it is congested with dwellings. A position on Skirethorns Lane to the north is good and tucked away from third parties.

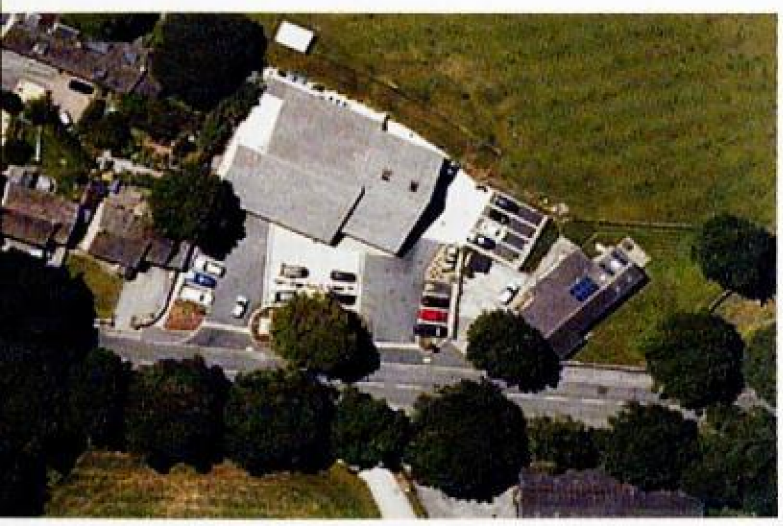


Hotels' position covering the North, looking towards the main road.



Indias' position covering the South, looking towards the main road.







2. SITUATION

BACKGROUND: Our target has been on long term sick after being involved in a road collision when working for our clients EZI Couriers Ltd. The clients have been led to believe that the is now working part time at the SPAR in Threshfield as a delivery driver where his parents are managers of the store. We have been asked to conduct a mobile surveillance in order to obtain evidence of Mr. Neil Armstrong working and being physically active.

TARGET: A1 Neil Armstrong (nicknamed Ziggy), 35-40yrs, slim build, short fair hair. He is NOT surveillance aware.

VEHICLES: B1 A white Citroen Dispatch van with Enterprise Rental livery (MJ69 SYZ). This was seen at the time of the recce also parked at the rear. B2: Subject also has access to a Nissan Qashqai (YD19 KJP) which was also seen parked at the rear.

ADDRESS: C1 the apartment adjacent the Texaco petrol station, Threshfield Court, Skipton, BD23 5PL. W3W: coconut.decoding.claw

LIKELY ASSOCIATES: Unknown at this time.

ATTACHMENTS & SUPPORT ELEMENTS: Nil but the client wants regular updates.

3. TASKS

1. Obtain ID photograph or video of A1.

2. Obtain any evidence of him driving and carrying out deliveries, noting the stops.

3. Obtain video evidence of A1 carrying out any physical activity.



ISS TRAINING LTD

4. EXECUTION OF TASK

GENERAL OVERVIEW

A three-man car team to be used, (Golf, Hotel & India). We will RV at the Grassington National Park Centre, carry out checks then move into our positions to await movement. Conduct the surveillance and head back to the office for a debrief. This operation has five phases:

PHASE ONE: We will meet at the National Park Centre at 0700hrs for final debrief and time check on the cameras. Ensure all cameras and radios are fully charged. W3W: sharpen.gripes.finishers

PHASE TWO: 0720hrs, the team will move from the RV to their various plot locations.

C/S Golf - to get the trigger on B1 call a direction and cover the junction towards Grassington.
C/S Hotel - to cover the left option north, possibly on Skirethorns Lane.
C/S India - to cover the right option south towards Skipton, possibly on Main Street.

Once in position, call in with a radio check.

PHASE THREE:
Conduct surveillance, sit and wait until he moves.

PHASE FOUR:
Approx' 1700hrs lift off & return to the office or when decided by the TL.

PHASE FIVE:
A full debrief will be conducted as soon as we get back to the office so all the logs and reports can be typed up. Any images and videos to be downloaded and saved onto a memory stick for the client.

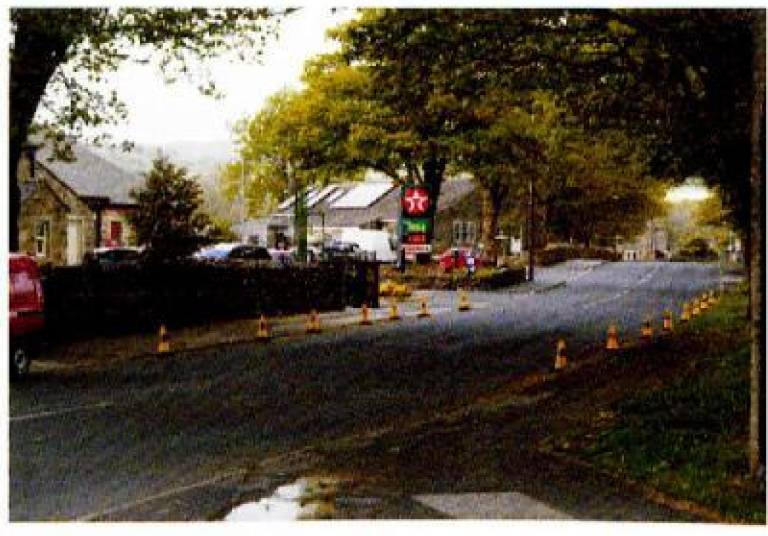
TIMINGS:
07:00 - Arrive at RV
07:30 - All C/S in position and trigger set
17:00 - Stand down if not finished earlier

ROUTES: From the office the team are to take B6265 Station Road to Grassington, after a sharp off-side bend/junction with Wood Lane & Main Street the B6265 changes to Hebden Road. Continue round and the National Park Centre is signposted a few hundred meters on the off-side.

ERV: Grassington National Park Centre, Hebden Road, Grassington, BD23 5LB.

ACTIONS ON:
1. If there's no movement by 1000hrs a decision will be made by the TL.
2. If he leaves in his car rather than the works vehicle, we will still follow.
3. Compromise by third party: Inform the team.
4. Compromise by target: A decision will be made on the ground, probably moving to the ERV.
5. Emergencies or breakdowns - we will deal with any situation as it arises.
6. Loss of contact: carry out an immediate search with one callsign heading back to C1.





The view from the trigger location towards the target.



Check & Test: Format SD cards, set clocks, batteries charged, test shot.

5. ADMINISTRATION

No RIPA authority is necessary, the client has authorised us to start.

SPECIAL EQUIPMENT: Everyone should have their car radios & body sets. All with video cameras and covert cameras.

SPECIAL VEHICLES: Roger has the van used for triggering or a platform for long term stops.

Safe Haven/Hospital - Nearest 24 hour A&E - Airedale General Hospital, Skipton Road, Steeton, Keighley BD20 6TD. Phone: 01535 652511

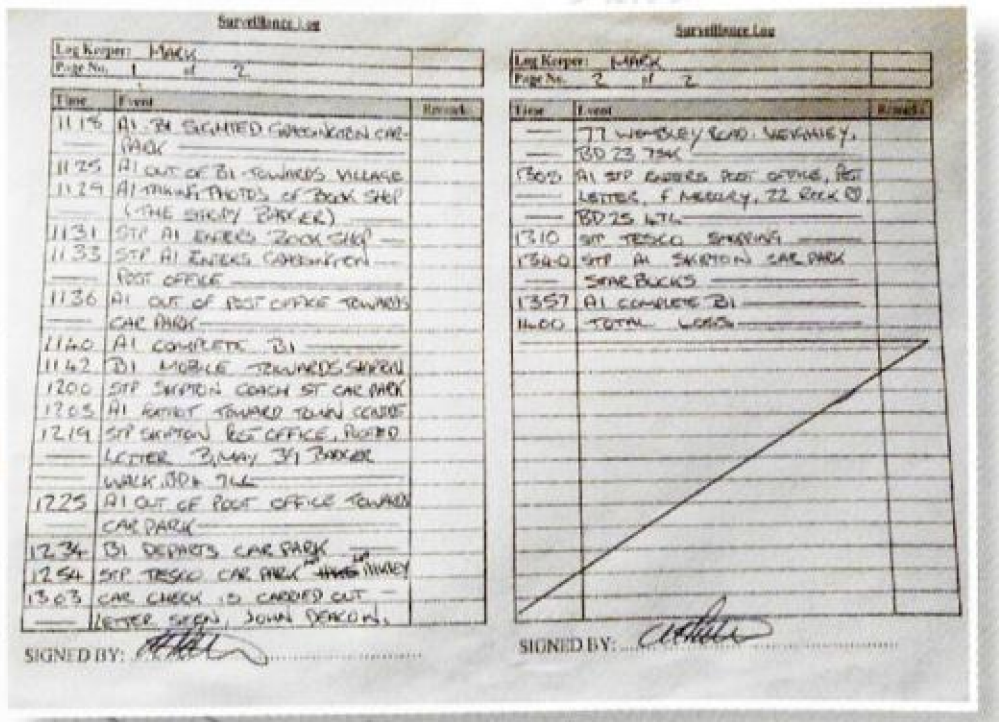
6. COMMUNICATIONS

COMMS CHANNELS: Primary - 11
Secondary - 3

All operators have all mobile phone numbers and the 'WhatsApp' functionality.

TIME CHECK: Synchronise watches and camera timers.

QUESTIONS...?



TEAM DEBRIEFINGS

The team debrief is a very important part of the surveillance. It can be an informal affair over a drink in a café before the team disperses, or more formal back at the office, especially with large teams, or when complex surveillance or long-term surveillance is being conducted.

The debrief is divided into three logical phases:

- Intelligence Debrief
- Operational Debrief
- Exposure Levels

INTELLIGENCE DEBRIEF

This first phase deals with the information or intelligence that was obtained about the target. This is where the surveillance logs are compiled to provide a master log of events which will be reported to the client.

The debrief should be chaired by the team leader or log keeper. This part of the debrief should concentrate on:

- Descriptions
- Timings
- Places
- Routes
- Stop locations
- Associates and their relevance
- Activity
- Meetings
- Imagery
- Compromises

It is important that only what the target did should be discussed at this stage. You may have been working a long day and your aim is to get the debrief over and done with quickly and to get the report to the client. The client may be even be present and he doesn't want to hear your excuses. 'Well I couldn't see the target at that time because a tramp approached me and started asking for money… and then my radio died, blah blah…'. It is not important at this stage, intelligence only!

Once the intelligence debrief is complete and logs, videos and photographs are done with, you can then move onto the next phase.

Scan here to download a debrief checklist.





OPERATIONAL DEBRIEF

This is the time for the team to discuss what went wrong, what went right or was good and how you can improve or make any changes to the surveillance plan. It is also the time to be self-critical and admit to any mistakes made so they are not repeated by you or anyone else, it makes a good learning place for all.

If a team member identifies certain areas to avoid, (maybe due to a third party), or finds a good position to 'lay-up', or experiences a really bad road junction which is hard to get out of, then this should be discussed for all to benefit.

This part of the debrief should not get personal but be constructive. We all make mistakes, so avoid pointing the finger at one member of the team giving them grief. Keep it in mind that it maybe you that makes the next mistake. Don't let it get personal.

Be mindful of this debrief getting out of control and going on for too long. In training, the easiest way to control this is to ask for each member of the team to provide one good point and one bad point about the surveillance and they have five minutes.

Remember: Intelligence is what the target did, Operational is what the team did.

GOLDEN RULE: What we teach and practice is that any comments made at this stage are always confined to the debrief and that once proceedings are complete, we do not carry it on afterwards in the office or in the pub.

Once the operational debrief is out of the way, we can get on with the next part of the debrief which is equally important.



EXPOSURE LEVELS

Every time you go out on a surveillance give yourself 10 'lives' (or 'heat states' as they are often referred to). Now whenever you have any exposure to the target, knock off a life (or two). For instance, if the target goes into a hotel and you decide to go close in order to overhear what is being said at the reception, you may want to knock off one life, as you have been in close and had some exposure to the target. You may now be down to a score of 9 or 8 but only if they have seen you.

Next, the target gets on a bus and you are the only person who is close enough to get on with him, and you make the decision to do so in order to keep control. Hopefully you can sit behind the target so you are not too exposed. The target gets off and another operator takes over and your own personal 'heat states' have now dropped down to a 7 or 8.

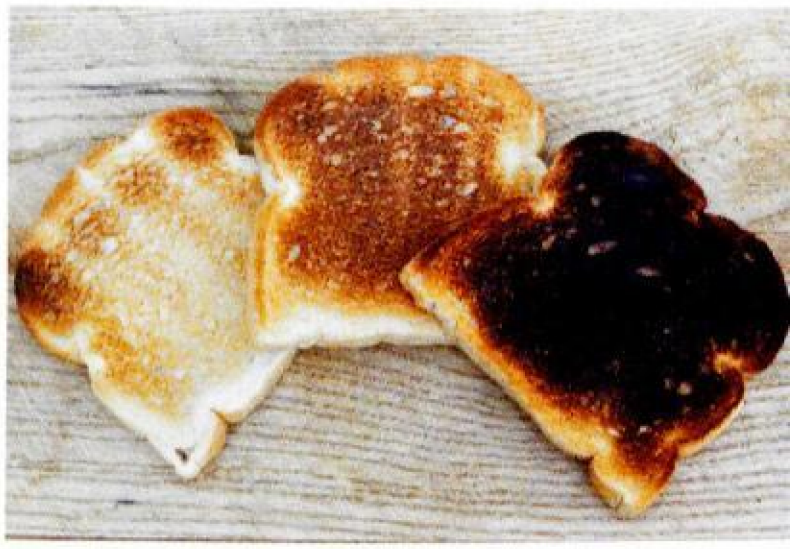
At the debrief, each member of the team is asked for their heat states and this is recorded by the team leader. It may also be wise at this stage to explain how you have reached your number. Only you can tell how much exposure that you have had and if you are down to a 4 or 5, you should be asking yourself whether you would be safe working on the same target again the following day.

Be careful of being over paranoid or too cautious as we often tend to over-estimate our heat states (especially when new to surveillance). Personally, I always calculate a figure and then add 1 back on.

During training courses, the class often puts an unknown target under surveillance for a day. The target does not know any of the class and the class have never seen the target before. This is good practice in order to establish what your heat states really are and to fully understand how much you can get away with in surveillance. It is surprising how many students give themselves a low score of 4 or 5 and afterwards the target reveals that he did not suspect them as being surveillance at all.

When considering your heat states, ask yourself: has the target actually looked at me and noticed me on several occasions and have I done anything out of the ordinary when in his sight (multiple sightings & un-natural behaviour). If not, then your heat state has to be low (a high number).

As well as giving yourself a personal score, also do the same with the vehicles. If for some reason callsign Golf has had a lot of exposure then also give it a score out of 10. As above, if it is 4 or 5, you should consider changing vehicles for the next day or let some time lapse before you continue the surveillance with the same vehicle.



Exposure levels are like toast, don't get burnt.



The Exposure Book for long term team operations.

Who would you remember?



If you are a team leader or manager and coordinating a number of the same operators on a regular basis, it may be worth considering keeping a 'Heat States Book'. If you are working in law enforcement or the military on long term operations against regular targets, it may be a consideration.

Every time a surveillance operation is completed, list the operators and their scores in a book. Over a period of time it will tell you a number of things; if an operator is constantly coming back with scores of 9 or 10, it may indicate that he or she is hanging back all of the time without risking much and letting the others do all of the work, conversely, if someone is constantly coming back with a low score of say 3 or 5, you have to ask:

Are they too keen and being over-zealous by going in hard all of the time?
Are they having to go in hard and close because the others are hanging back?
Are they going in hard and close because they do not really appreciate the risks?

Over time, you will build up a picture of how your team operates and performs, this is why our term 'Loss v Gain' is so important.

GOLDEN RULE NO.2

Once the debrief is finished, it is finished. Sometimes people make mistakes and they can make big ones, which result in a compromise or an accident. At a debrief this 'finger pointing' and blaming can get very personal but we never let it carry on when we leave the debrief as it generates animosity. If you are blaming someone today, it will be you that screws up next...

Briefing: Life on Mars style.

Gene: "So how do we go about getting to him then Gladys?"

Sam: "It's called surveillance..."

Gene: "...Doesn't sound very manly"

Sam: "Manly?"

Gene: "Well, it's not proper police work is it, spying on people..."



Credit: BBC

SURVEILLANCE COMPROMISES

Compromises are a fact of life in surveillance and an occupational hazard as they will occur with the best of operators.

They can either be caused by the target noticing you or the third party. Although you have to be third party aware at all times, sometimes you just have to 'brass neck' it and get your camera up and running regardless of whoever is about. If you have been on a surveillance for the past four days and nothing has happened and then all of a sudden on day five, activity occurs, you have to go in for the 'money shot'.



We consider two types of compromises; hard and soft. Over the past 25 years I have had a few of each but mainly soft compromises.

SOFT COMPROMISES

These are normally from the 'third party' who are suspicious of your presence and may even approach you to ask what are you doing. They may have seen you filming, hear you on the radio or just be suspicious of the way you are parked up.

If approached, be polite and have a realistic cover story ready. If you have drawn the attention of someone, tell the team.

HARD COMPROMISE

When you have a hard compromise, you will know it! Again, this could be from third party (especially in rough estates) or the target themselves. A hard compromise may be preceded by some form of anti-surveillance and you should have recognised this beforehand.

Points to minimise compromises:

- Research your target.
- Ensure whether the target has been under surveillance in the past.
- Don't carry out single handed surveillance.
- Be third party aware and move as soon as you feel uncomfortable with your surroundings.
- Telephone the police as soon as you feel threatened. Whoever manages to telephone the police first is considered the victim and always favoured.
- Ensure that your doors are locked as soon as you get in.
- Have a back up nearby to help you out when in trouble.
- Make sure that the recording lamp on your camera is switched off.
- Clear the area completely after a compromise.
- Keep your equipment covered up at all times.
- Don't get distracted when you are immediately behind the target.
- Don't work on your own without any back up.

If compromised, it may be too late to 'blag' your way out of it. Do not get into a dialogue with the target as the situation could escalate.

CHAPTER TWO QUESTIONS

1) Identify examples of what target information is required for planning a surveillance operation.

2) Explain the relevance of personal information, descriptions and identity codes to the surveillance operative.

3) Explain why it is important to know whether the target has been under surveillance previously.

4) Determine the various methods of 'triggering' a surveillance.

5) List the phases of a risk assessment.

6) What is a dynamic risk assessment?

7) Identify the sequence of a surveillance briefing using the mnemonic ASTEAC.

8) Identify the sequence of a surveillance de-briefing.

9) Explain how the exposure or 'heat states' system works.

Practical Assessments

10) Produce a risk assessment for a surveillance operation.

11) Produce a target recce report for a fictitious surveillance.

12) Produce a briefing plan for a fictitious surveillance.

Q&A

FOLLOW THE QR CODE TO TAKE YOU TO THE QUESTION & ANSWER 'HELP' PAGES.

ISS TRAINING LTD

ASSESSMENT TIME!

1) Identify examples of what target information is required for planning a surveillance operation.

2) Explain the relevance of personal information, descriptions and identity codes to the surveillance operative.

3) Explain why it is important to know whether the target has been under surveillance previously.

4) Determine the various methods of 'triggering' a surveillance.

5) List the phases of a risk assessment.

6) What is a dynamic risk assessment?

7) Identify the sequence of a surveillance briefing using the mnemonic ASTEAC.

8) Identify the sequence of a surveillance de-briefing.

9) Explain how the exposure or 'heat states' system works.

ISS TRAINING LTD

Chapter Three

COMMUNICATIONS

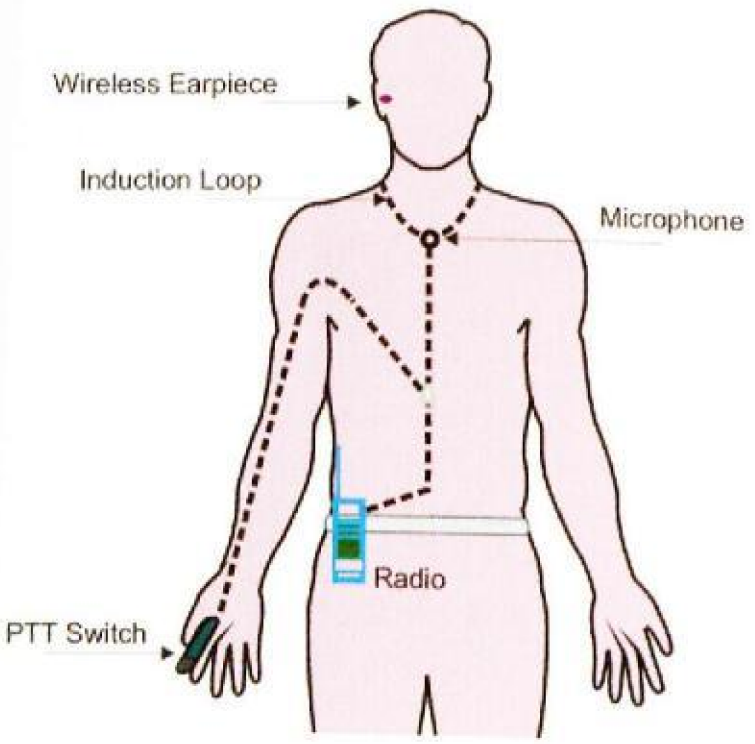
Communication is probably the most important factor when there is more than one operator working on the same task. Team tasks can succeed or fail depending on whether good communication is maintained between team members. All team members should be well exercised in voice procedure and giving a radio commentary.

Surveillance communication is about being able to indicate to someone else what the target is doing, in a detailed, yet clear and precise manner. It can be both verbal and non-verbal.

We can be passing on information about a target's actions and intentions, or issuing instructions to team members.

Communication (or comms) can be passed in any of the following ways:

- Radio transmissions
- Mobile phones
- Hand signals





RADIOS

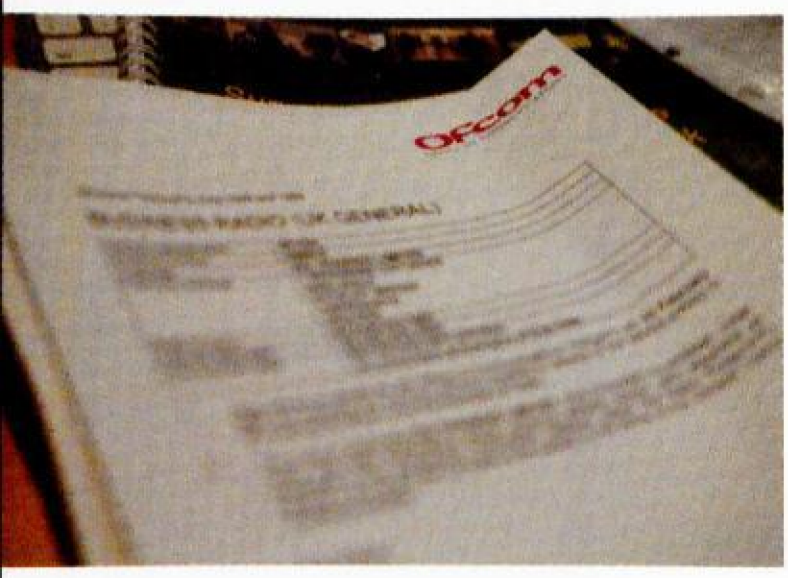
Communications are a very important factor in surveillance work where investigators have to work as a team. Therefore, radio equipment is paramount and has to be:

- Reliable and robust
- Have sufficient transmitting/ receiving range
- Portable
- Secure
- Simple to operate
- Good battery life

RADIO FREQUENCIES

Two different wave lengths are available to the commercial investigator in the UK and the correct one should be selected to obtain maximum performance for the type of area that you are normally working in.

• Ultra High Frequency or UHF should be used in very built up towns and cities or if you are constantly working in buildings or shopping malls. In the UHF range this is normally between 430 - 472MHz.



• Very High Frequency or VHF is the most common and is ideal for most situations, adequate for both built up areas and out in the open. In the VHF range, the frequency is normally between 162 - 175 MHz.

It is preferable to have a power output of at least five watts to provide you with sufficient power and transmitting range, the majority of hand-held radios can be set to five watts. Any less and you may not have a sufficient range. Car to car sets ideally need to be transmitting on at least 20 watts output.

If you purchase your own VHF/UHF sets, a 'Business' operator's licence has to be obtained from the Radio Communications Agency OFCOM: **(www.ofcom.org.uk)**. This is usually organised by your radio dealer or you can apply online. A licence costs £75.00 for five years and can cover up to ten radio sets. When the licence is issued you will receive a selection of operating frequencies onto which the radios can be set.

Visit the OFCOM website

Due to over crowding of the airwaves within these frequency ranges, it is possible that you will hear other people on the air (breakthrough) who are using the same frequency and likewise, they would be able to hear you. This sharing of frequencies could create a problem during surveillance as your commentary could be interrupted and third parties will be able to hear everything you say.

Many modern radio systems utilise a system called CTCSS coding. This system enables the radio set to automatically transmit a coded signal to your other sets and allows them to receive your messages only. Radios using the same frequency without the compatible CTCSS coding will not be able to be listen in to your commentary nor will you be able to receive anyone elses.

DIGITAL RADIO

The majority of radio systems such as Motorola are digital. This offers clearer reception but more importantly, more security as the signals cannot easily be intercepted.

Types of Radio Sets

Radios come in various forms, the main two being vehicle mounted or hand-held transceivers (the walkie-talkie). Both have some advantages and disadvantages:

- **Vehicle Mounted Sets**

Vehicle mounted sets (as their name suggests) are normally mounted and concealed in a surveillance vehicle, and will give you a high transmitting range, and draw its power from the vehicle battery. An output of 20 watts or more with an external mounted antenna will provide a range over many miles depending on terrain.

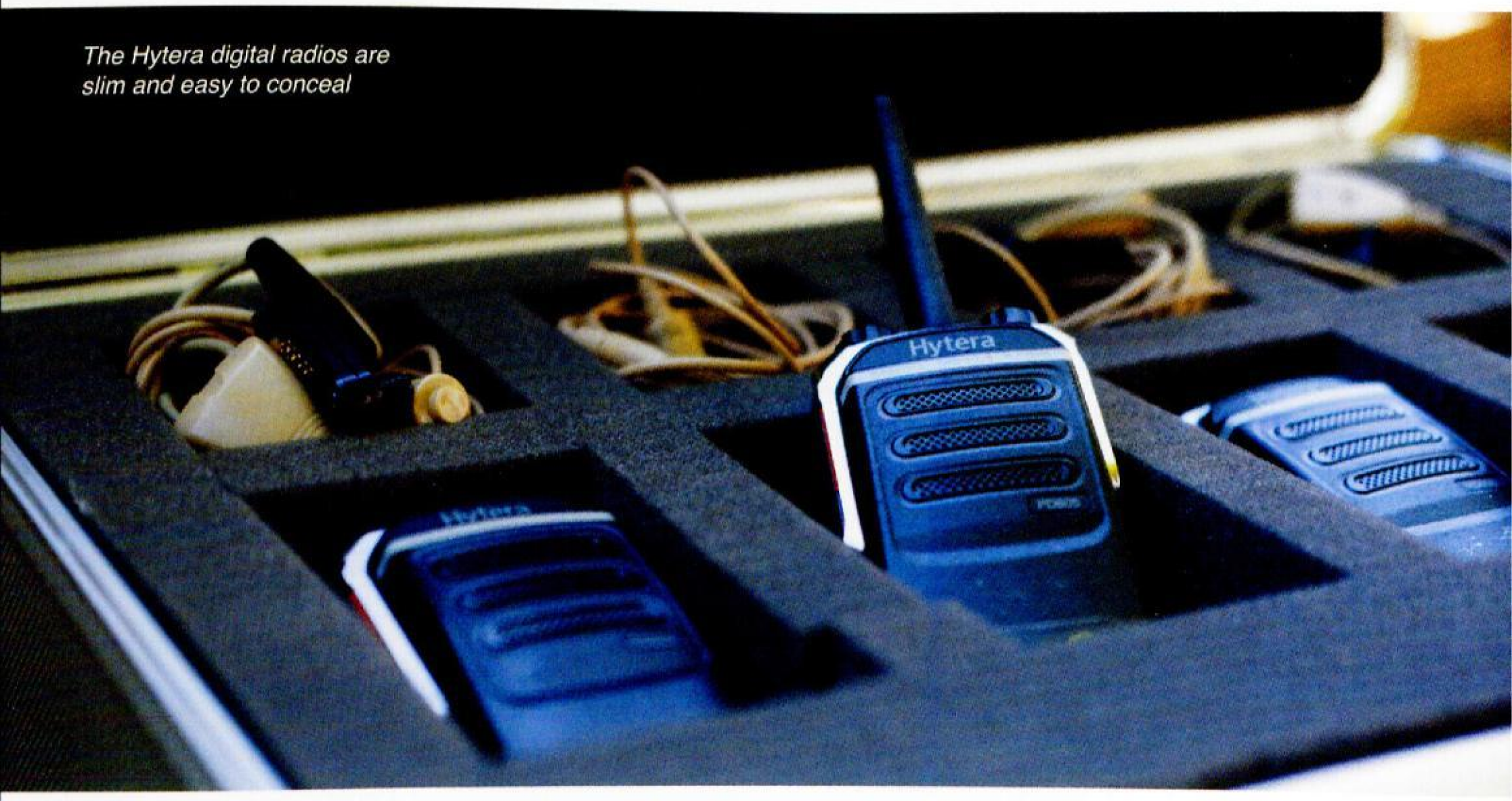
It will not be practical to have a magnetic mount antenna located in the centre of your car roof like a taxi, as it would look too conspicuous. Therefore, it should be located on the rear bumper area or put inside the car. If it is inside, ensure that the antenna is upright and the base is on something solid (such as a metal plate or even a biscuit tin lid) in order to provide what is termed a 'ground plane' and to reflect the radio radiation. Alternatively, a 'boot clamp' fitting is preferable and more covert. However, a purpose built antenna fitted into the roof or wing of the car, made to look like an ordinary radio aerial is the most preferred.

- **Hand-Held Radio Sets**

Radio handsets offer more flexibility, as they can be carried about your person during foot surveillance, be located in your car or used in an OP because they have their own power supply. They can be fitted with accessories that will enable you to use the radio covertly: an earpiece and a concealed microphone, they also have their own short antenna.



The Hytera digital radios are slim and easy to conceal





ANTENNAS

Whether you are using a handheld radio or a vehicle set, it is very important that you have the correct antenna fitted otherwise you will have problems when transmitting and receiving. The antenna is probably one of the most important parts of your radio. It has to be the correct type and length and it cannot be any old piece of wire plugged into the set.

When used in a vehicle, the transmission range may only be up to one kilometre, but this can be greatly increased by connecting the handset to an external antenna or a purpose fitted antenna.

When using a handheld set in a vehicle, ensure that you keep it below the level of the dashboard, you do not want the target to see you using it in his mirrors. In the same vein, when using the radio, do not keep bobbing your head up and down as you speak each time into the microphone, act naturally. Try not to let your fingers or thumb curl over the microphone, as you will muffle your commentary.

Ideally the antenna should ideally be vertical and the correct length to correspond with the frequency used, which is a simple calculation. For example, a radio using a frequency of 174Mhz requires an antenna that is .43 of a metre long (or 43cms, or 17 inches). When you buy a mag mount antenna or those for vehicle mounting, they are slightly longer than necessary so they can be cut down to size.

The length of antenna is calculated by dividing the number 300 (a constant) by the frequency. We then divide the answer by 4 to give the length in metres, what is known as a quarter wavelength.

So if we take 300 and divide it by our frequency of 174Mhz, this equals 1.724 (our wavelength). Divide this by 4, which equals 0.43 (our quarter wavelength) or 43 centimetres.

If the radio has 'line of sight' to another, you should achieve maximum transmitting range. When objects such as buildings, trees or hills come between them, the range will be drastically reduced. Radio waves find it difficult to pass through water which essentially is what your body is made up of. Therefore if your covert set is stuffed tight under your armpit, you may experience problems with range. Clipped to the belt in the small of your back or on your hip is preferable to maximise range.

Watch the video about antennas

If you are in an OP where you are lying down, be aware of the transmission range reducing when you are close to the ground. The higher up you are the better the range, so it would be advisable to elevate the antenna by attaching it to a fence post or putting it up a tree.



COVERT RADIO SYSTEMS

A semi-covert set of wires can be purchased for about £40.00. This comprises of an 'iPhone' style earpiece and a lapel microphone. The earpiece isn't exactly covert as it can be seen but it is very effective if you are operating on a tight budget. Personally, I would not use them, especially if operating against a sophisticated target because it creates uniformity. In addition, you may find yourself in a situation (restaurant) where you look would out of place by wearing them.

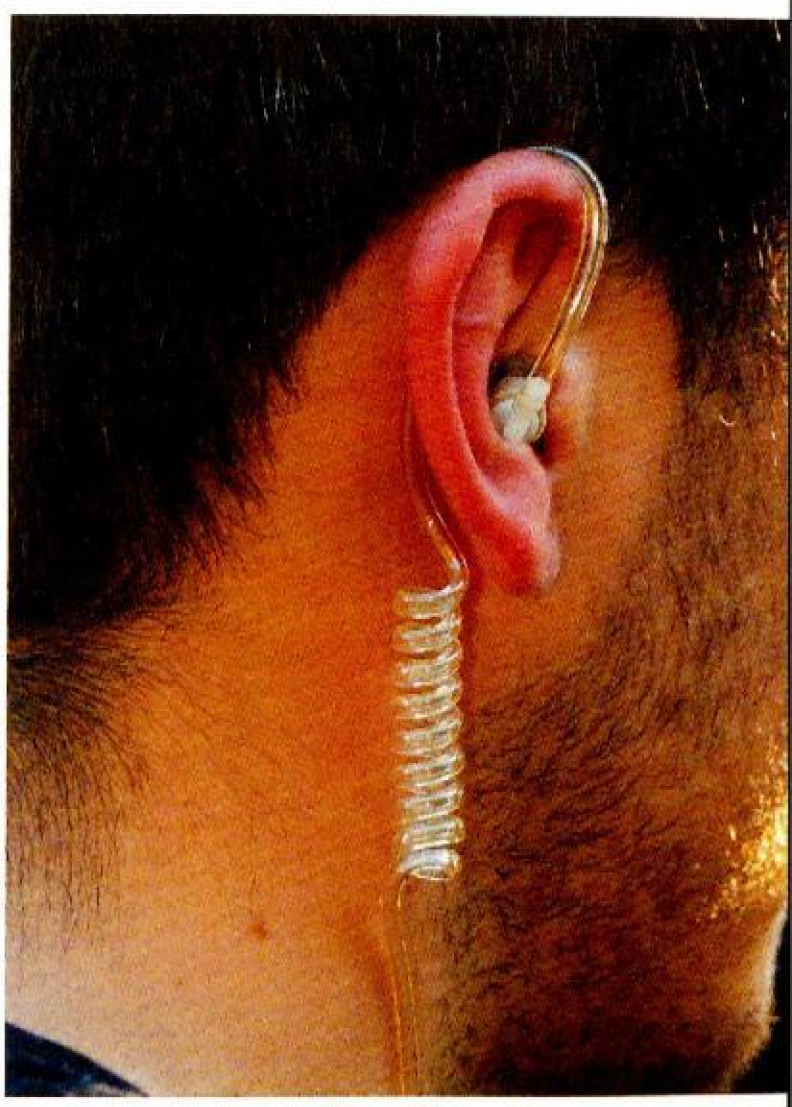
Another style of earpiece is the 'Curly Wurly'. This is a robust earpiece which is more suited to overt security work such as close protection or door work. The 'Curly Wurly' is ideal for rural work as it can be easily removed and put back in again, it should never be worn as 'covert' in an urban environment.

The more professional accessories comprise of a carry harness similar to that of a pistol shoulder holster for the radio. Built into the harness is the antenna, microphone and an induction device which 'transmits' voice to a small earpiece placed in the ear. There are no telltale wires to the earpiece which looks very similar to a hearing aid. The radios can simply be worn on a belt, or other carry systems in the form of a leg holster, or a special vest with various pockets. The tactical clothing company 511 have a pair of 'Defender' jeans with extra hidden pockets on the hips which are very useful.

There are two types of covert rig, the 'inductor' and the 'induction loop'. The inductor is a small plastic tab about 5cms long which is pinned to clothing in the area of your collar bone. This inductor transmits signals to your earpiece (which has to be fitted in the ear on the same side as the inductor) and also has a built-in microphone.

The induction loop is exactly that, a loop of flesh coloured wire that is worn over the head like a necklace and is also fitted with a microphone. With the loop it does not matter in which ear you wear your earpiece. The PTT is often worn down the sleeve and held in the hand unless it is the wireless type.

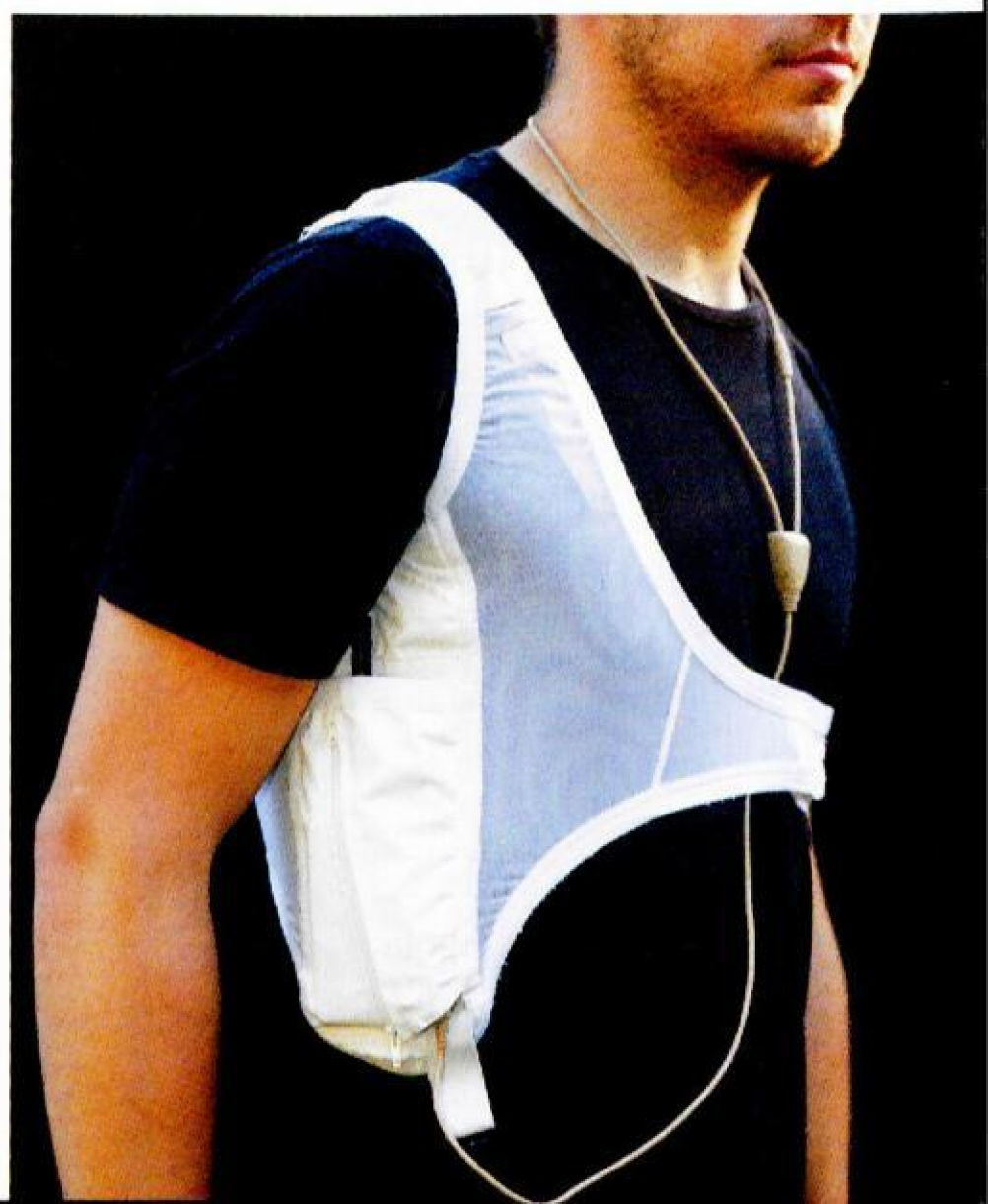
The 'Curlly Wurly' earpiece, they are not covert.

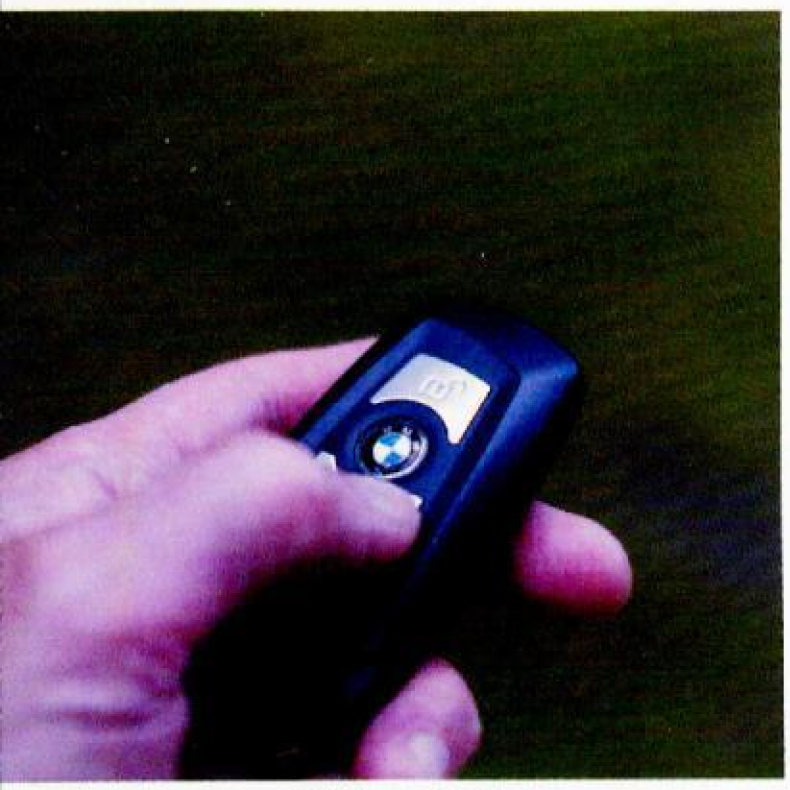


Watch the video about covert loops









Wireless PTT.

WALK AND TALK

Students on courses often find it very difficult to use covert radios in a natural manner until they have gained confidence after a few hours of practice. Remember that we have to act naturally in everything we do and it is not always easy when you have a lump of equipment strapped to your body and you are required to walk down the street whilst talking to yourself.

Have confidence in the equipment, this will come with constant practice.

- Relax, speak at a normal level and do not talk directly into your collar or microphone. It looks odd to see a person walking down the street with their chin glued to their chest.

- Do not worry about talking to yourself there are many people that do it! Obviously if you are in close proximity to someone (especially children) be extra cautious.

- You may have your PTT switch running down the inside of your sleeve, so keep your arm relaxed. Do not walk with your arm outstretched and appear as if you are carrying a bag with a bomb in it, relax the fingers and keep it out of view. If you are close to the target, keep your hand in your pocket.

- If you prefer to wear your PTT in your trouser pocket, check how the rest of the team are wearing theirs. If everyone wears it the same way, the team could give off a 'signature' of uniformity.

- Refrain from constantly touching the earpiece, an aware target may notice this - counter surveillance definitely will. If you are not hearing very well, the person transmitting may have to wear their microphone closer to their mouth. You can also adjust the volume up or down or move your inductor closer to your ear. Sometimes it is better to lower the volume so the loop does not 'over modulate' the earpiece.

- When you remove the earpiece, look and check the wax trap. If it is gunged up with earwax then it will greatly affect its performance as you wont be able to hear anything.

- Act naturally when you are listening to the commentary and avoid stopping mid street with a vague and distant look on your face. You will look unnatural and anyone who is aware may notice you acting oddly.

A covert system is a must for any foot surveillance work. Most professional surveillance operators carry a handheld set in a covert fashion in addition to their main car sets. The latest PTT switches are 'wireless' and resemble a car key fob so they can be used when wearing a T-shirt.

MOBILE PHONE

Mobile telephones are not recommended as a substitute for radios but they are essential as your secondary means of communication, especially with their unlimited talk range. With radios you will be able to call and speak to an unlimited number of people at the same time, with a mobile, you can only speak to one person unless you are using 'conference' calling, but this is not ideal.

Your mobile phone should always be handy and set to silent and vibrate mode if you are on foot. Always ensure that your Bluetooth is also switched off and not set to discoverable.

Covert Communications

ISS TRAINING LTD

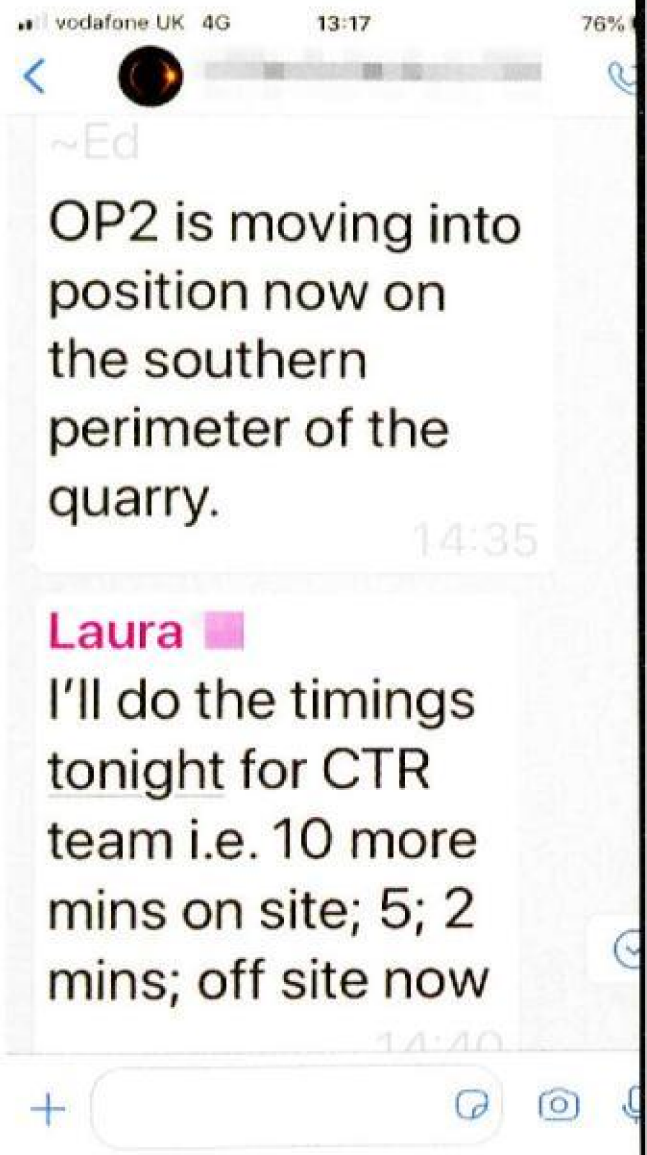
MOBILE APPS

Many phones these days can use an array of apps. WhatsApp is the most commonly used messaging service. You can set up a specific 'group' and add members of the team. You are then able to message, chat and send images to everyone at the same time. In addition, if your 'location services' are switched on, you can drop pin locations of where you are, and even monitor the location of the rest of the team by sharing their locations.





Whatsapp



AIRWAVE (TETRA) RADIO

TETRA or **AIRWAVE** radios are still being used by 'blue light' and public services but are difficult to obtain in the commercial sector.

The civilian alternative (and becoming more popular) are the 'Zello' walkie talkie style sets. Basically, they look like a conventional radio handset but in fact they contain smart phone technology and transmit over the 4G mobile phone network. They work in a similar fashion to Airwave having an unlimited range and use an app called 'Zello'.

They can be used from car to car and also on foot if fitted with the correct earpieces. If you also have the Zello app on your phone, the sets will also communicate to your phone. Having the whole team working on their phones with Zello installed could encounter problems, especially if they receive a phone call in the middle of a commentary (unless you carry two phones).

As these sets are reliant on the mobile phone network they can be somewhat unstable if there is a weak signal, also there is a distinct delay in between calls which can be unnerving. The Zello sets are great if operating on a budget but UHF and VHF radios are still very effective.





Zello enabled sets.

PROS & CONS OF USING ZELLO



PROS:

- Cheap alternative to radios
- Takes place of both car set and handset
- Unlimited range
- Works to your phone
- No need for external antenna

CONS:

- Unreliable signal
- Delay in transmissions
- Works with iPhone earpieces but not covert
- Tricky to set up

The whole team should not be using white headphones.



RADIO SECURITY

Radio transmissions are open to interception and so security is an important factor when transmitting messages. There's not much you can do to avoid interception, except use 'secure' digital radios which encrypt all messages, or use veiled speech and brevity codes.

In addition, there's also not much you can do to minimise the risk of interception by eavesdroppers except to use secure radios. Therefore the following should be considered:

- Use mobile phones to send sensitive information
- Keep transmissions to a bare minimum
- Change frequency regularly
- Refrain from sending 'identifiers' such as street names and place names
- Use prearranged brevity code words and phrases
- Use spot codes



BREVITY CODES AND IDENTITY SYSTEMS

As previously mentioned, the security of information passed over the radio is very important. Without encrypted radios it would not be practical to give sensitive information such as names, addresses, telephone numbers and vehicle details over the air. Anyone who is able to monitor your frequency or channel will soon know about the subject of your enquiry and your operation.

Brevity Codes

There is a simple system, generally used on the security circuit, which lets us assign identifier codes to our target plus anyone that he/she has contact with and there are several variants to it.

These codes aren't just for security. They are quick, accurate and unambiguous, enabling a slick and precise commentary.

For example:

A male is referred to as an	**ALPHA**
A vehicle is referred to as a	**BRAVO**
Property, such as a house or building is a	**CHARLIE**
A female is referred to as an	**ECHO**
Unknown person/vehicle referred to as an	**'UNKNOWN'**



- **Individuals**

So the primary target (if it is a male) would be known as 'Alpha 1'. If he meets another male, that male becomes 'Alpha 2' and so on.

Similarly, the primary female target would be known as 'Echo 1'. Or if 'Alpha 1' is your Target, his wife or partner will be referred to as 'Echo 1'.

By assigning individuals I.D. codes it creates less confusion when giving a radio commentary. During a surveillance, the target may meet up with an unknown male (who could be described as: male, white, thick black hair wearing a blue jumper with a white stripe across). Rather than use this awkward description every time you want to mention him, it is easier to refer to him as 'Alpha 2'.

- **Vehicles**

The primary vehicle used by 'Alpha 1' would be 'Bravo 1'.

Should you arrive at 'Alpha 1's' home address to commence a surveillance and find two vehicles in the driveway they could be designated 'Bravo 1' and 'Bravo 2'. Any subsequent vehicle related to the task would be further assigned 'Bravo 3, 4 and 5'.

- **Premises**

In a similar fashion, any property or building is referred to as a 'Charlie'. The primary building such as 'Alpha 1's' home address would be referred to as 'Charlie 1', his place of work as 'Charlie 2' and so on.

PROCEDURE

It is the team leaders task to designate all initial identity codes on a briefing sheet prior to any surveillance task. They will also nominate new codes during the surveillance as new targets, vehicle or places come into play. When a target is walking we refer to him as being **'foxtrot'**, and when he's in a vehicle he is **'mobile'**. It is very important not to get it this mixed up.

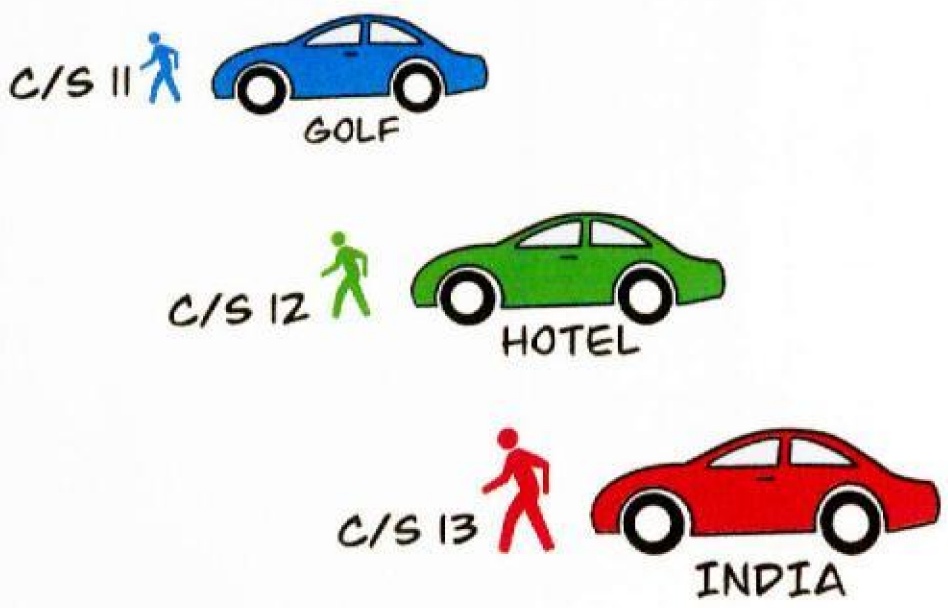


With the radio microphone wired and concealed in the car, the PTT is operated from the steering wheel.

RADIO CALL-SIGNS AND NETWORKS

The Police, Military and other Enforcement agencies use specialist call-signs as a matter of course. They not only identify the individual operator but also give an indication of what unit, sub-unit or team he belongs to. Complex callsigns and networks are only necessary when there are several operators on the ground with varying tasks.

On the commercial surveillance circuit, it is rare that we go out with two operators in one vehicle (two up) mainly due to the cost implications. When operating 'one up', we tend to keep to a personal call-sign, for example, Peter (Papa) and Tim (Tango).



ISS TRAINING LTD

ESTABLISHING COMMUNICATIONS

Prior to starting the task, make sure all radios are working properly and carry out a radio check to ensure that everyone can transmit to and receive each other. If there is a problem, sort it out there and then before getting out on the ground. Ensure the batteries are charged and that antennas are fitted correctly and tightly. Fresh batteries should be placed in covert earpieces ready for use.

Radio procedures differ from organisation to organisation such as military or police. The military way always states the other persons call-sign first and then state your own. So **PAPA** wanting to speak to **ROMEO** would be:

'ROMEO, PAPA?' (Romeo this is Papa)

'ROMEO, send' (This is Romeo, send your message).

Whereas the police method is the other way around.

'PAPA to ROMEO?' (Papa calling ROMEO)

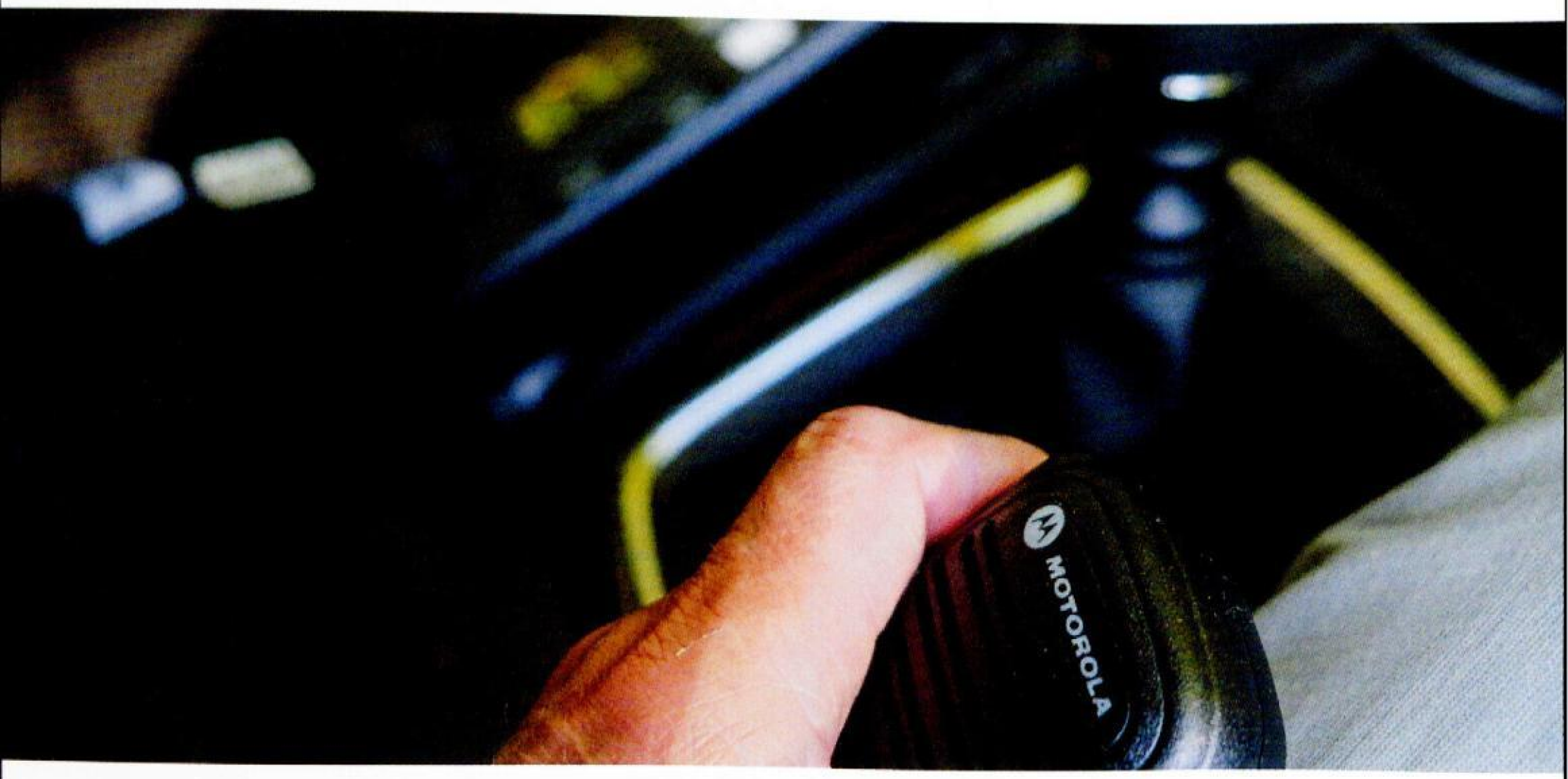
'ROMEO go ahead…'

Neither is incorrect, just say what you are used to.

Scan the code to download a copy of the Surveillance Glossary of Terms



Covert antenna





RADIOS CHECK - IT'S A THREE WAY THING...

YOU CALL
YOU GET A RESPONSE
YOU CLOSE IT

RADIO CHECK!

As already mentioned, you must establish comms and carry out a radio check before going out on the ground as well as when in position on the ground. If comms are poor due to distance for example, and you cannot receive the trigger person, it is you that will have to move to a better position (higher up, move closer or transmit over flat ground) because the trigger is the person who is static and cannot move anywhere.

Try to avoid calling all stations at once asking for a radio check. A disciplined and well rehearsed team will answer in alpha numerical order. An unrehearsed team will all answer at the same time causing confusion on the radio net.

A radio check is a three way thing: you initiate the radio check, you get a response, you then close the call. Some teams use the phrase '**Lima Charlie**' in place of '**loud and clear**'.

'ROMEO, PAPA, radio check'

'PAPA, loud & clear' ('difficult' if barely audible, or 'unworkable' if message is not understandable).

'ROMEO, okay out' (or roger that)

If you don't hear a reply, send another radio check. If you still do not get a reply then check:

- Is your set switched on?
- Is your volume turned up?
- Are you on the correct channel or frequency?
- Is your earpiece in and switched on?Is the battery secure and charged?
- Is the antenna securely in place?
- Make sure any ancillary equipment is plugged in properly.

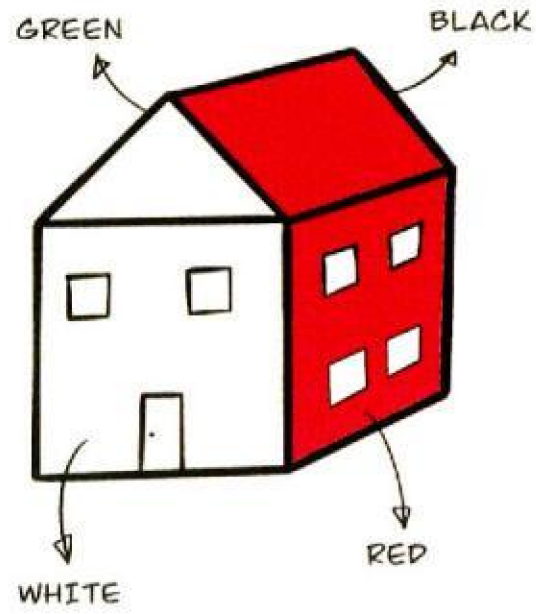
ISS TRAINING LTD

If there's still no reply, transmit over the air 'nothing heard' and immediately get on the phone to a team member to tell them you have a comms problem. There is no point in calling out ten radio checks if it is not working.

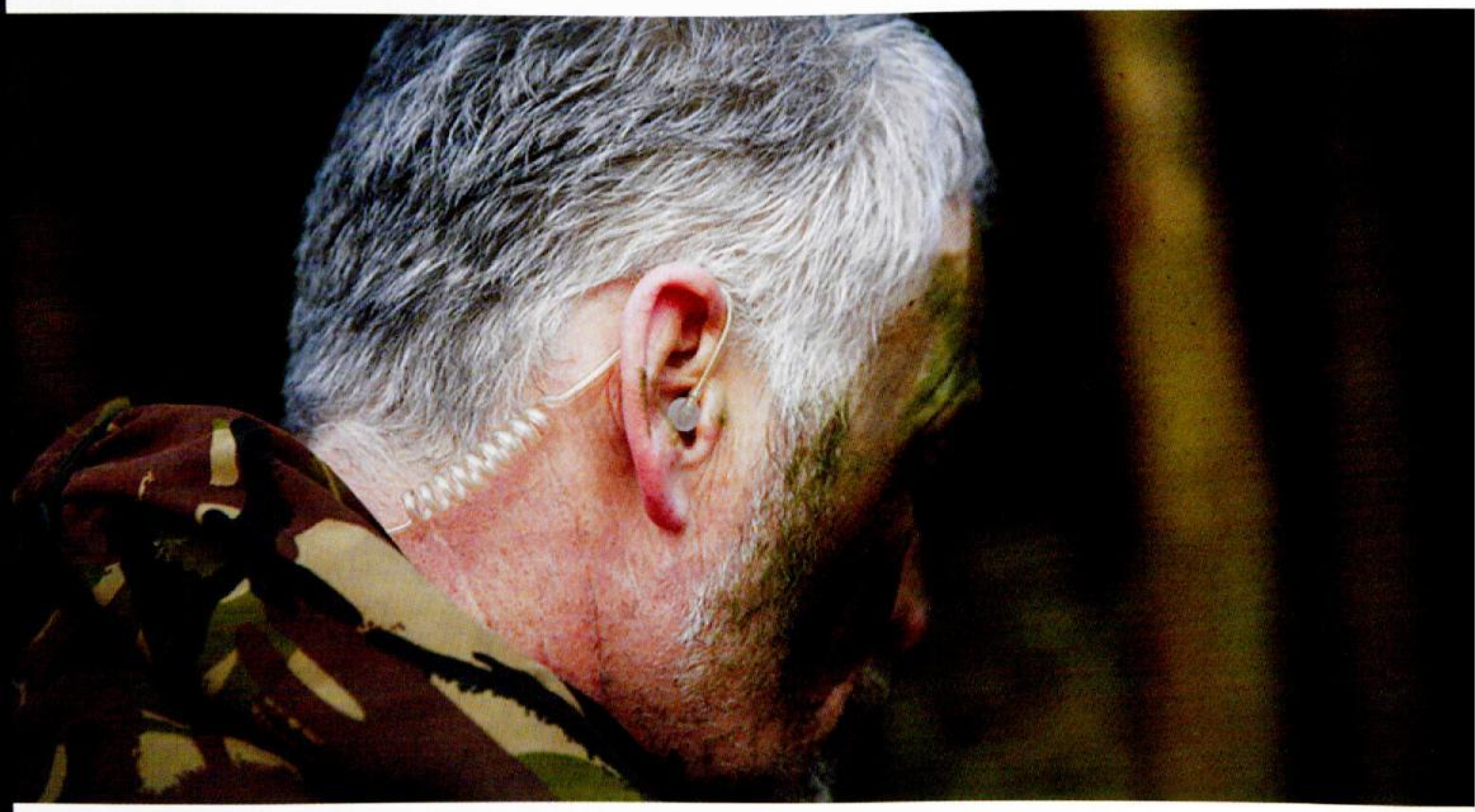
If experiencing comms problems whilst wearing covert body sets carry out the following:

- Your earpiece is in your ear and switched on. Some wireless earpieces give off a faint hiss, this tells you the battery is okay.
- Turn your radio off, wait for a few seconds and turn it on again. You should hear a confirmatory beep from the radio in your ear.
- Listen for commentary, if you do not hear anything, ask for a radio check or a 'five count' (1, 2, 3, 4, 5) so that you can adjust your volume to a comfortable level.
- Be careful of turning the volume up too high as this will 'over modulate' the earpiece and you will have difficulty listening.
- Do not turn your head over to the left if your microphone is worn on the right, your voice will travel in the opposite direction.

Many people from various organisations use the voice procedure that is best suited to them. In surveillance, the radio commentary has to be fast, accurate and to the point. To this end it is greatly abbreviated and words such as **OVER** or **OUT** are normally dropped altogether. Many people incorrectly use the word **OVER** to finish a transmission, this word actually demands a response. There is also no need for pleasantries such as: please, thank you or obliged.



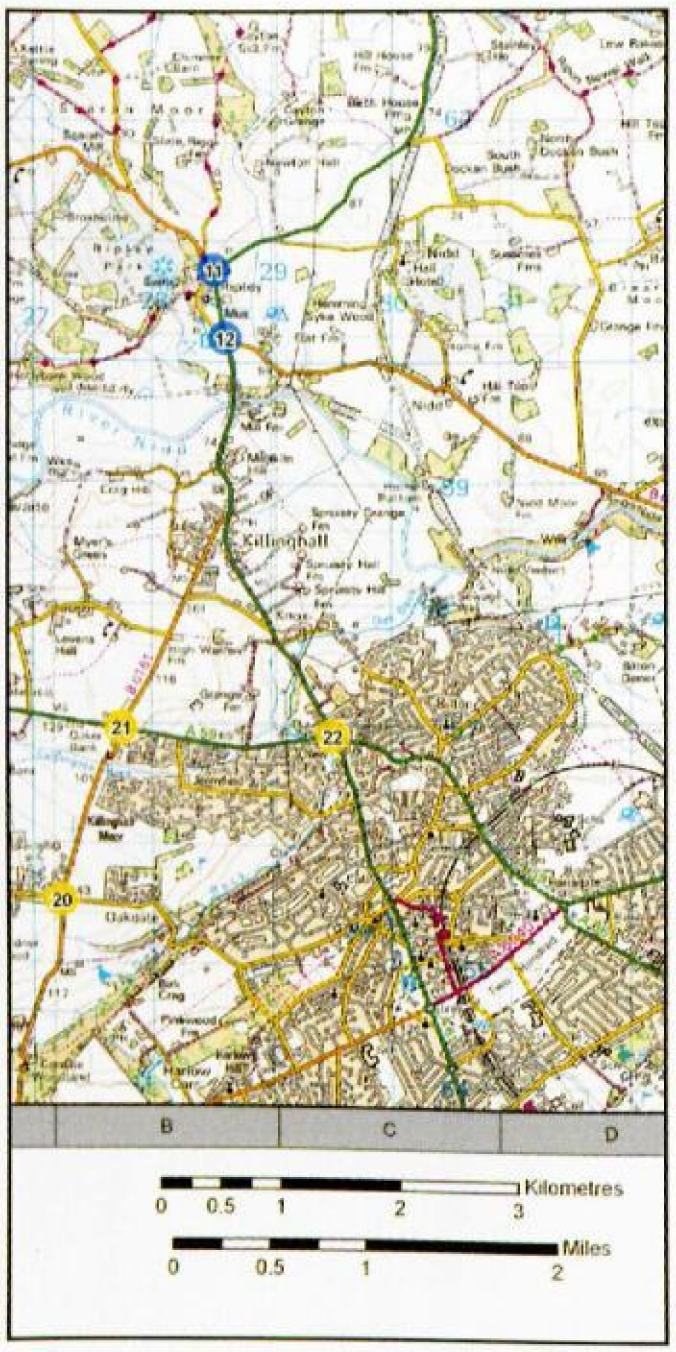
Coloured aspects of a building;
White = Front
Red = Right
Green = Left
Black = Rear





Share Live Location

It's good for the Shadow car to share its live location.



VOICE PROCEDURE

There are various common phrases or words used when transmitting over a network called 'pro-words'. At the rear of the book there is a Glossary of Terms, which details a number of pro-words and phrases commonly used in surveillance voice procedure.

Relay To...

Quite often, one operator may not be able to receive another due to the fact that he is out of range or there is an obstruction such as a hill blocking transmissions. If this is the case, then another operator (who may be located in between the two operators having difficulty) can pass on a message or 'relay' it between them by saying, 'Relay' and then pass the message on.

SHADOW CAR

Quite often, when a foot team is deployed, it is being 'shadowed' by one of the mobile units. One reason for this it so it can 'relay' (or repeat) messages from the foot callsigns with a much more powerful car radio so that all get to hear the transmissions.

EYEBALL PERMISSION?

Some enforcement agencies, especially the Police, use a strict method of control over the radio network. When the Eyeball is giving a radio commentary, he is in total control of the radio net and no one should interrupt the commentary for any reason.

Within these particular teams, if another member of the team wishes to speak, they firstly have to ask permission from the eyeball, for example:

'Car 1 has the Eyeball, that's the target still inside the premises, no change.'
'Car 2 to Car 1, Permission?'
'Car 1, go ahead...'
'Car 2, can you tell me what the target is wearing?' 'Car 1, yes, blue jeans and black T-shirt.'
'Car 2 received, back over to you.'

A well practised and disciplined operator should know when and when not to interrupt the Eyeball, so he should know when he can interrupt without all un-necessary waffle, such as:

'Car 2 to Car 1, what's he wearing?' 'Blue jeans and black T-shirt.'

'Car 2 Roger.'

RADIO DISCIPLINE

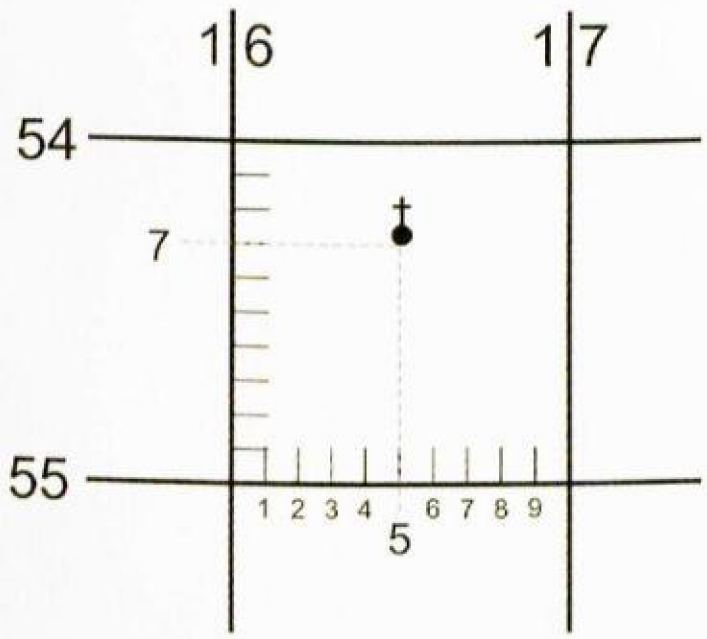
When words or car registrations have to be spelt out over the air the 'Phonetic Alphabet' is often used and is internationally recognised as a means of doing so. This is so that the letters of the words cannot be mistaken for any other and thus avoids confusion.

ISS TRAINING LTD

PHONETIC ALPHABET

A	ALPHA	N	NOVEMBER
B	BRAVO	O	OSCAR
C	CHARLIE	P	PAPA
D	DELTA	Q	QUEBEC
E	ECHO	R	ROMEO
F	FOXTROT	S	SIERRA
G	GOLF	T	TANGO
H	HOTEL	U	UNIFORM
I	INDIA	V	VICTOR
J	JULIET	W	WHISKEY
K	KILO	X	X RAY
L	LIMA	Y	YANKEE
M	MIKE	Z	ZULU

ALL SURVEILLANCE OPERATORS SHOULD KNOW THE PHONETIC ALPHABET



COMMENTARY DURING A SURVEILLANCE

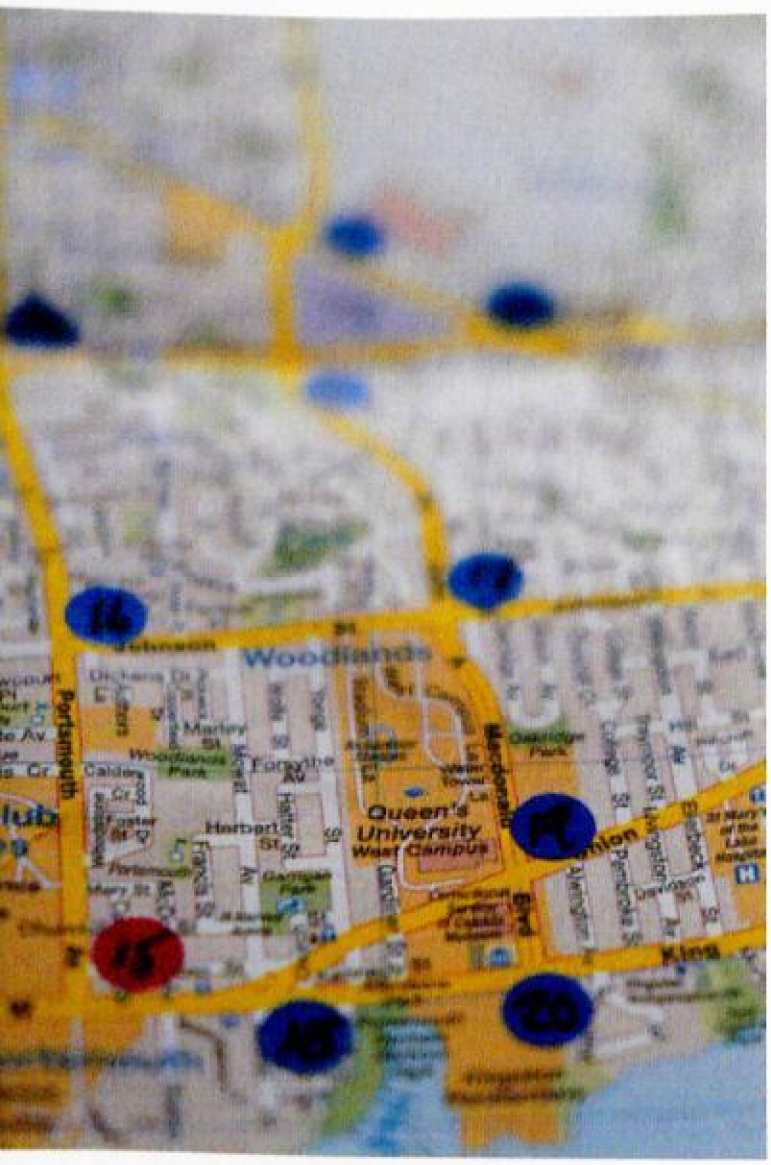
During a mobile or foot surveillance a running commentary should be given by the lead vehicle (eyeball) to the remainder of the team. It is possible that the 'trail' car is some 600 metres behind and driving blind and so he will be relying on the descriptions to put him in the right direction.

Commentary during a mobile surveillance is described fully in the chapter on mobile surveillance but should be clear, precise, timely and most importantly - relaxed.

The targets direction of travel (whether on foot or mobile) must always be given as 'Left', 'Right', 'Straight' or 'Reciprocal' (recip). These directions are always in relation to the target's 'Left' or 'Right' and not yours as you look at him. They are very important calls and so must be repeated just like a 'Stop Stop' or 'Standby Standby' not only to emphasise a change in direction, but also in the event of a part of the transmission being lost or unheard.

The terms 'left left' or 'right right' should never be used on their own; they should always be followed by 'towards', 'at' 'on' 'after' or 'before'. For example:

- Gone left left towards the church
- Gone right right at the post box
- Gone left left on Sand Street
- Gone right right after the post office
- Gone left left before the bridge



SPOT CODES

Spot codes are used to designate road names and junctions by means of allocating them a colour and a number. This provides two things; security on the radio net (by not giving specific road names over the air) and also to quickly communicates to the rest of the team the targets location and intentions.

On the commercial circuit they are normally used when operating in an area long term or when security is very important. If working abroad they are a must if you find it difficult to read and pronounce the local street signs (if there are any). It is far easier to say, '..that's at Blue 4 towards Blue 5..' rather than try to say, 'that's gone Left Left on Hugenshlaftendunst Strasse towards the Hauptbahnhof'. Not only is it difficult to say but the team also has to try and understand what you said.

Just by stating, 'That's at Blue 1 to Red 3' tells a picture of what direction the target is travelling and also his approximate location.

Depending on the locality, a small number of streets in the vicinity can be given a spot; alternatively a small village could have all its major junctions spotted as shown in the diagrams.

In addition to the above, if a call-sign gets into trouble and you are asking for their location; it is easier to say, '100m from Yellow 4' than it is to try and work out a 6 figure grid reference when you've been in an accident and you find yourself upside down in a ditch.

ISS TRAINING LTD

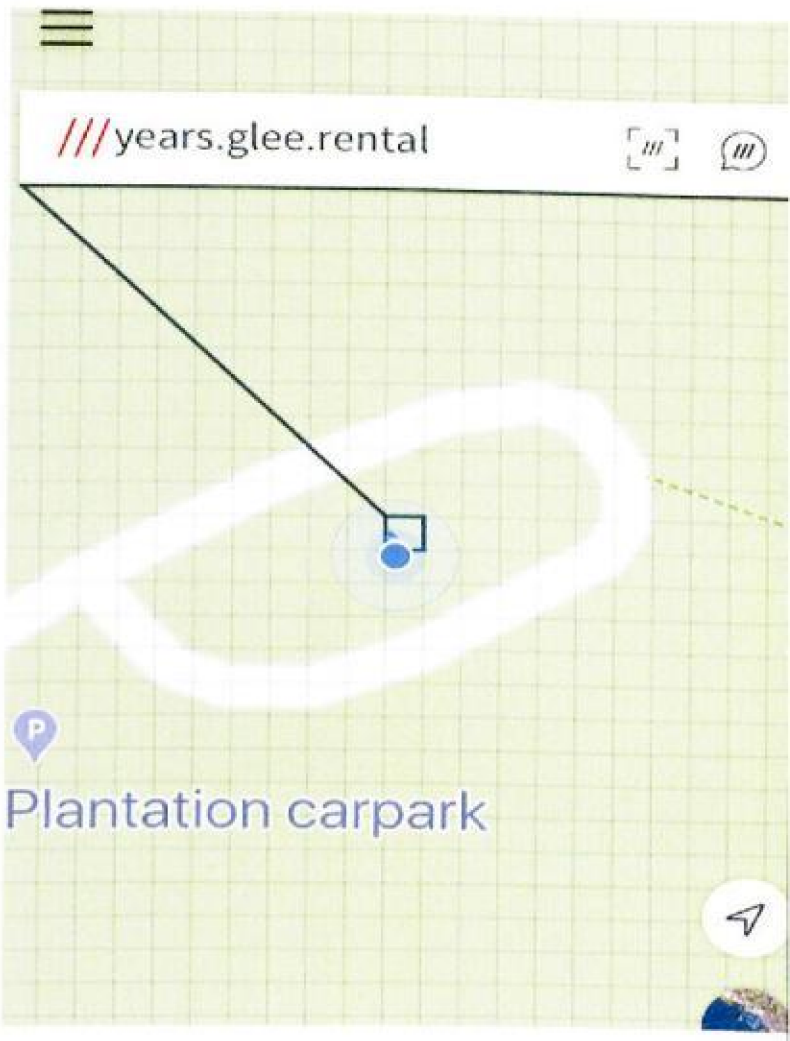
HAND SIGNALS

Hand signals are to be used when there is no other means of communication or when silence has to be maintained in a situation such as an OP. Should you be out on foot and communications is lost, you are much better off resorting to your mobile phone. Hand signals are to be avoided if at all possible because they create 'cross contamination'. If the target suspects that you are carrying out surveillance he will keep an eye on you. If he sees you make a gesture to someone else you have now compromised them by association.

BREAKTHROUGH

From time to time you will get 'breakthrough' on the radio net is someone nearby is also operating and transmitting on the same frequency and CTCSS codes. It happens because there are only so many frequencies to go around. Not all will be surveillance teams but other radio users such as construction sites, security guards, delivery drivers and taxis.

If you hear breakthrough, do not respond. Ignore it and switch channels. If you respond, the other users will only listen into your transmissions and may even mess you about by holding down their pressel or playing music over the radio net. It is possible that you may be able to hear the others but they are not able to hear you, especially if they are high up and using more powerful transmitters than you are.



WHAT 3 WORDS

Giving an 8 figure OS grid reference is quite daunting for some (and it only applies to the UK) to an accuracy of 10m square. Similarly Latitude & Longitude co-ordinates (51.5034° N, 0.1276° W) is even more intimidating. 'What 3 Words' has been developed as a simple and very accurate location/navigation system that can be used on the latest satnavs and mobile phone apps.

The designers at 'What 3 Words' have divided the entire planet into 3x3m squares (57 trillion of them). Each square has a unique address comprising of three random words which you type into the app and it displays the location. You can also do the reverse and find your location in three words which you can then send to colleagues or use in reports.



WHAT3WORDS

WHAT'S AT THESE LOCATIONS?

retaliate.patio.edit

seeing.overt.ignites

haircuts.bidder.area

mixtape.kiosk.sways

escalates.identify.trappings

ethic.wreck.broad

paint.cavity.clipper

soft.bucked.launch

warns.booed.snoring



THE CLICK SYSTEM

When it is not practical to speak, for instance you may be inside a shop or café or when it is difficult to use the radio, a procedure known as the 'Click System' can be used instead.

This system enables you to communicate by pressing the pressel switch (PTT) a given number of times, in answer to direct questions received. The receiving radio receives and hears these presses as 'clicks' or tones.

There are a number of variations to this system depending on the organisation using it. The military tend to use two clicks as YES (double click) and zero clicks for NO.

The Police and various Enforcement Agencies use this system:

4 CLICKS	=	**ASK ME A QUESTION**
3 CLICKS	=	**YES**
2 CLICKS	=	**NO**
RAPID CLICKS	=	**STANDBY**

In practical terms, the target may get onto a bus and hopefully a foot person will also get onto the bus. Prior to boarding, you have told the remainder of the team what you are doing. The team therefore don't expect you to give a verbal commentary as you might be in close proximity to others.

Hopefully you will have a team mate following the bus in a car to act as your back up. From the bus you want to communicate with your back up so you will instigate the conversation by giving four clicks (ask me a question). Your back up should hear the clicks and respond:

When you are somewhere quiet and cannot speak.



'Four clicks received, are you okay?'

To which you respond with three clicks (Yes).

'Is the target with anyone?'

Click, Click, Click (Yes)

'Three clicks received, roger that, are you able to get a picture and put it on Whatsapp?'.

Click, Click, Click (Yes)

'Three clicks received, do you want any more questions?'

Click, Click (No)

A few minutes later they may want an update on the situation.

'Eyeball, is there any change?'.
Click, Click (No)
'Roger that, two clicks - no change'.

When the target makes a move to get off the bus, you need to give a standby and this is done by a series of rapid clicks to which your back up should acknowledge with:

'Roger that, rapid clicks, Standby Standby.'

Be careful not to bombard the eyeball with unnecessary questions. The eyeball may be in a position where he is trying to overhear conversation or remember certain facts. Remember, you can only ask direct questions which require a Yes or No answer.

BEST PRACTICE

The best practice in surveillance commentary is to say exactly what you see, say it calmly, clearly with precision and at the correct time. Always listen to the radio net before transmitting as there is nothing worse than being in the middle of a transmission when someone else steps right on top of you when they should have waited.

Remember, the whole point of the commentary is to tell those behind you (or on parallels) exactly what the target is doing and where they are going. It is also the job of the eyeball to bring back anyone that is detached from the team by providing good clear directions.

It is not always essential to use codes and brevity but they do help speed up what you are trying to put across. There is no such thing as right or wrong in 'surveillance speak'. Each agency, organisation or company has its own way so if it works for you, it works. The style of commentary used throughout this book is the one generally used by most surveillance operators working the security circuit in the UK.

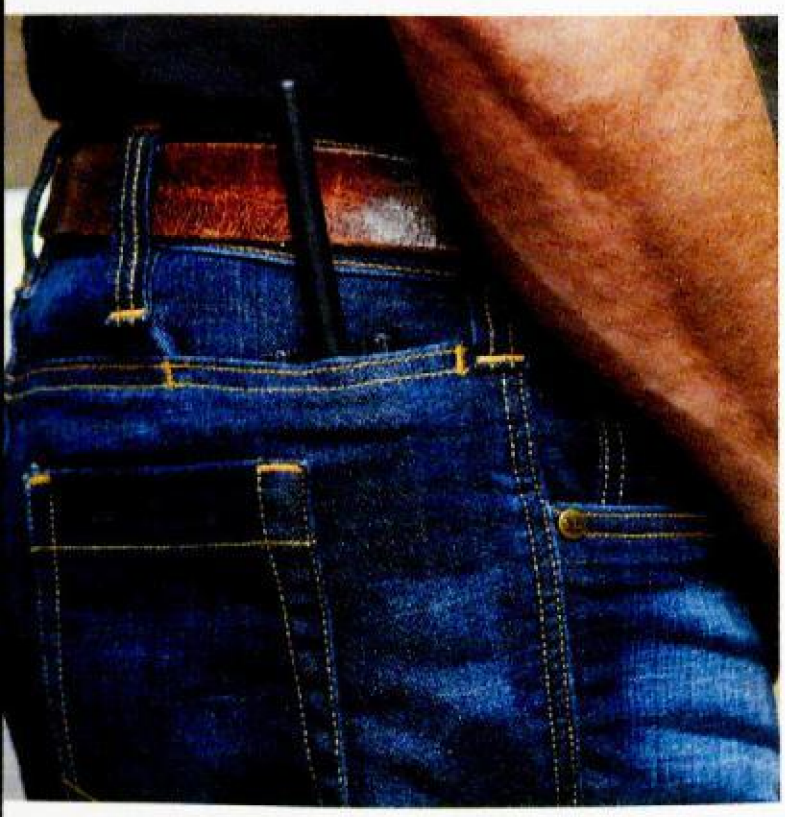
ACCURACY: Everyone uses the same words and phrases

BREVITY: Keep sentences short and quick

CLARITY: No two codes or phrases should be the same

DICTION: Clear and precise

ENCRYPTION: Use code words and spots to reduce compromisesmises



These 'tactical' jeans from 5:11 have two hidden pockets ideal for small radios or a phone.

CHAPTER THREE QUESTIONS

1) Explain the following terms and expressions used in surveillance:

Eyeball
Backing
No longer backing
Touch Red
Offside
3 o'clock position

2) Give the phonetic meaning for the following letters:

D
S
F
W

3) Describe the alternative methods of communication.

4) Describe the 'click' system of covert communication.

5) Describe the ways of keeping sensitive information secure when using the radio.

6) Explain why a mobile call-sign 'shadows' a foot team.

7) List the phonetic alphabet.

8) Calculate the length of a 'quarter wave' antenna to be fitted to your car when your operating frequency is 172.5MHz

9) Explain why WhatsApp is a useful communication tool in surveillance.

10) Explain the disadvantages of using the Zello app over VHF radio.

Q&A

FOLLOW THE QR CODE TO TAKE YOU TO THE QUESTION & ANSWER 'HELP' PAGES.

ISS TRAINING LTD

ASSESSMENT TIME!

1) Explain the following terms and expressions used in surveillance:

Eyeball

Backing

No longer backing

Touch Red

Offside

3 O'clock Position

2) Give the phonetic meaning for the following letters:

D

S

F

W

3) Describe the alternative methods of communication.

4) Describe the 'click' system of covert communication.

5) Describe the ways of keeping sensitive information secure when using the radio.

6) Explain why a mobile call-sign 'shadows' a foot team.

7) List the phonetic alphabet.

8) Calculate the length of a 'quarter wave' antenna to be fitted to your car when your operating frequency is 172.5MHz.

9) Explain why is WhatsApp a useful communication tool in surveillance.

10) Explain the disadvantages of using the Zello app over VHF radio.

Chapter Four

EQUIPMENT



The equipment list is endless but to operate as an effective surveillance operator, you will need the basics.

Equipment has to be cost effective, long lasting, efficient and most importantly, reliable. It is equally important to know how to use it correctly and know how to manage when it goes faulty. Most surveillance operators make use of a small 'car bag' which is easily portable and carried to and from vehicles, hotels and the office.

The minimum equipment an operator should carry on his person or in his vehicle should be:

- Mobile Phone
- Radio
- Memo Recorder
- Log Sheets or Notebook
- Camera (Video, Stills or both)
- Binoculars
- Money
- Penlight Torch
- Maps & Satnav
- Identification or Driving Licence
- First Aid Kit



RADIO EQUIPMENT

As we have mentioned several times, communications are a very important factor in surveillance work where investigators have to work as a team. Therefore, it is essential that the correct equipment is fitted into the vehicle and on your person in the event you have to deploy on foot.

MEMO RECORDERS

Digital memo recorders (Dictaphones) are a must and are ideal for recording events as they happen, especially when you do not have time to write down notes during a mobile surveillance.

LOG SHEETS OR NOTEBOOK

Dedicated log sheets or a notebook should be kept as described in the chapter on Legal Issues. It is handy to have your logs attached to a small clipboard and kept to hand.

CAMERAS

Choosing and using a type of camera is personal preference whether it is a video camcorder or a digital SLR. Most SLR cameras shoot HD video and stills but are more technical to use. Many operators shoot video all the time, the image quality may not be there, but they are very simple to use.

The mirrorless Fujifilm XT-3 the authors current 'go to' camera. High quality video and stills from such a lightweight camera.



ISS TRAINING LTD

USING CAMCORDERS

To some extent, video cameras are probably used more often in investigative work than D-SLR cameras, especially if you are investigating 'personal injury' type insurance claims. This type of video evidence is essential in order to record physical activity and movement but camcorders are unforgiving and can make you look very unprofessional.

When filming, be aware of the following which could reduce the quality of your footage:

- **Over-use of Zoom**

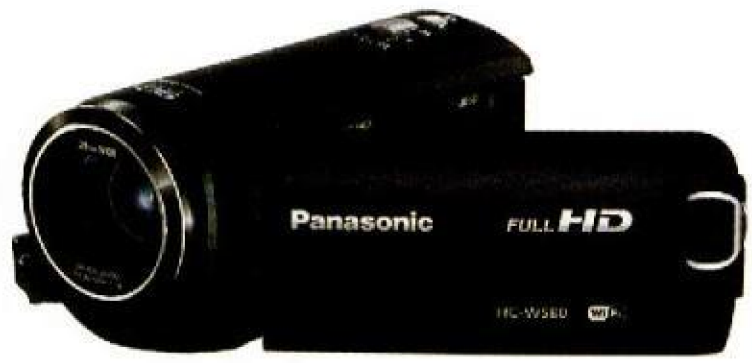
It is irritating to watch videos where there is an over use of the zoom control. Because it is there, we feel that we have to use it, but it can be very frustrating to watch footage that continually zooms in and out of shot.

- **Camera Shake**

Camera shake is very noticeable when using video, especially when filming at the top end of your zoom. The way you hold your camera will greatly affect your picture taking and make all the difference. The following should assist in taking a steady shot:

- Grip the camera firmly with both hands and support the lens
- Stand or sit in a position where you will not sway about, use a support to lean against, keep your elbows tucked into your body for support
- Hold your breath or use shallow breathing
- If filming from a vehicle, turn the engine off
- Ensure that your camera has an 'Anti-Shake' feature
- Use a support such as a mono-pod or tripod
- Avoid using the top end of the zoom

Ensure that your mobile phone or radio is away from the camera whilst you transmit/talk, otherwise the radio waves disturb the camera's electronics and can cause interference.



The cameras settings should be set to a minimum of 30fps and a compression of at least 1080p.



This Panasonic camcorder can be left for two days to continuously record onto a 400Gb micro SD card.



- **Sound / Audio**

Video evidence rarely requires audio on the tape unless voices or certain sounds need to be heard as part of the evidence. A dummy plug (2.5mm jack plug) pushed into the external microphone socket disables the built in microphone and prevents recording of any unwanted sounds. Radio voice procedure, background noises/voices and even the odd piece of bad language do not need to be recorded.

- **Don't Forget to Synchronise**

If you are using two or more cameras on the same investigation, ensure that all the timers are synchronised. This should be a professional habit carried out by all operators every morning.

BINOCULARS



Nikon Prostaff 7S Binoculars. 8 x 42

There are many different types of binoculars available and a pair should be selected for their cost, robustness, size and magnification. It is not always the best thing to opt for the most powerful pair you can lay your hands on, nor the smallest pair.

- **Magnification**

The power of a pair of binoculars refers to the number of times the subject in view is magnified. Lenses with a power of 'times 8' (8x) magnify the subject by bringing it 8 times closer. This has the effect of making an object which is 400 metres away appear to be only 50 metres away.

Binoculars are commonly quoted with a magnification number such as 8 x 25. As mentioned, the 8x refers to the lens magnification, the 25 relates to the diameter in millimeters of the objective lens (the larger lens at the front). This is important as the larger the objective lens is, the more effective they will be in low light. If you intend to use your binoculars mostly in the dark hours such as dusk and dawn, then the larger the objective lens the better.

A magnification of about 10 times is suitable to avoid erratic shaking being magnified too.

MONEY

Cash should always be carried and a handful of change should always be left in the car for car parks, tolls and public transport.

TORCH

A small penlight torch is useful for map reading or note taking at night and will save your night vision rather than having to switch on your car's interior light.

SAFETY EQUIPMENT

If you have a small compartment in the floor of your car or in the boot, store a box of safety kit containing items such as: tow rope, jump leads, high-visibility vest, space blanket, first aid kit, screen wash, torch, water, voltage inverter, de-icer, ice scraper, multi-tool kit, hand wipes and tyre weld.

ISS TRAINING LTD

MAPS AND SATELLITE NAVIGATION

Maps are a must in surveillance, whether they are A-Z street maps or larger scale 1:50,000 Ordnance Survey maps. Satnavs are worth their weight in gold these days especially if you are at the back of a mobile team and trying to play catch up. Satnavs also give you important information such as traffic cameras, car parks and one-way systems.

INDENTIFICATION CARDS

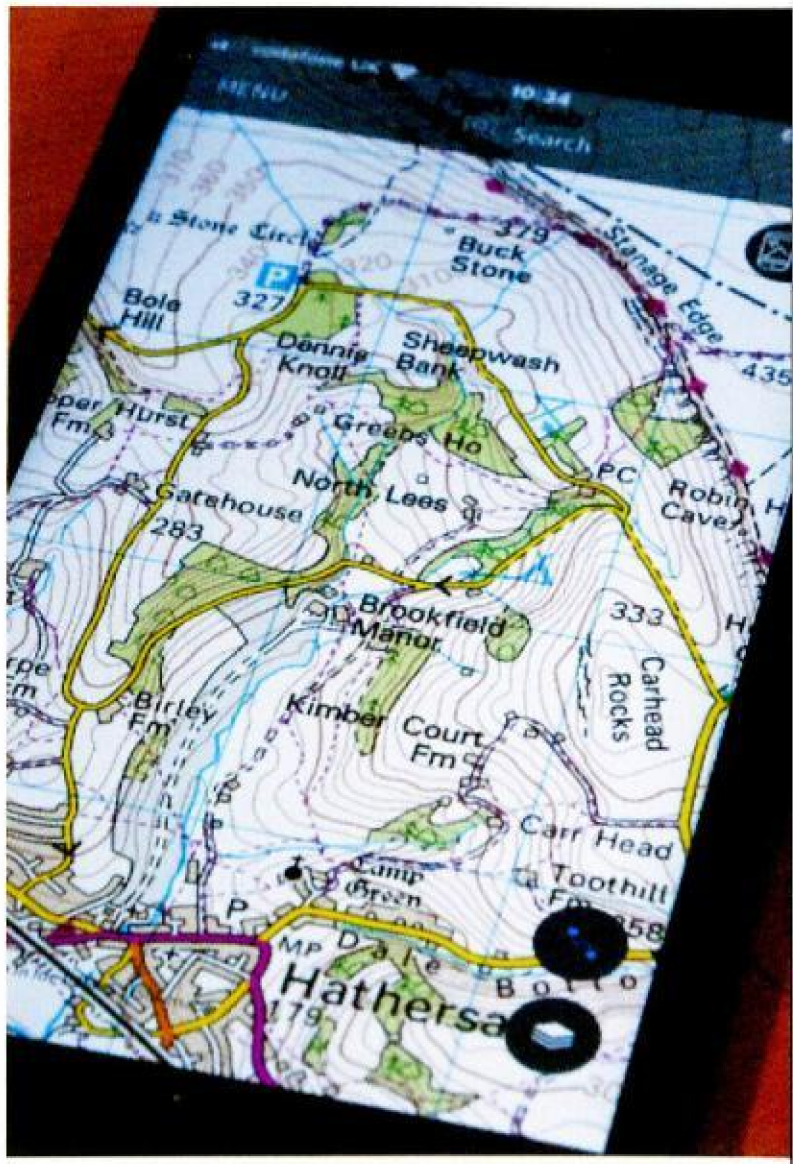
Most people carry some form of identification and it may be wise to carry your driving licence with you during surveillance. Inevitably, you will be stopped by the Police from time to time who will ask for some form of identification. If you belong to a trade association such as the 'Association of British Investigators' or have a business card, then carry these with you also.

COVERT VIDEO CAMERAS

Quite often, you will have to get out on foot and take your camera with you. Obviously you will not want to walk around the streets with a camera overtly in your hand (unless the situation permits it) and so there are various covert cameras on the market. Some are expensive but you get what you pay for; the 'Lawmate' brand are very good and supply HD cameras in various disguises that can be taken almost anywhere.

Popular are those disguised as:

- Key Fob
- Coffee Cup Lid
- Water Bottle



OS Maps on your mobile phone are extremely useful.



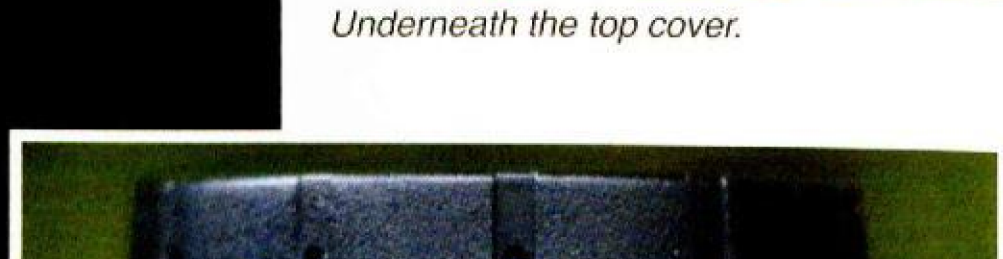
HD key fob camera.

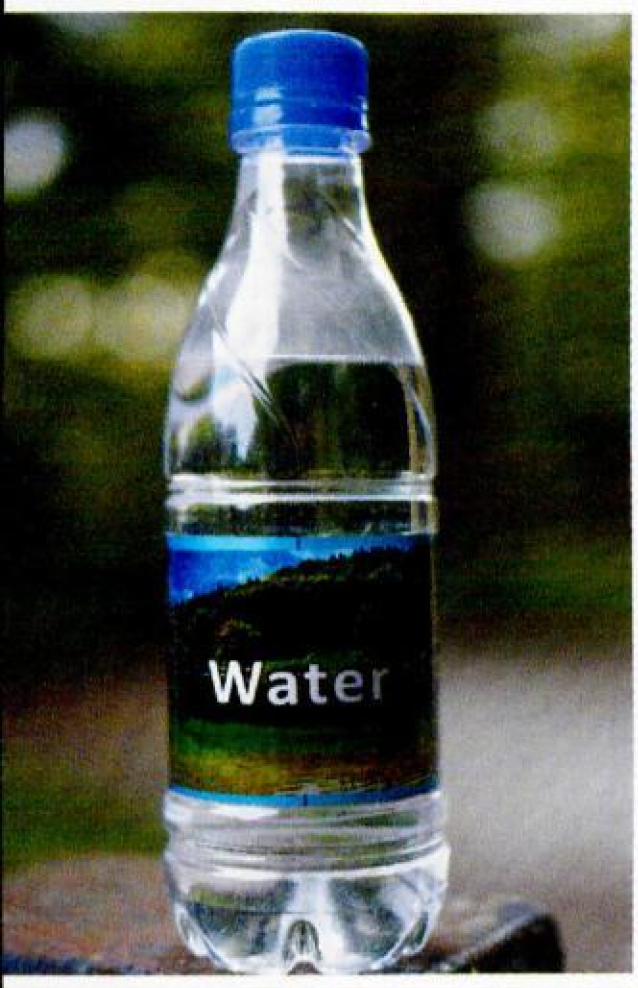


Underneath the top cover.

This 'lid' fits onto any standard size coffee cup and is very simple to use.









This bottle can be filled with water and is very effective for covert images.



TAKING COVERT PHOTOGRAPHS IN PUBLIC

Sometimes you may be in a busy crowded area where you have to take covert (or candid) pictures and be quite 'overt' with your camera. There are few techniques you can use to prevent you getting lynched. If you have a telephoto lens attached, this may obviously be more noticeable than one with a short focal length and could attract unwanted attention.





Images taken with the coffee cup.

- Ensure that your camera is not in 'Auto' mode; you do not want the flash popping up.
- Position yourself where the subject will naturally walk towards you or face in your direction, use distance and a telephoto lens.
- Ask a colleague to pose just in front and to the side of your subject to capture them but remember to focus on the subject and not your colleague. You could do this close up with a wide angle lens.
- Snap away! Take lots of pictures of everywhere in the area, to the left, to the right and then towards your subject but make sure you shoot on continuous when you catch them in the frame. Alternatively, pan from side to side (preferably in the same direction the subject is moving), whilst shooting in 'continuous' mode.
- Shoot through cover and use distance.
- If your subject happens to look in your direction as you take a picture, wave to an imaginary friend just over their shoulder or walk towards them focusing your eyes on a point in the distance behind them. Avoid eye contact and act natural.
- Hold your camera at waist level or hung around your neck pointing in the subject's general direction and take a series of shots. Set your camera's image size to its largest (you may have to crop it later) and consider using wide angle. After a bit of practice, you will get some good shots.

ISS TRAINING LTD

USING A SMART PHONE

The cameras in today's smartphones are very good and can be used to take covert pictures or video.

- If you are fairly close to the subject, you can always pretend to take a 'selfie' but use the rear-facing camera to point towards the subject or put it into video mode.

- Use the screen's brightness control to darken it so that you will not be openly noticed using the camera. Alternatively, you can download one of the many apps that let you take covert photographs.



Observation Camera (silent)

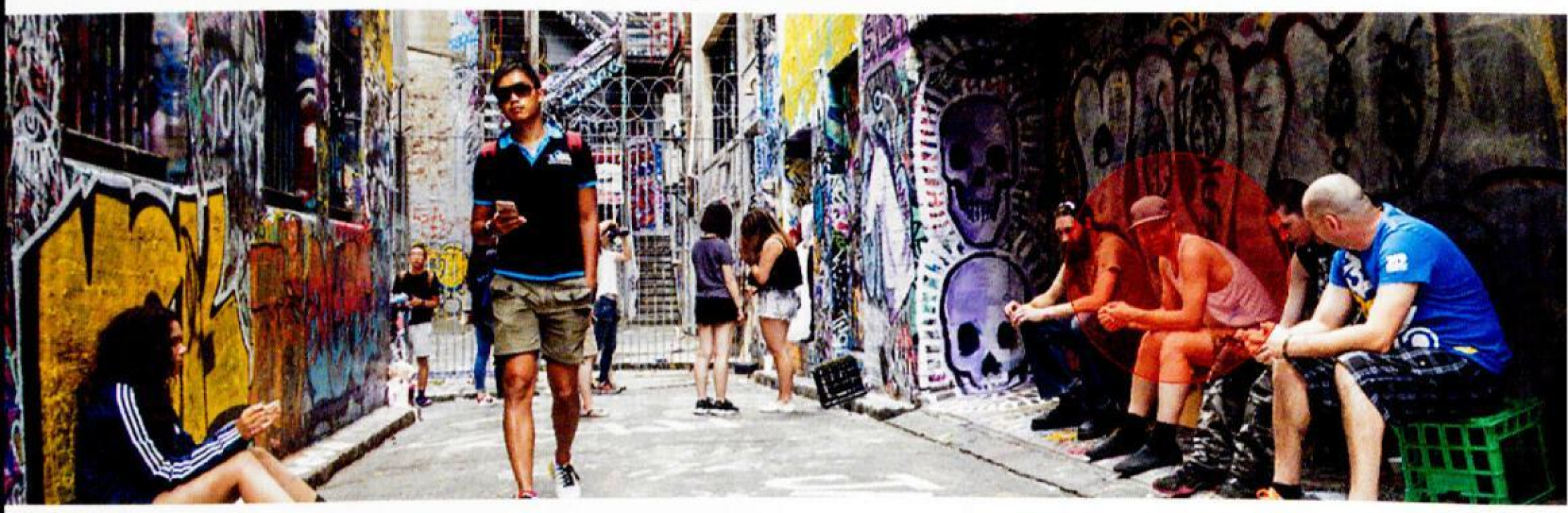
Many Apps are available to operate your phones camera covertly.

If you have an iPhone with a set of headphones attached (the type with a volume control), you can use the volume + and – buttons to act as a remote shutter release to prevent you from fiddling with the phone.





Take sweeping shots of everything to capture your target.



RAPID DEPLOYMENT CAMERAS



The 'Litl Acorn' 5210A 950nm version has fully covert infrared lighting.



Simple to set up, quick to deploy.

This image shows a masked gamekeeper involved in illegal badger trapping taken on a Litl Acorn camera.

TRAIL CAMERAS

Trail cameras are designed to be left in a forest to photograph wildlife such as deer and badgers. They are inexpensive, fairly small, easily set up and can be camouflaged to point towards the target, using re-chargable batteries the camera will easily last a number of months. They have been used extensively in rural areas investigating environmental and wildlife crime.

'LITL ACORN' CAMERA

On the exterior it has the lens, a PIR movement sensor, and an array of infrared LEDs for night photography. Once set, the camera can be left in situ until it detects movement. Depending on how the camera is programmed, it can take a timed video clip or take a series of still images which are stored onto the SD card as JPEG files.

The 'Litl Acorn' series of cameras cost around £120 and offer fantastic results.



With the lens covered over, this camera has been smeared in Vaseline and then rolled around in dirt and foliage to add camouflage.



ISS TRAINING LTD

'MOBIUS 2' CAMERA

This camera is very small, operates by motion detection and can be concealed almost anywhere. When fitted with a 200Gb micro SD card and connected to a powerbank, it will record in high quality for a number of days.



The Mobius 2 concealed in a mossy wall.









The latest 1TB Micro SD card.

CHECK WHEN DEPLOYING REMOTE CAMERAS

If you are using these camera systems, there are various checks to be made before, during and after deployment. You should check:

- Batteries are charged and connected correctly.
- The SD card is reformatted - this is essential.
- Camera lens is clean and concealed in a 'Trojan'.
- The date & time is set correctly.
- Other settings such as motion detection are correctly set.
- The unit is weather proof and suitably camouflaged.

It is recommended that the resolution and recording quality is set to the highest possible setting, as it is likely that the batteries will fail long before the memory is actually full.

High quality video.



TRACKING DEVICES

Tracking devices are playing more of a role in support of conventional surveillance these days. Not only are they freely available, they are reasonably cheap to purchase and a cost effective way of carrying out surveillance. They are extremely accurate but it must be remembered that technical equipment has limitations It is prone to failure and the information that the device provides only tells you where the tracker or vehicle is. It does not provide any personal or private information about the target's activities.

Trackers can be fitted to a vehicle with magnets (or concealed in products) and report its location and status to you either live as it happens or when you request it. These devices normally contain a SIM card as they use the communications network to send location data to your mapping software on a computer, a server or to your mobile phone.

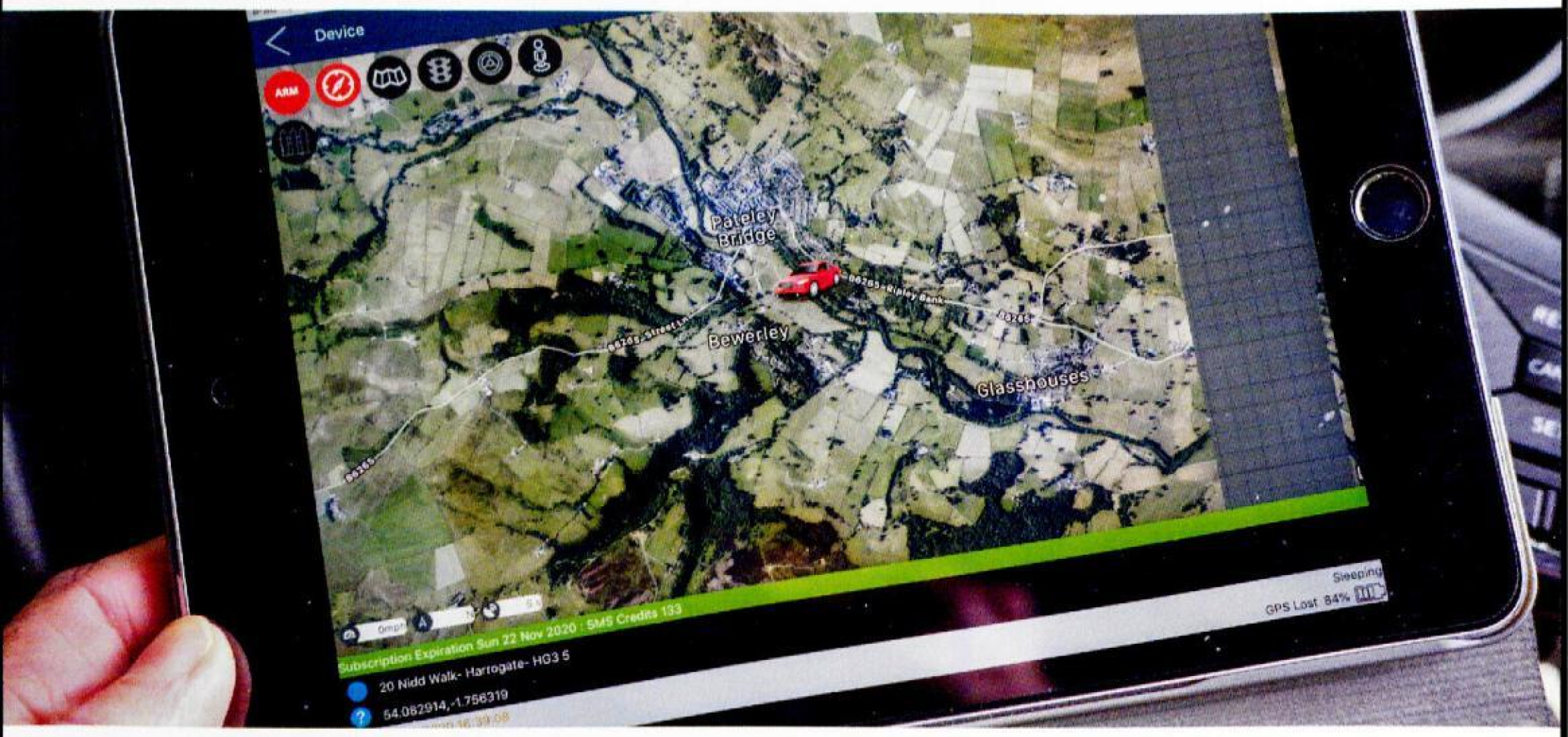
WHY USE TRACKERS?

There is nothing better than having actual 'eyes on' the target. A good surveillance team will be able to keep control of the target by always having him in view, but this is not always possible. We tend to use trackers for the following reasons:

- To monitor routine activity
- To monitor activity of an aware target
- To minimise risks against high threat targets
- To recover after a total loss
- To provide a trigger and keep control when 'Un-sighted'
- To track the movements of products
- To identify if the target is drilling



iPad used to monitor the target.



TO MONITOR ROUTINE ACTIVITY

Surveillance can be costly in terms of manpower, resources and expense, so if you can achieve a result by deploying a tracker you will save a lot of time, effort and your clients money. Trackers may be used at the start of an investigation to establish patterns of movement and areas visited by the target. This may then warrant further and more detailed investigation or conventional surveillance on a particular day or time.

TO MONITOR ACTIVITY OF AN AWARE TARGET

An aware target is likely to carry out anti-surveillance drills in order to detect surveillance and those that may be following him. He is also likely to drive at excessive speeds in order to detach himself from surveillance. Consequently, a target can carry out as many drills as he wants to, check his rear view mirrors and even deploy counter surveillance but a tracker placed on the car will always have him under control.

TO MINIMISE RISKS AGAINST HIGH THREAT TARGETS

Trackers fitted to a vehicle can also minimise risks to surveillance teams. Many Enforcement Agencies, even the Police, have to conduct risk assessments in order to minimise dangers in what is a hazardous occupation. If an aware target identifies surveillance, the team may be attacked; led into a trap or forced to drive dangerously in urban areas.

TO RECOVER AFTER A TOTAL LOSS

If your target is in and out of very busy traffic in city centres where there is high risk of losing him, a tracker can be installed to act as a back up to conventional surveillance. If you lose sight of him it is easy to request a position and control is regained within a short space of time.

I know many commercial investigators that carry out single handed surveillance together with the deployment of a tracker. This way they can keep their distance to avoid being spotted, and if they have a loss they can use it to quickly pick up the target again.

You'll never have a loss and relocation is quick.



Tracking platform from Gotek 7.





This 'skinny' device can go behind a number plate or inside a wing mirror.

TO PROVIDE A TRIGGER AND KEEP CONTROL WHEN 'UN-SIGHTED'

It could be that a target resides in a rural area or an urban area which is very difficult to trigger. A tracker can be installed so that as soon as the vehicle moves it sends a report to the operator so the team can be put on standby.

The vehicle can then be tracked technically until one of the team picks it up conventionally and the surveillance commences.

In addition, if the target enters an area which is out of bounds to a surveillance or it is deemed too dangerous or risky to the team, the tracker can come into its own and the task can be carried out technically.

Live monitoring can then take place and an accurate radio commentary be given by the controller. He will be able to give the speed, changes in direction and any stops or starts as they happen, whilst the surveillance team position themselves to 'box' in the target.

TO TRACK THE MOVEMENTS OF PRODUCTS

Trackers are not only used to track vehicles. Due to their small size, they can also be used to track products being shipped anywhere in the world. Trackers will operate if they have sufficient power and they can receive a signal from the navigational satellites.

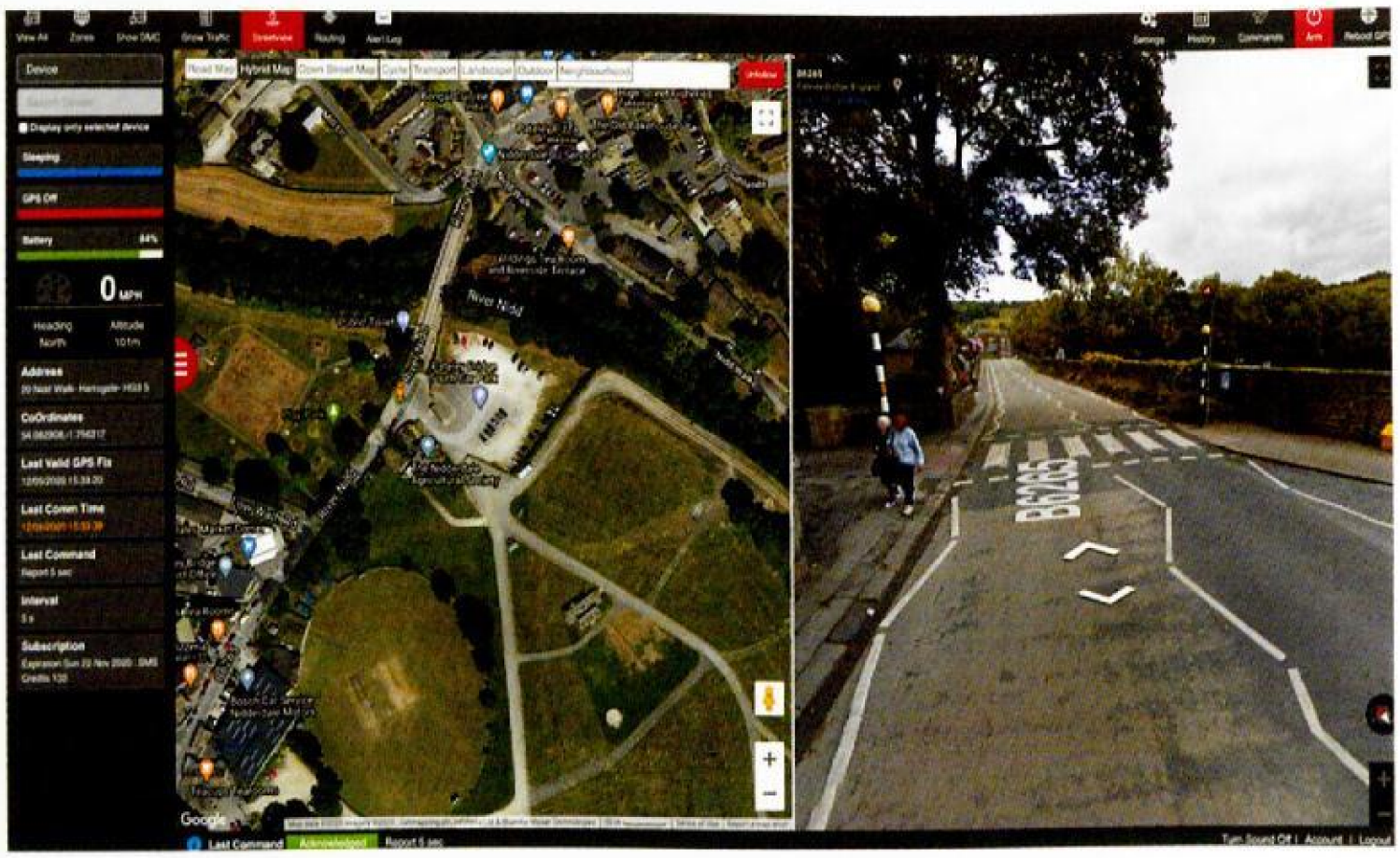
TO IDENTIFY IF THE TARGET IS DRILLING

By analysing the tracking history file, you may be able to identify whether the target is carrying out anti surveillance by looking for; stops in unusual places, (especially shortly before a 'proper' stop where he maybe visiting). Also alternating speed or going down dead ends and turning back without stopping.

Tactical Tracking App.



Street View mode



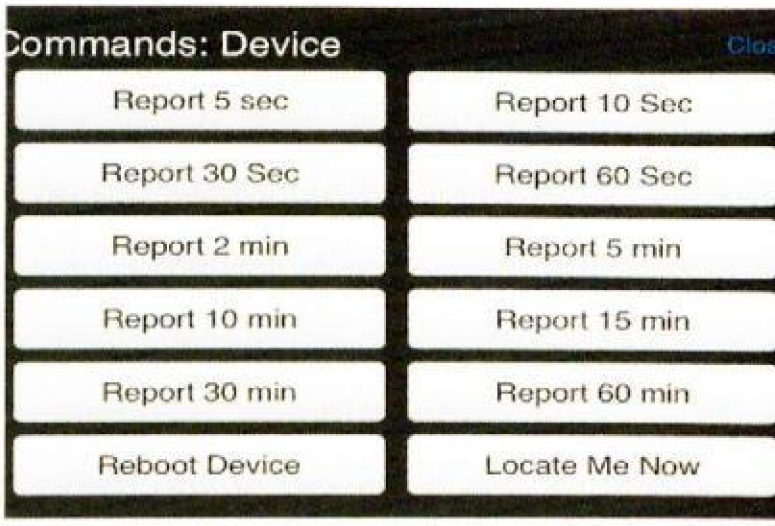
ISS TRAINING LTD

HOW DO TRACKING DEVICES WORK?

There are many different types of trackers but most operate in the same way. The device needs to 'see the sky' in order to get a signal from the satellites and it will receive the signals through plastic, wood and fabric but not metal, so care has to be taken when placing the device.

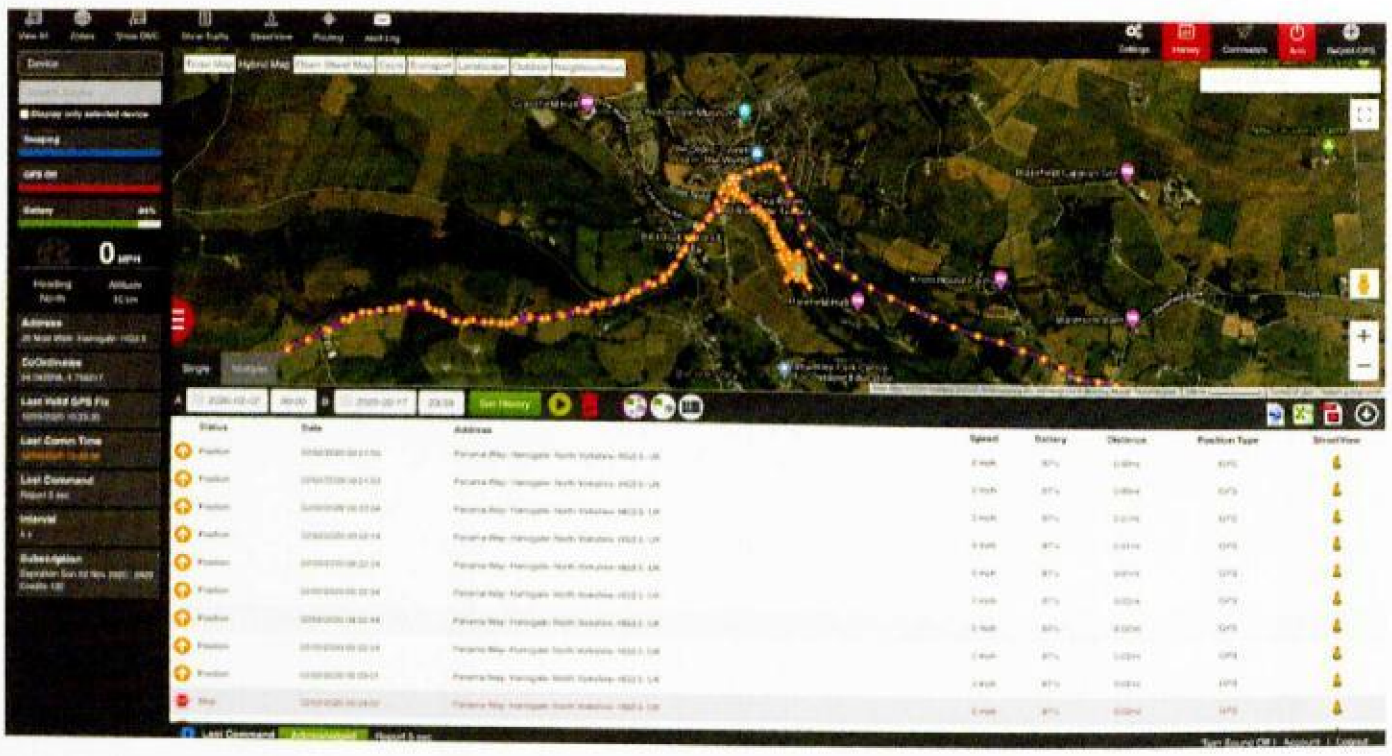
The device takes readings from the satellites every few seconds and transmits the location co-ordinates via a sim card over 4G (or GPRS). The frequency of reporting depends on how the device is configured to talk to the main server (normally hosted by the manufacturer). Therefore it needs a phone signal in order for it to operate.

The operator will use a mobile phone (or tablet) with the manufactures app to control it or use a computer by logging in via a browser.

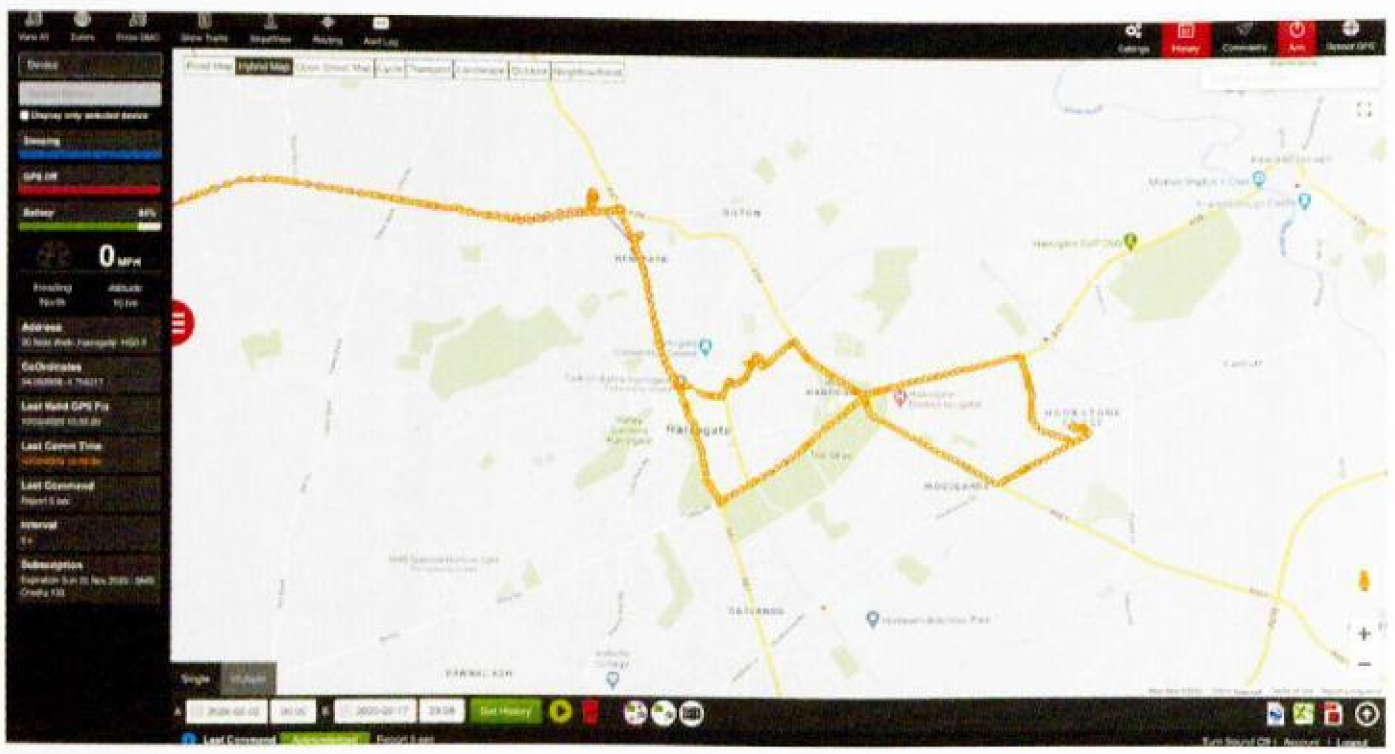


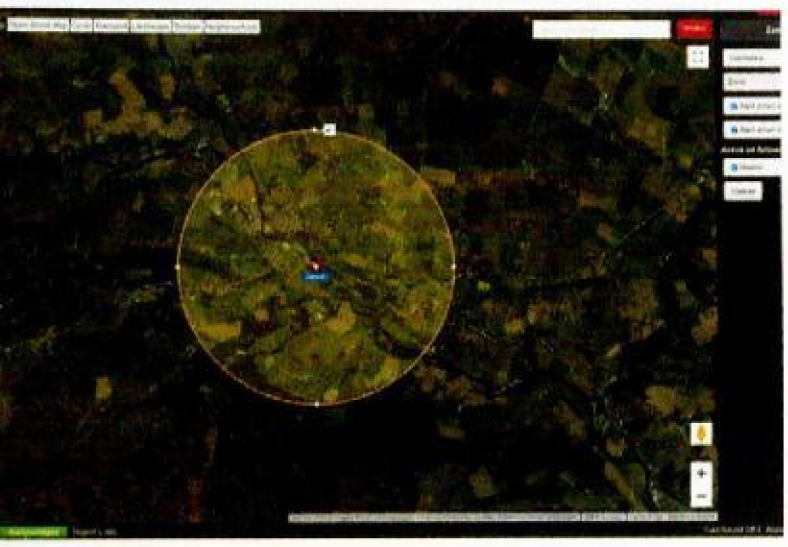
FEATURES

Once deployed the device can report every 5 seconds or every hour depending on how you programme it. It can also be switched off to preserve power to wake up on movement or at a set time.



The history log can be downloaded as a spreadsheet, PDF or Google Earth file.





Geofencing keeps a tight control of your target.



Tracking devices work over much of the planet.

- **Arming**

Should you need to use the device as a trigger, you can very quickly put it into 'arm' mode. As soon as it moves you receive a text alert to show that it is moving.

- **Geofencing**

A useful feature called 'geofencing' allows you to select an area (such as a town) so that the device can run freely anywhere within without reporting. But when it breaks the imaginary boundary fence it starts to track and informs you of it doing so.

- **History**

The tracking history between particular dates can be downloaded and saved. The Files can be downloaded as a PDF, .xls spreadsheet or a .kml file for use with Google Earth.

TRACKER DEPLOYMENT

Prior to deploying a tracker there are certain checks to be made to prevent compromise or losing the device:

- Ensure your target is under control before deployment.
- If possible, examine a car the same make and model your target has to identify where the device can be placed. The time 'on target' has to be minimal and quick when you deploy.
- Check the target vehicle is roadworthy and not likely to be in a garage.
- Ensure the batteries are fully charged.
- Erase any prior or historical data from the device.
- Ensure that it is switched on and working okay immediately prior to deployment.
- Deploy the device in a public space rather than on private property.
- Do not touch the car because you may activate an alarm or leave a sign on any dirty bodywork.
- Do not place it near the exhaust pipe or under wheel arches.
- Ensure the magnets have got a good hold. Use a cable tie if you are not confident it will hold in position.
- Check that you can still communicate to it after deployment, if not it may have to be recovered straight away.
- Keep an eye on the battery state. If it gets to 20%, consider taking steps to retrieve it or replace the batteries.

Tracking equipment, like any other electronic device is subject to failure and so it should only be used as an aid or to back up a physical surveillance. What is remarkable about satellite tracking is its high degree of accuracy.

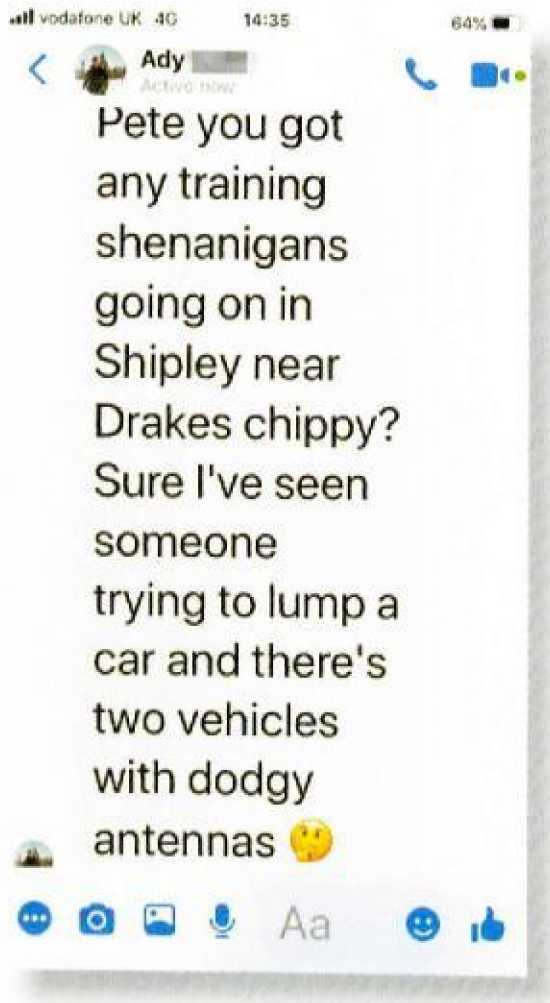
ISS TRAINING LTD

NOT LIKE THIS...

DEPLOYING A TRACKER

If you have to deploy a tracker on the hoof during the day, you must ensure that the target is under control, away from his vehicle, and use a callsign to block and provide cover from view of any third parties.

These images were taken during a training exercise when the target filmed the deployment. In addition, this message was received shortly afterwards by a colleague who just happened to be in the area.

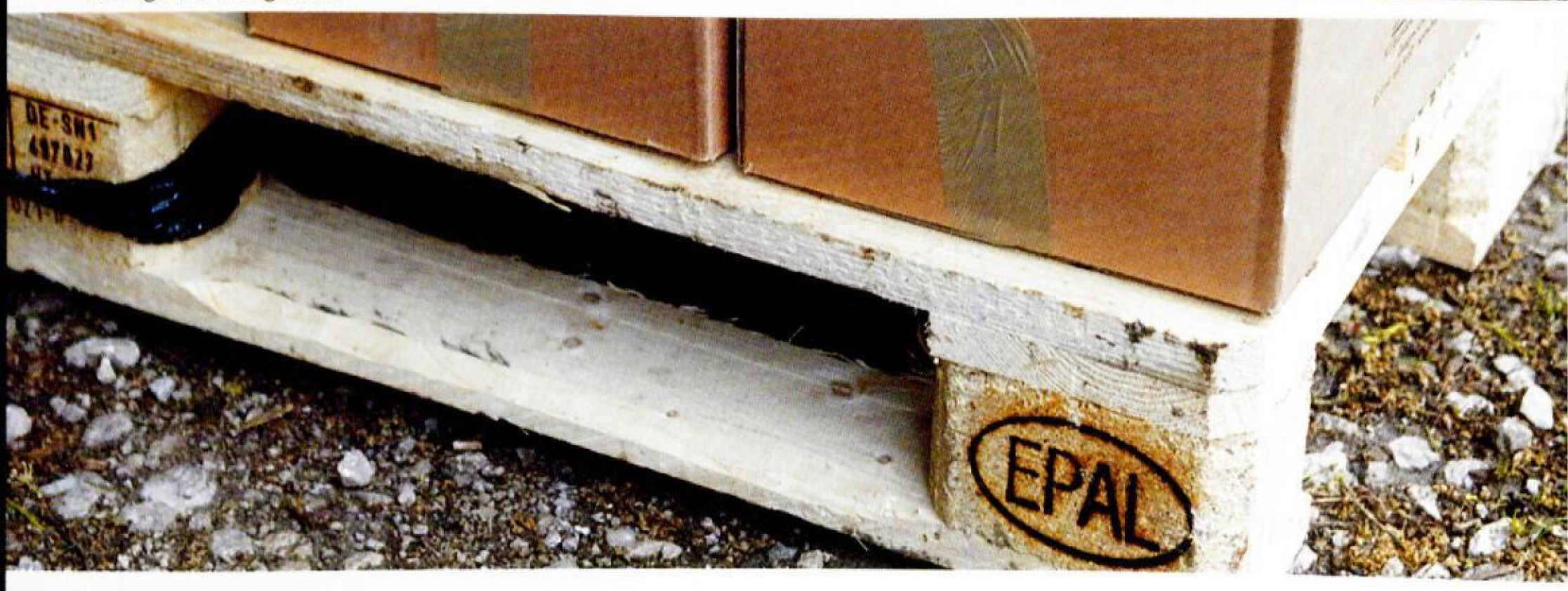






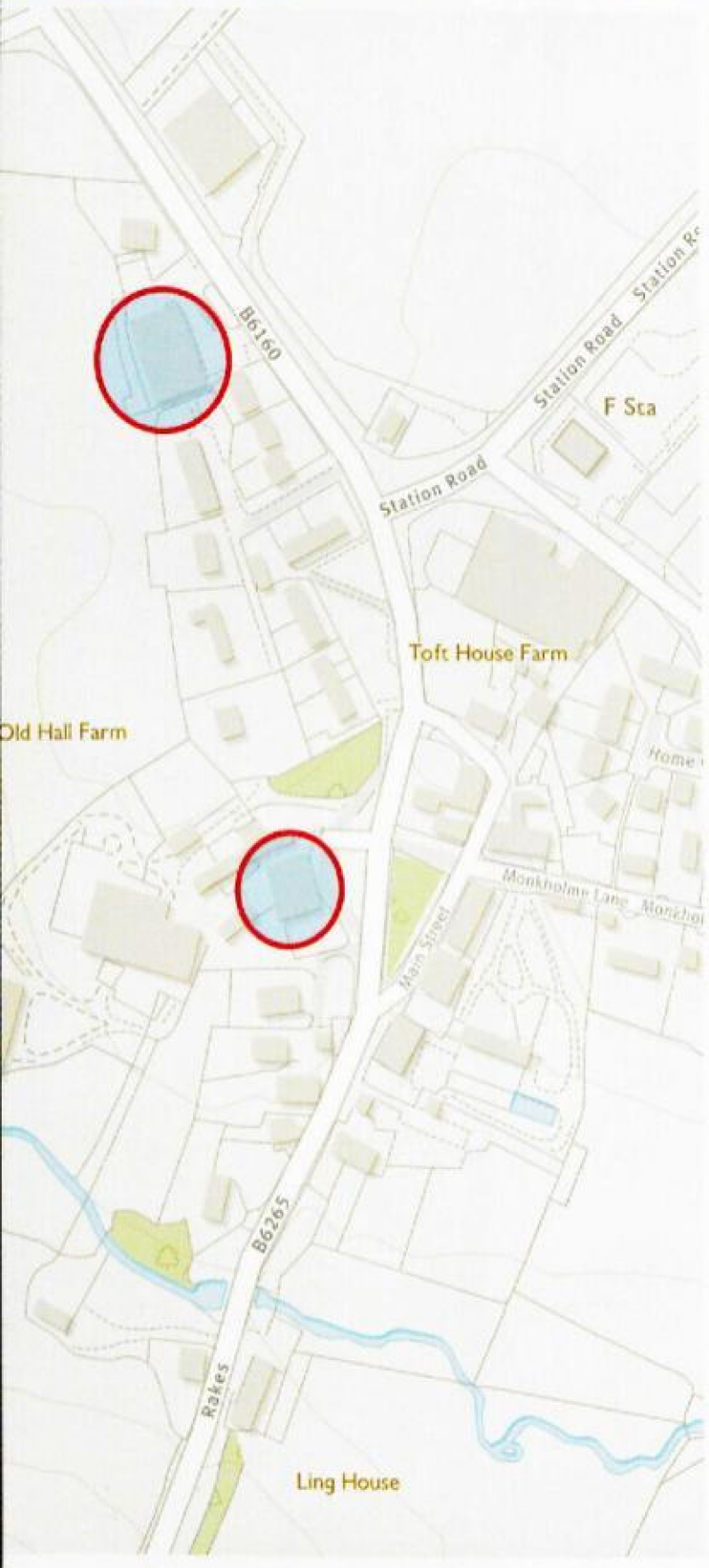


A tracking device has been deployed in a wooden pallet to monitor a consignment of goods.



RECCE & PLAN FOR TRACKER DEPLOYMENT





SCENARIO

Our target has been on long term sick leave after being involved in a road collision when working for our clients EZI Couriers Ltd. The clients have been led to believe that he is now working part time at the SPAR in Threshfield as a delivery driver where his parents are managers of the store. We have been asked to recce the area, to establish a plan for conducting a mobile surveillance in order to obtain evidence of Mr. Neil Armstrong working and being physically active.

We have conducted a feasibility study, the target is extremely aware and is known to have connections to criminals involved in drugs. Therefore, it would greatly assist our operations to deploy a tracking device on his vehicle.

REPORT

Target Name: A1: Neil Armstrong

Target Address:
C1: Texaco Petrol Station/SPAR Shop - Thresfield Court, Threshfield Village, Skipton, BD23 5PL. W3W: coconut.decoding.claw
C2: The Old Hall Pub, Main Street, Threshfield, BD23 5HB. W3W: umbrella.took.tasks

Vehicles:
B1: Silver Nissan Qashqai YB19 HZU
B2: A white Citroen Dispatch van with Enterprise livery (MJ69 SYZ).

General Area:
Situated in a rural village to the north of Skipton within the Yorkshire Dales National Park, the target location is on the outskirts of Threshfield on the B6160.

Immediate Area:
C1 is a detached single-storey building forming the SPAR store. There is a row of 4 petrol pumps at the front and a cash machine. There are two areas for car parking. One is immediately left of the front door (to the south) and the second is along the northern wall/boundary.
Behind the building are several grass fields.

C2 is approximately 400m to the south on the main B6160 set back off the main road with a car park to the rear.

Situation:
We know that A1 visits the Old Hall pub every Thursday evening between 6pm – 10pm. He arrives on foot after walking from the accommodation at the side of the SPAR store, and walks back again.

B2 is normally parked overnight to the northern side of the store underneath a covered parking bay.

LEGAL ISSUES

The legal issues surrounding tracking devices are explained in Chapter Nine.

ISS TRAINING LTD

Task:
To deploy the tracker onto B2, the delivery vehicle whilst he is under control inside the local pub.

Execution:
A three-man team to be used, with two vehicles (Golf & Hotel)

Team to RV at the Grassington National Park Centre, Hebden Road, Grassington, Skipton, BD23 5LB to test the tracker and reset the history.

One call-sign (from Golf) to go foxtrot at the pub to identify A1 and to take control of him.
The other two (in Hotel) will plot up in Skirethorns Lane to await the signal that A1 is under control and they can proceed to deploy the device.

Foxtrot call-sign to notify mobile team upon A1's arrival, team then drive to C1 and locate B2 in the car park.

When Foxtrot call-sign confirms A1 is under control, the mobile team are to use their car to block the view from passers-by & other customers (depending on the location of B2) and deploy the device, then test the tracker.

Once deployed, the Foxtrot call-sign leaves the pub and all return to the RV before leaving the area.

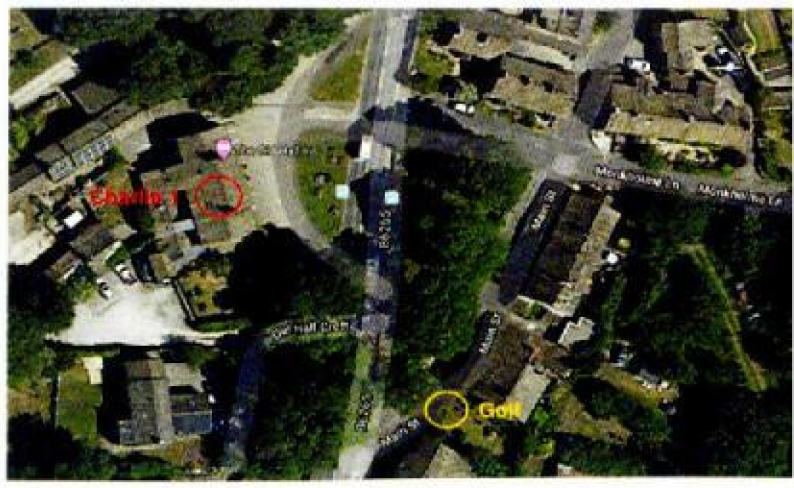
Administration /Actions on
Alpha 1 does not show: Stand down at 9pm, consult the client.
Bravo 2 is not there: Wait until 9pm to see if it arrives.
Device not working: Deploy a spare and recover the broken one.
Battery / device change: When battery state drops to 20%

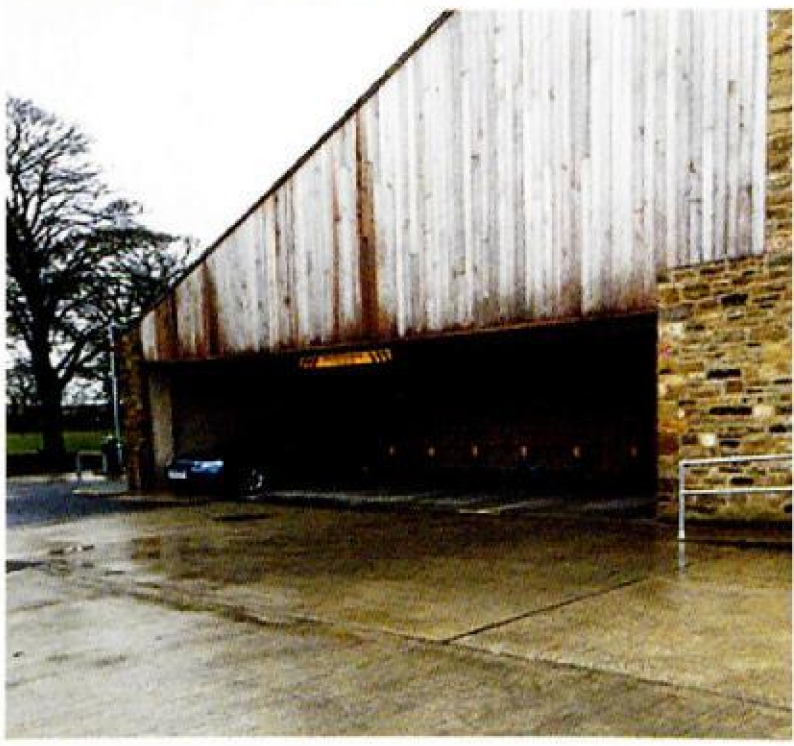
Authority:
A Privacy Impact Assessment has been completed considering proportionality, necessity, risk and health & safety. The client has authorised us to deploy the device.

Command:
The call-sign in the pub with A1 will have overall control. They will have covert radio and mobile phone as secondary comms if needed.

Tracker Number: 123590 Password: SoNear

Drop Off & Pick Up Points:
Nil





Covered parking area to rear of the Spar.









NIGHT VISION OPTICS

Night vision equipment or image intensifiers as they are known, are easily obtained these days and can be bought quite cheaply.

The image intensifying optics rely on the available light in the sky (which the eye cannot see in darkness) which comes from stars, moonlight, clouds and glow. The intensifier magnifies the available light by millions to produce an image. When viewed the image is seen in shades of contrasting green, white and black.

Many light intensifying scopes provide very goo quality imagery in low light and have specially designed fittings for SLR cameras and camcorders.

INTENSIFIERS VS THERMAL

THERMAL IMAGERS

Thermal imagers are not cheap but they are a very effective tool for seeing in the dark or through the fog. They do not provide detail (such as facial features) but they can 'see' through foliage and pick up any heat signature a person or animal may emit. In addition, you will be able to tell if a car has been moved or if anyone is present in a building by the heat signatures they give off.



Heat signatures given off from the body (above) and the engine of the quad bike (below).



ISS TRAINING LTD



UAV DRONES

Drones are becoming smaller and more sophisticated as time goes by and their use in covert surveillance is definitely useful but can be limited. Their camera optics can record video in 4k as well as take still images in RAW format at a high resolution, which are transmitted live back to the controller.

They can be deployed in seconds and some zoom lenses obtain high quality pictures from 2Km away. The Typhoon can be fitted with thermal imaging cameras.

The equipment list for an operator is virtually endless as there is so much that can be used to assist an investigation. You should remember that it's only to be used as an aid and will not carry out the investigation for you. To this end it's only as good as the person operating it. You should be familiar with your equipment, know how to use it proficiently and know its full capability and all limitations.

The Mavic Pro by DJI and the Yuneec Typhoon (below).



Scan the code to take you to a video using drones at night during a CTR.

Drone fitted with a thermal imager.





FOLLOW THE QR CODE TO TAKE YOU TO THE QUESTION & ANSWER 'HELP' PAGES.

CHAPTER FOUR QUESTIONS

1) Identify what the terms '7 x 50' means on a pair of binoculars.

2) Identify why you should carry some form of identification whilst on surveillance and suggest what type of identification would be suitable.

3) Explain the basic equipment required to carry out a surveillance operation.

4) Explain the difference between a thermal imager and an image intensifier.

Tracking

5) Explain where you would obtain a current policy that covers the deployment of tracking devices to support investigations.

6) Identify the reasons why tracking devices can be used to support investigations or surveillance.

7) Explain how GPS/GSM tracking equipment operates. State where a tracker would normally be placed on a vehicle, and what factors need to be considered in order for it to work properly.

8) Identify what information is required prior to deploying a tracking device.

9) Identify where a tracking device should not be placed.

10) Specify what precautions you should take before deploying a tracker.

Video Cameras

11) Explain the importance of your camera timer being synchronised to other cameras.

12) Identify the ideal frame rate and compression for covert portable video footage.

13) Explain two settings that must be restricted or disabled prior to the commencement of covert video footage.

14) Identify what can lead to poor video recordings.

15) Explain the various methods of taking covert video or images.

ISS TRAINING LTD

ASSESSMENT TIME!

1) Identify what the terms '7 x 50' means on a pair of binoculars.

2) Identify why you should carry some form of identification whilst on surveillance and suggest what type of identification would be suitable.

3) Explain the basic equipment required to carry out a surveillance operation.

4) Explain the difference between a thermal imager and an image intensifier.

5) Explain where you would obtain a current policy that covers the deployment of tracking devices to support investigations.

6) Identify the reasons why tracking devices can be used to support investigations or surveillance.

7) Explain how GPS/GSM tracking equipment operates. State where a tracker would normally be placed on a vehicle, and what factors need to be considered in order for it to work properly.

8) Identify what information is required prior to deploying a tracking device.

9) Identify where a tracking device should not be placed.

10) Specify what precautions you should take before deploying a tracker.

11) Explain the importance of your camera timer being synchronised to other cameras.

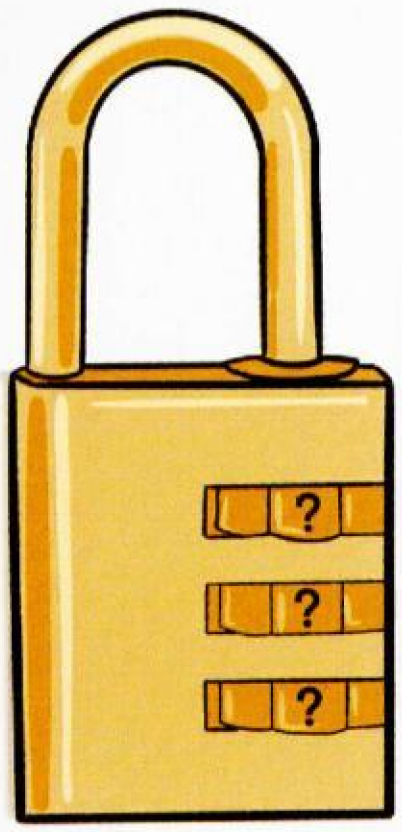
12) Identify the ideal frame rate and compression for covert portable video footage.

ISS TRAINING LTD

13) Explain two settings that must be restricted or disabled prior to the commencement of covert video footage.

14) Identify what things can lead to poor video recordings.

15) Explain the various methods of taking covert video or images.



INITIATIVE TEST...

Can you work out the combination to the padlock using these clues?

5 3 9 One digit is right and in its place.

5 0 7 One digit is right but in the wrong place.

9 1 5 Two digits are right, but both are in the wrong place.

4 8 3 All digits are wrong.

8 3 1 One digit is right but in the wrong place.

Scan the code for the answer.



Chapter Five

FOOT SURVEILLANCE

A lot of intelligence can be gained when out on foot, however the exposure risk is high and self-confidence is a very important factor. A foot surveillance carried out single handedly can be risky over long periods of time and so a minimum of two operators is recommended. A good standard of foot surveillance by an operator or team can only be acquired by practice and experience.

Difficulties can occur if there is a lack of communication between the team. You need good equipment and your radio commentary has to be precise.



THE SURVEILLANCE OPERATOR

So by now you know the ideal operator could be described as being the 'grey person'. Someone who does not put themselves above the 'base line' by the way they dress and the way they act.

Remember, there are three things that will always get you noticed. This is being repeated because it is so important:

- Multiple Sightings
- Unnatural Behaviour
- Cross Contamination

ISS TRAINING LTD

MULTIPLE SIGHTINGS

It is obvious that the more times a target sees you increases the chances of them remembering you. You will always be seen but being noticed is something different and being noticed is what you are trying to avoid.

Wherever you are, you should attempt to stay out of the '10 to 2' arc of vision. You should remain to the side or behind the target at all times. If you find yourself in a situation where you do get in front of the target, get out of the way as soon as possible.

UNNATURAL BEHAVIOUR

It is easier said than done, but we have to act naturally and have a reason for being there in everything we do. It takes practise to 'act normal', not to talk noticeably into your collar, constantly touch your earpiece, shift about or peep and 'balloon' around the high street.

Keep it simple: take a look around you - fit in with everyone else in the environment because every situation and place being different. Don't forget to dress according to the car you drive - being dressed in 'scruffs' & driving a new BMW will also get you noticed.

CROSS CONTAMINATION

Strictly speaking you should never meet up with another team member unless it is essential. If the target suspects that you are surveillance, he will keep a subtle watch on you to see what you do. If you then speak to another team member, you will compromise them by what we call 'cross contamination'. The target's interest will now switch to the other team member.

You should also be aware that a more sophisticated target may employ counter surveillance and it is these people that will be looking for you. You do not want to make their job easier by compromising the rest of your team.

On training courses, we often use targets that are unknown to the team and who have never seen the students before. This provides good feedback to the class in order to establish their 'exposure levels' and whether the target has identified them. The class are always briefed, 'If you stay out of the targets 10 to 2 you will never be seen or noticed'. When it comes to the debrief, those noticed by the target are **ALWAYS** those who were in the 10 to 2.



ISS TRAINING LTD

COVENT GARDEN

A couple of years ago I was teaching a foot surveillance course in London. The team were having a debrief in Covent Garden when I noticed two guys in the north east corner who popped up above the 'baseline'. Within seconds I decided they were plain clothed surveillance or security.

WHY?

They were both early 50's with a bit of a beer belly and had a look of 'ex'-cop' about them, they walked up to each other and started talking. No greeting, no handshake, obviously familiar with each other. They both wore white iPhone headphones and neither of them took them out whilst they stood talking. It looked unusual and I thought – radios?

Their body language showed alertness. One would say something, and the other would look around him. Then suddenly, both at the same time they stopped talking, tilted their heads to look away from each other with a vacant stare, was something being transmitted over the radio?

After a few seconds (end of transmission), they nodded to each other and separated. The second male proceeded to his left and walked past another guy who was on his own and also wearing white headphones. The clincher was a nod and a hand gesture from the third guy to the second who inadvertently cross contaminated himself.

MORAL: No multiple sightings but unnatural behaviour confirmed by cross contamination identified three of them.

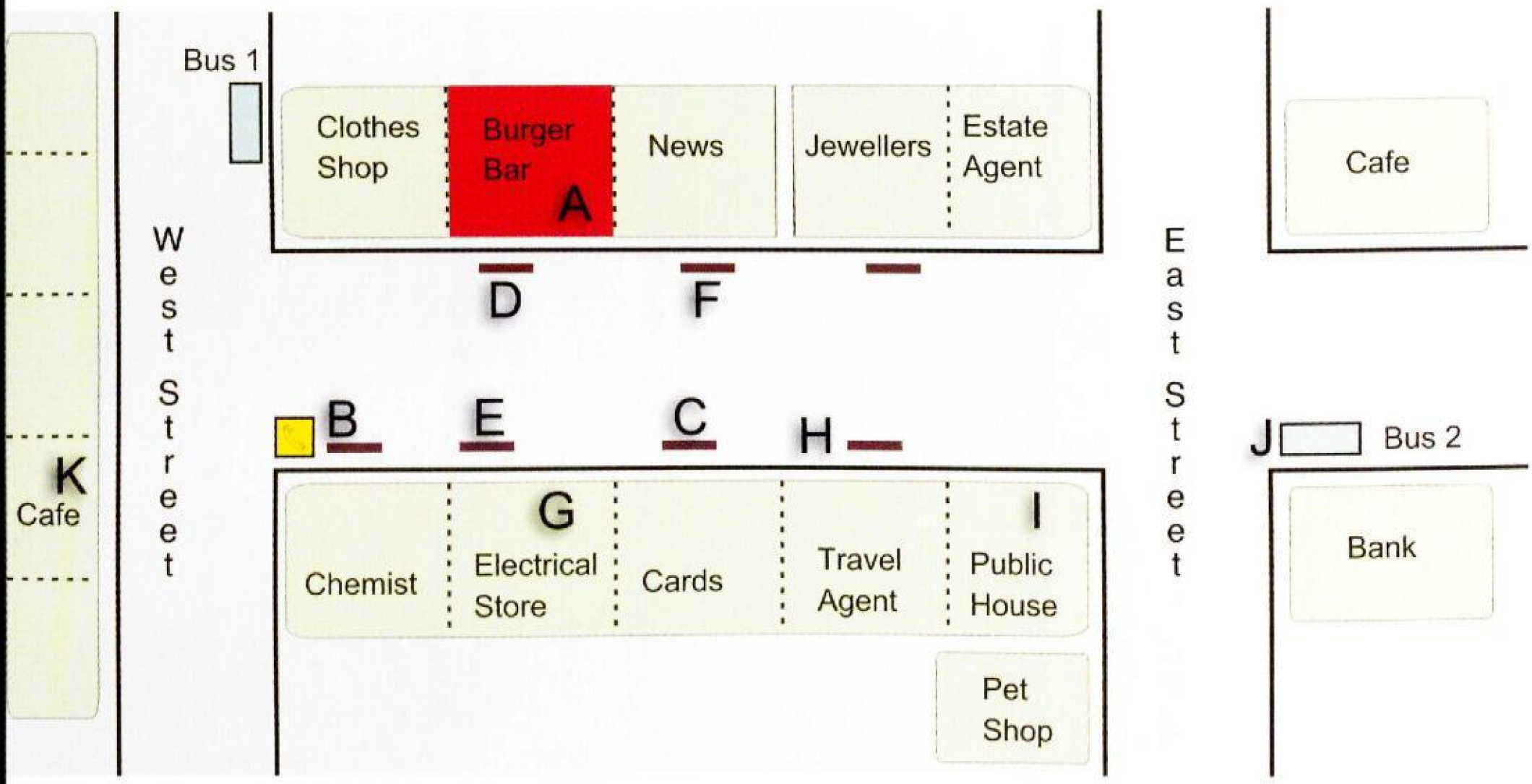




FOOT SURVEILLANCE TACTICS

The street plan below is a basic street layout is what you would expect to find in a town centre. The scenario we would expect is for the target to leave by the main front door and depart on foot. There are no rear exits to the premises.

Remember our phases of surveillance; Stakeout, Pick Up, Follow and the Housing, so we will begin with the Stakeout and Pick Up.



TRIGGER POSITIONS

A Having a person trigger from inside the burger bar has both advantages and disadvantages.

Advantages:

- You can obtain a good identification
- You should not miss the target leaving as you are fairly close
- You should be able to give a direction when he leaves
- You may be able to cover any other exits (if there are any)

Disadvantages:

- You may be in close and so a sighting may cause you to lose a 'life'
- If the shop is very busy, you may miss him out
- You may have to communicate with 'clicks' or your phone

B The bench next to the phone box could be an option if you are out of the '10-2'. The phone box itself could be considered if the wait is very short term, but not many people use them these days.

C

There is no reason why we cannot sit on this bench as it is out of the '10 to 2'.
If using benches:

- Sit on them; it is what they were designed for! If you are stood up and leaning against it, it may look unnatural
- If the bench is occupied but there is a space then use it, what better cover to have than other people. It may be difficult to talk on the radio in close proximity to others but there are ways around it
- Just sit there and do absolutely nothing

D + E

These benches have a number of disadvantages:

- You are too close
- You will be in the direct '10 to 2' as the target exits
- You may have to constantly turn your head around to look at the door, which would appear odd and unnatural

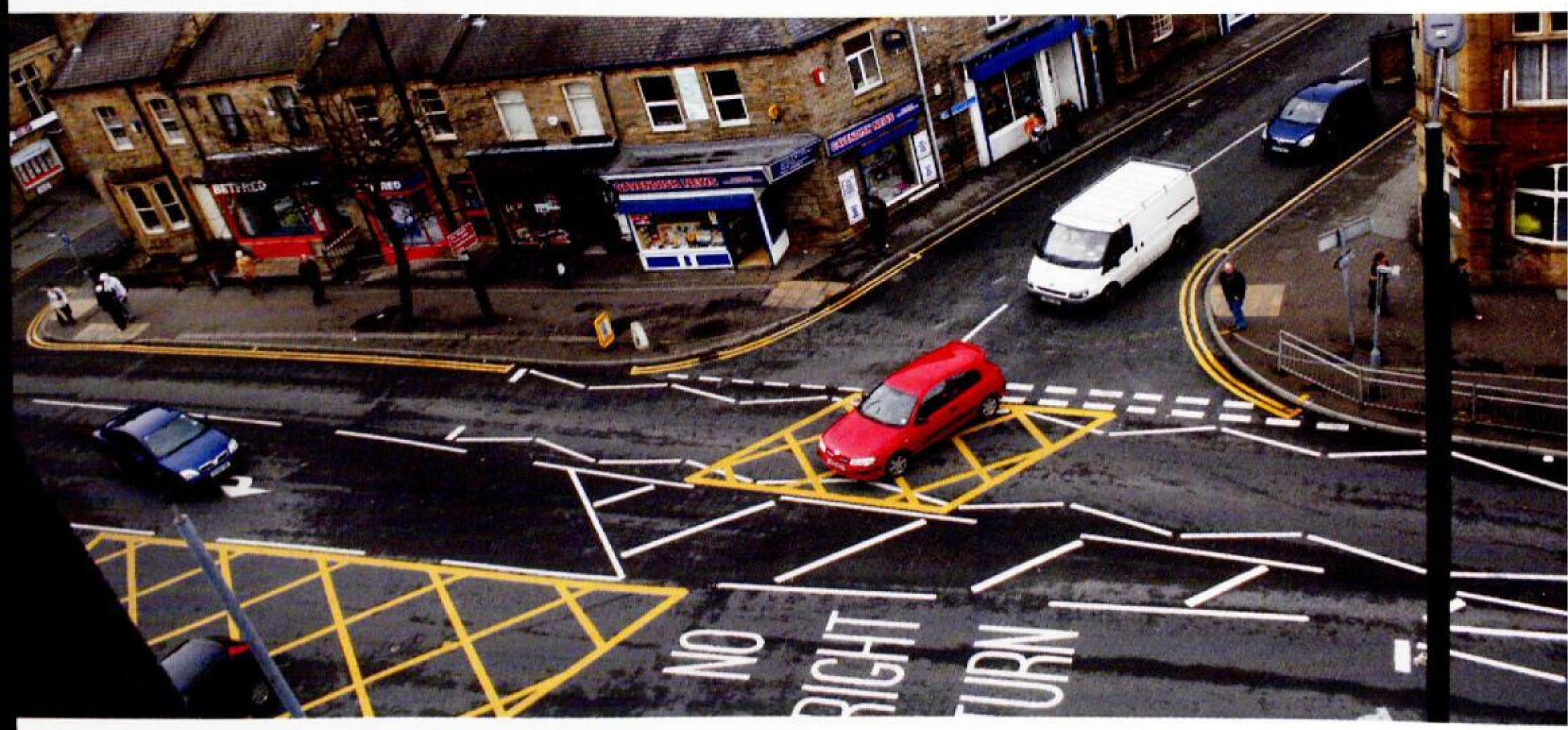
F

From this bench, you will be in the '10 to 2' if the target comes out and turns left (his left remember). In addition, you will be constantly looking over your right shoulder to look at the door, which again be unnatural behaviour

G

You could place the trigger in the Electrical Store but:

- You are in the '10 to 2', although you may have some cover from within the shop
- It may be difficult to pretend to browse and keep your eye on the target Remember, as soon as you look away the target will be out and gone
- If you are not acting naturally you will become the focus of attention for store assistants and store detectives



H

From outside the travel agent or any other shop doorway, there is no reason why you can't just stand and wait. Stand still, do not bob and weave about or you will attract attention.

- You have a clear view across the street
- You have a reason for being there (you are waiting)
- Do not 'peep' around corners
- A travel agent window is designed to be looked into (similar to an estate agent)
- If you use a shop doorway make a cursory check of what the shop is selling
- Loitering outside jewellers is not recommended

I

If you have a clear and unobstructed view of the doorway from the pub, seating outside, then there should be no reason why you should not consider this trigger position.

- You do not really want to consume alcohol so keep to soft drinks
- Obtain a position where you would naturally look in the targets direction

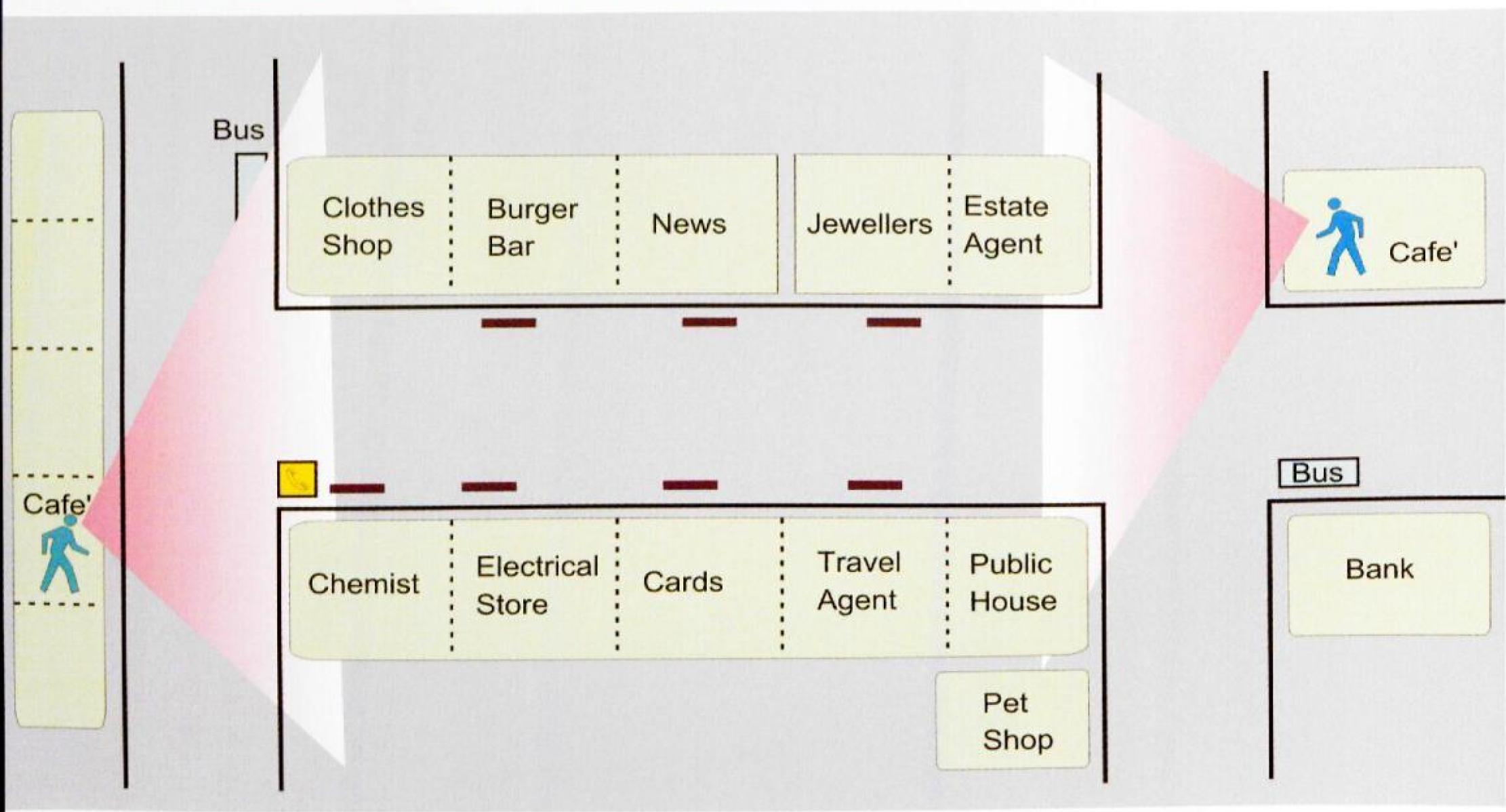
J

At the bus shelter you may be too far away to get a trigger. Not only can distance be a problem (correct identification) but also if vehicles and pedestrians become an obstruction.

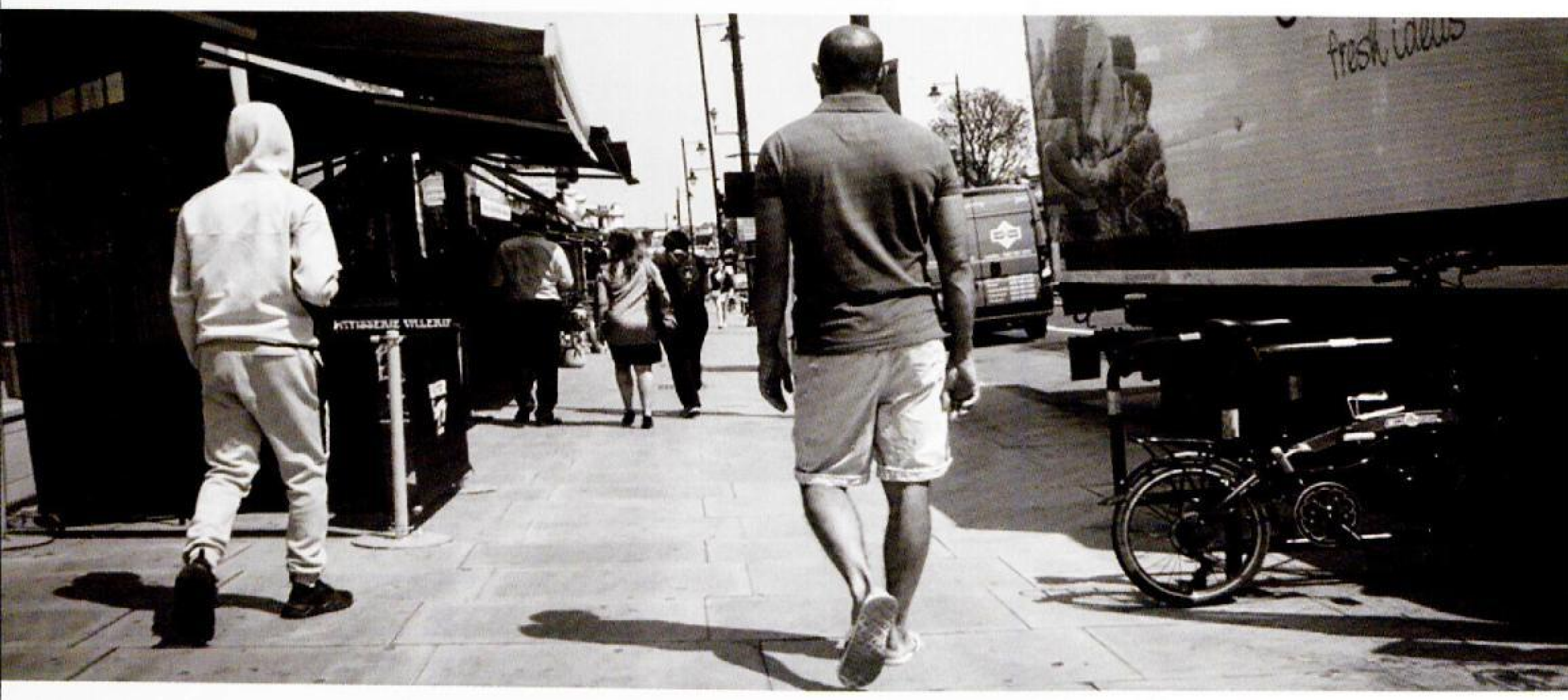
K

You may be able to take up a position from the cafe where you will be shielded from view and possibly stay for a reasonably long time. It would also be natural place to handover to another team member if you outstay your welcome.

When you cannot directly trigger the target, the best you can do is cover the end of the street.



ISS TRAINING LTD



You have to adapt your covert radios when in shorts and T shirt.

THREE MAN TEAM (A, B, C METHOD)

A foot surveillance team requires mobility and frequent changing of its operators in order to prevent compromise.

In diagrammatic form, the formations appear regimented and give the impression that the positions have to be strictly adhered to. This is not so because when on the ground an experienced operator will take up his position without thinking. The use of three people in a team permits greater variation in the position of operators and also allows for a member who may be getting 'warm' to be replaced by someone else. It reduces the risk of losing the target and affords greater security against showing out.

We illustrate with a three-man team but this may not be the case in the commercial world as you might be working as a pair or on foot by yourself. Equally, all of the principles still apply.

THE STAKE OUT PHASE

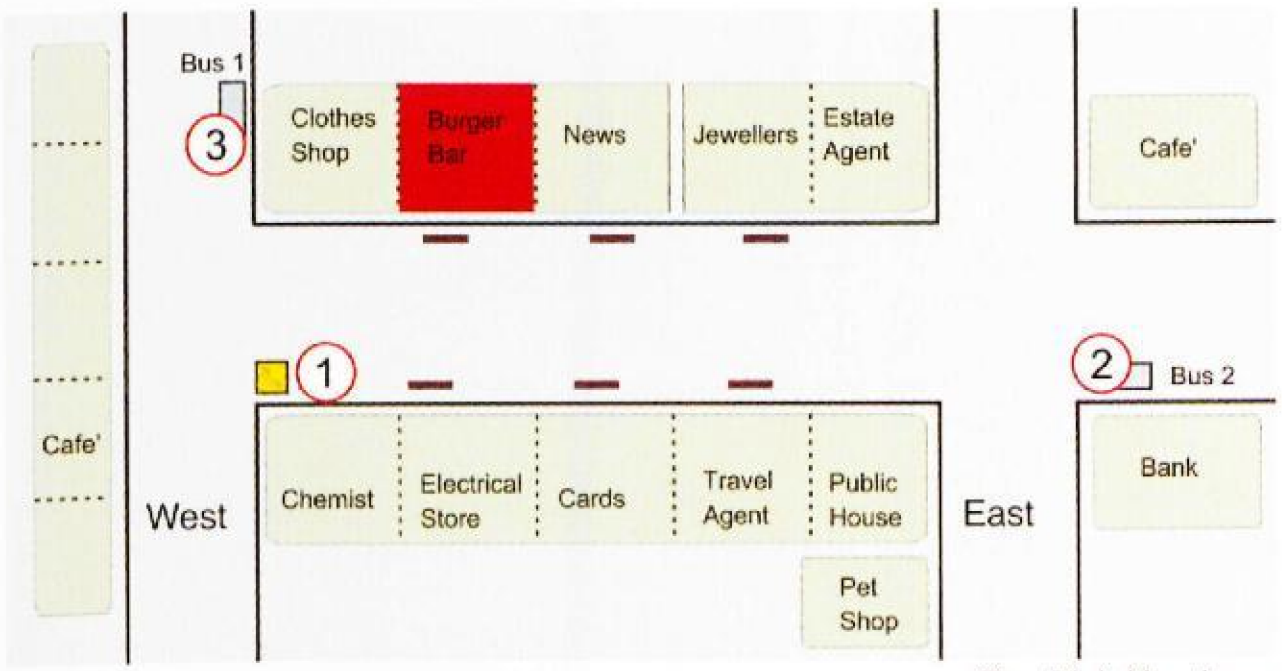
From the various trigger positions we have decided to put our trigger person on the bench (B) outside the chemist (we could also use the telephone box if very short term).

The trigger should be in a position close enough to identify the target but far enough away not to be seen and out of the '10 to 2'. He needs to carry out a radio check with the other team members and ensure that they are in position, ready to take the follow. If nothing is happening and you may be in for a long wait, the trigger should come up on the radio and report, *'No change, No change'* on a regular basis. This is for several reasons; it lets the team know that nothing has happened and it acts as a radio check giving confidence to team mates. On a surveillance radio network, there is nothing worse than long periods of silence. If nothing is heard operators start to lose confidence and think that something has gone wrong. They start to fiddle with the radio to see if it is working and possibly move position to see what is happening, so keep the team informed at regular intervals.

In the diagram below we have call sign 'Foot 1' giving the trigger, located on the bench next to the phone box. From here he can cover the exit door, give a *'standby'* when the target appears out in the open and also give a direction of travel.

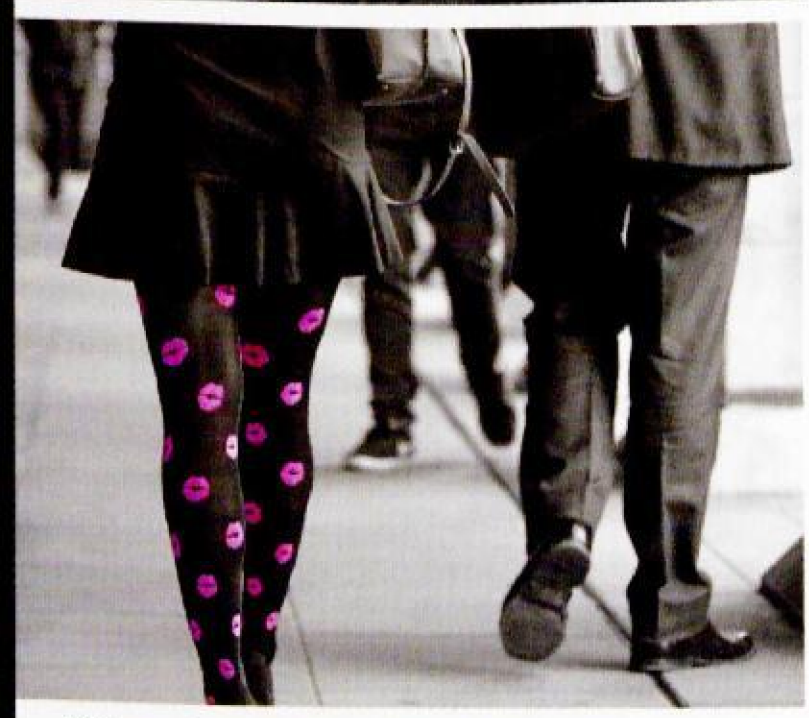
Foot 2 and Foot 3 need to be located either side of the target and out of sight. Foot 2 has taken a position up in the bus shelter, left of the target outside the bank, and Foot 3 has taken up a position in another bus shelter which is right of the target and around the corner on West Street.

Remember, only one person has to see the target (the eyeball), the other two team embers have to be out of the way. You do not want the target to come out of the premises, turn left or right and have a head on collision with the others.



The Pick Up phase.





If there is anything unique about your target's description, the team need to know for an immediate 'lock on'.

THE PICK UP PHASE - STANDBY STANDBY!

When the target appears the eyeball should immediately call, *'Standby, Standby'*. This is a wake-up call to the team to say, 'let's go' and listen in to the commentary. The eyeball should give a direction of travel and a brief description, for example:

"Standby, that's Alpha 1 out and foxtrot left towards the crossroads wearing black jacket over blue jeans, white trainers."

The trigger should not move immediately but either keep the commentary going or call, *"I no longer have"*, to allow another team member to take control.
As the target has come out and gone left, Foot 2 should not move anywhere, he can stay where he is for the time being as the target is moving towards him. Foot 3, having heard on the radio that the target has gone left, will realise that he is walking away from his position. That should be his cue to leave the bus shelter, come around the corner onto the high street and take the 'first follow'. He would come up on the radio and state, 'Foot 3 has' (the eyeball), and then takes up the commentary.

We say there are no rules in surveillance but a very important guideline is the fact that the trigger person never moves on a standby (unless as a last resort) to take the first follow.

ISS TRAINING LTD

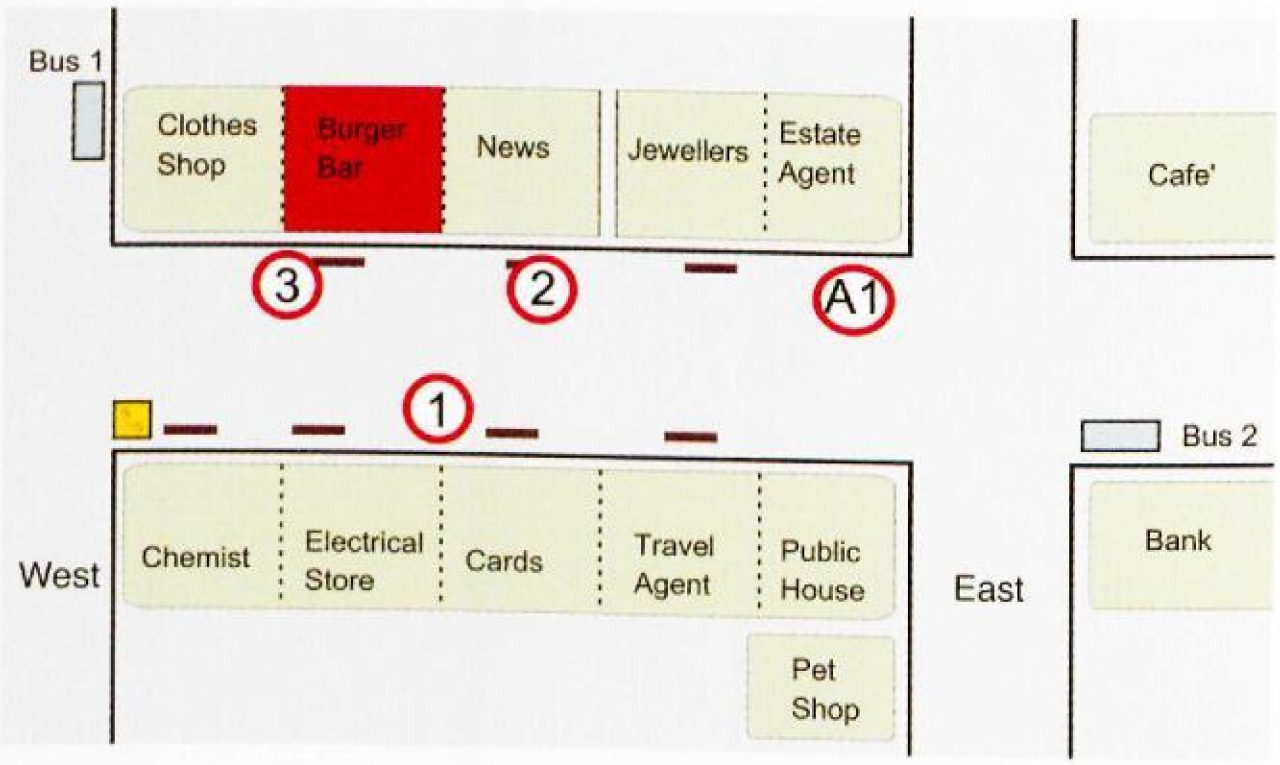
THE FOLLOW PHASE

As soon as practically possible the surveillance team will filter themselves in a position as illustrated below.

FOOT 2 has the eyeball and positions himself behind the target at a safe distance (depending on the area and the amount of people) and gives a running commentary.

FOOT 3 is the back-up and positions himself behind the eyeball (also at a safe distance). It is not necessary for the back-up to see the target.

FOOT 1 is the trail position and takes up a position on the other side of the street. The team is now positioned in what is called the classic A, B, C formation. This formation is not set in stone and dependant on the area, the size of the team and awareness level of the target, it is the building blocks of foot tactics.



The Follow Phase.

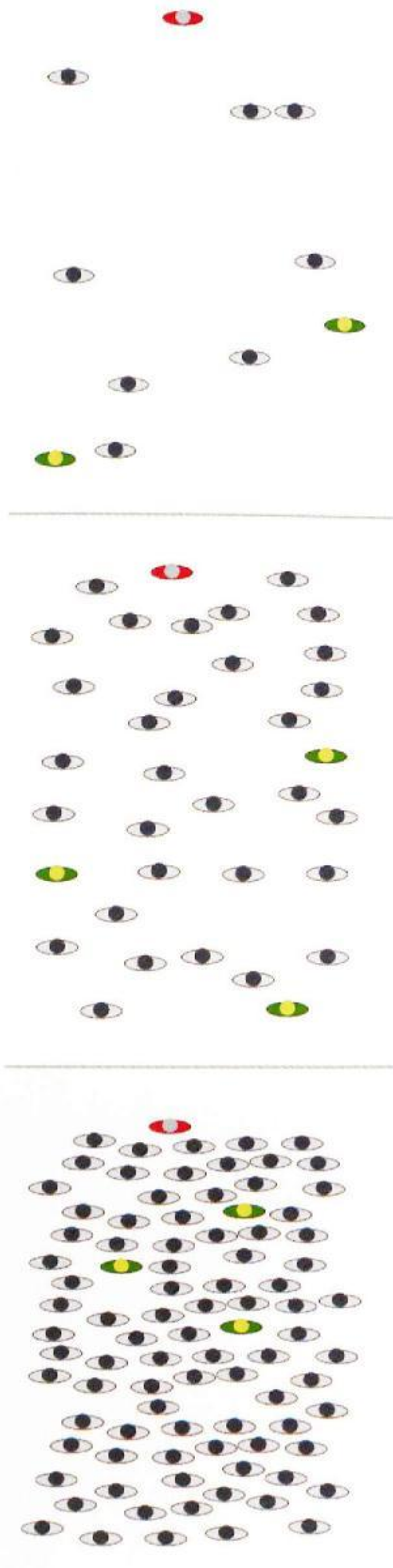
DISTANCING - RULE OF THREE

In order to judge how close or how far away you should be from the target and each other, you have to consider the targets pace, your own pace, the cover that is available and the distance he is away from you. Plus whether there are any changing situations such as transferring from a busy crowded shopping mall into a quiet street.

As a rule you should look at the area and try to be '3 people' distance apart. So in a very crowded place where everyone is bunched up, you would be close together. Whereas in a more open area you would be further apart as shown in the diagrams.

IMPOSE SURVEILLANCE

If the target crosses from the nearside of the street to the offside (left to right), the eyeball and back-up should not follow him - this is why we 'impose' surveillance on a target, rather than 'follow' him.



RED: TARGET

GREEN: SURVEILLANCE TEAM

GREY: PUBLIC



Aparently right handed people look over their right shoulder when looking back, and the opposite for left handed people.

Foot surveillance is about team work and communication. If you lose sight of the target, we use the term 'temporary unsighted' so that another team member can take control if need be. We've mentioned you need to stay out of the '10-2'. You also need to bear in mind if he turns around you don't want to be in direct view. Don't dive in and out of cover, but do use pedestrians and street furniture momentarily as you walk.

If you are operating in a pedestrian precinct, keep to the sides so that you can easily enter a shop if the target turns around or looks behind him.

Be aware of other body language traits. If the target walks to the outside of the pavement expect them to cross the road, or if they walk into the pavement they may be about to enter a building. Someone constantly looking at their watch could have an appointment or meeting. Searching or patting pockets indicates they are looking for somethings. And an increase in speed following a phone call might indicate activity.

Use street furniture to provide temporary cover from view, such as:

- Other pedestrians
- Telephone boxes
- Advertising boards
- Parked cars
- Bus shelters
- Trees
- Lamp posts
- Shop doorways

On the street you have to make constant appraisals regarding the target's intentions and always think to yourself, what if he....

Stops...?
Crosses the road...?
Enters a building...?
Turns around and walks towards me...?

In very crowded streets the A,B,C method can be difficult to adhere to. There may be times when it's necessary for all three operators be on the same side of the street (or opposite) as the target. If you are close to the target, do not let him hear your radio commentary.

A street with little or no traffic such as a housing estate can create difficulties: It may be that only one operator is on the same side of the street as the target with the other two operators opposite and perhaps only one operator is deployed if the area is quiet. If a vehicle is used as back up, a footman can be picked up and re-deployed ahead of the target if needed.

NO POACHING

The eyeball should be giving an accurate commentary and no one should interrupt except for the backing call-sign to acknowledge. No one should transmit and 'stamp' over the eyeballs commentary and in the same vein, no one should 'snatch' or poach control from the eyeball.

NO POACHING

If the eyeball wants someone else to take over he will call, *'Foot 2 can you at the junction?'*

Or, if you see that you are in a good position to take over, you have to ask for control by saying, *'Foot 2 CAN at the junction'.*

Just don't snatch control, this is unprofessional.

ISS TRAINING LTD



TACTICS IN FOOT SURVEILLANCE



A surveillance operator is a member of a team and at all times must be in communication with the others. In the event of radio failure, you should carry out a quick check of your equipment to rectify the problem or you will become a hazard to the team.

When on the ground consider the following:

- Tell the team you are in control with, *'I have'*. Ensure you have a back-up, if no one responds, get onto the team, take charge.
- Always ask yourself, am I in the right position? How can I benefit the team? If you are not in the right position, get into it.
- Avoid eye to eye contact with the target.
- If the target approaches you never act surprised, just act naturally. Have a good cover story ready in the event you are questioned.
- Always remember that you may be seen but not necessarily noticed, so act naturally at all times and be aware of your dress sense.
- Do not dodge behind corners or into shop doorways if the target turns around, this only attracts attention to you. Do not forget that shop windows can reflect the activity of persons on the opposite side of the street. They can be of use to you, but they can also be of use to the target.
- Always act naturally if the target turns around and retraces his steps, you should walk on and avoid eye contact. Remember, another team member should automatically take control. Whatever you do, do not look behind you.
- When in a confined area always endeavour to be doing 'something' but act naturally doing it. Give yourself a reason for being there.
- In crowded areas walk on the outside of the pavement. This gives better vision and less obstruction. The nearside of the pavement is good cover when the streets are less crowded.
- Do not take unnecessary risks, always consider 'loss v gain'.
- Ensure your mobile phone is in silent mode and Bluetooth is off.
- Stay out of the '10 to 2' - you will not be noticed.
- Be third party aware at all times.

ISS TRAINING LTD



Handovers have to be slick.

When on foot, the back up should always acknowledge the eyeball's transmissions.

This gives confidence to the eyeball knowing that his back up is present and in place.

If the eyeball were not to hear any response, he is likely to start looking around and behind him to see if his team are there. In doing so he might cause cross contamination of them.

CHANGE OF EYEBALL (HANDOVER)

It must be realised that the closer the operator is to the target, the more likely he is to be seen and noticed, therefore he must be changed at regular intervals in order to prevent a compromise. In some ways you could follow him all day on your own and not be noticed, so long as the target does not turn around. However, surveillance is not like that and so we have to act accordingly.

After having the eyeball for a period, you may feel that you have had a bit of 'exposure' or you feel 'warm' and therefore could do with a change to let someone else take over. There are a number occasions when we would normally carry out a handover:

- When you are 'warm', or you have had the eyeball for some time
- When the target changes direction
- When the target stops
- If you are compromised
- If the target goes out of your view

The larger the team, the more often you can swap but don't change over for the sake of it. It is normally the eyeball that will decide when to handover.

SIMPLE HANDOVER

When walking down a street and you require a handover, you should ask your back up if he is in a position to take the eyeball; this is what we call a 'planned handover'. It would be something like, *"back-up, can you at the junction ahead?"*

The response should always be *'Yes, Yes'*, then you can handover to him by turning into a side street and letting the back-up come through to take the eyeball. Trail should then move to a position to act as back-up and tell you that he's backing.

There is nothing worse than asking for a handover when your back-up says, *'No No'* when they should have called, *"No longer backing"*.

The answer to "Back-up can you at...' should always be "Yes Yes"!

Whether you are on foot or in a car, the answer to *"Back-up can you at..."* should always be *"Yes Yes"*! It should never be *"No No"*. It's simple... If your back-up realises he is not in a position to take over if asked he should state, *"No longer backing"*. This prevents the eyeball from asking for a handover and getting a 'No' response. It also tells him that his back-up is there, but not in a position to take over.

ISS TRAINING LTD

CORNERING DRILLS

When a target changes direction by turning a corner we need to maintain control over him. We should never go around a corner with him in case he suddenly stops. He could stop on purpose because he's suspicious of you or for a genuine reason to look at a shop or cross the road. For this reason, we do not want to go around a 'blind' corner or the 'zone of invisibility' as it's called.

As soon as the target turns and goes out of your view you should call, *"..that's gone left left on North Street and unsighted to me.."*. 'Unsighted to me' indicates that the eyeball is now up for grabs for anyone who can take control.

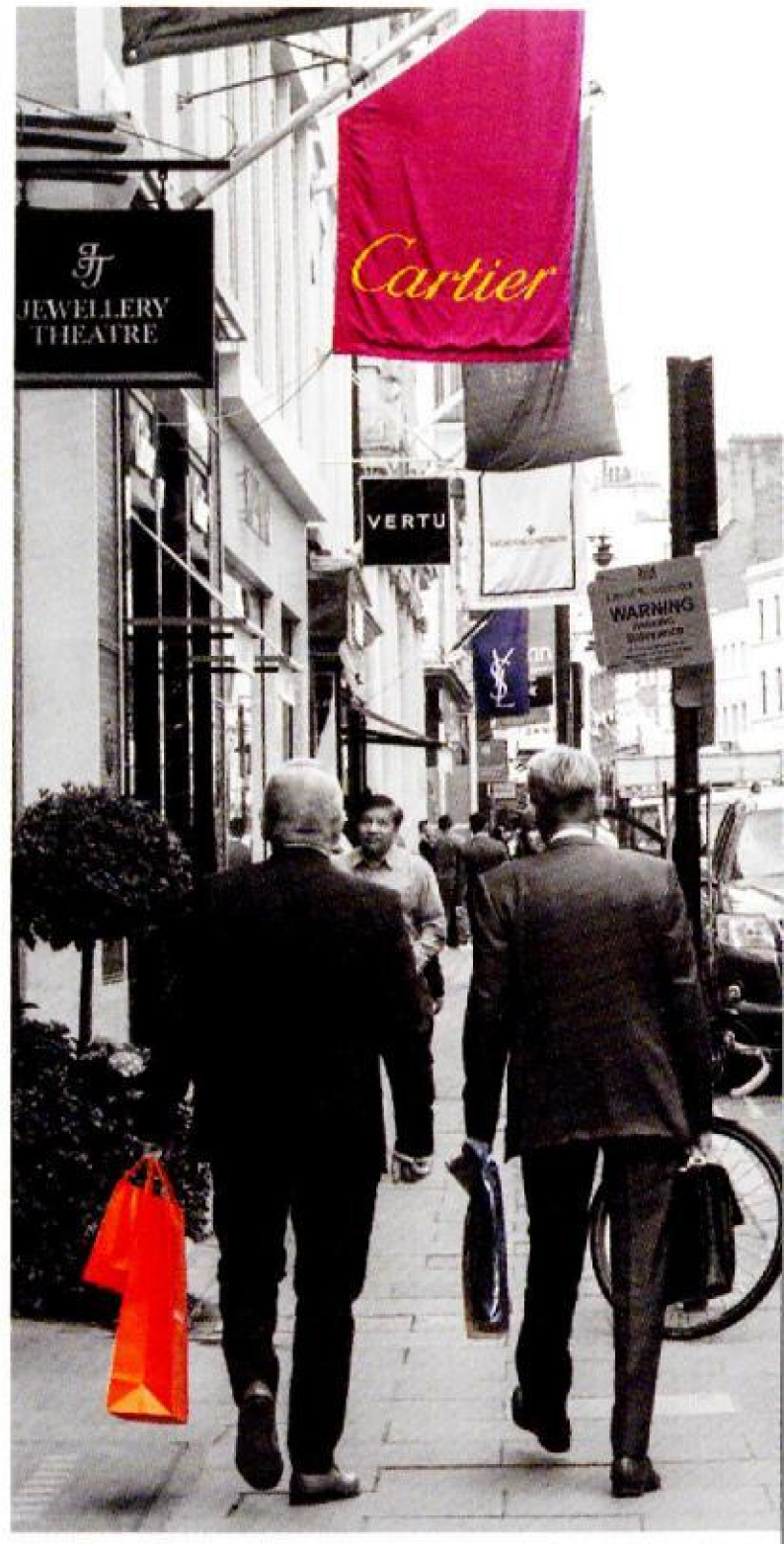
As the eyeball does not want to go into this zone, one of the team members should 'clear the corner' and let the eyeball know if it is safe to come around or through.

You will note in the diagram below that the eyeball (operator '2') gives advanced warning of a junction or a corner. This should be the cue for operator 'C1' to move up to the corner on his side of the street to enable him to see and clear the corner. If the target has stopped, operator '1' will state, *'It's a Stop Stop, hang back'*. If the target has turned the corner and continues up the street, Operator '1' can say, *'Corner clear, come through'*.

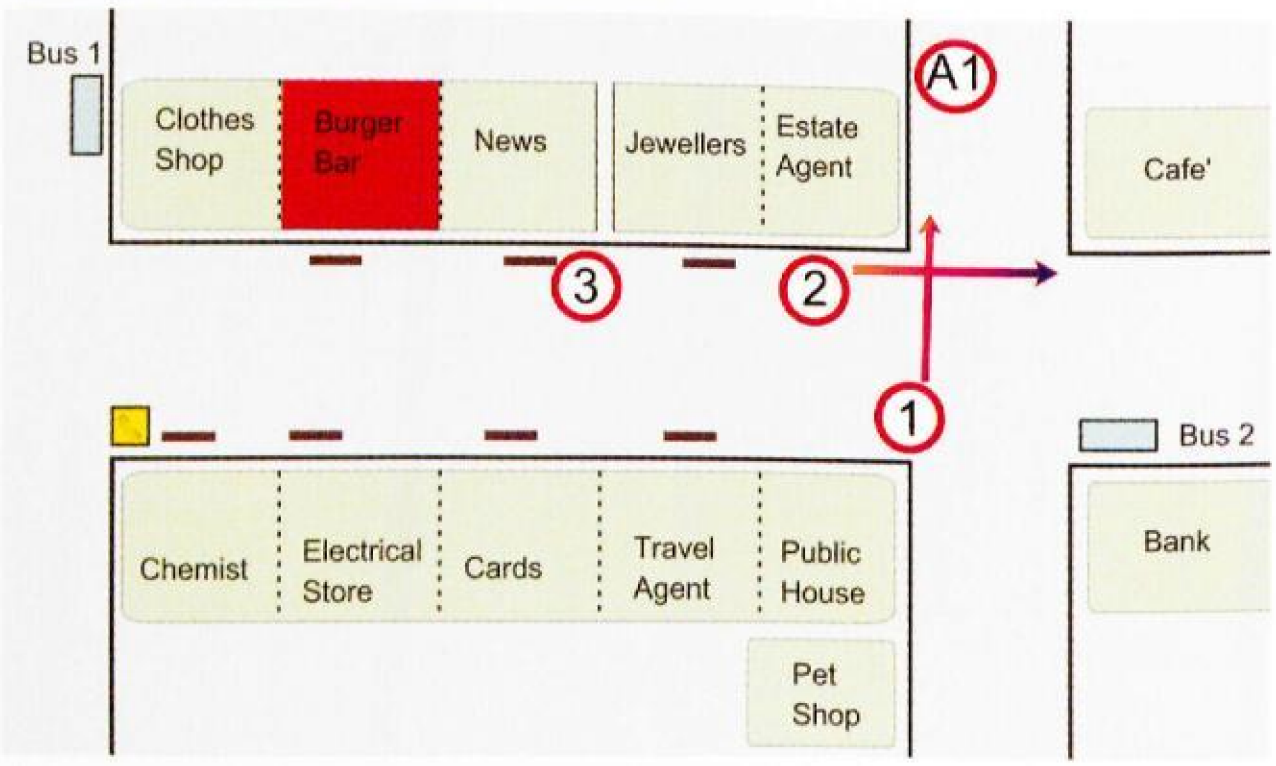
As we are changing direction it may be a good time to handover, in case the target is trying to identify followers; you do this once operator '1' has cleared the corner, rather than turn the corner and continue the follow. The eyeball should cross directly over the road to take up a position on the other side. The back-up (3) can then come around the corner and take over as eyeball and the operator (1), who has cleared the corner then acts as back up.

We have now carried out a basic cornering drill where we clear the corner and carry out a handover at the same time. This can also be carried out if there are just two of you on the ground.

If you are on your own there is no way that you would want to go around a blind corner. Therefore to recover this you should consider moving to the other side of the street and effectively clear the corner for yourself, as you look left and right, and then move into a safe position to follow.



A corner is a natural place for a handover.



THE TARGET PERFORMS A 'U' TURN

You should always be observing the target's body language to help you anticipate his actions. If he suddenly does a U turn, be aware of being startled and caught out like a rabbit in headlights, and avoid having eye contact with him. Continue to walk naturally, don't look at him and put your hands in your pockets so the target cannot see your radio's pressel switch.

Two things you can do: either give rapid clicks on the radio to alert the team, (hopefully your back up will call the reciprocal turn as you carry on past the target). Also taught is the phrase *'Snake Snake Snake'*, to indicate a U turn whilst on foot. This is a phrase that you can say without moving your lips, try it! If the target crosses the street there is no need to follow him across as there should be an operator on that side of the street to take control, hand it over to them.

HOUSING PHASE

We have picked up the target, and followed him but now he stops at a shop. At this stop we need to carry out a set drill so that the team can work effectively. We must decide if it is necessary to go in with him. Think about your aims and objectives.

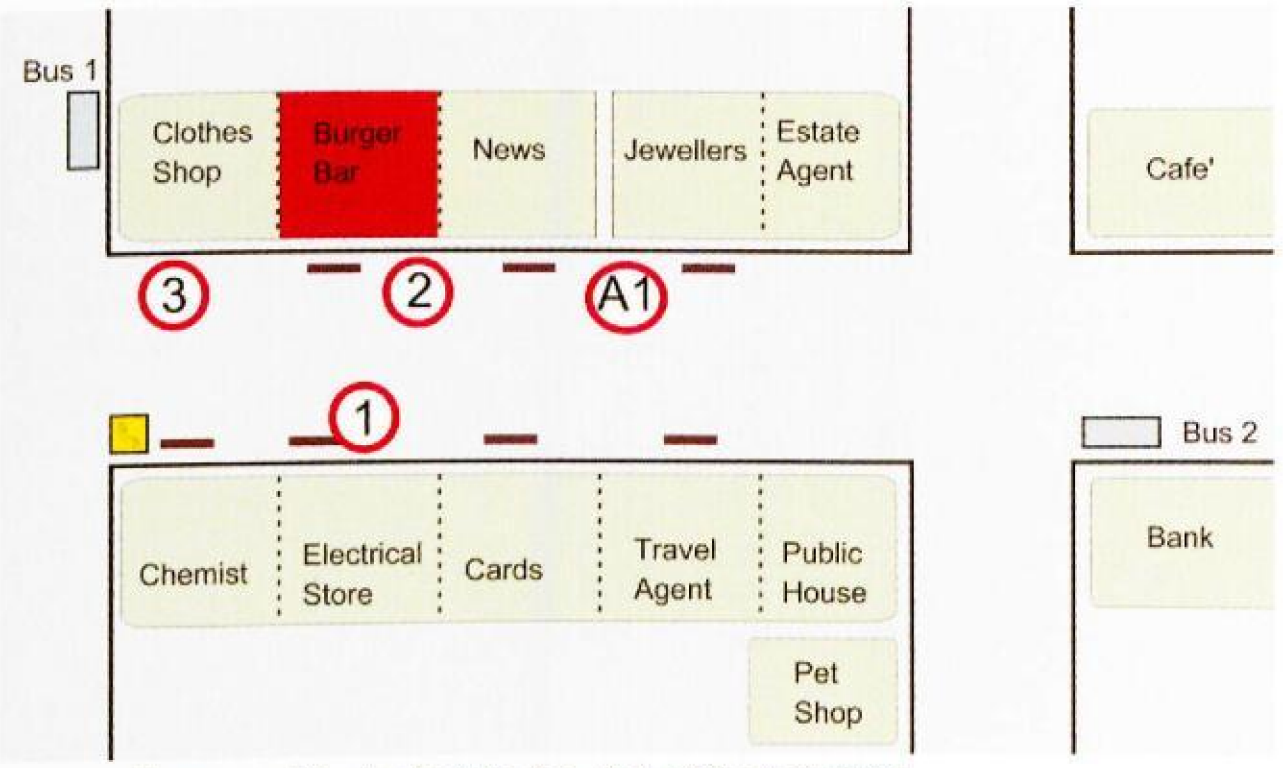
ACTION ON A STOP

If the target is under control walking down a street and he then enters a shop (newsagent) we have now entered our 'housing' phase of the surveillance. We now have to re-plot and stake it out to prepare for the 'pick-up' phase again. This has to be done quickly, someone has to get a trigger on the door immediately. Otherwise there is a risk of losing the target if they come out again.

We have decided that we are not going to enter and so a set drill is put into action as in the diagram.

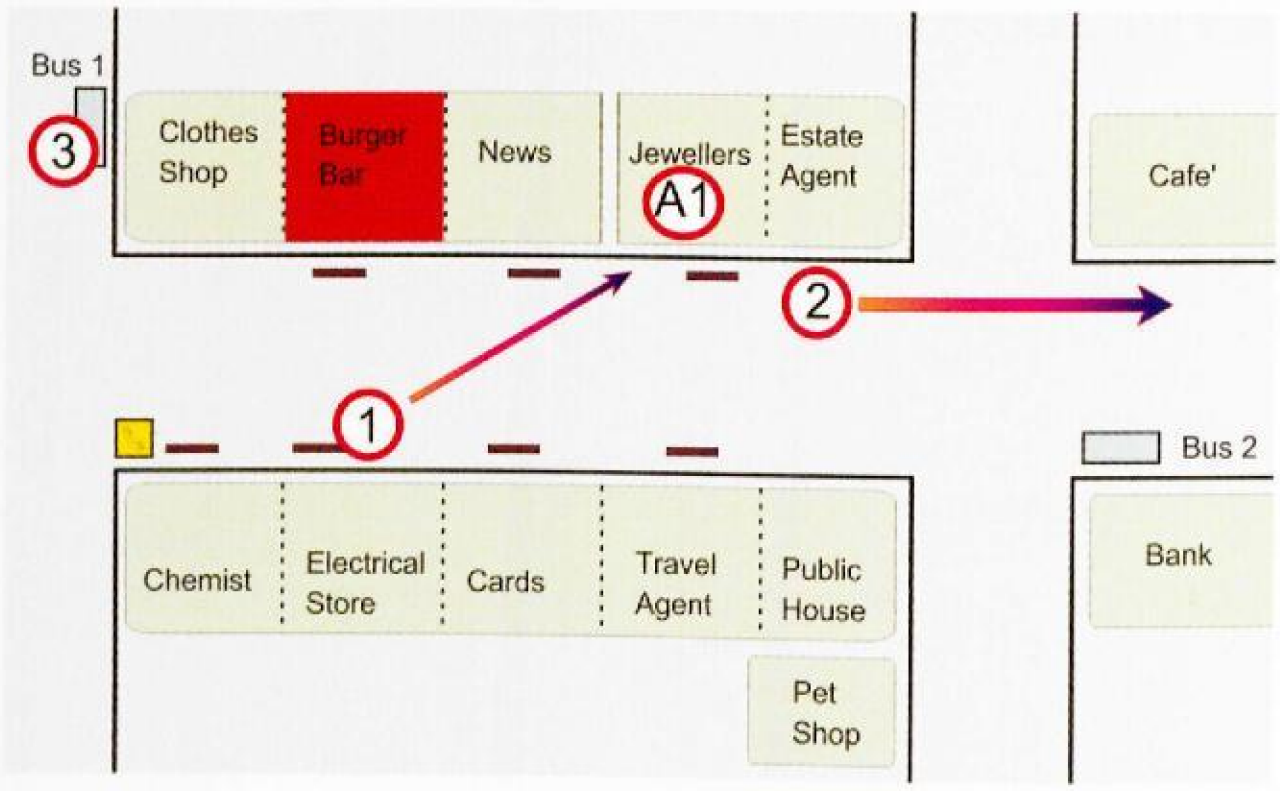
Should it occur that one of the team can see the jewellers from their car, there is no reason why he cannot take a trigger on behalf of the footmen. This prevents the footman from getting unnecessary exposure and allows them to move clear.





Team positioning before the stop at the jewellers.

ISS TRAINING LTD



A The eyeball (2) should call, *'It's a Stop Stop at the jewellers"* He should then carry on straight and overshoot, stating, *'I'm going to overshoot, back-up, can you?'* (take the eyeball). Hopefully the reply would be, *'Yes Yes'*. Whilst overshooting, he confirms exactly where the target has stopped or entered.

B The back-up (1) then takes control of the doorway obtaining a trigger and tells everyone that he has control from the other side of the street.

C As this is happening, operator '2' overshoots and takes up a position on the original route and operator '3' takes up a position on the reciprocal route.

D We are now back to our pick-up phase and the process starts once again with the trigger in charge. If any team members are unsure of where the stop took place it is the triggers job to 'lock' them on.

E The two operators covering the escape routes should remember to get off the street. If the target comes out and turns left or right, they should not be seen standing on the road, otherwise it will give a 'free look' to the target.





Use 'street furniture' as cover, do not isolate yourself.

When a loss occurs, be extremely careful how you search for the target in respect of your actions and body language.

Try and be subtle and casual as you check left and right in nearby buildings or shops.

The target may be watching you as you carry out the search so do not give yourself away by appearing anxious or alert.

GET IN CLOSE

If you decide that an operator needs to enter the premises with him, try to let the back-up go in rather than the eyeball. Tell the team that you are going 'complete' (or in with him) so they can expect you to 'minimise' on the radio. If you need to communicate to the team you can resort to the click system.

On occasions, it would be impractical to hand over when the target enters a premises and you may have to enter behind him or risk losing valuable intelligence.

COMMUNICATIONS

Communications can literally make or break a foot surveillance. A foot team should normally carry covert radio sets because mobile phones are not always suitable.

As the eyeball, you should now be giving a commentary on the target's movements. Many surveillance operators prefer the back-up to acknowledge his transmissions either every time or just now and again (after every three or four transmissions or on a change of direction). After the eyeball's transmission, all the back-up has to say initially is, *'Foot 1 backing'* and then acknowledged with *'Roger that'*. This tells the eyeball that his messages are coming across and also gives him confidence because he knows that his back-up is in position.

ACTION ON A LOSS

If the target goes out of your view you must alert the team with the call, *'Temporary unsighted'* and give a reason such as, *'Temporary unsighted due to traffic'*. If/when you regain sight, you can inform the team by calling, *'Eyeball regained'*.

Now and again the team will suffer a loss. This has to be acted upon very quickly because the longer the target is 'unsighted', the further away from the team he will be getting. In the event of a loss a set drill should be quickly carried out. As soon as possible the eyeball should call, 'That's a total loss at...' and include the location. The team should then carry out this search procedure:

- The eyeball should decide which is the most logical route or quickest escape route that the target must have taken and head for there whilst searching to his left and right as he goes along.
- The back-up should take the second most logical or quickest escape route.
- Trail should hold the 'point of loss' in the event that the target returns through it (which often happens).
- By holding the point of loss, that operator is also in a good position to act as back-up if contact is regained in any direction. He is also in a position to relay radio messages to the team who may be getting further apart.
- If contact is regained the eyeball should call, *'Standby Standby, Foot 1 has, that's Alpha 1 gone Left Left at the point of loss and is continuing along East Street'.*
- Be aware that some agencies use the term 'Contact Contact' after a loss.

ISS TRAINING LTD

BUILDINGS WITH MULTIPLE EXITS

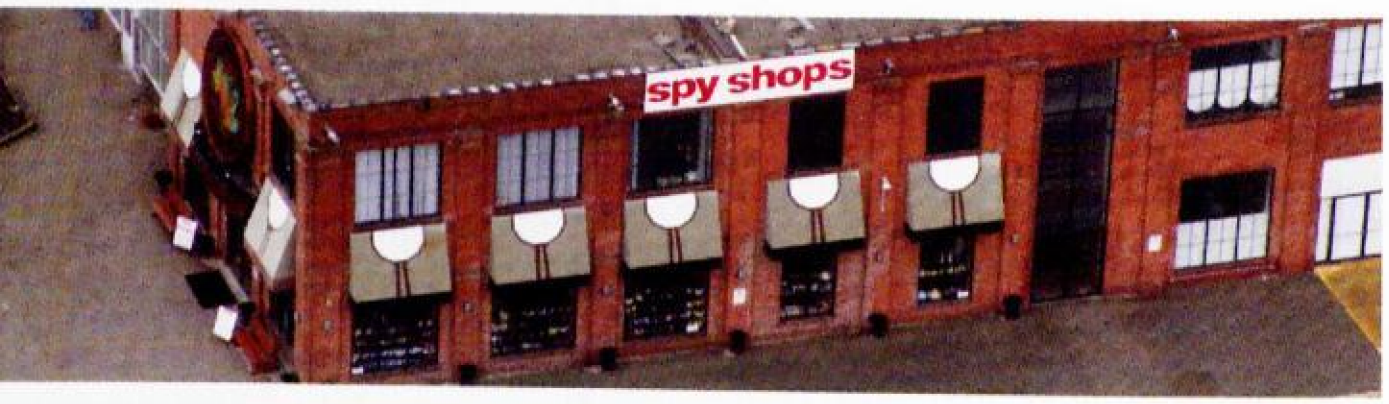
If the target goes into a premises which has another exit or is located on a street corner, the eyeball on handing over should not only overshoot, but also check the rear and side for possible exits. If there are any, he should notify the team and get a trigger on those exits too.

We say that if a target enters a large building or shopping centre he always goes in at 6 o'clock (by imagining a clock face over the area). Therefore if an operator checks the side of the building and notices an exit on the right side he can call, *'..there's an exit at 3 o'clock and I've got it covered..'*

Should the target exit from the side of the building, the call can be given, *'Standby, Standby, that's Alpha 1 out out at 3 o'clock and gone left left..'*

Be aware of both uniformed security guards and store detectives. They are trained to recognise anything out of the ordinary and they will soon notice you if you do not act naturally. Many use of covert radios and you will soon become the target under surveillance; it is likely that you will be tracked by CCTV too.

Many large shops are also used as a 'cut through' for shoppers so the target should be kept under control visually until all the exits are covered. It could be necessary for the whole team to enter the store depending on its size.



THE SHADOW CAR

It's unlikely you would be deployed on foot without a vehicle to back you up. If the target's vehicle is under control by a team member, another may go mobile in order to support and 'shadow' the foot team.

This car can move and park-up for short periods whilst shadowing the team. They can act as a relay in order to re-broadcast the eyeball's radio commentary to the other footmen. And also to the cars which may be out of foot comms range, in order to keep them updated and for one of them to maintain a log. The shadow car can carry out various other tasks such as replacing or recovering footmen when necessary or use it as a platform to obtain photography.

When acting as a relay you do not necessarily have to re-transmit the whole message coming from the eyeball, only the relevant parts.

Eyeball Footman: *"Standby Standby, that's Alpha 1 out out and gone left left towards the church".*

Shadow Car: *"Golf Relay, Standby Standby, Alpha 1 out and gone left left".*

If you are on foot and you hear a call-sign start to relay, manage your calls on the radio net to account for this. Say your message, then pause a few seconds so that the relay can do his bit before you carry on.



Indoor shopping centres can have multiple exits and levels

SOMETIMES YOU HAVE TO GET YOUR FEET WET!

CAFÉS & PUBLIC HOUSES

If the target goes into a café you must decide whether to follow him in or not and it would be advisable to carry out a walk past first to size up the situation.

When deciding to go in, consider your heat states and the fact that you may have to withdraw after the target leaves if you have been exposed.
too much. If it's not necessaryto be up close near the target, you should 'dominate' the room. This means being in a position where you can see your target and the exits - including the toilet doors. Remember:

- Do not feel awkward in public places, you have a right to be there, you are a member of the public.
- Always have cold drinks. If the target suddenly leaves it may appear odd if you leave a hot drink or meal on the table and walk out.
- Pay for your beverages as you receive them. If the target departs you do not want to be left in a queue waiting to pay.
- Sit close if a meeting is taking place. You do not necessarily have to face the target to overhear their conversations.
- Use your phone to update the team on Whatsapp and make notes if necessary.
- Fast food restaurants such as McDonalds are rather impersonal places where the staff do not interact with customers except to take their money. Smaller cafés are likely to be more friendly and so expect to engage in conversation with staff or the owner. Let the team know whether it is likely to be a long stay or a quick one. They have to eat too…
- Use the click system to communicate with the team. It is the trigger person outside who should respond to you (or the relay car).
- Switch your mobile phone onto 'silent' mode.





INDOOR SHOPPING CENTRES

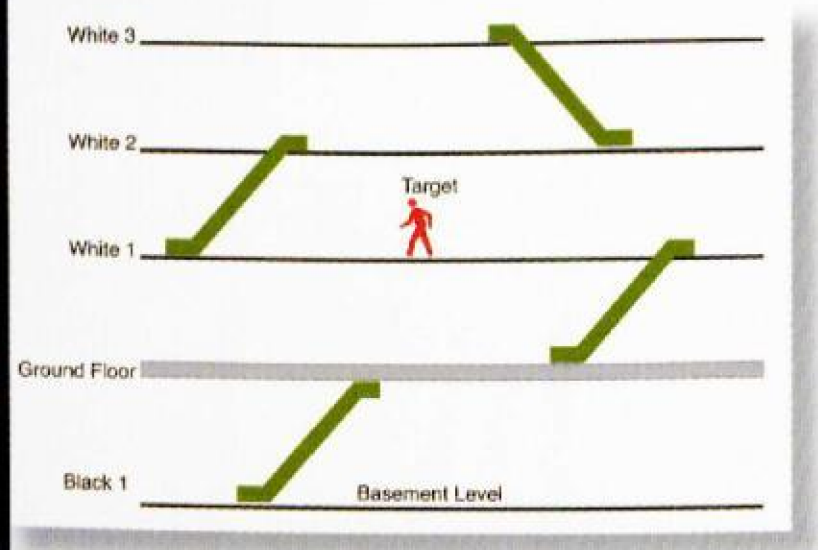
Treat indoor shopping centres as you would a street and position yourself appropriately. You should be aware of security guards and CCTV cameras in operation. If you act unnaturally you will be tracked.

Some centres have multiple levels so be prepared to use stairways inside shops, elevators and escalators. If your target enters somewhere with multiple levels, it would be wise to deploy an operator on the floor above in anticipation of the target going up.

In surveillance we normally term the ground floor as 'Ground Floor', the next level up is 'White 1', then 'White 2' and so on. Should there be a basement or level below ground level, it is termed as 'Black 1', 'Black 2' etc.

So if the target enters on the ground floor and continues shopping, an operator should be deployed above on White 1 for a couple of reasons. He can possibly get a trigger from above whilst looking down (but remember the arc of '10 to 2' also looks up and down). Also if the target heads for an escalator going up, you don't need to follow him as your team mate already has the top of the escalator covered.





FOOT 1: *'That's Alpha 1, foxtrot towards the escalator, that's Alpha 1 onto the escalator and up up towards White 1, I no longer have'.*

FOOT 2: *'Foot 2, roger that, I have Alpha 1 on White 1, at the top and gone left left towards...'*

Foot 1 can then either back Foot 2 or leapfrog ahead and position himself above on White 3. If you have a third operator deployed, they may want to remain on the ground floor ready for when the target comes back down again.

PARKS AND OPEN SPACES

These areas can be tricky and you have to use the open ground as cover by keeping your distance especially if there are not many people around. Use the pathways on a parallel with the target and be careful that you do not follow him like a lost duck. If the target stops, use benches to sit on, lay on the grass and sunbathe if necessary. Just look around and copy what everyone else is doing.

Be conscious of other pedestrians: dog walkers, joggers, people with children and children's play areas. When the target leaves the park area make sure all team members do not converge on the same exit point as you attempt to close up. It is possible you will be leaving a wide open park space and go straight into a confined urban area.



ESCALATORS

Many indoor shopping centres, large stores and underground train stations have escalators which should not cause you too much of a problem. When using an escalator:

- Try avoiding the same escalator as the target, especially if he is aware. If the target turns around he may see all of the team. Only put one member of the team on the escalator at any one time, unless busy like the London Underground.
- Keep to the right side and use other pedestrians as cover. Drop your upper body by slightly lowering your right shoulder in order to lower your profile.
- There may be a short period when the target is 'unsighted' as he disappears over of the apex at the top, so quickly regain control.
- Should the target get to the top and then suddenly turn and take the escalator back down; avoid eye contact, do not take the same escalator down, instead carry out a hand over. Make your way down by using another escalator, the stairs or a lift.

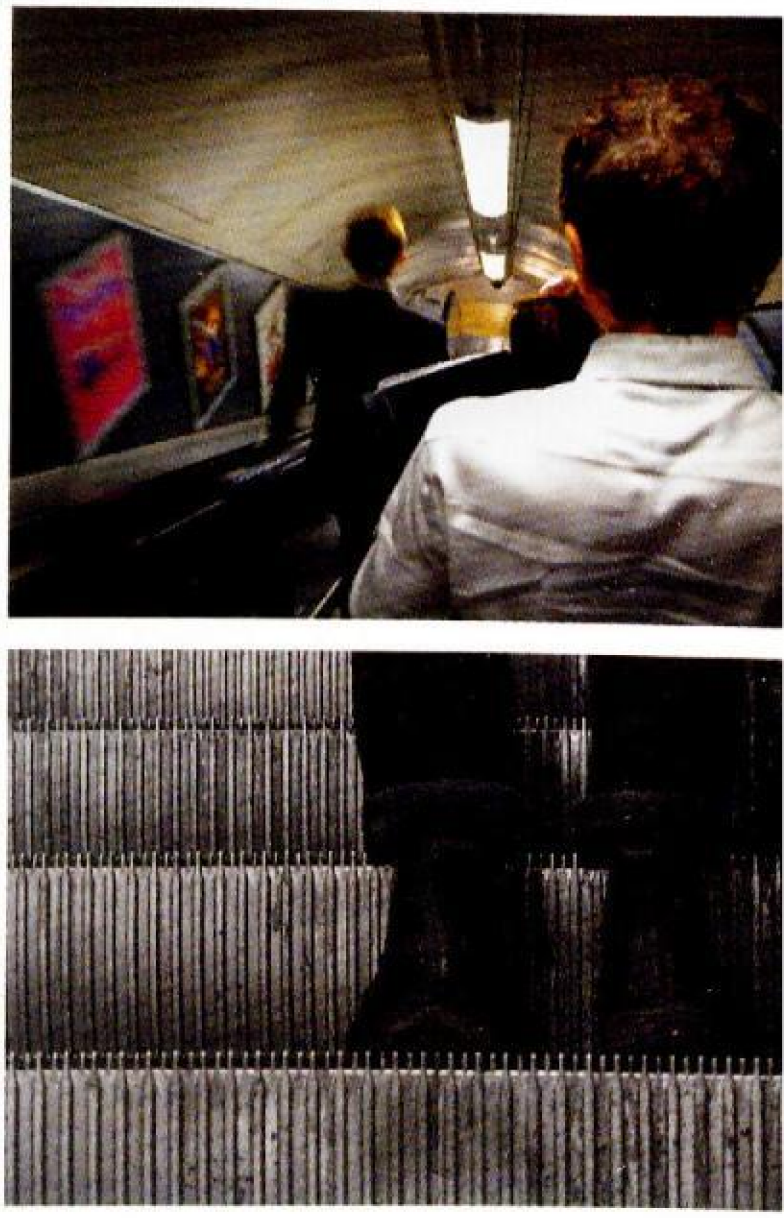
LIFTS & ELEVATORS

When a target enters a large building with many floors the team should expect the eyeball to minimise on his radio, and possibly resort to 'clicks' to communicate. If the target heads towards an elevator, you could follow him in but should consider:

- Is it necessary and will we achieve anything? (Loss v Gain). An operator who gets that close may have to withdraw from the surveillance afterwards because he has been over exposed.
- Is it safe or wise to enter with him? The target might confront you.
- Remove your covert earpiece, it may be seen or heard in close proximity. Do not put it in your shirt pocket otherwise it will still pick up the transmissions from your induction loop and will be heard.
- Avoid eye contact at all times.
- Take control of the button panel. This way, you can ask the target which floor he wants (as any person would do, naturally), then get off at the same floor, or maybe the one above or below.
- Be prepared for casual conversation with others or the target himself.
- Switch your mobile phone onto 'silent' mode.
- Relay the floor to other team members as soon as possible.

If the target's intended floor is unknown (because he or someone else had taken control of the button panel) your best option is to take the second to top floor if he is going up. This way you can identify which floor he gets off at, then you get off at the floor above. If he gets off at the same floor as you, good, if he stays in the lift he only has one other option which is the top floor.

After being so close to the target, you have to consider that you have had prolonged exposure without necessarily being compromised.



Always remember their shoes.

TELEPHONE BOXES

Telephone booths can be used by the target or yourself at any time.

- To make or receive a phone call - the obvious
- To perform anti-surveillance
- To get out of poor weather whilst waiting for someone.

You should always be wary of any stop at a telephone box. The target, even if making a call, has a clear view to three sides and would be a natural tendency for him to look around outside whilst talking on the phone. Some public telephone boxes have advertising pictures stuck to the glass, these adverts enable you to see out but observers cannot see into the box. They are a good form of cover if you need to take photographs or video.

CLEARING A TELEPHONE BOX

Some enforcement agencies are taught to 'clear' a telephone box. This means that after a target has used it and moved away, an operator should quickly check for anything that may have been left behind. A quick call should be made to the office from the pay phone. At a later time (and through official channels) they can obtain a list of all calls made from that telephone. If you can identify the time of your call, the targets number will be listed as the one before and you now have identified the number your target called.

In similar fashion, if the target uses a cash machine, an operator should put his card into the machine to record and mark a transaction. Then again through correct channels, you can identify the account used by the target.

Treat clearing telephone boxes with extreme caution. A very aware target is likely to use one (or pretend to) and then leave. Knowing that it might be checked, he will keep an eye on it to see what happens in order to identify any surveillance. A sophisticated target may even have counter surveillance deployed who will be watching.

PUBLIC TRANSPORT

TAXIS AND PRIVATE HIRE VEHICLES

At times your target may take a taxi or private hire cab. Taxis can be flagged down and stopped in the street. Private hire cabs are pre booked by telephone or email and UBER via the app. Treat taxis as you would a mobile surveillance but be aware of certain dangers:



- The driver will probably know all the short cuts and cut throughs, so he will make many short left and right turns. Therefore handovers should be carried out more frequently.
- When the 'taxi light' on the roof is illuminated - the cab is available for hire
- Expect him to stop at short notice and to stop anywhere. Taxis can also use special lanes in traffic which are prohibited by other road users.
- If you are following in a taxi yourself, be careful of what you say to the driver because you do not want your driver to alert the target's driver. Some taxi drivers can be very protective over their colleagues.

ISS TRAINING LTD



- Make a note of the taxi firm if it is a private hire company. If you later have a loss, you may be able to call and 'blag' the destination from the controller.

If your target regularly takes taxis, consider working 'two up' so that one of you can quickly deploy on foot.

BUSES

If the target heads for a bus stop, inform the team as soon as possible because you will probably have to get on with him. Don't get unnecessarily close while waiting for the bus and consider keeping away from the bus stop altogether, especially if there is no one else around.

As the bus approaches try to obtain the fleet number, registration number or other identifying features and relay them to the team. You may have an operator in a car backing you and he does not want to end up following the wrong bus, they can all look alike!

Inform the team that you're getting on the bus so they will know you will be unable to communicate. If you can overhear the targets destination you can ask for the same. Depress your pressel switch whilst asking for the ticket, as this will be transmitted to your team.

As always you do not want to be in the targets '10 to 2', so attempt to sit behind him so you're not in his view. If he goes upstairs on a double decker, remain downstairs at the rear and cover the stairs. Obviously, if there is a strong possibility that he may meet someone on the bus, then you do need to get closer. Modern buses are fitted with CCTV and the monitors are on display for all to view.

If your back-up is following in a car you will need to communicate with him, so instigate comms by giving four clicks when you can. If the target shows intentions to getting off (anxiously looking out of the window, doing up their coat, picking up bags), then give the team a 'standby' so they can then prepare themselves for deploying someone on foot.

If you are quick enough, consider putting a team member on the bus astop prior to the target. If he is aware and possibly carrying out anti-surveillance this should put you one step ahead. Alternatively, put an operator on the bus at the next stop once the target has got on.

A target has many options when they get off a train.









RAILWAYS

Should your target arrive at a railway station, the team leader will decide whether to put an operator (or two) on the train with him. The size of the surveillance team will obviously dictate what course of action is taken. If you know the target is likely to use a train or that it is part of his routine to do so, you can be better prepared and deploy a larger team. A train journey can be broken down into three parts, the beginning, middle and the end; it is the end phase or destination when you are most vulnerable.

On entering the station and ticket office the following should be adopted:

- If the destination is unknown, the eyeball gets right behind the target at the ticket counter. He is to establish the target's destination by overhearing the target or by 'blagging' it out of the counter assistant.

- If the ticket is obtained from a machine, you will need to get in very close in order to see over the targets shoulder and obtain the journey details.

- The eyeball purchases return tickets and informs the team of the details by radio. A car call-sign should relay the details because radio communications will be difficult due to the station noise and electrical cables.

- It will be difficult to obtain the target's destination if they have purchased a pre-paid ticket or bought one on the internet.

- Keep control of the target on the platform; if there aren't many people about, keep away and out of his sight until the last minute that the train arrives. Do not stand on the side of the target from which the train will be approaching, otherwise the target will be constantly looking in your direction as he waits.

ISS TRAINING LTD

- Keep an eye on any information displays or monitors. Modern platforms usually have an information board stating the next train's destination, arrival time and stops. If you have to wait a while, you can keep your distance or consider getting a trigger from another platform.

- The team leader should decide whether to put one or two operators on the train and if practical, deploy a mobile unit to the trains destination.

- When the train arrives remember that on some carriages you have to press a button to open the doors.

- The eyeball should keep control onboard and remain alert at all times incase the target gets off the train earlier than expected (which is possible, if he is surveillance conscious).

- The remaining team should locate themselves in the carriages either side of the target's carriage and preferably facing the carriage door. If the eyeball is unable to tell you that the target is moving carriages, you should at least be able to see it happen.

- Remember to put your mobile phone onto 'silent' mode. You don't want the whole train looking at you if it rings.

- If you find yourself in a bad position and feel the need to move, do not just stand up and move for no apparent reason. Wait until the train pulls into a station and get off - then get back on the train further down the carriage.

- If the journey will be a few hours duration, switch off your radio in order to preserve battery power and report in by phone, but switch it back on whenever you approach a station.

- If the carriage is full when you depart - it could become empty as your journey continues.





The eyeball, might find it difficult to communicate to the rest of the team, especially when the train arrives at a station. The click system should be used as we have already described. If the target starts to get off the train then rapid clicks can be given (standby). If he stays where he is 'two clicks' (no) should be given to let the team know that he's not leaving. This procedure can also be used on a bus.

As the train approaches the destination station, attempt to identify which side of the train you will be getting off and also the direction they'll walk as you step off, (left or right). This is to avoid finding yourself in front of the target, use the same door and you will be naturally behind them.



Give your team as much notice as possible when you see the target getting ready to leave the train. It is likely that at least one operator may end up in front of the target as everyone gets off the train. If this is the case, the eyeball should inform the team member how far behind the target is so he can quickly move out of the way. If you do end up in front, **do not** look back behind you to see where the target is.

Keep close control of them and keep the commentary going because communications will be difficult. Hopefully one of the car call-signs will be in the area of the station ready to act as a relay.

You can plan that any foot call-signs on the train have to be picked up by their cars. It may be that fresh footmen are deployed to take over as the target leaves the train station. If this is the case, radio chatter should be minimised and only be used to commentate on the target. Any administration such as finding out where your car is located, who is taking over from you etc, should be carried out on the phone.

Following a target on a train is fairly simple because he has nowhere else to go. The difficult part of the surveillance is when he arrives at his destination.

He could:



- Get on another train
- Take the Underground
- Continue on foot
- Get into a taxi
- Take a bus
- Be met by a car
- Have his own car parked nearby
- Cycle



If a surveillance team has to get ahead of the train, the driver's skills have to be first class and the use of a Satnav is essential.

LONDON UNDERGROUND RAILWAY AND METRO SYSTEMS

The London Underground is a vast tube network used by thousands of people each day and is probably the easiest and quickest mode of transport within London. Because targets can frequently and easily use the underground system, we have to adopt certain procedures when dealing with this situation.

We have to be very guarded in these areas of the third party, pickpockets and security staff. Any unnatural behaviour displayed will certainly attract someone's attention.

The main problem as far as surveillance is concerned is the fact that the team, have limited communications underground. Many stations now have Wi-Fi internet but only within the stations and not on the train whilst it is moving. You could give updates using WhatsApp so the messages send whenever you lock onto a Wi-Fi signal. Conventional radios do not work to those above the surface but do work very well to others also underground.

If your target is on the street and heads for a tube station, the eyeball reports, *'that's Alpha 1 towards Camden Town tube station'*. Everyone on the team should now switch on and expect to really close up to the target otherwise he will go down into the tube system and be lost in the crowds.

If the target has an Oyster Card he will go straight through the ticket barriers and into the system with no indication of his destination - this can really hinder a surveillance operation. Team members should also possess an oyster card or debit/credit card to enable them to freely move about the underground system.

The best way to remain covert is to use the hundreds of other people going about their daily business as cover. The team will get in very close to the target on escalators down and in the tunnelled walkways. On a packed platform at least one operator will have 'eyes on' the target, with the others in close proximity but hiding within all the commuters (or waiting on a nearby opposite platform).

The eyeball has to keep the commentary flowing, '*That's towards the Piccadilly Line South, Piccadilly Line South'* and the back up acknowledge the calls all of the time by repeating it back ('Roger that, Piccadilly Line South'). This also acts as a relay by passing the message to those operators behind and further up the escalators. Be aware of your voice booming down tunnels and walkways so try to keep it low.

Be prepared for the target running as he gets to the bottom of the escalator or stairs adjoining the platforms. He might rush to catch a train that has just arrived. It would not be out of place for you to also run at this time as everyone else does it. Expect a certain amount of unusual behaviour on the underground system as the target changes direction frequently and appears lost the reason being - he might actually be lost! It is easy to get confused when you are in an unfamiliar place, especially when one of the tube lines is out of service and detour routes are in place. Take a look around you and observe the signage.









Key to lines

- Bakerloo
- Central
- Circle
- District
- Hammersmith & City
- Jubilee
- Metropolitan
- Northern
- Piccadilly
- Victoria
- Waterloo & City
- DLR

Scan the code to download the London Underground map.

ACCURATE COMMENTARY

Keep an eye on the travel display on the platform because this should tell you how long you have to wait for the next train. The eyeball should be close and on the blind side of the target (not the side the train approaches from, which is normally from the left). When it does, everyone shouldclose up and get on with at least two operators in the target's carriage - one should be within reach of him.

Ideally the rest of the team should be spread about and in different carriages. However they need to keep visual contact with each other. As you know by now, the click system needs to be used when its difficult to use the radio net.

Whilst on the tube, the team will have to ensure their covert equipment remains covert. A wireless earpiece can look much like a hearing aid, a radio pressel switch could be mistaken for a trigger to a suicide bomb and someone bumping into you with a radio on your hip might give you a questioning look. If you are wearing your radio on your hip or belt, be careful when you sit down because the arm rests are fairly close together. If you are not careful one will catch the base of your radio as you sit down, unclipping it and causing it to fall away when you stand up again.

Most commuters get on the train and quickly find a seat, so do this as well. If you are standing at the end of the carriage by the doors when there are plenty of free seats it will look odd, so sit down.

Be aware that if you get on a train on the outskirts of London heading towards the City, the carriage may be very sparse with commuters. The closer you get to the City the busier it gets, therefore you have to be conscious that it is possible you will lose sight of the target. If this is the case, you have to move closer (possibly by leaving the train and getting back on again through a closer door). Also consider the opposite situation; getting on where it is extremely busy and you are very close to the target, but then travelling away from the City and the carriage becomes empty.

Hopefully all of the team will have heard the rapid series of clicks (standby) when the target leaves the tube. They have to keep close control amongst the heavy crowds. Again, if someone ends up infront of the target, they should peel off out of view as soon as possible.

ISS TRAINING LTD

Look for the yellow 'Exit' direction signs as you pull into the platform, this will give you an indication of the target's direction as he gets off. If you think that by getting off you will end up in front of the target, move within the train to get behind him and get off by the same door.

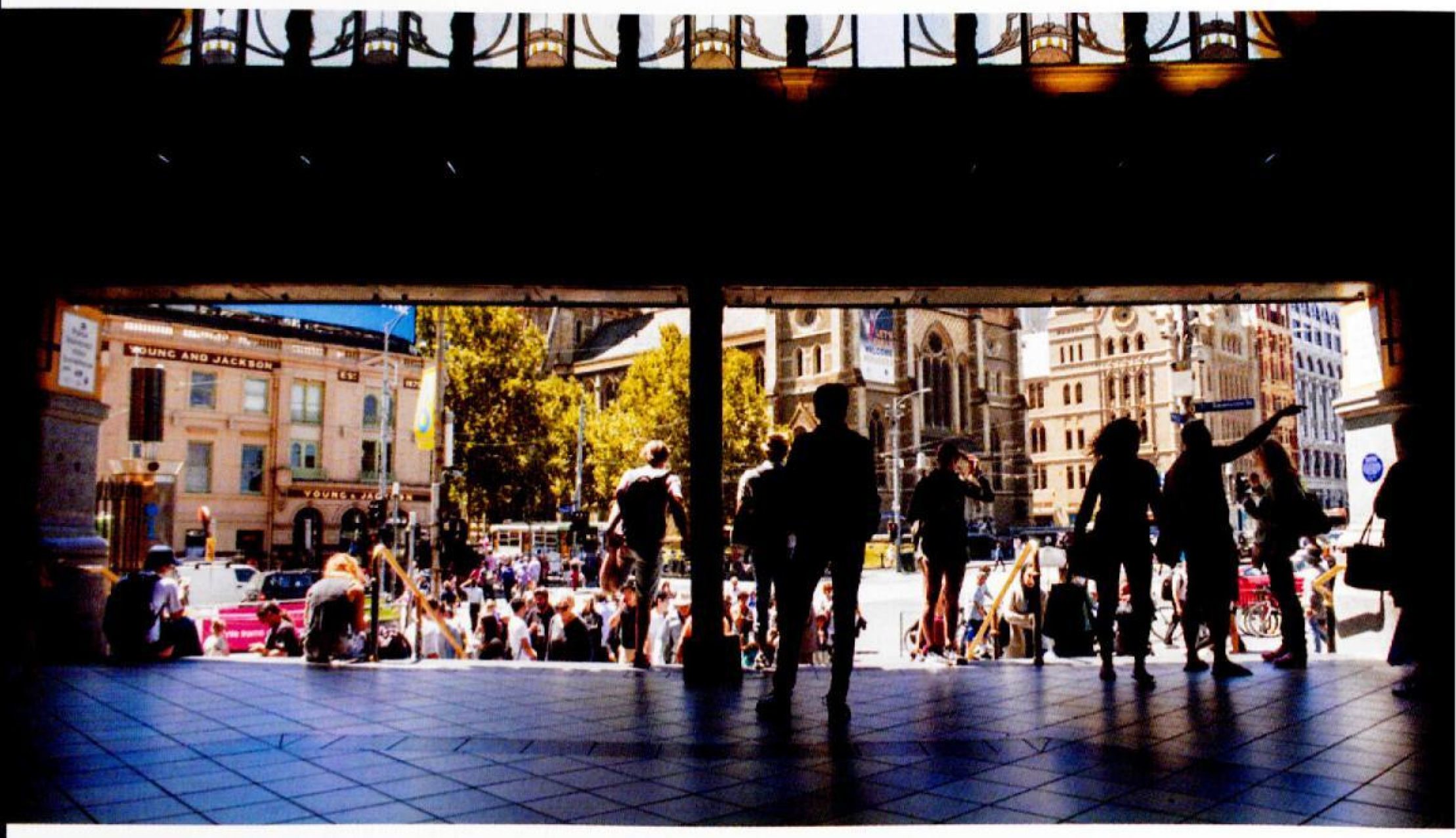
The top of the escalator can be a dangerous place because the target can turn sharply to get onto another line or can go through the exit barriers. One of the worst targets to follow on the underground is one who does not really know where he is going or how to get there. Rather than keep moving at a steady pace which is good for the followers, he frequently stops and starts whilst looking at the maps or signage, which creates a real challenge to any surveillance team.

Pay particular attention to the target's body language. If he reaches for his oyster card this may indicate he about to leave the station. If you get close to him at the exit barrier, you might be able to see how much credit he has remaining from the display.

Exiting the station can also be testing. The team is up close and personal then suddenly you are out onto a quiet open street. Conversely, and equally testing, is coming out of the tube at Tottenham Court Road or Oxford Circus which is packed solid with pedestrians - keeping control is difficult. Surveillance on the London Underground is certainly a challenge but not impossible. It takes a practised and well rehearsed team to keep control.



As soon as you are out, the eyeball should be carrying out a radio check to ensure the team are together.



DEPLOYING ON FOOT FROM A CAR (MOBILE TO FOOT)

Prior to surveillance commencing, the team leader should have planned and briefed the team what to do in the event that the target goes on foot (foxtrot). When the target departs on foot or leaves his vehicle, the surveillance team must act with urgency in order not to lose contact at this critical stage.

If the team is involved in a three car follow and the target parks up and walks into a town centre, a foot operator should deploy straight away to take control of the target. The remainder of the team can then position their cars for the departure and then join and 'back' the eyeball on foot. Think ahead, if the target enters a car park, it is likely that he is going to stop and continue on foot, so you should be thinking of deploying the moment he enters.

However, do not be too eager to deploy - if the target has to obtain a parking ticket and return to the car to place it in the window, wait. There's no point you getting out of your car otherwise you will have nothing to do but lurk around the car park looking like a car thief.

Ideally, one operator should remain and cover the target's vehicle (Bravo 1) in case the foot team have a loss and the target returns to his car. At times a footman will have to 'dump' his car and risk parking fines. If practical, another operator can move the footman's car to a safer location for him.

The operator covering Bravo 1 should now manoeuvre to get a good trigger on the car and also try to cover the exit to the car park so he can call a direction of travel when departing. When the target is under control of the footmen, you may consider taking a quick look inside his vehicle; note how long the car parking ticket is for and anything else of interest.

If you are 'two up' in the same car and the passenger gets out on foot, remember where you were dropped off, as this should be the same place where you get picked up again afterwards. If it is not practical to do so, ensure that you designate a place to be collected.





Consider:

- Before you deploy ask yourself: *'Is it necessary, do I have to get out yet?'*
- Never screech to a halt, act naturally and never run or appear to rush
- Always reverse park your vehicle to enable you to manoeuvre away quickly
- Cover up any equipment, paperwork or maps
- Inform the Team Leader of your intention to go on foot. This is normally done by carrying out a radio check with your body set to your car or a team member as you deploy
- Don't forget your mobile phone and wallet
- Do not run
- Take control of the target, give a commentary

ISS TRAINING LTD

RETURNING TO YOUR VEHICLE

As soon as the target heads back towards their car, the eyeball should call *'That's Alpha 1 generally back towards Bravo 1'*. This gives the operator covering Bravo 1 notice. As soon as he sees the target he should take charge; *'Golf has!, that's Alpha 1 towards Bravo 1'* and this is the cue for the foxtrots to get back to their cars.

When returning to your vehicle consider:

- The footmen need to get back to their vehicles as soon as possible or the target will be gone
- Turn your covert radio off (it will interfere with your car set). Take out your earpiece, put it in its pouch and put it away. Do not put it somewhere on the cars dashboard, you will lose it
- Take a look around you, think third party and lock your doors
- Tell the team that you are 'complete' (back in the car) and move to your tactical position ready for going mobile

ROLLING STAKEOUT

Perfect foot surveillance is when it is combined with a vehicle in support. It is possible to conduct surveillance of a target that is on foot without getting out of your car. This is very tricky to carry out and a good local knowledge of the area is important and aids such as a Satnav helps a great deal.

The target who may be walking down a street is controlled by a car call-sign. A second callsign will be ahead of the target or covering a junction where the target could change direction.

There may even be a third call-sign ahead or to the side of the target.

The car that 'has' gives the commentary and calls any change of direction, the second car should be ahead and in position to pick him up when he goes unsighted. When this second car takes control, the first now moves ahead and takes up another tactical position (he should try to use parallel routes rather than drive past the target).

He takes up a new position and the target is passed from one car to another or 'bounced' along without actually being followed.





FOLLOW THE QR CODE TO TAKE YOU TO THE QUESTION & ANSWER 'HELP' PAGES.

WORKING 'TWO UP'

If you are two up in the car and one of you has been dropped off on foot, head back to the same place or the place that was designated to be picked up from. **DO NOT** come over the radio net asking for your cars location, *'India where are you? I need picking up...'*.

This will interrupt very important commentary regarding what the target is doing on a standby. If you have to obtain directions, use your mobile phone and don't clog up the radio net. Your partner in the car should send you a text message with the pick-up point to save you from asking.

CHAPTER FIVE QUESTIONS

Foot Surveillance

1) Analyse the four phases of a surveillance operation and the surveillance cycle

2) Explain where is a good place for a foot handover

3) Explain when you should carry out a foot handover

4) Explain what you should consider before following a subject around a corner

5) Explain what the Trigger should not do on a standby?

6) Whether you are on foot or in a car, the answer to 'Back-up can you at..?' should always be 'Yes Yes' Explain why

7) Identify what options you need to consider if your target enters a shop and still appears to be in there after 30 minutes. What is your decision process?

8) If you are operating 'two up' and you have been dropped to go foxtrot, where should you get picked up and why?

ISS TRAINING LTD

9) If you lose your target, explain what you have to consider in respect of remaining covert whilst carrying out a search?

10) Identify why we should 'clear' a phone box used by the target and what precautions should be made whist doing so

11) You are on your own and the target turns a corner, explain how do you deal with it?

Advanced Foot

12) Describe how you would determine a target's destination if he enters a train station

13) Identify why it is bad practice for one person to buy train tickets for the rest of the surveillance team

14) Identify what communication problems you may encounter on public transport and suggest solutions

15) Analyse key actions in the event a target waits for and boards a bus

16) Analyse key actions in the event a target heads into an underground train station

17) Analyse key actions in the event of a surveillance target getting into a taxi

18) Explain the process of a Rolling Stakeout

ASSESSMENT TIME!

1) Analyse the four phases of a surveillance operation and the surveillance cycle.

2) Explain where is a good place for a foot handover.

3) Explain when you should carry out a foot handover.

4) Explain what you should consider before following a subject around a corner.

ISS TRAINING LTD

5) Explain what the Trigger should not do on a standby?

6) Whether you are on foot or in a car, the answer to *"Back-up can you at…'* should always be '*Yes Yes'*. Explain why.

7) Identify what options you need to consider if your target enters a shop and still appears to be in there after 30 minutes. What is your decision process?

8) If you are operating 'two up' and you have been dropped to go foxtrot, where should you get picked up and why?

9) If you lose your target, explain what do you have to consider in respect of remaining covert whilst carrying out a search?

10) Identify why we should 'clear' a phone box used by the target and what precautions should be made whist doing so.

ISS TRAINING LTD

11) You are on your own and the target turns a corner, explain how do you deal with it?

12) Describe how you would determine a target's destination if he enters a train station.

13) Identify why it is bad practice for one person to buy train tickets for the rest of the surveillance team.

14) Identify what communication problems you may encounter on public transport and suggest solutions.

15) Analyse key actions in the event a target waits for and boards a bus.

16) Analyse key actions in the event a target heads into an underground train station.

ISS TRAINING LTD

17) Analyse key actions in the event of a surveillance target getting into a taxi.

18) Explain the process of a Rolling Stakeout.

ISS TRAINING LTD



Chapter Six

MOBILE SURVEILLANCE PART 1

THE SURVEILLANCE TEAM

We refer to a mobile surveillance being carried out by a team rather than an individual. Carrying out a surveillance on your own is asking for trouble as the risk of compromise is very high from the outset and loss of contact in traffic is inevitable.

The success of a surveillance is dependent upon how many operators are used. An effective surveillance team should include a combination of cars, a van and motorbikes.

It is appreciated that in the commercial sector clients are very cost conscious and that surveillance can be expensive to carry out. It is essential to explain the importance of using a minimum of two operators in seperate vehicles, when providing estimates to potential clients. I would also explain to a client the pitfalls of using only one operator to conduct surveillance as detailed below.

A mobile surveillance takes practice. A lot of it. It is not a pursuit or 'mad car chase', carried out at excessive speeds. Nor is it aggressive manoeuvring, screeching brakes and handbrake turns. Driving should always be done in a calm, controlled relaxed manner. As previously mentioned, a surveillance should be 'imposed' upon a target, rather than a target being 'followed' - there is a vast difference.



TEAM SIZE

You are likely to spend more time in your car on mobile surveillance than any other method. Mobile surveillance is probably one of the most difficult types of surveillance to carry out because there are so many factors that are against you. The target has to be followed without detection and without you losing contact with him. At the same time, you have to keep a log of events, communicate with the other members of the team, navigate, photograph and consider the target's future intentions.

Many surveillance teams that work on the commercial circuit work in pairs, one in a van and the other in a car, but larger teams are also common. Pre-planning will decide on the size of the team but equally, several people on a team can be very hard to control.

Factors to consider are:

- Is surveillance the answer? Can you achieve your aims by open source intelligence?
- Would deploying a tracking device provide the results you need?
- The costs per surveillance operator
- The target's awareness level - this is very important
- Area that the target is likely to be in, i.e., busy town centres, cities, rural or motorway and the likely areas he may visit - you may need a motorbike or a taxi
- Whether a static OP is required to act as 'trigger'
- Is an extra foot person required to double up with a mobile operator?

A well trained and experienced surveillance team will enable a mobile surveillance to be carried out with the minimum of effort using their own initiative. The team leader should be there to make important decisions only, whereas the eyeball controls the target and dictates where the remainder of the team is located.

SURVEILLANCE VEHICLES

Ideally all of the team's vehicles should be different in all respects, it would be a waste of time having two grey Vauxhall Corsas on the same task. Preferably the colour of the car should be a dark or neutral colour.



A white car can resemble a Police car.

WHAT WOULD YOU WANT IN AN 'IDEAL' SURVEILLANCE CAR?

- **Common Make & Model**

For example a Ford, Vauxhall or Volkswagen of which there are plenty about. The vehicle should not have any identifiable features such as spoilers, low profile tyres or excessively tinted windows.

- **Dark and Popular Colour**

The colour of the vehicle is important and a neutral, nondescript colour is better than something bright like yellow or white. You will always be seen but being noticed is something different, especially after numerous sightings. Greys, dark greens or dark blue should help you blend in much better. Avoid black cars (especially with tinted windows) as they can look rather sinister and draw attention. A white car is easily mistaken for a Police car.

- **Minimum 1.6+ Litre Engine Size**

We are not embarking on a mad car chase but if you become detached from the team or held up by a slow motorist, you need some power in the vehicle for you to overtake quite quickly, especially large slow moving vehicles. A 1.8 or 2 litre engine should suffice.

- **Safe and Roadworthy**

The car should be safe to drive at high speed and be able to cope with numerous 3 point turns and tight manoeuvring. The car should be absolutely roadworthy in all respects and strongly built with airbags.

- **Air Conditioning**

Air conditioning is a good feature to have especially in hot weather. The only drawback is that you have to sit there with your engine constantly running which could attract unwanted attention.



Different makes & models all seem to look the same these days.



You need a decent engine size to give you the power to overtake slow movers.

- **No Noticeable Markings**

The vehicle should be fairly plain with no visible or distinguishing marks. Extra fog lamps, low profile tyres or fancy alloy wheels should be avoided. Likewise, excessive scratches, dents, damage and malfunctioning lights will help to identify the vehicle and make it more noticeable.

It is not recommended to use vehicles with personalised registration plates, or those that will easily be remembered such as having the letters ROD, BAT or SAM.

- **Automatic Transmission**

This is down to personal preference but some operators prefer to drive an automatic car. When you are holding a radio fist microphone, giving a radio commentary, programming a Satnav, navigating, using your dictaphone and grabbing your camera all at the same time, it helps not to have to change gear as well!

- **5 Doors**

Again, this is personal preference. If involved in a surveillance where you are likely to be picking up or dropping off foot people on a regular basis (or OP teams), this is a must. It avoids the passenger having to get out to pull the front seats forward to let people get into the back.

- **Avoid Uniformity**

All of the above are good features to look for in a surveillance vehicle but what you have to be mindful of is that we all don't go out and buy the same a car!

WEEKLY MAINTENANCE

Obviously your vehicle has to be roadworthy at all times and you should make a habit of checking it on a regular basis; points to look out for can be remembered by the mnemonic **POWER:**

PETROL	Ensure that you fill up with fuel every morning of surveillance and have a spare can in the boot
OIL	Check the engine oil level at regular intervals
WATER	The coolant water needs to be topped up to prevent overheating and the screen washer needs to be kept full, especially in winter months
ELECTRICS	Ensure that the lights work correctly, especially if driving at night. The target may notice if you have a light out plus you also run the risk of being stopped by the police
RUBBER	Ensure that your tyres have enough tread and the air pressure is correct. Do not forget to check your spare tyre as this is often overlooked



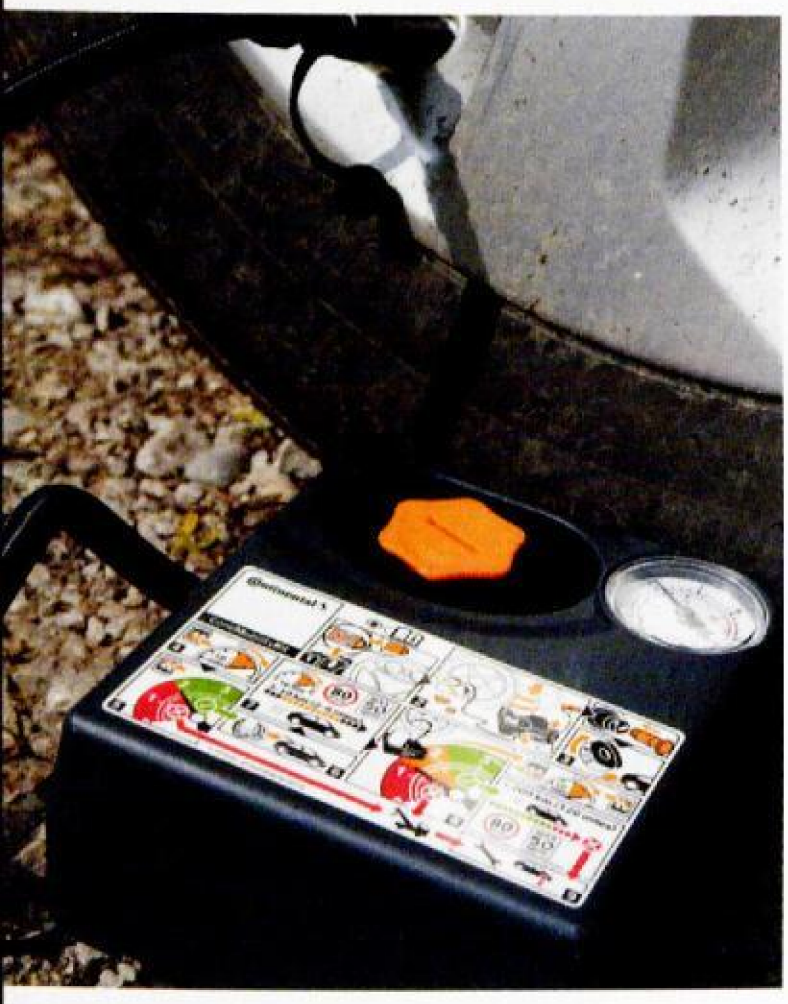
Tinted rear windows are common but can look sinister.



Also consider the cleanliness of your car, inside and out. The interior should be kept clean and tidy but not too immaculate. You do not want the car to look sterile but lived in and used. Any items of importance should be kept out of view such as maps, brief sheets and radio parts.







SAFETY EQUIPMENT

In addition to the car bag containing your surveillance equipment, there are certain items that you may want to keep in your vehicle for safety.

- **Hi Visibility Jacket**

By wearing this you can sit and wait for hours in some places without being bothered, it can afford you some cover. However, if you're not using it, keep it out of sight because it's very easily spotted - even from a distance.

In addition, if you encounter a road traffic accident it is something quick to throw on if you assist. A lot of people in this industry have first aid or paramedic experience and it will help establish authority if you are trying to take control of a situation where people are looking for guidance before the emergency services arrive.

- **Torch**

This is obviously useful at night. A torch such as a 'Sure Fire' is quite small but extremely powerful.

- **Windscreen Wash**

A bottle of screen wash and a cloth should be handy in order to keep the inside and outsides of the windows clean. Dirt and dead flies will play havoc with your camera's auto focus.

During the day clean windows reflect ambient light from the sun and clouds. At night, street lighting, moonlight and other car headlights also have the same effect. These reflections make it difficult to see inside the car as the reflected light is bouncing all over. A car with dirty windows makes it easier to see through because you don't have all of the reflections, so clean them to your advantage.

- **De-Icer Spray**

Not only does it clear your windows quickly in cold weather, but as a last resort it could be used for self protection as the aerosols have quite a powerful spray and will keep an attacker at bay.

- **Voltage Inverter**

This is a very useful piece of kit to keep in the car, it transforms the car's 12 volt DC power supply to 220 volts AC. This enables you to run mains operated equipment and chargers for radios, phones and cameras whilst on the move.

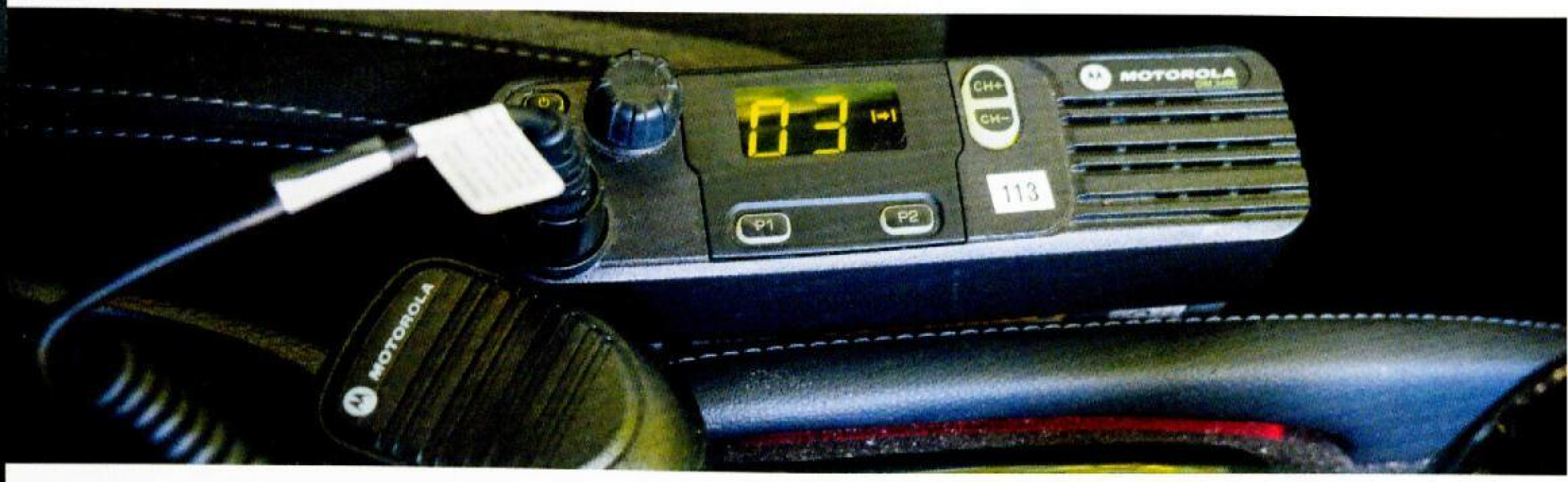
- **First Aid Kit**

A first aid kit is needed for yourself, the surveillance team and for any other emergencies that you may come across. Trauma dressings, plasters, splints and basic analgesics should be included. If everyone in the team has a first aid kit, ensure that you all store it in the same place in your vehicles.

- **Tyre Weld**

A flat tyre is quickly repaired with 'tyre weld' which comes in the form of an aerosol that can be injected in order to get you out of a hostile situation quickly.

ISS TRAINING LTD



MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS

Many operators and agencies adopt their own style of radio call-signs and codes therefore we have no hard and fast rules regarding this. Use whatever system you are used to or familiar and comfortable with.

In simple terms, each vehicle could be called: Car 1, Car 2 and Car 3. However, if someone is eavesdropping on the radio net it will not take long to establish how many cars are involved. Hence we tend to use the phonetic alphabet for car call signs, i.e: Golf, Hotel, India etc..



Keep your radio handset out of view.

If you are using a hand held radio (or a fist mic) try to keep the radio set below the level of the dashboard and do not bring it up to your mouth - if your target is checking his mirrors he will see you. Third parties will also notice if you are not careful. In a similar vein, do not make a habit of bobbing your head down whenever you speak on the radio, this also looks peculiar and may be noticed. When you are static, ensure that your radio equipment is out of view and that radio transmissions cannot be heard through open windows (especially on hot days).

If you are two up in the car, make it look natural when conversing on the radio, actually appear as if you are having a conversation rather than two heads looking in opposite directions - be natural.

TWO UP?

Enforcement Agencies will often use two operators in order to share responsibilities so that one person concentrates on driving whilst the other operates the radio and provides the commentary. If I ever work 'two-up' it is because the passenger may have to deploy on foot at short notice (or they are needed to take photographs). So although I have a passenger on board, I will drive AND give a commentary so I am in total control. It is also possible that the passenger will sit behind in the rear, so they are out of view.

LOCK YOUR DOORS

This is a personal preference but it is adviseable that you lock your car doors whenever you are inside, especially in built-up areas. It can be quite frightening for a 'hardened' target to open the door and drag you out. In some neighbourhoods there are people who would not think twice about having a go at you.



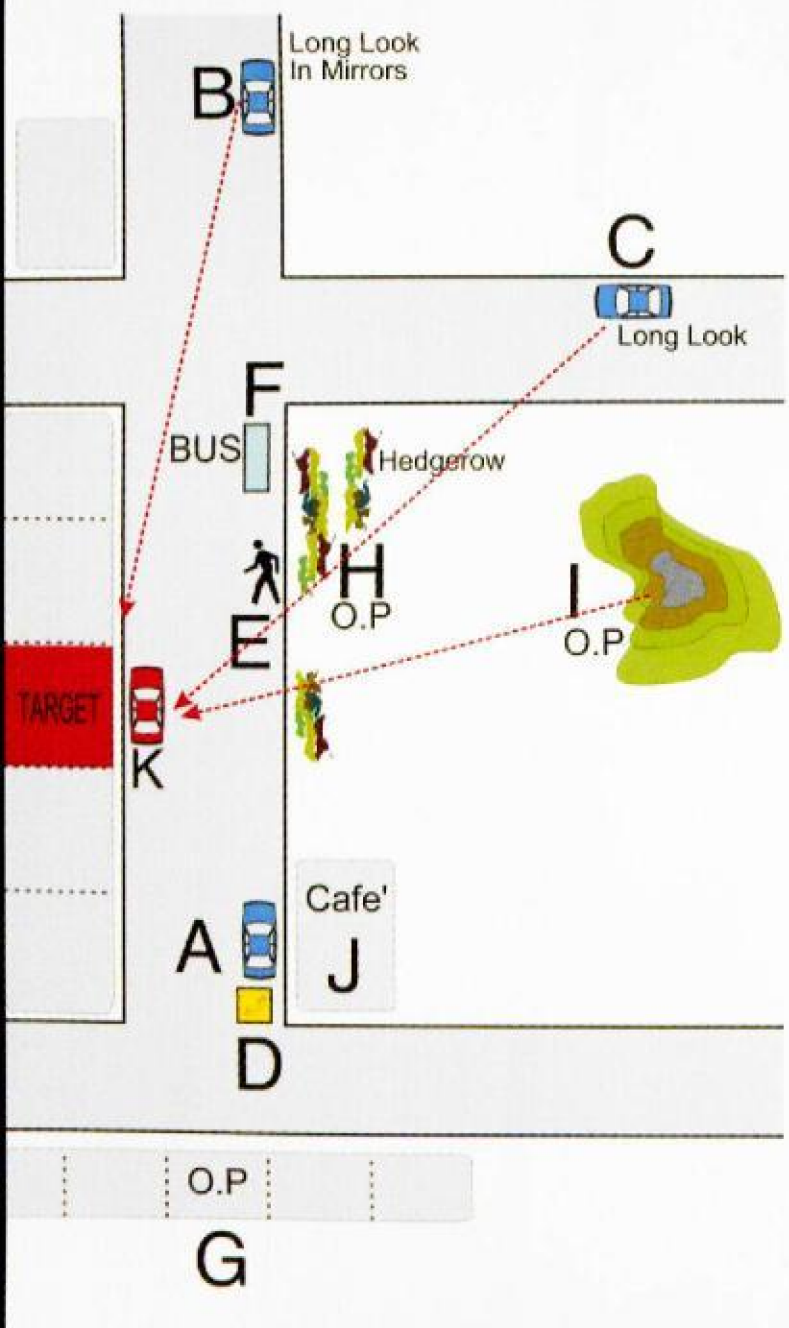
THE TRIGGER

Once you have the trigger in position, it is his job to maintain the eyeball on the property and report any events to the remainder of the team. Nothing may happen for a number of hours and so the task requires great concentration. If nothing happens then report to the team, '*No Change, No Change*' on a regular basis and at least every 15 minutes. This not only informs the team that you are still in control, but also keeps them up to date and doubles up as a radio check.

The mobile units have to 'plot up' in a position that is safe and where they will not arouse any suspicion from third parties. These units do not have to see the target address but have to get off the plot completely and cover the targets options to escape. They need to be in a position to take up the follow when the target moves. These positions can be anywhere, so long as they can get to the point where they can intercept the target when he goes mobile.

When static, ask yourself the following: What is my reason for being here? How long can I stay here and do I look out of place? If nothing is happening, trust the trigger person and try to avoid carrying out 'drive pasts' unless requested. This often happens out of boredom rather than being necessary. Let's look at an example in detail.





A

From a car in this position you can see the target house, driveway and call a direction at the first junction. As you are behind the target he does not have to pass you when he goes mobile.

This could also be an ideal place to insert a surveillance van.

Caution on plot:

- To an extent you are in the 10-2. When the target goes mobile he will be towards you and will get a 'free look'
- Ensure you are not overlooked
- Do not park right outside someone's window
- Do not appear as if you are on a mission (turn off lights, engine, square wheels and remove your seatbelt)
- Sit in the passenger seat
- Have a reason for being there
- Have a cover story ready
- Prepare for the target driving past you

ISS TRAINING LTD

B A 'long look' using your mirrors is okay for short term but you have to concentrate.

C Still using the car or van, you do not necessarily have to be in the same street. From this 'long look' position you may be able to cover the house and the first junction to call a direction.

D The phone box could be used by a foot person but only if there are no other options.

E If there is a reason to be out on the street or you may be carrying out a walkpast.

F If it is natural to use the bus shelter, then this can be used as a short term trigger.

G An OP in a building, hotel, office, derelict etc. could make an ideal trigger location. Caution should be used when entering & leaving and you have to decide whether to extract the trigger when the target goes mobile.

H A rural OP could be used if the insertion & extraction is safe and covered. Once the trigger is in position, he has to consider what to do after the target goes mobile.

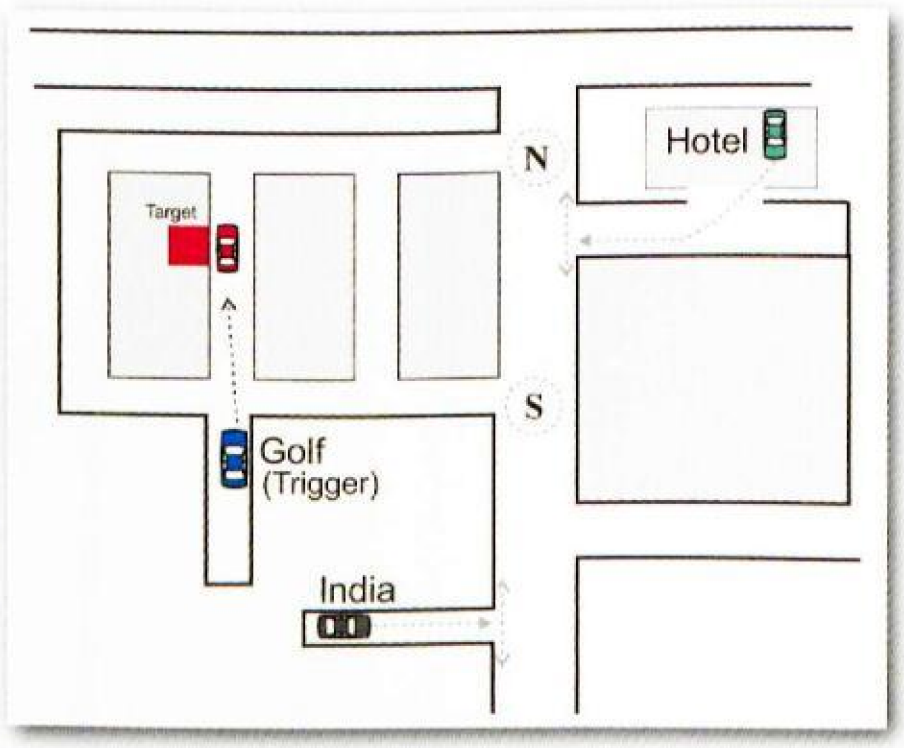
+

I

Does he:

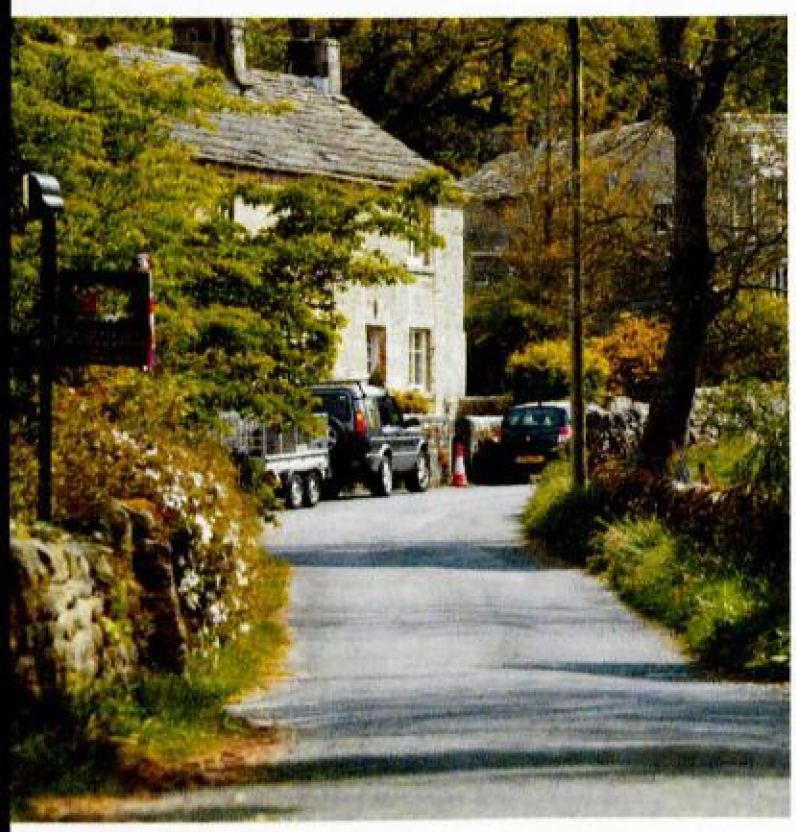
- Stay where he is until the end of the day (he may have to trigger the target in and out numerous times)?
- Should he self-extract, return to his vehicle and attempt to re-join the team?
- Should he be extracted by another team member and go with him?

J Is there a cafe nearby where you can sit (inside or out) to give a trigger. Your car will have to be close by.



Simple Stakeout.

Golf has the trigger
Hotel is covering the North
India is covering the South



THE MOBILE SURVEILLANCE

Considering the phases of our surveillance operation (Stake-out, Pick Up, Follow and Housing) we will now discuss the tactics used in a mobile surveillance.

THE STAKE-OUT OR PLOTTING UP

The stake-out is the positioning of the team with a trigger in place, to ensure that the target is boxed in and cannot escape. There are other terms used for the stake-out such as: on plot, on the grid, on the diagram, in the box and on the magic carpet.

On arrival in the area where the surveillance is to begin, you will probably meet up with the team at a pre-determined rendezvous (RV) nearby. The team members would now carry out a last minute brief and then a quick recce of the general area to familiarise themselves with the layout of the location and escape routes. You need to carry out a recce of the target's address by carrying out a drive past and possibly a walk past too.

If you have a sketch map drawn from the initial recce, use it in order to identify where the target address is before you actually get to it. The last thing you want to do is to drive down the target street, crawling at 5mph whilst trying to identify the target property - you will be noticed by someone. If you consult your sketch plan, you can see which side of the road it's on, how far down it is and you can identify it from a safe distance before you get on top of it.

On a drive past you need to consider the following:

- Any sign of life or activity such as: lights on, windows open, curtains open or dogs in the garden
- Any vehicles and their details, how they are parked and which way they intend to go
- Any trigger positions where you can plot up, or site the van as described earlier
- Check and double check that the address you have identified is the correct one - this is important
- Consider dropping off a foot person in order carry out a walk past to take a closer look and obtain more detail
- A 'dashcam' can be useful if you need video footage

STAKE-OUTS

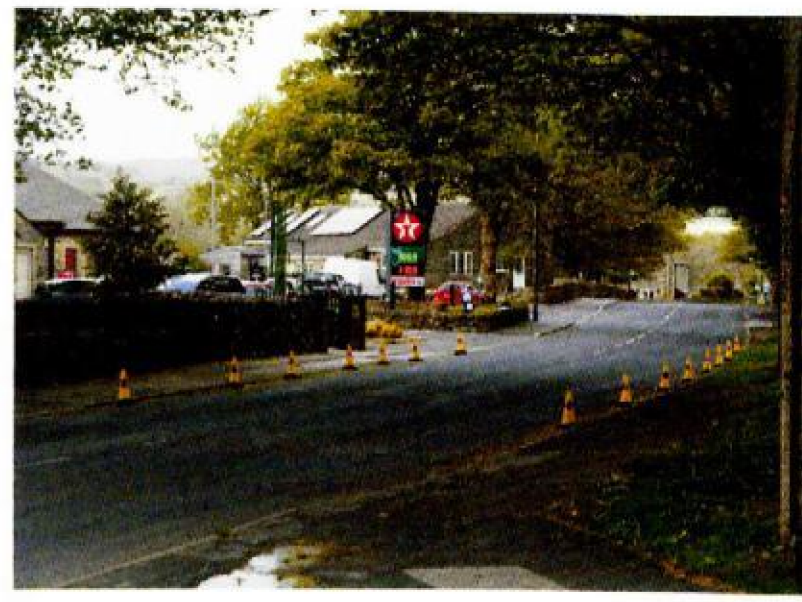
The stake-out phase can be carried out in different ways, which we will look at separately.

- Primary Stake-out
- Secondary Stake-out
- Tertiary Stake-out

ISS TRAINING LTD

PRIMARY STAKE-OUT

A primary stake-out is when we have a close trigger in place to see and initiate the surveillance. The trigger should be able to see the front door of a property, the gate or vehicle. The other call-signs are positioned in a loose box around the target, covering the escape routes and ready to react.



This primary stake-out should always be considered first because you have a trigger that can give advanced warning of any activity to the call-signs, who can then move to their pick-up positions.

In diagram 1, you will see that there are only two directions away from the premises and these have to be 'covered' by the mobile units. By this we don't mean that call-signs Hotel and India actually sit on the junction, they only cover them, from nearby.

It may not be physically possible to sit there (double yellow lines, busy traffic for example) or practical. What it does mean, is that the mobile units can park anywhere they like (if it is safe and away from the target) so long as they can get to their respective 'pick-up' points in time, on a standby.

Watch the video.

In **DIAGRAM 1** you will notice:

- Golf has the trigger from a suitable spot amongst other cars. He has to be close enough to be able to identify the target but far enough away not to be noticed. He can also cover the junction on Station Road and the B6160
- Hotel's responsibility is to 'cover' the north from Skirethorns Lane
- India's responsibility is to cover the south from Main Street
- When the target goes mobile, Golf will not move and so it will be Hotel or India that is responsible for taking the 'first follow'

DIAGRAM 1



In **DIAGRAM 2** you will notice:

- The target lives in a cul-de-sac with only one way out to the main road
- Hotel's responsibility is to get a trigger on the target and call a standby when he moves toward the main road and goes 'unsighted'
- Golf's responsibility is to cover the junction of Wharfe Lane and Wood Lane which is the exit to the estate and call a direction
- India's responsibility is to cover the south option but can take the follow if the target goes either way on Wood Lane

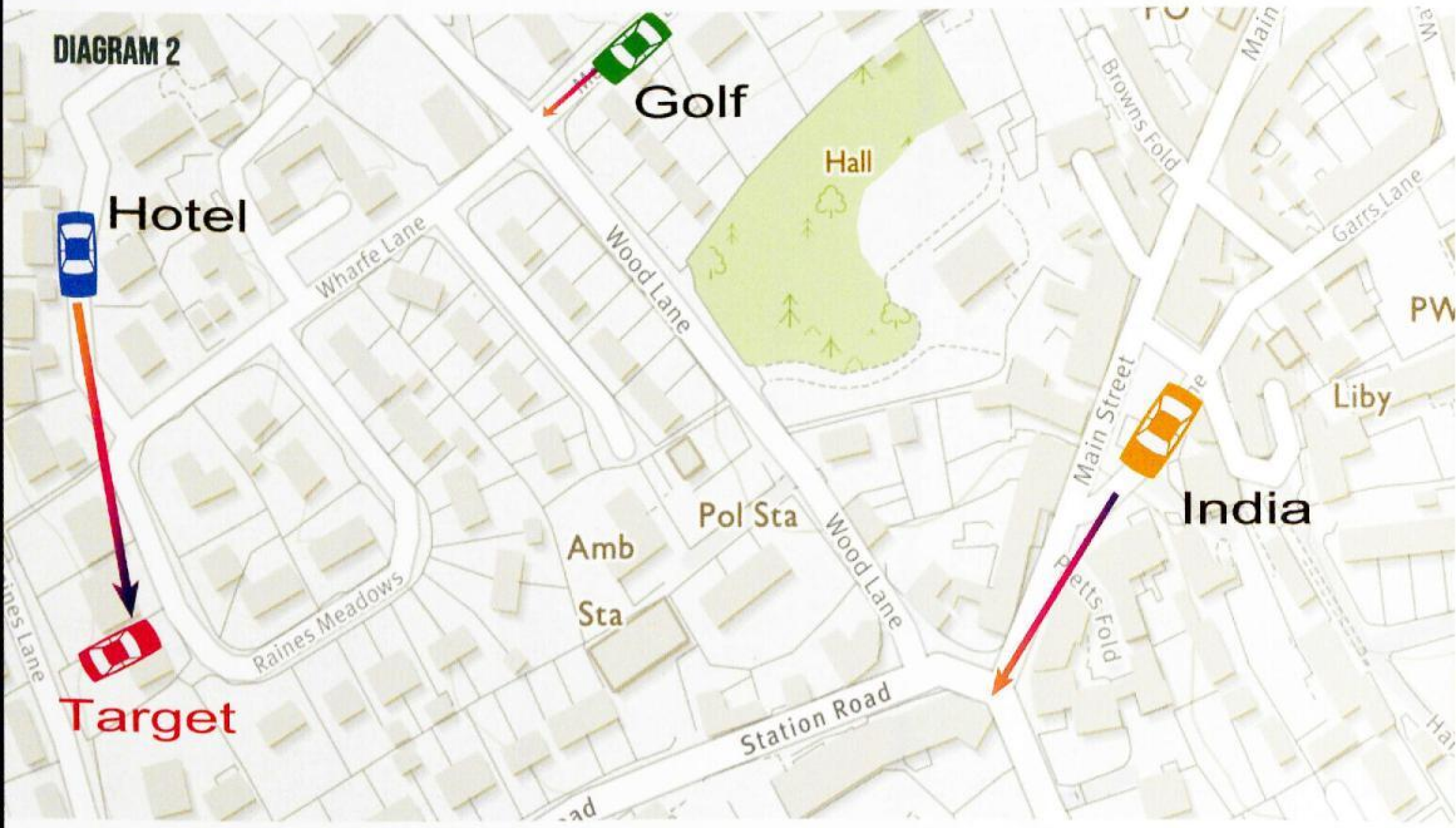


A trigger within the estate.



Golfs view towards the first junction out.

DIAGRAM 2



SECONDARY STAKE-OUT

Sometimes it is not possible to get an 'eyes on' trigger of the target address and therefore no one can call a standby when the target initially goes mobile.

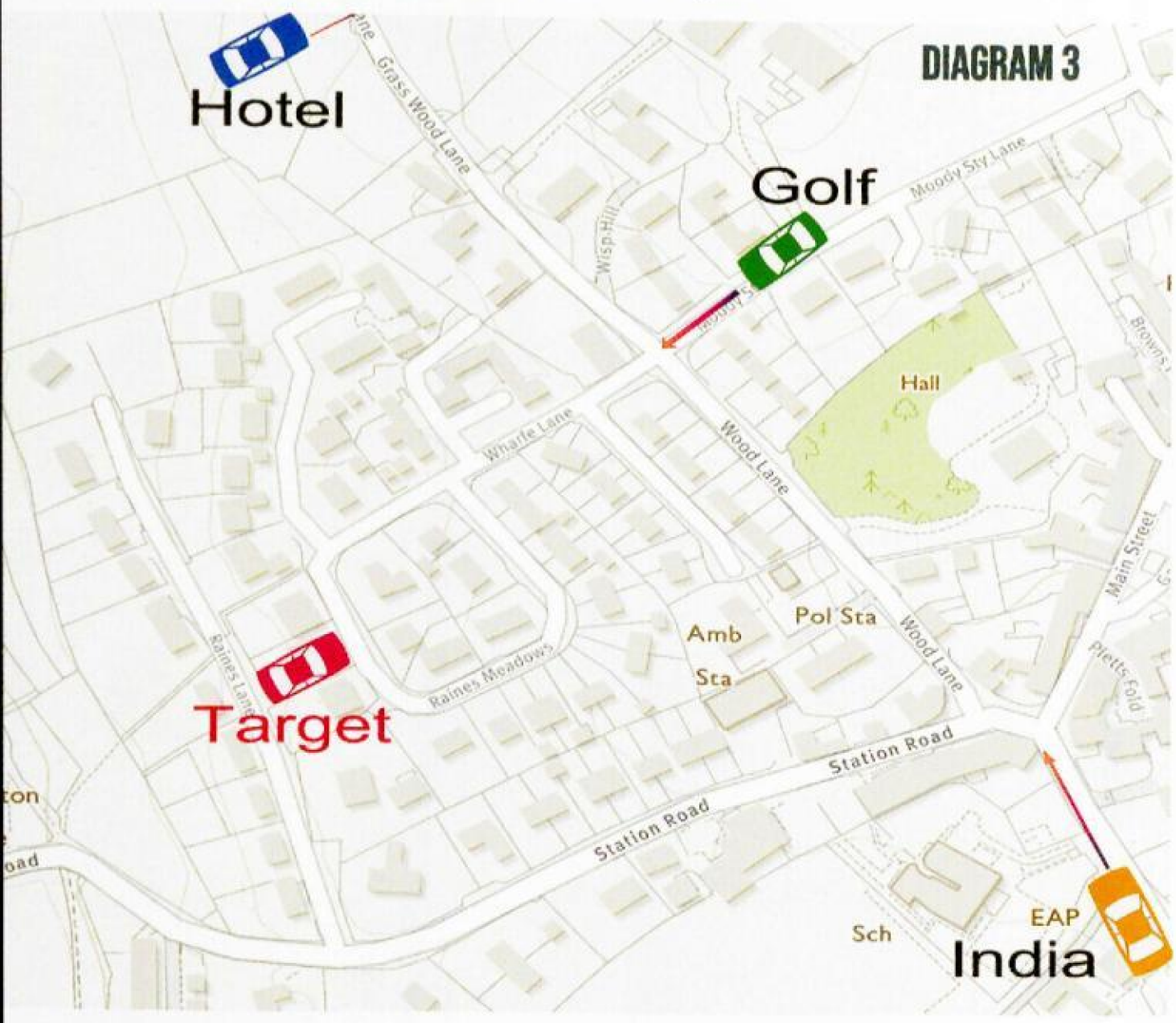
The only option is to place an operator at an exit (or escape route) on the target's probable departue route.

If their are several options the team leader should decide on which exits are the most likely to be taken. All team members should know the whereabouts of their colleagues and the escape routes that they are covering. It might be that frequent drive pasts have to be to see if he has slipped the net or to check for any activity.

In this stake-out, the trigger covering the exit has to be alert and observant at all times whilst they cover their option. It is not always ideal as the standby is a very quick one and does not give much time for the team to react.

In **DIAGRAM 3** we illustrate:

- In the same stake-out as Diagram 2, the target lives in a cul-de-sac with only one way out to the main road. However, it may not be possible to get a direct trigger on the target
- Golf's responsibility is to get a trigger on the junction of Wharfe Lane and Wood Lane which is the exit to the estate and call a direction
- Hotel's responsibility is to cover and observe the north option
- India's responsibility is to cover the south option



GO TAKE A LOOK...

In a similar fashion but the trigger is out of the estate and the team are more spread out.



Cul-de-sac

In **DIAGRAM 4** it shows you:

- The target lives in a similar fashion: a cul-de-sac with only one way out onto Station Road
- Golf's responsibility is to get a trigger on the junction of the cul-de-sac and Station Road. He should call a direction out and also a direction if he hits Main Street
- Hotel's responsibility is to cover and observe the west option and the junction of Main St and Walker Lane
- India's responsibility is to cover the east option and the junction of Main St and Sheepcote Lane.
- Each call sign should identify how to quickly get to each other's options on a standby, as they will have to play catch up.



Golf's view.



India's view.



Hotel's view.



TERTIARY STAKE-OUT

This type of stake-out is similar to the above but on a wider scale, where each escape route is covered by a call-sign who waits for the target to pass. It is not used very often in commercial surveillance but normally utilised in very hostile areas where it is difficult to plot up in a neighbourhood, or when the target is extremely aware. The use of a tracker in this instance is invaluable.

In **DIAGRAM 5** we see:

- The target lives off the main road in a small estate with only one way out onto the B6165
- Golf is covering the crossroads to the East
- Hotel is covering the Y junction to the West
- A third car would be useful to 'float' between the two

The problem with a tertiary stake-out is that distance is a major factor when trying to 'back' the eyeball on a standby. You will have to carry out a map study and calculate how to get to every direction quickly.

GO TAKE A LOOK...



Hotel's view of the fork in the road.



Golf's view of the crossroads.



TRIGGERING FROM YOUR MIRRORS

Quite often you will be in a position where you are observing the target through your rear-view mirrors. When he goes mobile you may have to call a direction of travel, such as left or right. Be careful not to get left and right mixed up as it is very easy to do so when looking in mirrors. Rehearse and think to yourself, '*what am I going to say on a standby? If he comes towards me he has gone left, left and if he turns away from me he has gone right, right*'. It pays to mentally rehearse and to get it right first time.

TRIGGER PERSON DO NOT MOVE!

Remember that surveillance is all about team-work; when the target moves, inform the team of the direction. If he goes out of your view, let them know that you are 'unsighted', this is their cue to take the eyeball. If a team member hears the phrase, '*unsighted to me*', he will realise that the target is out of view and control and therefore the eyeball is 'up for grabs'. Whoever sees the target first can take over the commentary and direct the team.

When the target moves off, keep still, do not move or react with the target. Most compromises by inexperienced operators occur when the target initially moves off and is quickly followed. Imagine, the first thing the target does when he pulls out is to check his rear-view mirror, especially if he is aware. So don't be there, wait until he is out of your sight before moving.

If the trigger vehicle is a van we will often leave it where it is until the target has cleared the area, in case the target returns. It is useful to bring the van with the team as it can take part in the follow (with caution) and it can also be used to re-trigger the target when he has been 'housed'.

Action on a 'STANDBY STANDBY!'

As soon as the target appears out in the open or there are signs of movement, the trigger person should call, *"Possible Standby, Standby"* and commence a running commentary on the target's activities and description. This *'standby'* is a wake-up call to put the rest of the team on alert.

CROSS CONTAMINATION

The stake-out phase can be extremely boring but you have to remain alert to your surroundings at all times. When boredom cuts in, avoid driving to each other's location for a chat.

Just be aware of cross contaminating another operator or drawing attention to yourself when pulling up alongside a colleague's car.

ISS TRAINING LTD

As soon as the trigger gives a *'standby'*, the mobile units should carry out the following:

- Instantly acknowledge with your call sign in alpha numerical order. When the team moves, no one should be left behind
- Put your seatbelt on and be ready to turn your engine on
- Listen very carefully to the trigger's radio commentary, he will be giving descriptions, vehicle details and direction so remember them.
- Move from your 'plot up' (or Lie Up) position and draw near to the spot where you intend to pick up, or intercept the target
- Be prepared to pick up the target and take the first follow or act as back-up
- Do not ask on the radio *'What's happening?'* If there is a period of silence from the trigger it may be because he is filming or taking photographs, be patient
- If you hear *'Standby Standby, that's Bravo 1 mobile towards Red 1 and unsighted to me'*. Expect a period of silence on the radio net as the target manoeuvres within the box until he is picked up by a team member. There is nothing worse than hearing over the radio net, *'Who has the eyeball?'* by a panic stricken team member. Have patience, wait, if you have a good box around the target, he cannot go anywhere without being noticed.

If a standby is a false alarm the trigger should call, *'Cancel Standby'*, to which the team acknowledges and return to their 'lie up' positions (LUP's).

TEAM POSITIONS - THE SURVEILLANCE CONVOY

Once on the move, the lead vehicle (eyeball) should be in control of the surveillance and a that moment in time is in charge of the radio net. He should let everyone know by calling 'India Has' (the eyeball), the response straight away should be 'Golf Backing' from the back up. India will now be giving a running commentary to the remainder of the team, so no one should interrupt except for the backing call-sign when acknowledging.



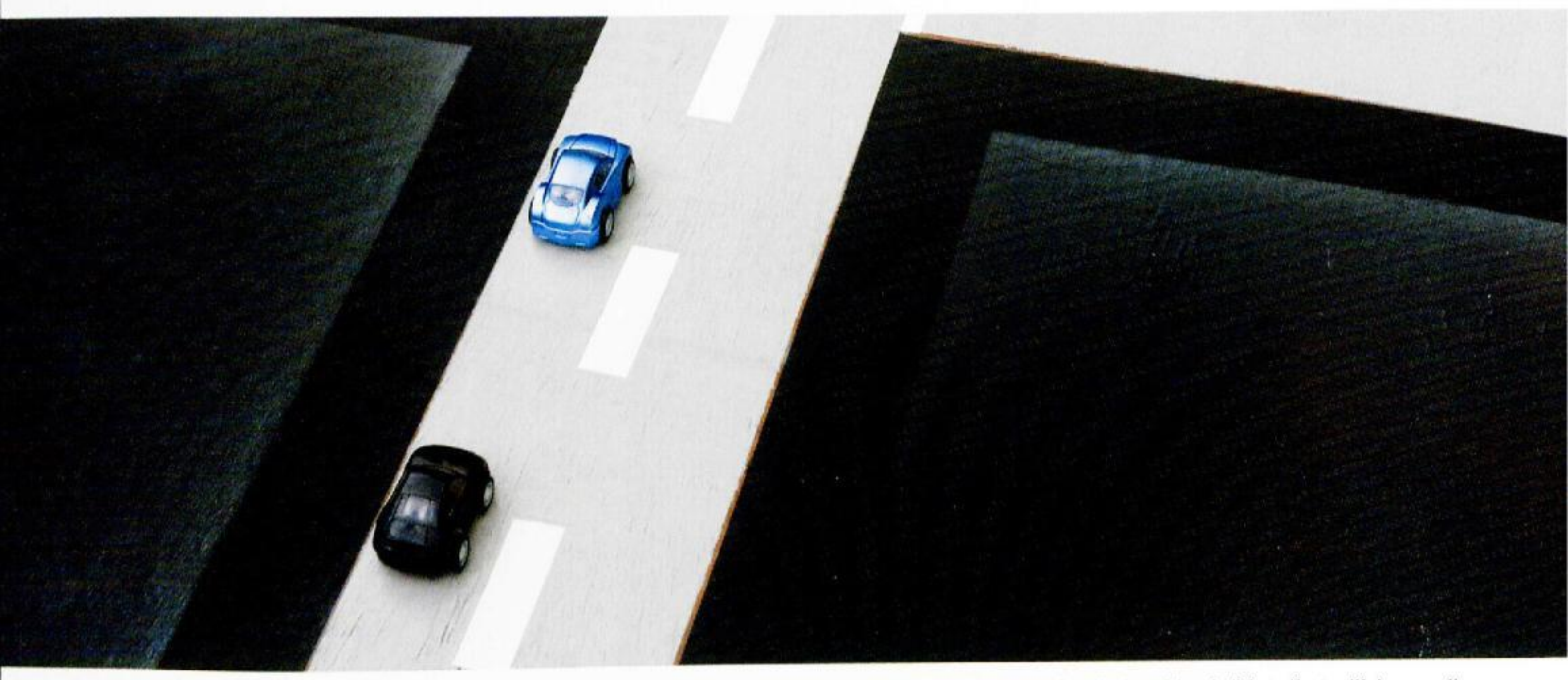
This is not the idea!

As lead vehicle always drive normally and be confident. Obviously you do not want to be right behind the target when there is no need but common sense prevails so this is dictated by the terrain and area. In built-up areas you may need to be very close, whereas in rural areas you need to be further apart. As a general rule, always attempt to have at least one vehicle for cover between you and the target but obviously will depend on the amount of traffic on the roads.

Without any cars between you and the target we call, 'none for cover'. Alternatively 'two for cover' if there are two cars in between. This conveys how much heat you are taking and how far ahead the target is. Any more vehicles than that are considered 'blockers', "three blocking".

When approaching an obstacle such as traffic lights, a junction or a roundabout, you may need to be as close as possible to avoid being held back. On approach, never crawl up behind the target, if you do this you will soon be spotted or arouse the target's suspicions.

If your team members have not acknowledged that they are with you, carry out a quick radio check to ensure that all the team are there.



The team should 'expand' and 'contract' as dictated by the volume of traffic.



Hopefully you should get the response, *'Golf's backing'*, *'Hotel's trail'* depending on what call-sign system you are using. Some Enforcement Agencies used a system called a 'Convoy Check' that can be useful when operating in large teams. During a 'convoy check' each car in turn comes up on the radio with their call-sign followed by their position in the convoy. For example, *'Car 3 has, that's gone left, left towards Halifax. Convoy Check?'* The responses being, *'Car 2's back up'*, *'Car 4's third in line'*, *'Car 1 is trail'*.

Generally, the backing call-sign acknowledges every transmission from the eyeball by giving his call-sign (Golf etc.). This ensures that the team are receiving the commentary, gives confidence to the eyeball and clarifies that there is actually a call-sign backing them up. Each other member of the team normally comes up on the radio net with their call-sign at frequent intervals, especially after changes of direction.

If you are the eyeball and you don't hear an acknowledgement from a call-sign after a period of time, it is your job to carry out a radio check to clarify that they are still with the team. If you cannot establish comms, then phone them as soon as possible.

NO LONGER BACKING

The answer to *'Back-up can you at...?'* should always be *'Yes Yes!'*

When you are 'backing', it means that you are in a position to take over the eyeball at their request.

If you are not, (because you are eight cars and 500m behind), you should state, *'No longer backing'*. This prevents the eyeball from asking for a handover and getting a *'No'* response. It also tells him that the back-up is there, but not in a position to take over.

If you are in the backup position but not actually able to 'back' you should be acknowledging the eyeball with 'trying to back' or 'making ground'.

There is nothing worse that asking for a handover when your backup says, *'No No'* when they should have called, *"No longer backing"*.

ISS TRAINING LTD

DISTANCE AND POSITIONING

Very often you will come to a halt whilst waiting in a queue of traffic, you could be directly behind the target or have a vehicle for cover. Either way, do not get too close to the car in front. If you are too close, you will not have enough manoeuvring room to be able to pull out in an emergency. As a general rule make sure that you can see the tyres of the car in front or a section of the road surface.

Use the road, hills and bends in order to catch glimpses of the target as he encounters them thus 'clipping' the sight of his rear bumper. For the remainder of the team do exactly the same to the team member in front. But don't be spaced too evenly apart because this could look unnatural and make the convoy appear in formation, especially on a long straight road.

In heavy traffic try to look through the car in front of you, rather than weaving in and out trying to see around them. Again it is unnatural and likely to be noticed.

BE KIND TO NO ONE BUT THE TEAM

If you are in a long queue of slow moving traffic, it sometimes helps to have one vehicle in between for cover. If you do not, consider letting a car come in between you and the target from an adjoining side road - only do this if it is to your advantage. Do not flash your headlights but give a discreet finger wave to let them out.

However, be very careful if you do this as the driver that you have just let in will now be in a good mood and they might also decide to let someone else in further up the road. Then before you know it you are four or five cars behind the target.

If you don't want a car to pull out in front of you, make a determined effort to avoid eye contact with the driver. Otherwise they catch your eye and they will take it as an invitation to pull out. We say that we should be courteous to no one but the surveillance team, without being obviously aggressive.

Quite often a car might be detached and trying hard to catch up, but is held back by a slow mover. If the eyeball or backing car can see that it is clear up ahead and there is no risk of adjoining traffic turning onto the road, you could call the road 'clear' in order for the rearmost car to blindly overtake the slow mover. This technique should be treated with extreme caution and should not be attempted by the faint hearted as you are putting your total trust in the car that is calling it 'clear'.



When giving commentary, always be mindful of the fact it is a guide to those behind you.





MOBILE COMMENTARY

Whilst carrying out a mobile surveillance, the commentary given by the lead car to the other members of the team should be precise, straight to the point and immediate. Whilst you as eyeball are in front, the remainder of the team may not be able to see the target and be some distance behind. Remember, the commentary is for their benefit not yours.

Certain phrases and descriptions are used to simplify messages and to assist the operators because they will not have any visual contact with the target. Although these phrases may appear obvious or unnecessary, they are to assist you and the team to prevent any confusion and subsequent loss of contact.

All messages are to be kept short and accurate, so do not talk and repeat yourself unnecessarily. The only things that should be repeated are important statements such as *'Standby Standby'*, *'Stop Stop'*, *'Left Left'*, *'Right Right'* etc to emphasise important changes. Commentary such as, *'that's approaching a T junction, approaching a T junction...'* is not considered important enough to say it twice as it takes away from the importance of a message when it really matters.

You should keep the team up to date with an accurate running commentary giving details of:

- Direction of travel
- Speed
- Intentions to turn (which indicators are used or the position of the wheels)
- Any deviations made
- Target's current position in relation to local landmarks (his position, not yours)
- Any unusual driving tactics
- Loss of contact (temporary or otherwise)

'That's held in lane two of two with an offside indiicator'



ISS TRAINING LTD

DIRECTION OF TRAVEL

When giving the direction of travel use large visible local landmarks. If you or the team don't know the area, using street names can often lead to confusion. They are also difficult to see at speed. The direction of travel may be given in one of the following ways:

'That's following the signs marked A61 Harrogate...'

'No deviation, passing the windmill on the nearside'

'Continuing straight towards Harrogate...'

'Still straight towards Blue 22...'



LEFT AND RIGHT, NEARSIDE AND OFFSIDE

When giving any indication regarding the target's movements, messages should be repeated to make sure that everyone is informed at once. This eliminates other team members using 'air' time by asking for repeated messages. For instance, if the target turns right, he's turned *'Right, Right'*. If he stops he's come to a *'Stop, Stop'*. We repeat the call two or three times in case the operator is 'clipping' their calls and the detail is missed by the team.

The terms 'Left' or 'Right' should only be used when describing a change in direction and should never be used when pointing out a landmark. For example, *'Target passing church on the Left'* is wrong and should be, *'That's passing church on the Nearside'* (or Offside as applicable).

The difference is to ensure any team member who may be stuck in traffic and getting out of radio range can still attempt to catch up by listening to the commentary. If the radio message is 'broken' and all they hear is *'Church.//. Left'*, he would presume the target had turned left at the church. Whereas if he only heard the words, *'Church.//.Nearside'* he would continue straight (with no deviation) knowing that a landmark (the church) had been indicated on the nearside.

Should the target use his indicators at any time, the eyeball should inform the team of his intentions; for instance, *'That's held at a T junction with a nearside indicator'*. This enables other operatives to prepare for the turn by getting into the correct lane or taking other action. If he is not indicating but his wheels are aligned and turned to the left, then on a balance of probability, he is also intending to turn left.



A CHANGE IN DIRECTION SHOULD ALWAYS BE FOLLOWED BY...

"TOWARDS"
"AT"
"INTO"
"BEFORE"
OR
"AFTER"

...IN ORDER TO EMPHASISE THE DIRECTION. FOR EXAMPLE, "THAT'S GONE RIGHT, RIGHT TOWARDS THE FOOTBALL GROUND", OR "THAT'S GONE LEFT, LEFT AT THE POST BOX".



'That's passing the Shell garage on the nearside'



'That's held on a fresh red in lane one of two'

REFERENCE POINTS

As the target vehicle passes identifiable landmarks (reference points) the eyeball should pass this on to the remainder of the team. These reference points should be large and prominent so that the operators travelling behind can see them easily from a distance, and can establish how far the target is ahead of them. That way, they can decide whether to close up or hang back as necessary.

Don't use moveable objects as reference points, for example *'passing a yellow car on the offside'* as it will have probably moved by the time the last man gets to where it was. Phone boxes, petrol stations, advertising boards, buildings, shops, bridges, pubs and churches are ideal reference points to give.

If the target is directly behind a large blue HGV (on a dual carriageway for example), don't be afraid to call it out, it's a good marker.

ADVANCE WARNINGS OF OBSTACLES

Should there be some form of obstacle or hazard infront of you like traffic lights or a roundabout, inform the other team members, for example *'Advance warning of a roundabout'.*. The next call is likely to be, *'That's approaching the roundabout in lane 1 of 2'.* This will allow the team to close up, as there is a possibility that a loss could occur here.

TRAFFIC LIGHTS

When apporaching traffic lights, the rest of your team need to know what colour and 'state' they are, as well as when they change. They might need to accelerate and catch up in order to get through the junction with you.

If the lights have just turned to green they are 'fresh green'. Alternatively, 'that's approaching lights on a 'stale' green" indicates they have been on for a while and a change to red is imminent. The eyeball should update with the target's position in the traffic. In return, the trail car should inform when he is safely through the junction.

SPEED AND LANES

Relay the speed of the target frequently, but especially when their speed changes. We tend to 'bracket' the speed like this, *'three zero to three five'* (30-35mph) and remember it's the target's speed you're giving and not yours. Inform the team which lane he is travelling in (on motorways or dual carriageways) or on approach to a junction or roundabout that has more than one lane.

On a road with multiple lanes like a motorway, we can nominate the three lanes; the nearside, the centre lane and the offside lane but this can get confusing when there are four or more lanes. For this reason, we tend to number the lanes starting with the nearside so that if the target is in the centre lane of a three lane carriageway he would be in lane *'2 of 3'.*

LOOKALIKES

Quite often you will find a car in front or behind the target that is the same make and colour, or one may pull up alongside in multiple lanes. If this happens, ensure you call this out, *'...be aware of a lookalike directly behind Bravo 1'.* You do not want to handover and end up following the wrong vehicle. If the lookalike peels off, update the team.

ISS TRAINING LTD



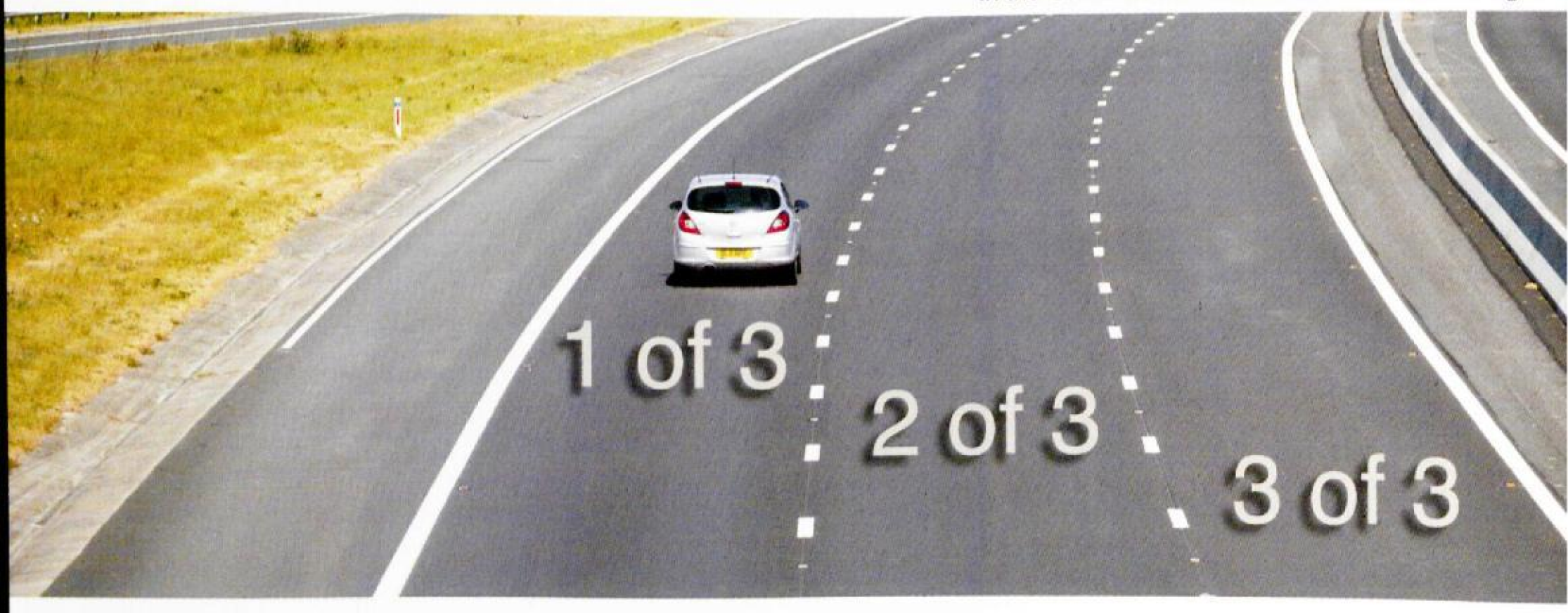
30MPH: This sign does not just mean that the speed limit is restricted to 30mph. It conveys that you are entering a built-up area so the team should close up. There is likely to be more congestion, more changes in direction and stops.





NATIONAL SPEED LIMIT: This sign does not just mean that the speed limit is restricted to 60mph. In realistic terms you'll have faster speeds and longer distances so the team should spread out and consider using a tracker if the target stops.

In the UK lanes are numbered from the left to right.



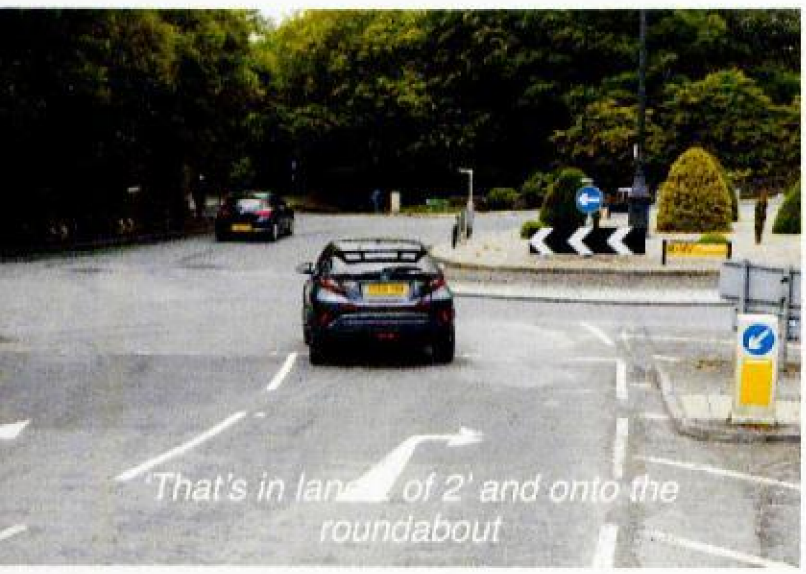
ROUNDABOUT PROCEDURE

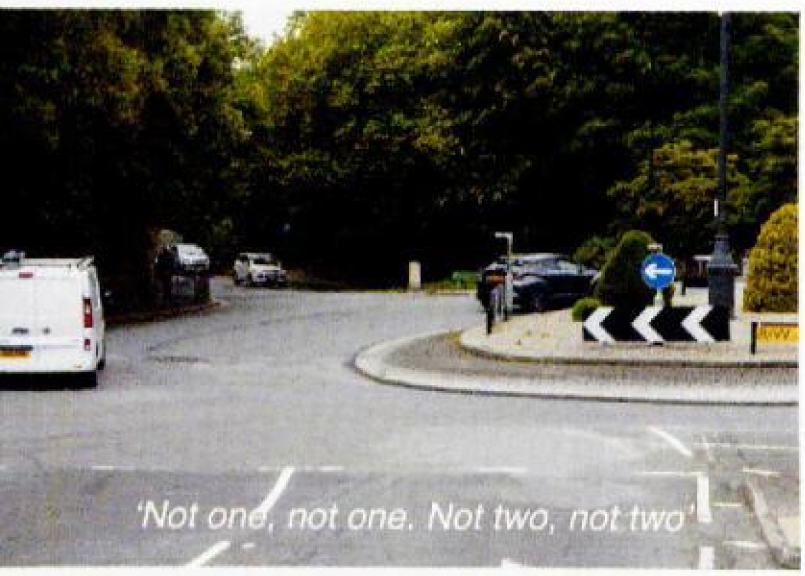
When the target approaches a roundabout, the team must be given plenty of warning in order so they can close up, especially if the roundabout is busy. The position of the target must be given as he approaches the roundabout, when he is on it, when he passes exits and most importantly when he exits the roundabout.

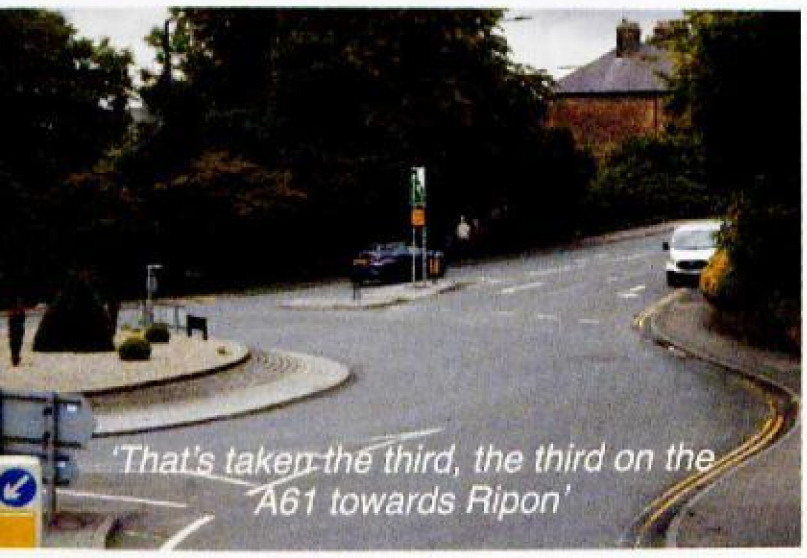
To avoid confusion, we have a simple procedure to identify which exit the target has taken.

If the target vehicle is moving onto a roundabout and he takes the third exit (right) the mobile commentary would be as follows:

'That's up to the roundabout in lane 2 of 2'
'That's at the roundabout and held, wait'
'That's onto the roundabout'
'Not One, Not One', as he passes the first exit
'Not Two, Not Two', as he passes the second exit
'Taken Third, Third on the A61 towards Ripon', as he takes the third exit


'That's in lane 2 of 2' and onto the roundabout


'Not one, not one. Not two, not two'

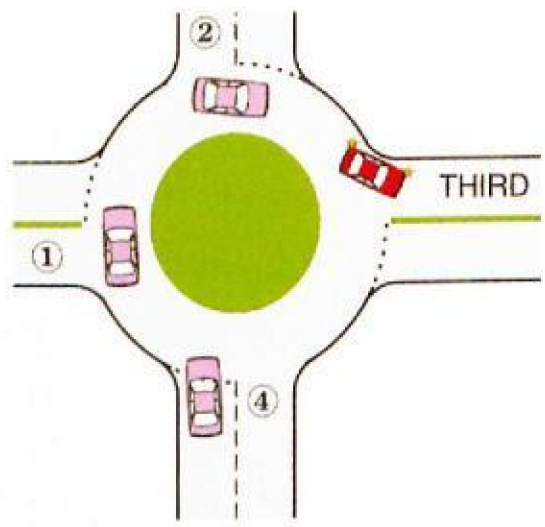

'That's taken the third, the third on the A61 towards Ripon'

You will notice the change of phrase between using the terms One, Two or Three and First, Second, Third. Each exit is numbered in a sequence of One, Two, Three as the target passes it, but if he takes a particular exit the phrase changes to First, Second, Third and so on.

A A: That's approaching the roundabout in lane 2 of 2...

B B: That's onto the roundabout, not one not one. Not two, not two...

C C: That's taken the third, the third towards 'Ripon' on the A61.



This system was devised in the event of poor communications. If a team member was having difficulty receiving the commentary but heard *"Second, Second"*, he would automatically know that the target has taken the second exit whereas if he heard *"Two, Two"* he would know that the target had passed option two and was continuing round. In order to add credibility to your commentary, it may be worth adding that extra bit of information such as the road name or direction, so we may hear:

'Not One, Not One',
'Taken the Second, the Second, the A65 east towards Leeds'

If there is a 'No Entry' from the roundabout (traffic can join but not leave) then this is not counted as it isn't an option that the target can realistically take.

ISS TRAINING LTD



HANDOVERS

In order to avoid being noticed, you will need to change lead vehicles in what is called a "handover". These handovers should be carried out at natural places on a regular basis.

As backup, (who should be one or two vehicles behind the eyeball),you should be ready to take over from the eyeball at short notice if the target suddenly turns or stops. Your concentration must be on the target's actions and the eyeball's commentary and therefore you have to think ahead at all times.

As eyeball you decide when to handover and this should be done frequently, depending on a number of factors. Essentially you would change at the following times:

- As soon as practically possible after the initial pick up. An aware target will notice the first vehicle that pulls out behind him and possibly keep his eye on it. However, as soon as you turn off, the target will relax somewhat and ignore it

- When you have held the eyeball for a while and there is risk of compromise if you stay with it any longer. Especially if you have been directly behind the target with no cover

- Whenever there are two or three changes in direction. As eyeball, you don't want to take the target around several corners, because you will alert him. If he is carrying out anti-surveillance drills, you will only confirm that you are following him. Frequent changes are better than none at all

- If the target stops at the side of the road. It will look a bit obvious for you to stop directly behind him. So in order to act naturally you should overshoot, keep going and hand over the eyeball to the backup. If the vehicle moves off again, you then have a different car taking the eyeball and triggering it away

- On entering a car park. If a target is suspicious, he may pull into a car park to see if you follow him in. Therefore, we normally handover as the target enters a car park

- When you are compromised. If this situation occurs you will have to clear the area and so your backup can keep an eye on the target. However, the whole team may also need to disperse



Handover - pass the ball frequently.

"BACKUP - CAN YOU AT THE SHELL GARAGE?"

"YES, YES"

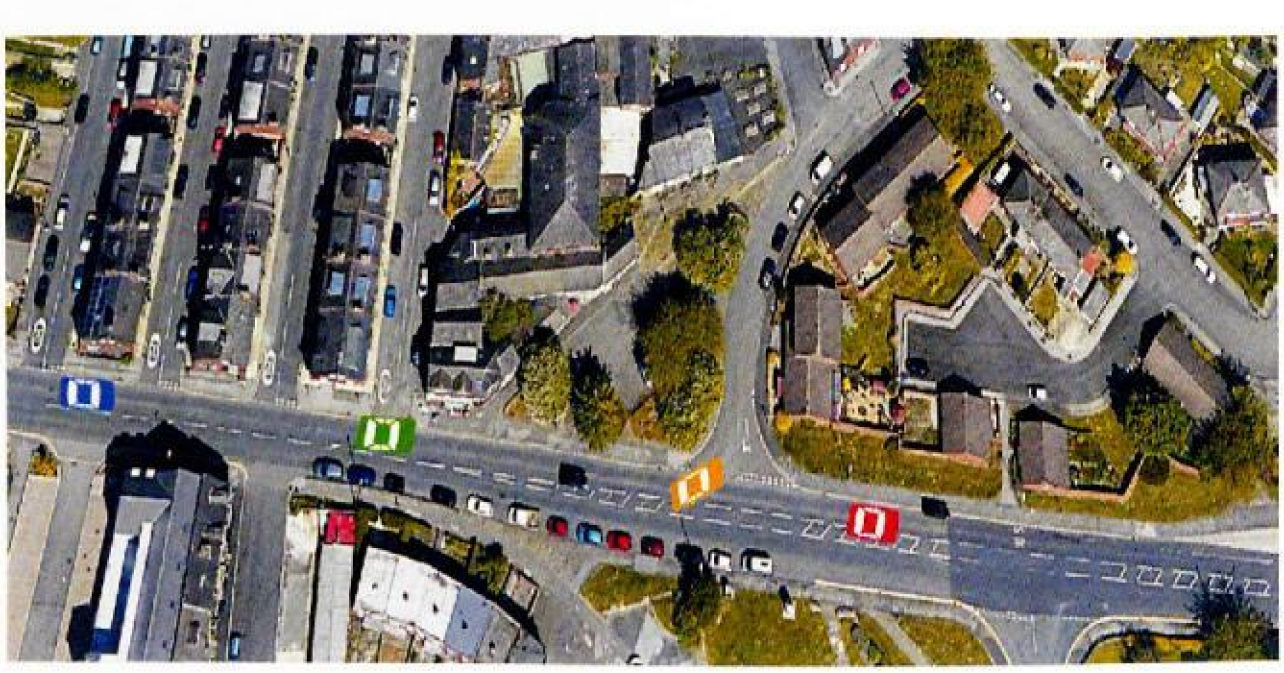
SETTING UP A HANDOVER

There are certain places where a handover can be carried out without being obvious to the target. What we would not expect to happen is, you to ask for a handover, move over to the nearside and let your backup come screaming through by overtaking you. If this were to happen and the target were to see it in his rear-view mirror, he would probably expect the 'boy racer' to also overtake him, but when that doesn't happen but instead hangs onto his tail, he will soon become suspicious.

There are two types of handovers, 'planned' and 'unplanned'. Unplanned would be when the target suddenly turns into a car park and a quick handover is carried out, i.e. *'That's gone left, left into the Shell garage, backup can you now?'*

A planned handover is when it is set up with plenty of time beforehand. It's normally carried out at a designated place and normally at a point where the eyeball can naturally peel off the road. In order to instigate a handover, the eyeball should come up and ask, *'Back up are you in a position?' (to take the eyeball)* or *'Back up, can you at he Shell garage?'* If they are, you should hear the response, *'Yes, Yes'.*

At this time, the backing call-sign should now close up on the eyeball car. This is so that when they peel off, the backup is already in a good position - otherwise the backup will be forced to accelerate and close up but then hang back from the target which will appear unusual.



Locations for handovers can be anywhere where you can easily leave the road and re-join it again quickly.



ISS TRAINING LTD



- **Nearside Junctions**

As the eyeball, all you have to do is turn left off the road and simply let the backup vehicle take over, trail then becomes backup. Ideally, the previous eyeball should now become trail but do not rejoin the carriageway until you are out of the target's mirrors.

We try not to handover using an offside junction. Firstly, the eyeball has to cross over any oncoming traffic in order to turn off, and in doing so he may hold up the team behind him. Secondly if he manages to cross the road, he will possibly encounter traffic when getting back again.

- **Petrol Stations**

Similar, all the eyeball has to do here is pull into a petrol station and let the backup come through. Again, don't pull back out onto the main road until you are out of the target's mirror.

Protocol dictates that you should now become trail. However, if the backup car is detached and not in a position to actually 'back' the eyeball, then you must get out and act as backup straight away. You can always change positions at a later time.

- **Roundabouts**

Roundabouts can also be a natural place to handover. As soon as you see the sign prior to the roundabout, you should call the hazard, offer up the handover and check that your backup is in a position to take over.

There are essentially two ways of handing over at a roundabout. Firstly, the eyeball can take the target onto the roundabout, call the exit and then continue going around the roundabout letting the backup take over. Secondly, the eyeball can peel off at the first exit (if the target hasn't taken this one) and hand over this way. If you do this, ensure that you can turn around and get back into the team quickly.

If you're following a sophisticated target who possibly has counter surveillance deployed think twice about handing over at roundabouts. These are ideal 'choke points' that a CS team may cover to observe a surveillance team coming through.

- **Lay-bys**

Caution should be used if handing over at a lay-by. If there are cars already parked there, they will afford you some cover but empty ones won't. As eyeball you can pull into a lay-by and let your team come through, whatever you do, do not pull out again if you are still in the target's mirrors.





If there is a speed camera or a Police car travelling towards the team, let them know.

You would not want to risk them getting a speeding ticket or to be overtaking at speed with a Police car coming towards them.



Handing over by turning right is not always a good idea.

You may hold the team up behind you as you wait to cross oncoming traffic.

WHEN NOT TO HANDOVER

There are no hard and fast rules to this but you should remember:

- Turning into offside junctions could hold the team up behind you as you wait to cross oncoming traffic
- Do not bring cars through. The backing car should never overtake you and then slow down behind the target
- Try not to handover at traffic lights. As you turn off and handover, you may get held by the same lights and become detached from the team
- Do not handover at large roundabouts, especially if they are controlled by traffic lights
- Do not handover where traffic is very heavy and prevents you from
- rejoining the team. Check your mirrors prior to a handover. If there is a very long line of traffic behind you ask yourself, *'Will I get back into the traffic if I peel off now?'*
- If you handover on a motorway by coming off at a junction, check the map or Satnav first to ensure that you can rejoin the carriageway, otherwise you will be gone for a long time!!

Remember the target's awareness level plus the amount of exposure you have had will dictate the frequency of handovers.

Check your mirrors before handing over.



ISS TRAINING LTD

WHAT HAPPENS WHEN THE TARGET STOPS

Whenever the target stops the eyeball must immediately transmit, *'That's a Stop, Stop on the nearside, outside the post office'* (or whatever is applicable). Although the eyeball vehicle may have to keep moving and pass the target, it is important that the other vehicles stop quickly or take appropriate action. If the eyeball has had to overtake the target, the backup vehicle naturally then becomes 'eyeball' to get a trigger, and the trail car should hold back and take up a position ready for the next follow phase.

This should be practised and carried out as a drill whenever there is a stop.

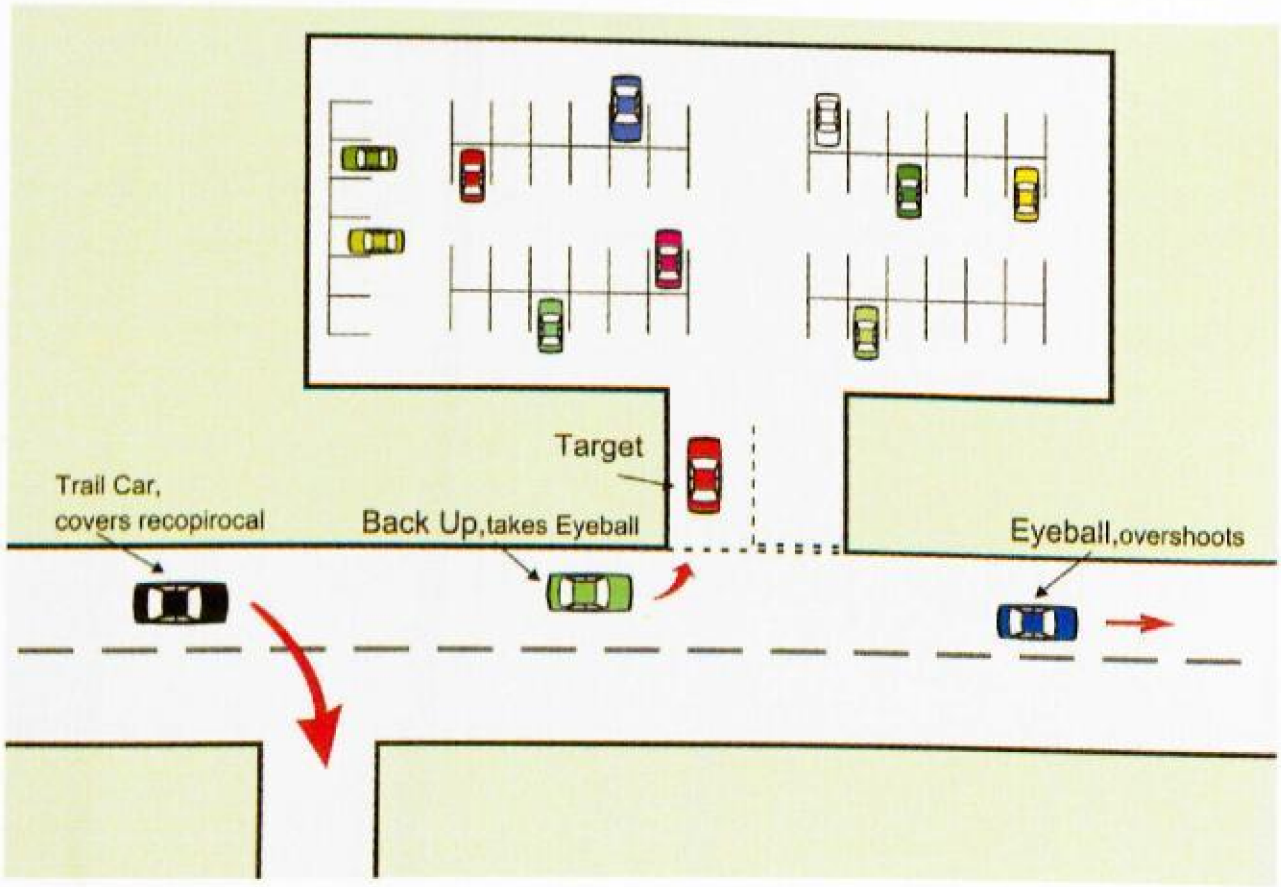
HOUSING PHASE

We are now into the 'Housing' phase of our surveillance and so we now have to re-plot (or stake it out) ready for the 'Pick-up' phase.

If the target gets out of his vehicle, the eyeball should be giving a commentary on their actions, the team leader can decide on what course of action to take (such as putting footmen out). An experienced team will do this as a matter of course on their own initiative. Whilst the commentary is being given, the previous lead car should take a position ahead of the target and the trail should hold back and take up a position to cover the reciprocal route.

On doing so, the cars should quickly report their positions, *'Golf has Bravo 1 static outside the post office.'* ,*'Hotel, roger that, I'm covering the original.'*, *'India, roger, that's me covering the recip.'*.

The cars should not want to report too much detail, *'That's Hotel covering the original, parked up in the White Horse pub car park 500 metres ahead opposite the church..'*. Think radio security - don't give your exact position. In addition, not everyone on the team will know where the White Horse Pub is, so keep it simple. By reporting in, the eyeball now knows that all the escape routes are covered by the team and if a call-sign gets into trouble, he knows where assistance is needed.



'Stop' drills should be quick and natural to keep control.







The target reverse parks which means less manouvring time on a standby.

ISS TRAINING LTD

Be aware of your actions if you are the eyeball and have to pass and overtake the target on a stop. Be aware and mindful of the following:

- Don't stare and gawp at the target as you pass, look straight ahead
- Keep your radio out of sight and below the level of the dashboard
- Relax, don't have your head on a swivel or appear anxious
- Do not suddenly brake as you pass, as you look in your mirrors or check for somewhere to pull in
- If you suddenly or aggressively turn off in front of the target and he thinks he is being followed, you will attract his attention - keep going past him then turn off naturally

PLOTTING UP DRILL

You should remain alert when manoeuvring into a position. Just because another car has the trigger it does not mean that you can switch off. You should:

REMAIN OBSERVANT:

When you park, take a subtle look all around you (and above) for anyone watching you. Act naturally, do not carry out excessive manoeuvring whilst parking and keep your radio mic' out of sight.

REPORT IN:

Report your position to the eyeball *'That's Golf static on the original'*.

LOCK YOUR DOORS:

Ensure that your doors are locked for safety.

IDENTIFY YOUR LOCATION:

Establish where you are on the map or Satnav, record the stop on your memo recorder.

IDENTIFY YOUR ESCAPE:

If it helps, reverse park to ensure a quick getaway but be aware of being the only car parked in a row facing out. Identify how to get back onto the road and establish a secondary route incase you get blocked in.

HAVE A COVER STORY:

This should be at the back of your mind anyway but have a cover story ready in the event that you are approached by someone.



Using the clock system, the team can quickly lock on to any exits. The target always enters at 'six' o'clock.

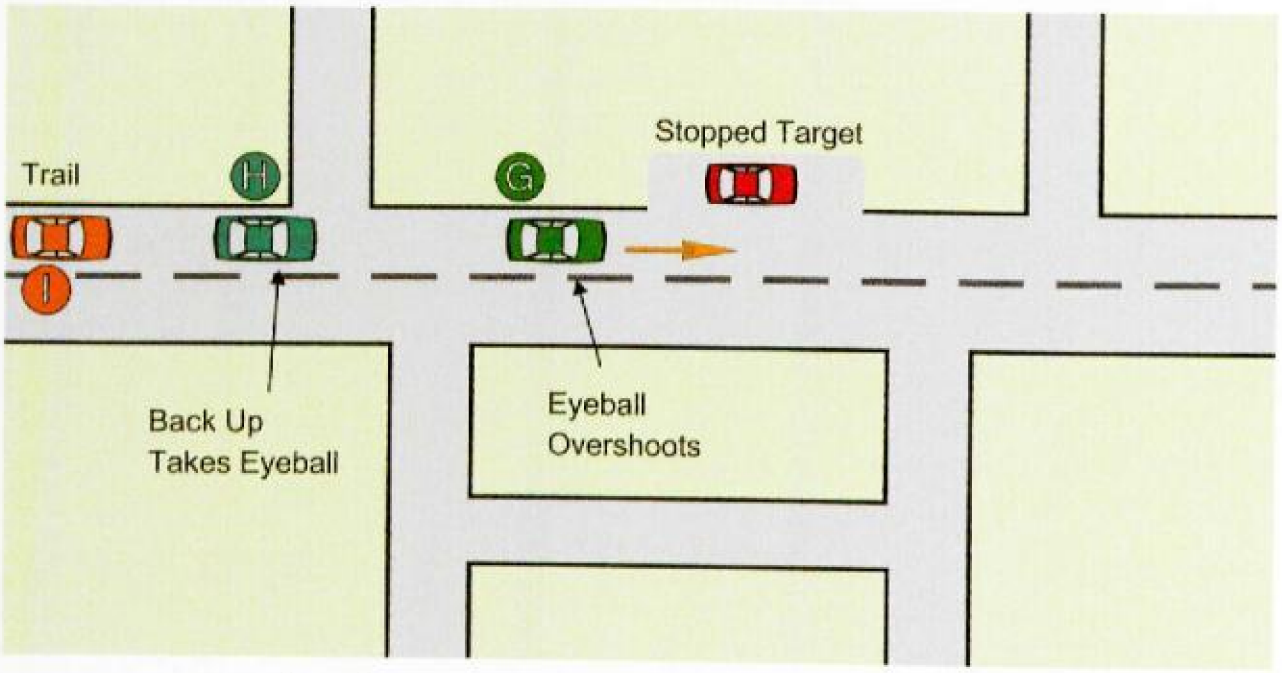
The eyeball keeps the team updated with, *'No change...'* on a regular basis.

When you hear a standby and the target goes mobile again on the original direction (remembering that the trigger shouldn't move), it should ideally be the trail car that comes round and takes the first follow. Remember that when a target stops, the callsign that overshot does not necessarily want to take the first follow because it was behind the target when they stopped.

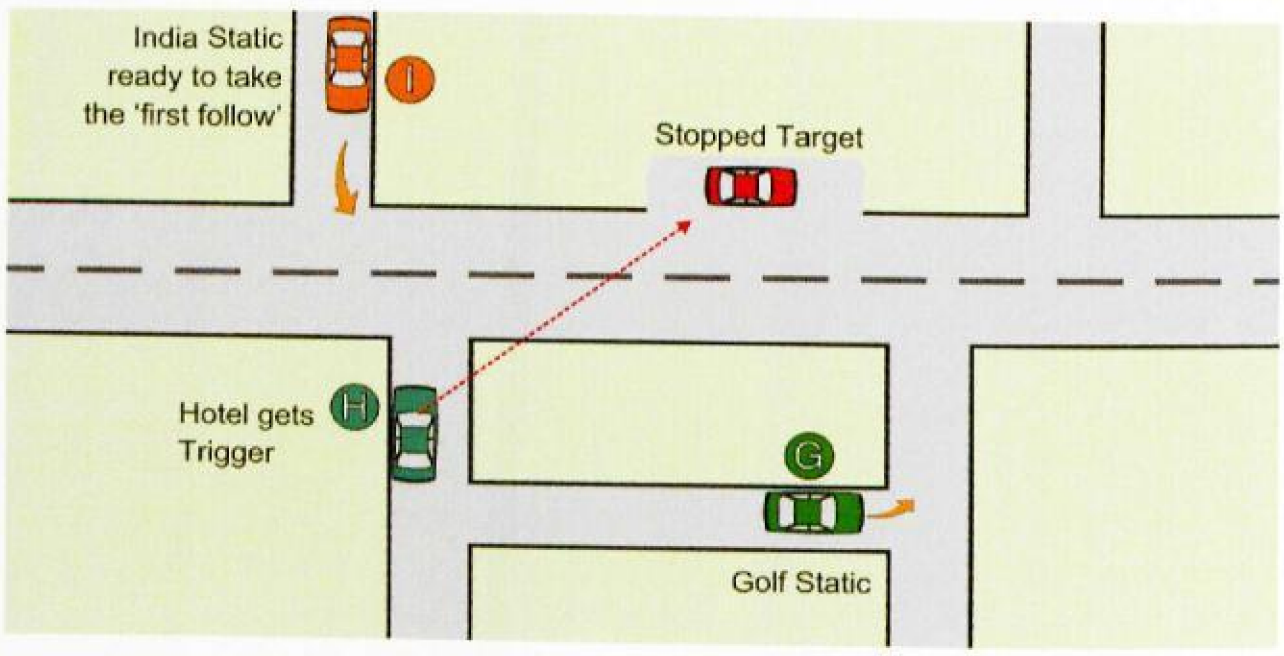
Every situation is different, but the main aim is for an operator to re-trigger the surveillance, the other team members cover the possible routes the target may take when going mobile. To reiterate, on a standby, or when the target moves off, it should ideally be a fresh vehicle that takes the first follow rather than the one that had the previous eyeball.

When the target moves off, call the direction of travel and let the team know when the target is 'unsighted', someone else can take over the commentary.

ISS TRAINING LTD







STOPPING IN A CAR PARK

We normally carry out a handover when the target enters a car park. This is classed as a stop and so the eyeball should not follow him in, but hand over to the back up. An aware target may be checking to see who follows him in.

- The eyeball should overshoot, try to identify any other exits and find a plot up location.
- The backup now has the eyeball and controls the target in the car park. Do not follow him down the same lanes but use the parallels as cover. Once in a car park, it is fairly likely the target will get out on foot. When the target comes to a halt, inform the team of his whereabouts in the car park using the 'clock ray' method
- The eyeball (trigger) vehicle should now position himself to clearly see the target and also the car park exit. This way, not only can he give a standby, but also the direction of travel when the target leaves
- If the car park has multiple exits these should be identified as soon as possible, and relayed to the team, who must then get in a position to cover them. In large car parks it may be necessary to have more than one car in there
- Do not be too hasty to get out on foot - the target may have to obtain a parking ticket to display in his windscreen before he departs on foot. In which case he will be returning to his car before departure

- Never park between the target and the exit or between the target and the pay and display machine because he will have to walk past you

- Identify if you have to pay or whether it's free parking. Some ticket machines are linked to ANPR and if you are parked up for more than ten minutes without obtaining a ticket, a hefty fine will arrive in the post

- Do not have the whole team in a car park – if the target gets out and the eyeball is held, the whole team will be held

SUPERMARKET CAR PARKS

Quite often we carry out investigations and surveillance into suspected fraudulent personal injury claims. This is when the claimant has had an accident and is claiming compensation from their insurance company for injuries and disability.

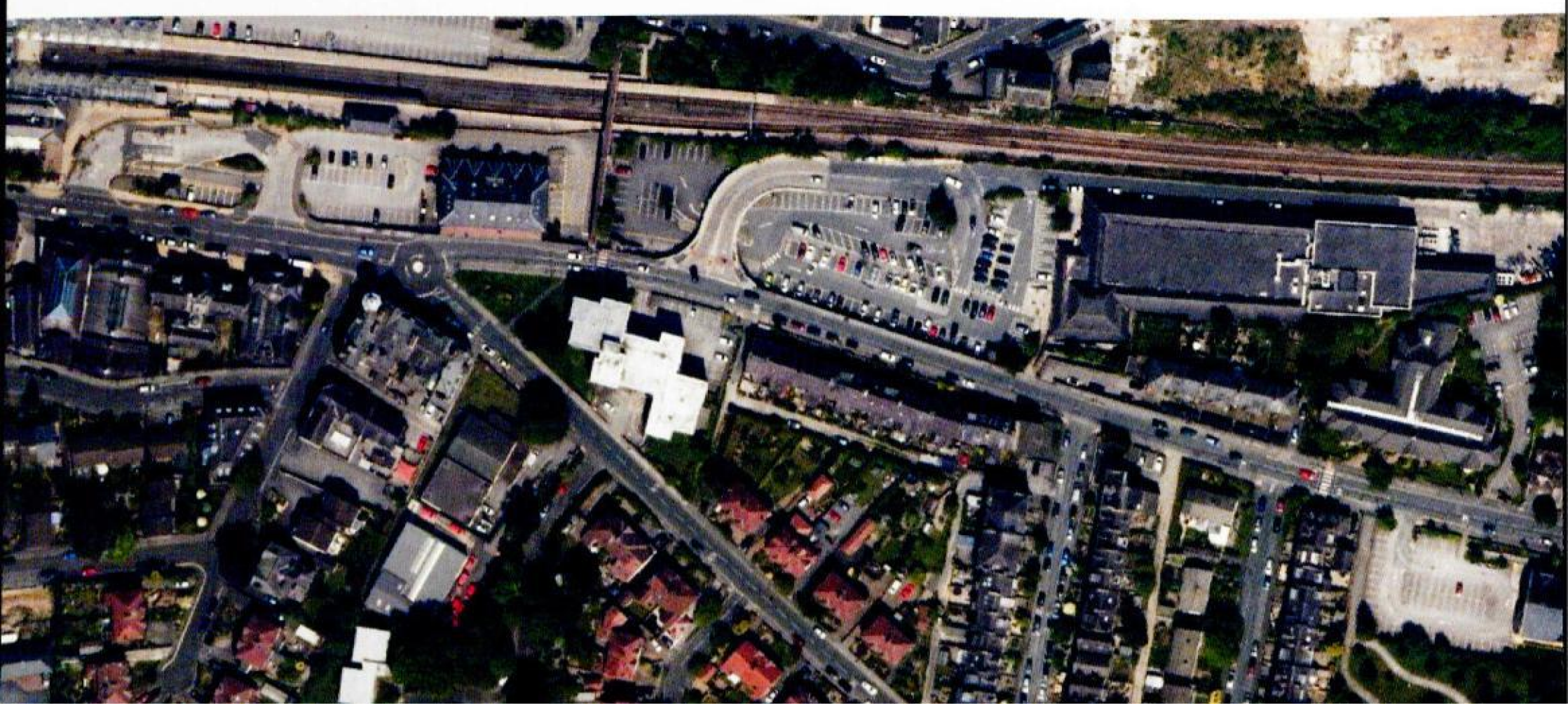
Targets with leg, back, shoulder and arm injuries can find it difficult to go shopping and move a heavy shopping trolley in a supermarket. When the target visits a supermarket it is a good opportunity to video them for evidence as they shop. Doctors can then decide the extent of their mobility, agility and strength. Especially when they are pushing a full shopping trolley or carrying heavy bags.

If a target enters a supermarket, our procedure is similar to that outlined above. A car keeps control of Bravo 1 and gets a trigger. Another car also enters the car park and covers the exit. The third car stays out of the car park and covers the escape route. The operator covering the exit deploys on foot into the supermarket with a covert camera to obtain video inside (remember to take a coin for the trolley). The trigger car then moves position in order to get a good 'video' position to film the target as they leave the supermarket, walk to their car and load the shopping. It may be that you bring in the van to do this so you can get good close up video.

When the target is at the checkout and enough covert video has been obtained, the foot person returns to his car and covers the exit from either within or outside the car park. The operator covering Bravo 1 videos the target exiting the store, walking or pushing the trolley to the car and loading the shopping into it. He then triggers it away when it goes mobile.



Don't all park in the same car park.



MANOEUVRING

When a target is contained within a car park, we drop the terms left & right as this just adds confusion to where they are. We tend to stick to the term 'manoeuvring' as this indicates he is floating about looking for a space or driving around looking for the exit.

To hear, *'that's gone left, left followed by a right, right followed by another right, right'* when you can't see what is going on is unclear. In addition, we should only be using the terms 'left' or 'right' when he actually leaves the car park; this indicates to anyone with bad comms that he has 'exited' the car park.



We should not say that the target has left the car park. This could also create confusion in poor comms, thinking he has turned left out of the car park. Use the term 'exited'.

THE CUL-DE-SAC AND DEAD END STREETS

The target could drive into a cul-de- sac to either visit an address or to carry out an anti-surveillance manoeuvre. Two scenarios can be envisaged: one, when you know that the road is a dead end, and two, you have been caught unaware and don't realise until you are into it and it is too late.

The following actions can be taken when the target turns into a cul-de- sac:

- If you know the road is a dead end, the eyeball continues straight past and checks to see if there are any routes out by car or on foot at the rear
- Backup to get a trigger on the junction to the cul-de-sac and possibly deploy a foot person to identify where the target has stopped
- If the house or premises is unidentified, an operator may have to check it after the target has gone mobile or return to it at a later time

If the cul-de-sac is not recognised until you have turned into it:

- Don't panic and act naturally
- Consider if doing a three point turn and driving out again you will arouse suspicion. If possible, do this out of sight of the target
- Park naturally on the roadside and walk away from your vehicle, possibly through a footpath if there is one
- Drive onto a resident's driveway and make a pretext call at the front door. You can then depart, driving out of the cul-de-sac
- Act naturally, don't look at or pay any attention to the target and avoid eye contact. I would consider entering a cul-de-sac as having lost a couple of lives and therefore keep out of sight for a while
- If you are in a long cul-de-sac, try and get a trigger from within or stay down there until the target has departed



Elvis has ~~left~~ exited the building...





The team report in during a loss.

LOSS OF CONTACT

Losing contact with the target is inevitable from time to time and is an occupational hazard in surveillance. You can have a team of six cars and two motorbikes to help minimise your chances of losing the target, but it can still happen.

A loss will occur for many reasons such as traffic congestion, busy roundabouts, traffic lights and most often, lack of concentration. If you hear the call, *'Temporary Unsighted'* you would normally expect to hear, *'Eyeball regained'*, shortly afterwards. If you hear several 'unsighted' calls expect to hear a, *'Total loss, total loss at...'* shortly afterwards to indicate the target has disappeared.

The longer the target has been 'unsighted', the further he may be getting away from you and therefore, the more difficult your task becomes in picking him up. If you have a tracker deployed, this is the first thing to check.



90% OF LOSSES OCCUR ON A 'STANDBY' DUE TO POOR POSITIONING AND INACCURATE COMMENTARY.

This is the procedure to follow in the event of a loss:

- The eyeball states where the 'total loss' occurred, then a search pattern can be adopted. Every situation is different, be it a T-junction, a roundabout or a fork in the road
- They then continue in the original direction or the most logical or fastest escape route
- The backup vehicle takes the first nearside turning after the point of loss or the second most logical or quickest escape route
- The trail to take the first offside turning after the point of loss. It could also remain at point of loss check the immediate area and then hold this junction/roundabout (or area).

Common sense should prevail regarding the time and distance travelled along these routes, relative to the speed of the target. If you feel happy that the target has definitely not taken your route you should inform the team leader. Then cover that direction or continue searching in another direction that has not yet been checked.

The operator who is covering the point of loss remains there for a number of reasons:

- The target might travel back though the same location or may have stopped in the vicinity
- From this position they are able to relay radio messages because the team will now be getting further apart
- They will be in the best position to 'back' the eyeball when contact is regained

If the target is located, the eyeball should immediately call, 'Standby, standby' followed by the target's location and the direction of travel.

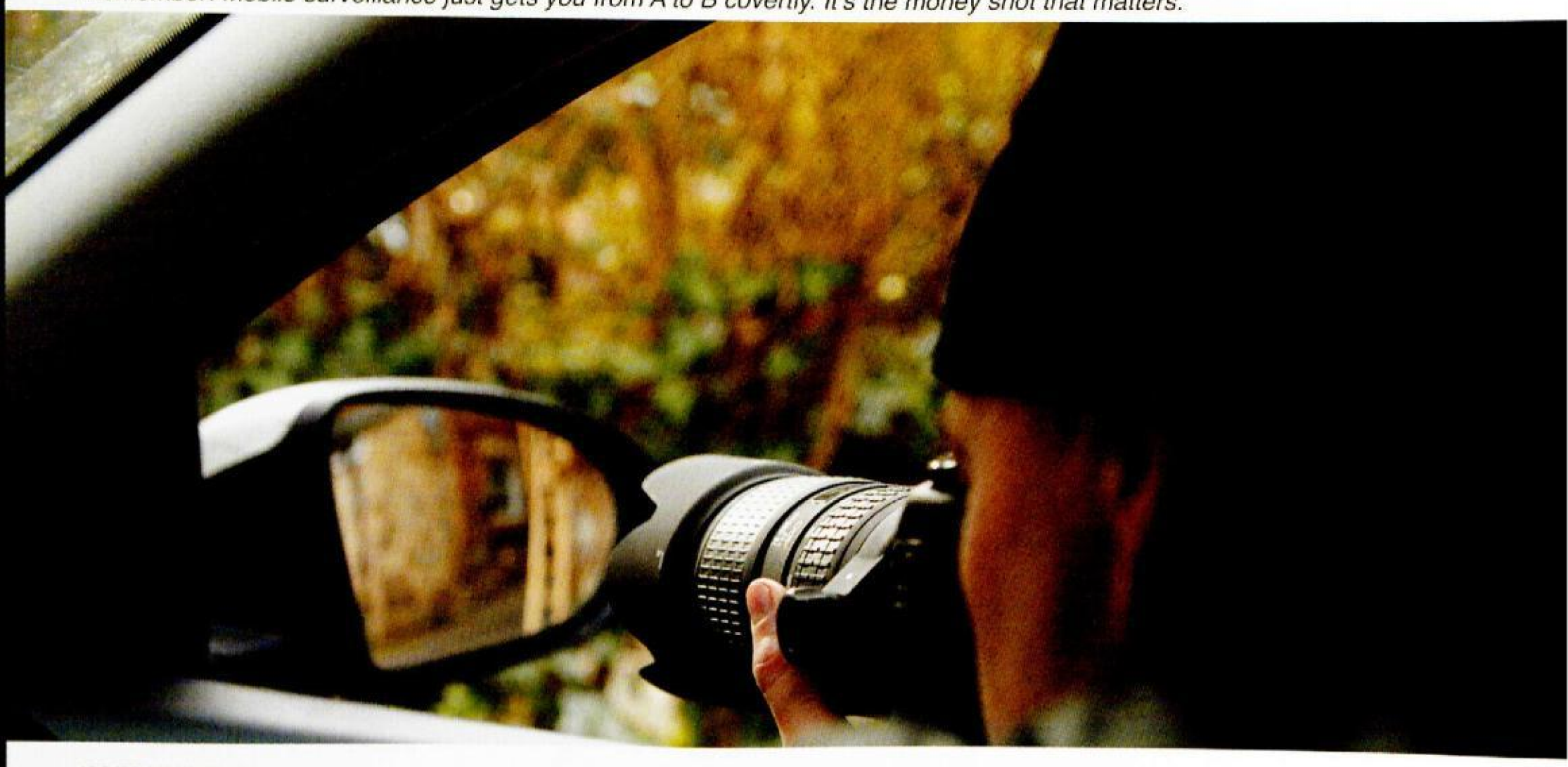
Keep in mind that some of the team members searching may now be out of radio range and so the location and direction of the target should be repeated. If necessary use your mobile phone or drop a 'location pin' into Whatsapp.
If the loss happens at a roundabout you should treat this in the same way as you would at a crossroads or a junction with multiple exits, each option should be checked.

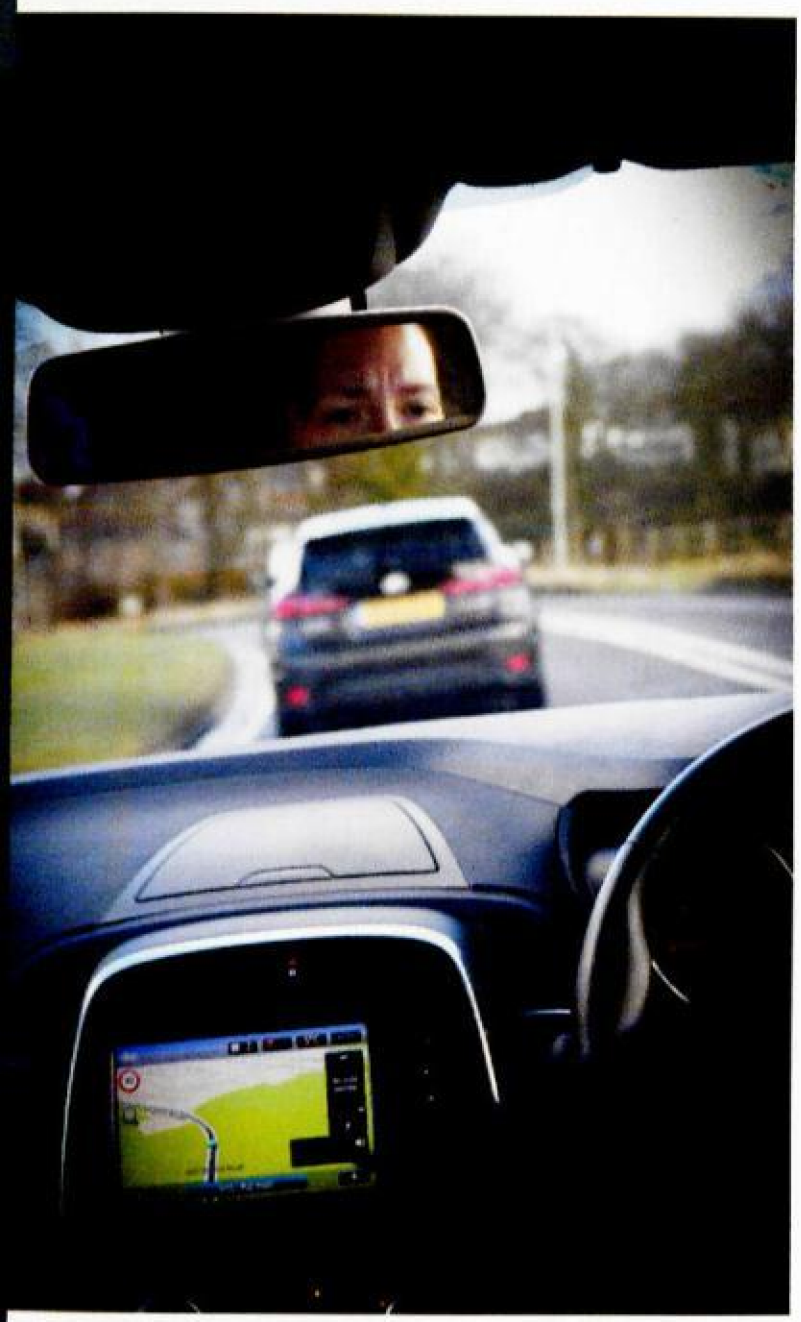
If the target ican't be found, you will have to consider sending someone back to the target's home address or place of work to see if they return. The other team members should check the places where the target is known to frequent.

STANDING DOWN THE SURVEILLANCE

At the end of the surveillance, the team leader will order the team to, '*Stand down*' and lift off from the surveillance. When doing so a meeting point or RV should be nominated where all the team can meet up prior to debriefing and leaving the area. This RV should be an area which is safe and away from where the target or his associates are likely to visit or pass.

Remember: Mobile surveillance just gets you from A to B covertly. It's the money shot that matters.





SUMMARY

- When the trigger gives a 'STANDBY', all callsigns should acknowledge. No one should be left behind!
- As soon as the target goes out of your view call, 'unsighted to me'
- If you are the trigger, do not immediatley rush out to take the follow
- The vehicle nearest the target and giving the commentary is the 'eyeball' or the vehicle that 'HAS'
- If you are backing, tell the eyeball straight away. If you become detached, also let him know with *'No longer backing'*
- During the follow the team should be out of sight not in the target's mirrors
- The eyeball will give radio commentary on the speed and direction of the target and of any road hazards
- Cars will change positions as dictated by the eyeball
- In rural areas and motorways a greater distance can be allowed between target and eyeball. Bends in the road, hedges and other vehicles can be used as cover
- In built-up areas and especially busy towns, surveillance vehicles must be closer together and the eyeball should be very close to the target at times being directly behind them
- Cars should keep to the nearside of target's rear when in close proximity to reduce the chance of attracting attention. People use their nearside mirrors less often
- If you are held immediately behind the target, drive and act naturally. The driver should 'minimise' on the radio and the backup vehicle should take over the commentary temporarily
- Drive with normal lights and ensure that they all work properly
- Keep your radios microphone below the level of the dashboard

Keep your windows up. As soon as you drop them anyone can see straight into your car.



CHAPTER SIX PART 1 QUESTIONS

1) Analyse the requirements of an 'ideal' surveillance vehicle

2) To minimise risks when coming to a halt on a mobile surveillance (or static whilst on plot), explain what you should consider in relation to your security and the security of the surveillance

3) Identify the weekly checks that you should make to your vehicle

4) Identify where you would consider to be a good location for a mobile handover

5) Identify when you would consider carrying out a mobile handover

6) Identify where would be a bad place for a handover

7) Explain when a target is more likely to be surveillance aware

8) Explain the theory of a 'secondary' stakeout

9) Explain the dynamics of a 'rolling' stakeout

10) When alighting from your vehicle, explain what actions or considerations should you carry out

11) When imposing surveillance on an 'unsophisticated' target, identify where you should you normally be picked up from, after being dropped off from a vehicle and why.

Q&A

FOLLOW THE QR CODE TO TAKE YOU TO THE QUESTION & ANSWER 'HELP' PAGES.

ASSESSMENT TIME!

1) Analyse the requirements of an 'ideal' surveillance vehicle.

2) To minimise risks when coming to a halt on a mobile surveillance (or static whilst on plot), explain what you should consider in relation to your security and the security of the surveillance

3) Identify the weekly checks that you should make to your vehicle

4) Identify where you would consider to be a good location for a mobile handover

ISS TRAINING LTD

5) Identify when you would consider carrying out a mobile handover

6) Identify where would be a bad place for a handover

7) Explain when a target is more likely to be surveillance aware

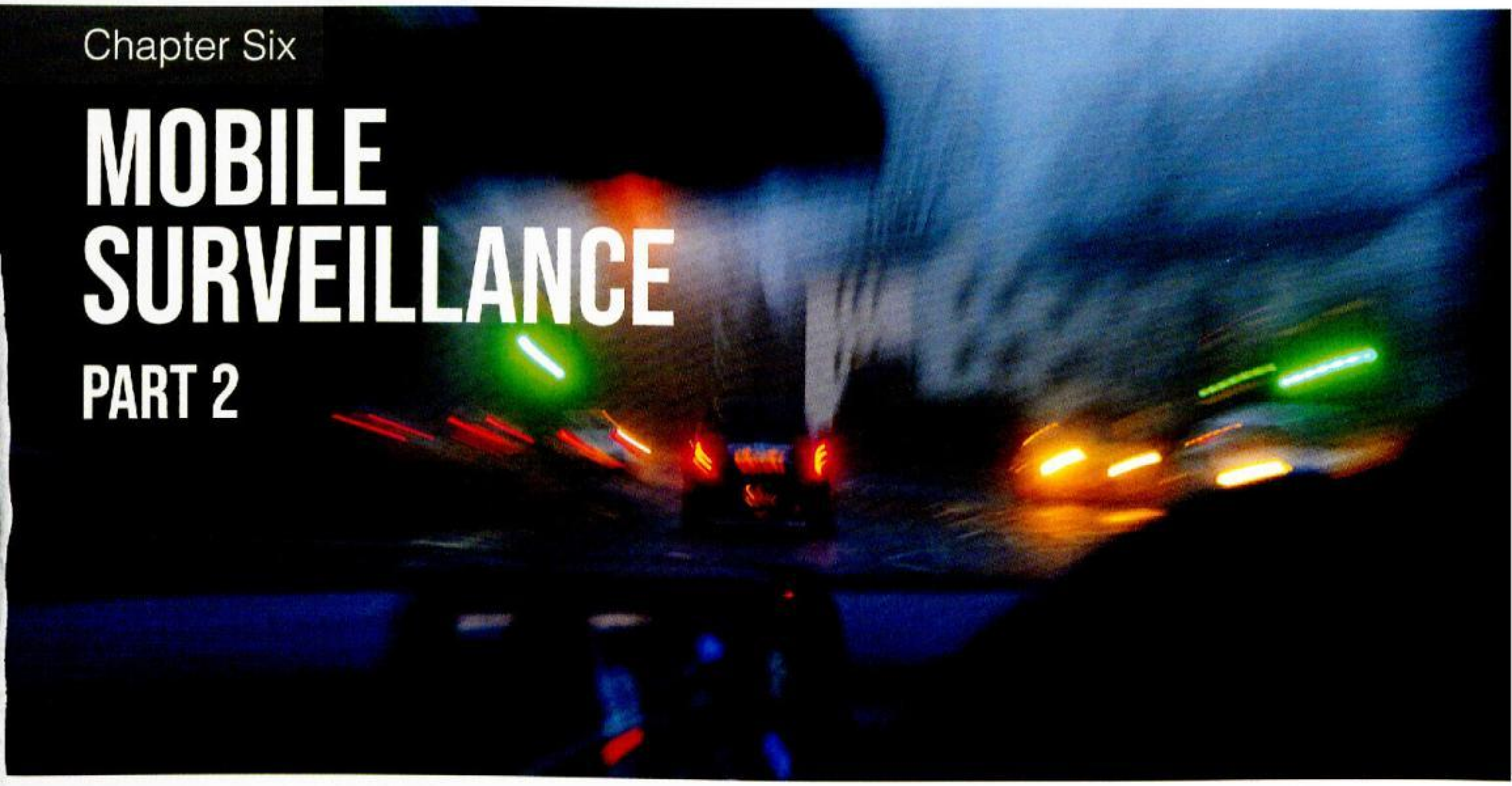
8) Explain the theory of a 'secondary' stakeout

9) Explain the dynamics of a 'rolling' stakeout

10) When alighting from your vehicle, explain what actions or considerations should you carry out

11) When imposing surveillance on an 'unsophisticated' target, identify where you should you normally be picked up from, after being dropped off from a vehicle and why.


MAXIA
HONDA



Chapter Six

MOBILE SURVEILLANCE PART 2

Surveillance is surveillance. You can't really break it down into 'basic' or 'advanced' but for the purposes of the qualifications there are two separate teaching units where one progresses to another. We now look at those progressive methods and techniques used by a mobile team.

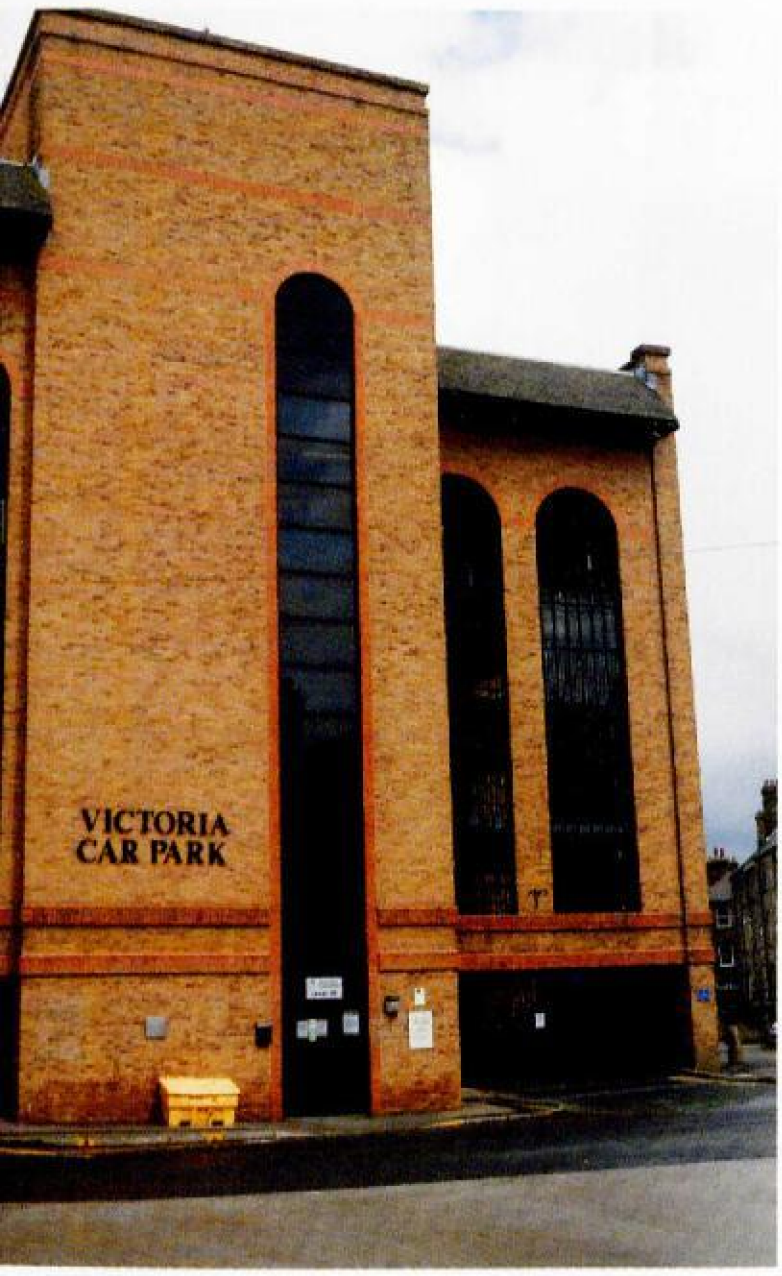
SHOWING AN EMPTY CAR

It's not ideal but at times you might have to let the target pass you whilst you are stationary. This normally occurs when triggering from a position ahead. If so, you may want to show an 'empty car' to make it look unoccupied by ducking out of sight before the target passes you.

If you do this:

- Have a quick look around, think third party and ensure no one sees you
- Turn your engine and wipers off
- Also switch off your lights and indicators
- Ensure your foot is off the brake pedal otherwise the rear lights will flash brightly
- Don't leave your windows open

Listen for the target driving past before you sit up.



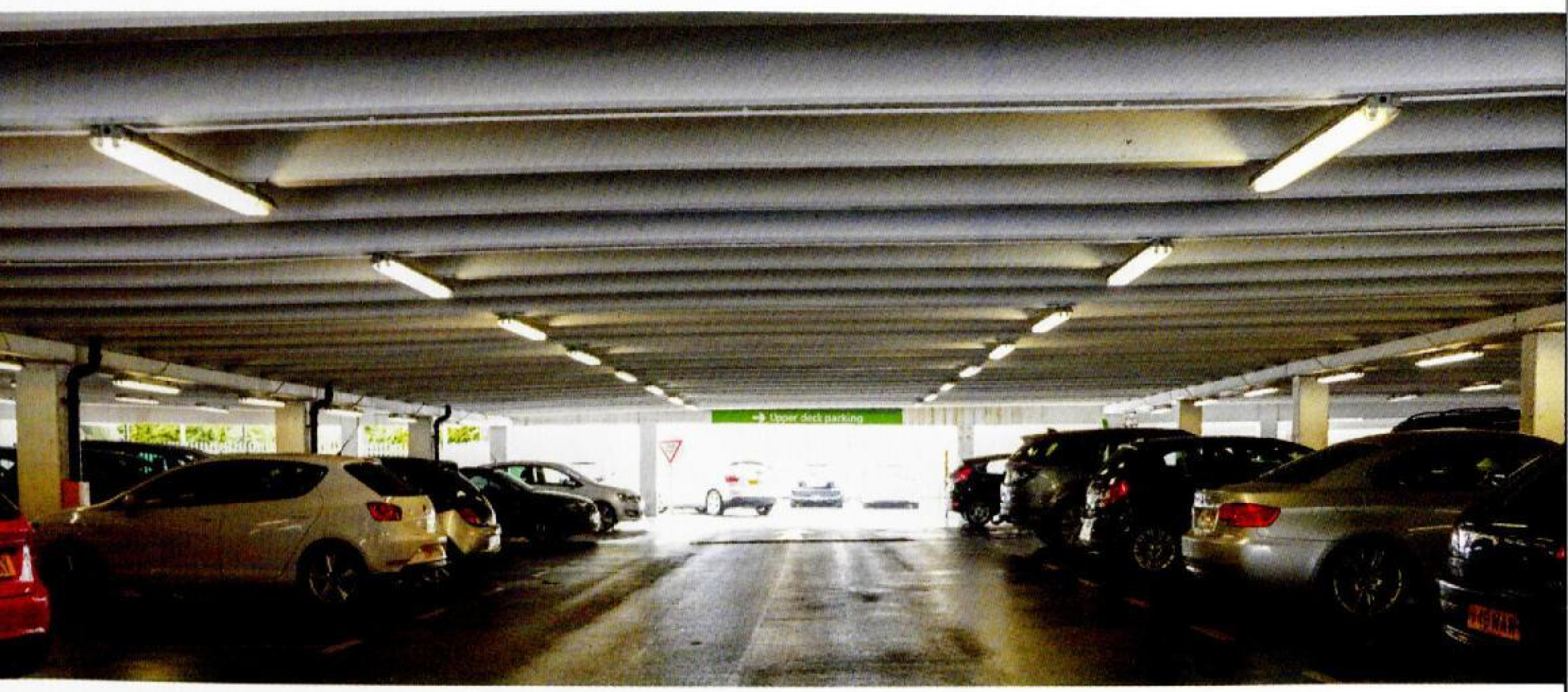
MULTI-STOREY CAR PARKS

Multi-storey car parks can be tricky to cover, especially when there are multiple exits. When the target drives into a multi-storey car park, expect him to find the first available spot and park in it. If you can obtain a spot close by, all well and good but quite often you may have to go up one or two floors to park.

Every situation is different but the following is suggested for an unaware target:

- When the target enters, the eyeball vehicle hands over to the backup then remains on the outside of the car park, checks and covers the exits
- The new eyeball takes the target into the car park, reports where it stops, and deploys a foot person when the target goes foxtrot. Extreme caution is advised as they are likely to be right behind the target
- Trail remains on the outside of the car park, covering the escape route
- The footman, will locate the target, remain with him and follow him into the street, hopefully to be backed up by a team mate. When deploying on foot, remember what floor level you parked on. When using narrow stairways in car parks be aware of how far your voice travels when giving a commentary
- Remember the target might be collecting a parking ticket and return to his vehicle before walking away
- Don't forget to examine the target vehicle parking ticket for the amount of time paid for and note anything of interest possibly left on view inside. You may also want to deploy a tracking device if you have cover and it is safe to do so
-

Because the team have to be very quick to gain control, it might be that due to the targets awareness level and the size of the car park (or even the size of the team), that someone just covers the exits instead.



ISS TRAINING LTD



INDOOR SHOPPING CENTRES AND CAR PARKS WITH BARRIERS



Be aware of car parks where you take a ticket from a barrier upon entering. Usually you have to keep your parking ticket with you and pay at a machine prior to departure. This means that you have to pay before returning to your vehicle, which could cause difficulties in keeping control of the target. We suggest you return to your car quickly and leave the car park before the target does, plotting up on the outside.

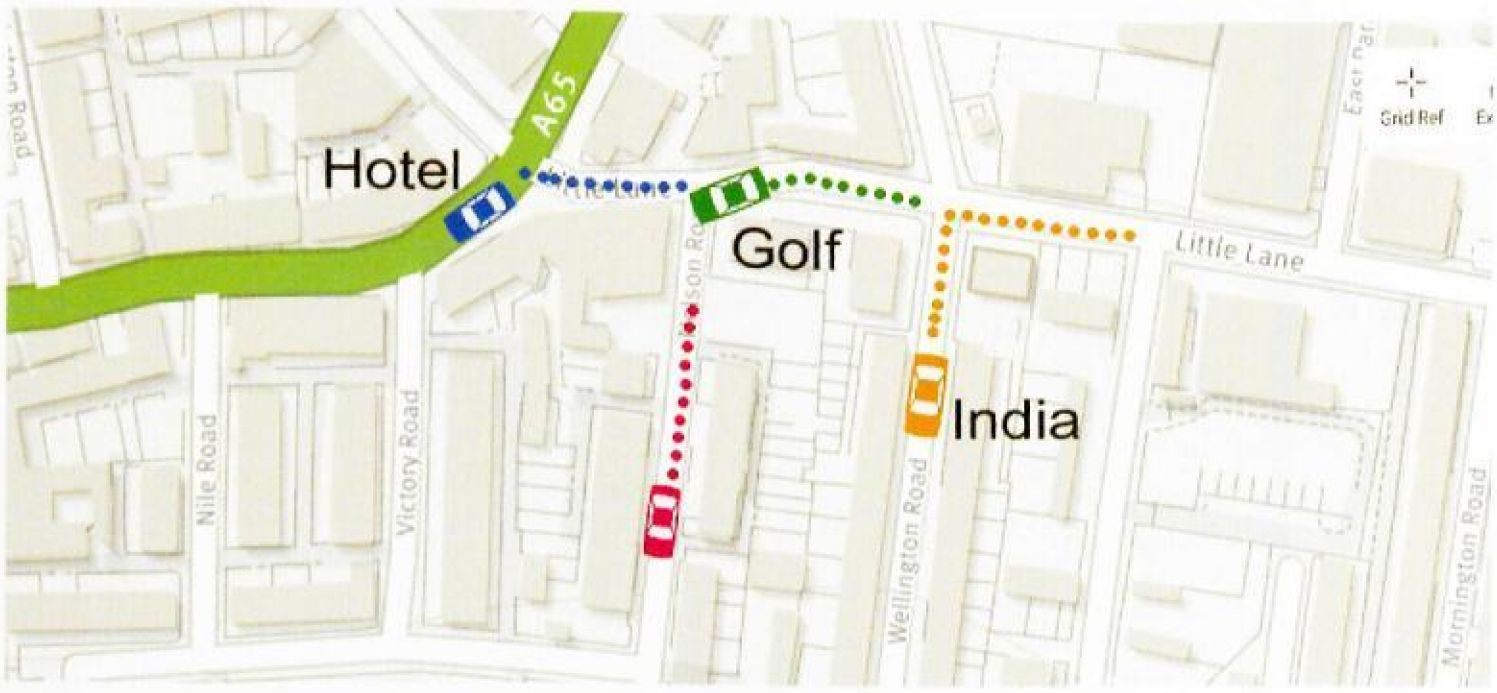
You normally have 15 minutes to leave the car park after paying. If you take longer to exit, you will have to pay again.

PARALLELS

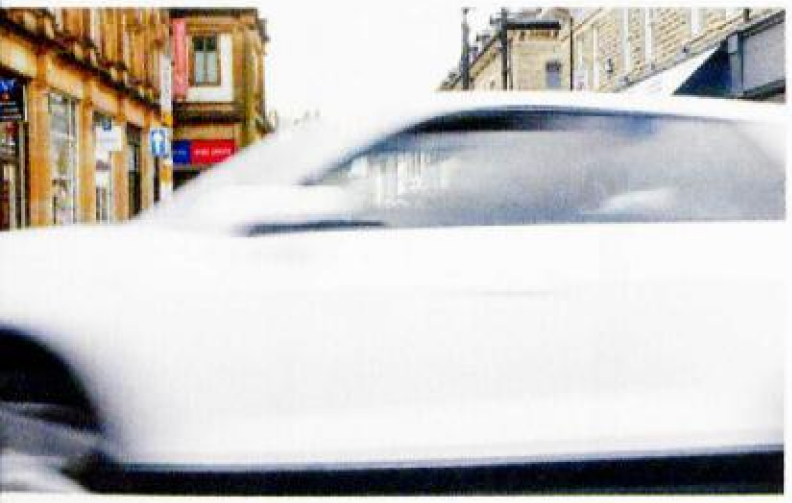
Using parallel routes to the target prevents you from 'following' the target like ducks in a line. So it minimises your exposure. Parallels should only be carried out if you are familiar with the area, or if you are confident in your map reading skills - do not always trust your satnav.

Parallels also assist during a handover; rather than peel off, handover and then merge back into the flow of traffic, you can continue straight on a parallel and then rejoin the main road further down.

In the diagram below, the target turns left off Little Lane onto Nelson Rd. 'Hotel' overshoots and 'Golf' comes round and takes tak eyeball. 'India' pre-empts and continues on a 'Left parallel' and Hotel continues straight on the A65 and takes a right when necessary onto a 'Right parallel'.



GO TAKE A LOOK...





THE FAST DRIVER

Some targets will drive like maniacs. Not just because they suspect that they will be followed, but because they do this normally. So it is worth inquiring at the briefing stage if the client has any information about how the target is likely to drive.

A target driving at high speed is more likely to be concentrating on the road ahead than he is on the road behind him. Though occasional checks of his rear-view mirrors will be made in order to look for Police.

Fast speeds on the road can be the cause of fatal accidents and so I would be inclined to think to myself, 'Is the job really worth it? Should we really have to push ourselves, at the risk of an accident, to keep up?'

These drivers can be difficult to put under observation therefore a pattern of movement may have to be established so the surveillance can be carried out in stages. Tracking devices are a must for following very fast targets. Not only can you obtain a pattern of movement over a period of time, but also let them run ahead of you at high speed.

MOTORBIKES

A motorbike is essential when carrying out mobile surveillance through heavy traffic in busy towns and cities, but they have their limitations. In their favour; they are harder to notice, they are fast with good acceleration and they can access areas that cars cannot. Using a motorbike greatly minimises the risk of a loss.

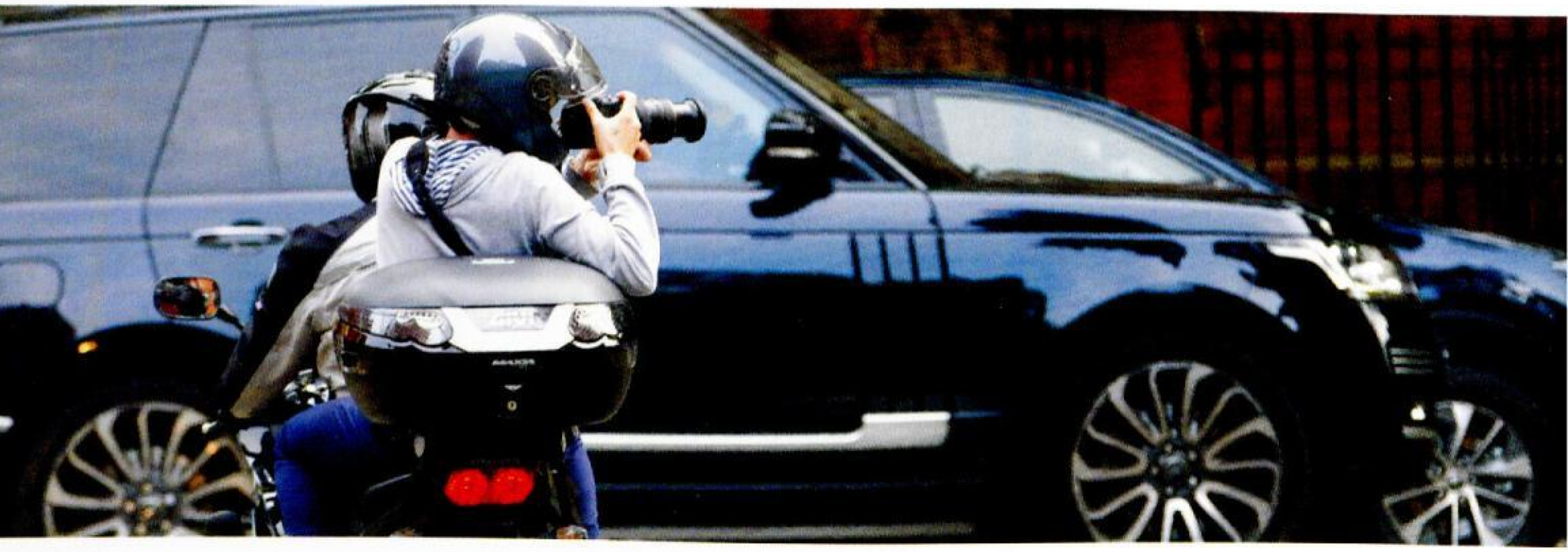
A surveillance rider's task is fairly specialised and requires a lot of training and experience. The rider has to be very proficient in bike handling as his task is probably one of the most dangerous on the team. A good rider will be able to act on his own initiative without having to be tasked by the eyeball. He will know when to hang back or when to come through and take over control.

Not only will he take part in the surveillance but he will also provide support to the team. For example, if you are the trail stuck in heavy traffic and need to close up but cannot get around it, the motorcyclist can help. If he cuts through the queue, pulls in front of someone and applies his brakes he can then hold back the traffic and prevent them from moving forwards. As a gap appears, the biker calls forward the straggling trail car who then overtakes the vehicles being held and jumps into the gap created by the biker. In a similar manner, if the convoy is struggling to get out at a road junction, the biker can position himself in the middle of the adjoining road, hold any oncoming traffic back and let the team come through.

During a stakeout phase, the biker has to find an ideal place to lie up whilst waiting for the standby. Sometimes this can be difficult but he can afford to be further away from the target than anyone else because he has the power to accelerate and get to where he is meant to be quickly.

Some bikers will co-locate with one of the mobile units (in the back of their car). The biker can then relax because he doesn't have to be 'attached' to his bike in order to receive comms. You will find a biker doing this quite often when the weather is bad! Remember that a motorbike has a limited range so on long surveillances it is likely that he will have to refuel at a petrol station or from a spare fuel can carried by one of the team cars.

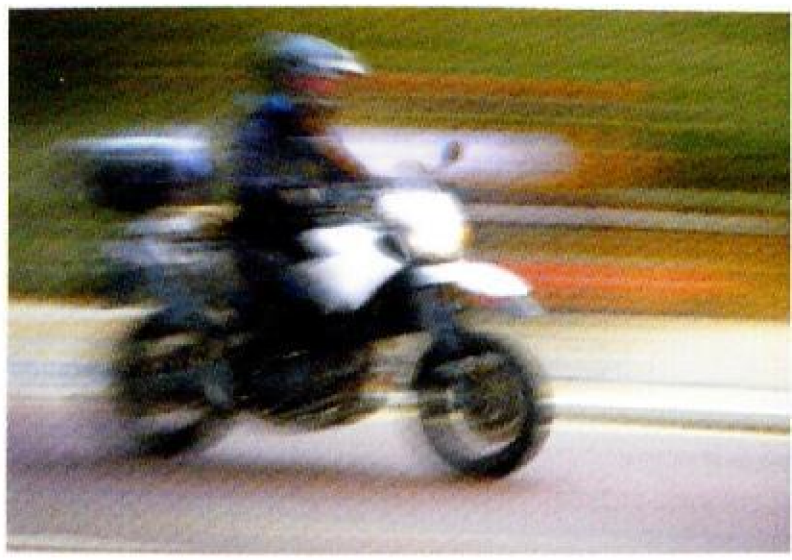
ISS TRAINING LTD



This bike is 'Two Up' supporting a foot team to ensure they get the money shot.

Professional surveillance riders will have their bike and helmet fitted with appropriate radio equipment. A radio can be mounted under the bike's seat or worn about their person so they can quickly deploy on foot.

During the follow the biker should pay attention to the commentary and act on their own initiative or when called through by the eyeball. If the target gets held at a set of traffic lights, he should automatically close up in case any of the cars become held. If the lights change against the team, the biker can quickly clear the lights and take control. The rider will want to hand the eyeball back to the car team as soon as possible afterwards.



The biker can use other vehicles for cover but should also be courteous and safe, without annoying other motorists who will intimidate him, flash their headlights or beep their horns, which will attract unwanted attention.

THE BIKER SHOULD BE USED:

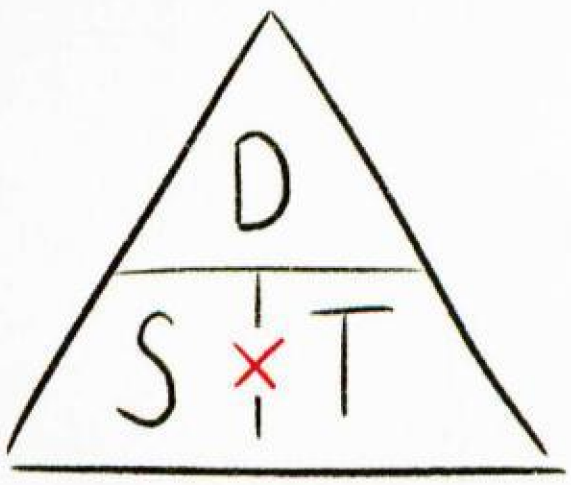
- In heavy traffic in busy towns and city centres, especially when there is a chance of the eyeball losing control
- At major roundabouts and junctions controlled by traffic lights when he should close up
- To provide suitable support to the mobile team, such as getting a trigger
- To take the most direct and logical route when a loss occurs
- When following very fast or very slow targets
- To backup a footman who is on a bus or train. It may be that the biker has to travel to the target's destination and arrive before him.
- To pick up a foot person and redeploy him.
- To provide a trigger when the other vehicles are 'warm' or cannot obtain a good trigger position
- To cover the opposite side of a motorway service station
- To provide a mobile platform for the photographer to ride pillion if the 'money shot' is so important



MOTORWAY DRIVING

Surveillance on a motorway can be easier or more difficult depending on your outlook. Although vehicles can travel at much greater speeds, they can only go in one direction and leave at certain points, and so they are 'contained' to a certain degree. With this in mind, we have to realise and appreciate the problems that motorways (and motorway service areas) can present.

If your target's base is close to a motorway be prepared for him to use it and ensure that you have a full tank of fuel. Remember, if you have to peel off from a motorway to refuel your target and the team can be miles away by the time you rejoin the carriageway - you will have to drive at breakneck speed in order to catch up.



SPEED

$$\text{SPEED} = \frac{\text{DISTANCE}}{\text{TIME}}$$

$$\text{TIME} = \frac{\text{DISTANCE}}{\text{SPEED}}$$

$$\text{DISTANCE} = \text{SPEED X TIME}$$

The change from rural and urban driving to motorway driving is obvious and it must be appreciated that we can travel a longer distance in a matter of minutes at high speed. Therefore, it's important to be able to correctly judge the speed of the target vehicle, so that your convoy does not become too strung out.

Because motorways stretch for many miles, the eyeball can be retained for longer periods by the same car, but only when there is plenty of cover from other vehicles. Team cars can allow a greater distance between one another, and the distance from the eyeball to the trail can be a mile or more. They can keep well spaced apart so long as: they can close up when required, the radio reception is good (or you have a relay), and there are no imminent hazards.

Speed indication should frequently be given often on the motorway. If the target increases his speed from 70mph to 90mph you may find the trail is having to do 100mph in order to close up.

Consider calculating time and distance. If the target travels at 60mph, he can cover 1 mile in 1 minute. So if the next junction is 14 miles away and he is doing 70mph it will take him about 12 minutes to get there.

E.G.

$$\text{TIME} = \frac{\text{14 MILES}}{\text{70 MPH}} = 0.2$$

0.2 X 60 (MINUTES) = 12 MINS

Time it takes to travel:

5 miles @ 30mph takes 10 minutes
5 miles @ 50mph takes 6 minutes
5 Miles @ 60mph takes 5 minutes
5 miles @ 80mph takes 3 mins 45 secs

ISS TRAINING LTD

MIRRORING

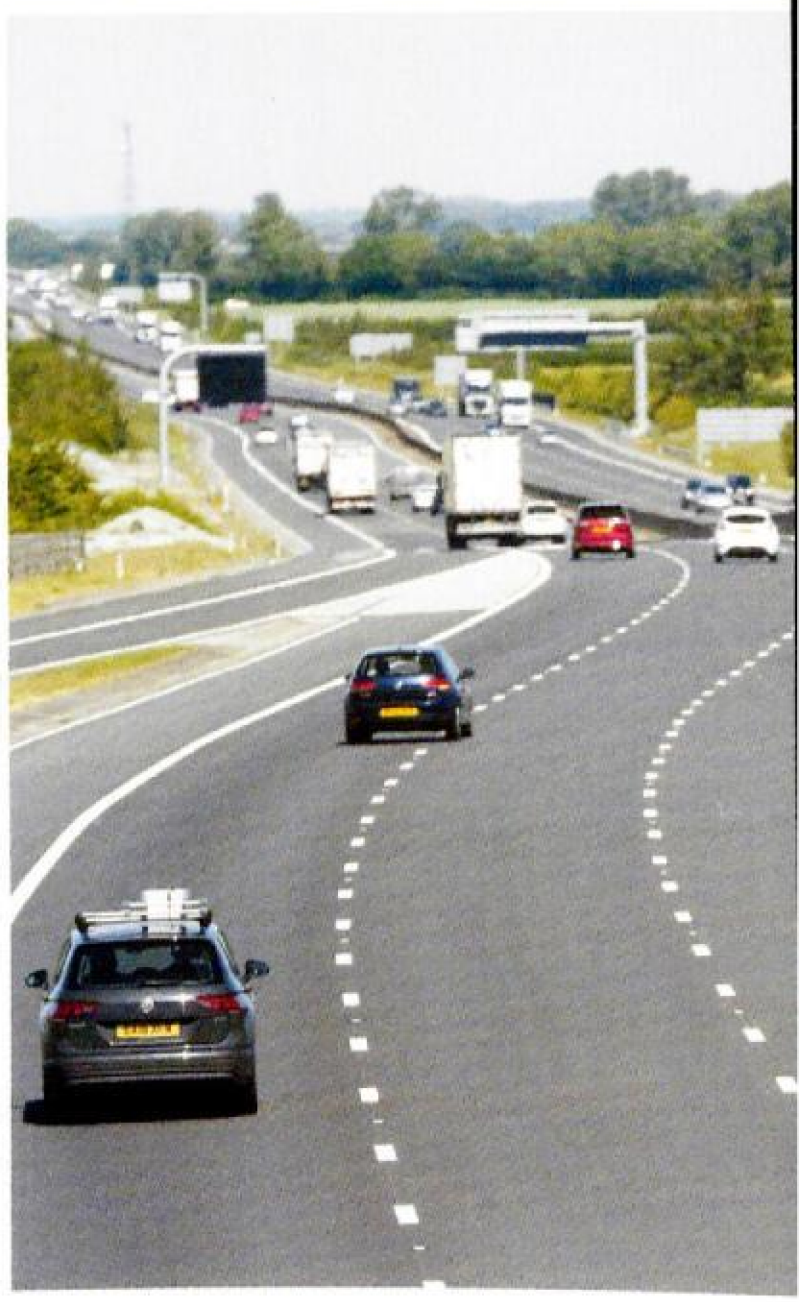
As with urban driving, it is important for the eyeball on a motorway surveillance to make sure he does not copy or 'mirror' the targets actions. If the target pulls out into another lane, the eyeball should maintain his speed but remain where he is until such time as it is safe to move out into the same lane as the target. By thinking ahead and anticipating the target overtaking another vehicle (such as a slow moving truck) you can stay where were are until the target has pulled back into the nearside lane.



If the target is on a dual carriageway and approaching a roundabout in the nearside lane, he may quickly change lanes to the outside lane as if turning right at the roundabout. If this occurs do not be too hasty to mirror his movements, but call for your backup to come though on the outside and take control. This prevents you from directly mirroring the target.

MOTORWAY SIGNS AND MARKER BOARDS

When travelling on a motorway, reference points can sometimes be rather sparse. Bridges and electricity pylons can be used as reference points as they are high up and can be seen from quite a distance.



As we approach motorway exits we are given warning by directional signs which are placed at one mile and half mile intervals (in some cases 2/3 and 1/3 mile) prior to the exit. Each sign gives the distance, junction number and road classification numbers coming up.

You must remember that vehicles on motorways can only go one way until they get to an exit. You need to be disciplined so as not to bunch up or be forced to overtake when the target is moving slowly.



APPROACHING MOTORWAY JUNCTIONS

The eyeball should always give prior warning when approaching a motorway junction. The team should then close up. As they pass the countdown markers the eyeball gives fast accurate commentary on the target's lane position and speed. For example:

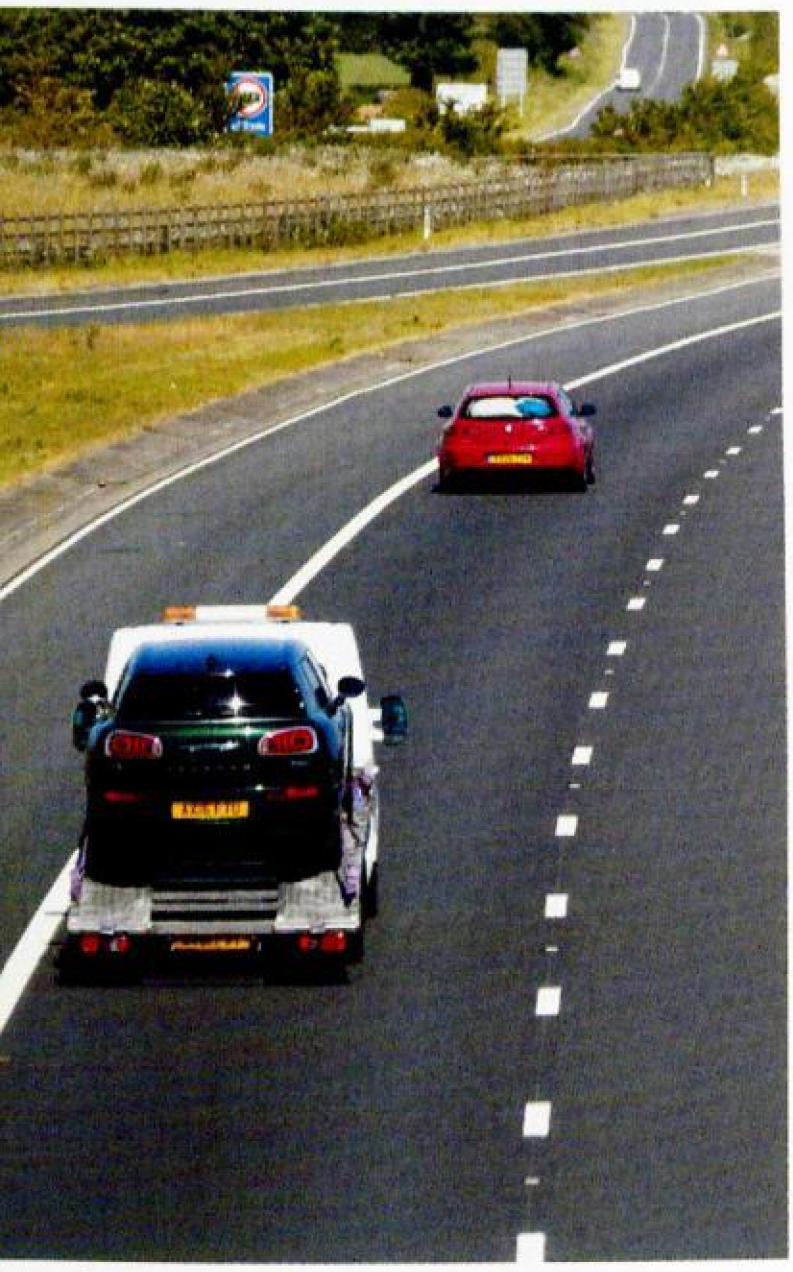
'1 mile marker board, junction 16, speed seven zero (70)'

'1/2 mile marker board, junction 16, nearside lane, speed seven zero (70)'

'Countdown markers three hundred nearside lane, two hundred nearside indicator, one hundred gone left, left, at junction 16' Some agencies use the term, *'Off Off'* rather than, *'Gone Left Left'*

If he remains committed to staying on the motorway, you'll hear: *'Countdown markers, three hundred, two hundred, one hundred that's Committed, Committed, M1 south'.*





Don't forget the tow truck that may have your target onboard.

HANDOVERS

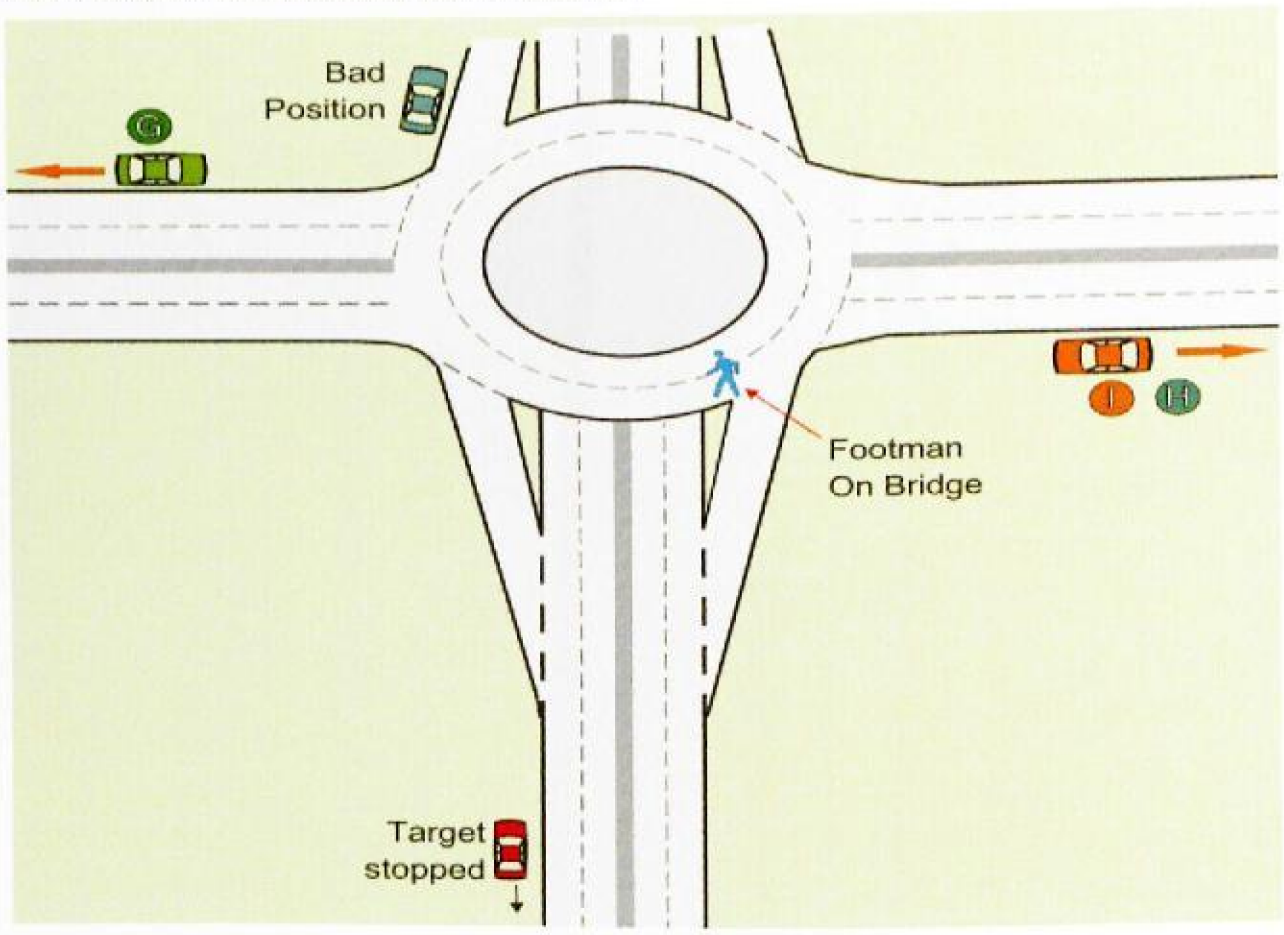
The motorway handover procedure is: the eyeball checks (on map or SatNav) they can both leave and then rejoin, at the next junction. The backup takes over when the 'old' eyeball exits. Sometimes you can handover by letting your backup overtake you. But only do this when you have distance from the target, and they can't see you in their mirrors.

Reiterate where the target is just before you handover, so the car that's backing can lock on to it.

'Back up, can you at the next junction?'
'India, Yes, Yes'
'Roger that, that's Bravo 1 backing the yellow truck, I no longer have'.

Remember, the backup will have closed up to take control but the target may still be some distance away, and it's easy to report on the wrong vehicle.

When the target leaves at a junction, it is likely that he will encounter a roundabout or a junction at the top of the slip road. This is a good time to carry out a planned handover so you are not seen to take the target off the motorway, and then follow him as he changes direction. Be aware of traffic lights on large roundabouts at motorway intersections.



WHAT IF THE TARGET STOPS ON A MOTORWAY

If the target pulls over onto the hard shoulder, it could be for a number of reasons; he might have broken down or he could be carrying out some form of anti-surveillance. If this happens, act naturally and continue past. Whatever you do, DO NOT simulate a break down and pull up on the hard shoulder some distance behind or in front - you will be noticed. He might also walk towards you for help if it's a genuine breakdown. If he is carrying out anti-surveillance you have potentially compromised yourself!

The team should continue past and deploy to cover the next junction - the target can only go one way.

ISS TRAINING LTD

The cars should position themselves for both continuing on the motorway and him leaving it at the same junction they're at. A footman can also be dropped off on the bridge in order to observe the motorway from one side. DO NOT stand above the lanes in the middle because it makes drivers nervous.

Don't expect the target to drive past after a short period. If he has genuinely broken down you could be in for a long wait. If you are observing the motorway don't forget to check any breakdown recovery vehicles that pass you as your target may be on the back of it.

If the junctions are not too far apart, or you have a motorcyclist, it may be worth sending an operator on a drive past in the opposite direction in order to establish what the target is doing.



MOTORWAY SERVICES





Nowadays service stations have large parking areas, drive-thru coffee stops, food & drink shops and bathroom facilities. Because of the proximity of the parking areas to the motorway, and the possibility that a target could change the direction he is travelling in by using the service roads, we have to cover his options by deploying operators in the following positions:

Upon entering a motorway service area, a three car team should carry out the following:

- Eyeball handovers and takes up a position in the area of the filling station or exit to the motorway
- The new eyeball takes the target onto the service area and keeps him under control, possibly deploying a foot person
- Backup covers any other exits away from the service area such as the service roads to hotels and so on
- Consider sending a motorcyclist or any other vehicle to take up a position on the other side of the carriageway in the event that the target takes a footbridge across and meets with an associate on the other side. This is not always necessary and depends on the awareness level and the level of sophistication of your target
- Be aware of one way systems in these areas. It is vital to call the correct direction when the target leaves





MOBILE SURVEILLANCE AT NIGHT

When driving at night, it is very difficult for the target to identify the vehicle or occupants of the car behind especially when it is close. We tend to be blinded to anything but the lights of the car behind so in rush hour we can afford to get much closer to the target's vehicle.

Conversely, in rural areas a surveillance car could soon get spotted at night and it may not be practical to 'hang back' too much. Ensure handovers are carried out frequently and always in the mirror of the target. This should satisfy the target's curiosity if he suspects he's being followed. Before handing over, ensure that you confirm where the target vehicle is, especially if it's between two or three other vehicles - you don't want to follow the wrong vehicle.

When handing over you are trying to convey to the target, *'Look at me, I am indicating to turn off, I am turning off, I am not following you'*. So carry out plenty of handovers in the target's mirrors.

Ensure that all your sidelights and headlights are working properly because a faulty light will soon be noticed. If you have to navigate using a map, try to refrain from using the 'courtesy' light as this will illuminate you like a beacon and also ruin your night vision - use a small pocket torch instead. Consider removing the bulb altogether, or setting the interior lighting so it does not come on when the doors are opened.

- **Where to Sit at Night**

In urban situations you will have to decide where is a good place to park up, without revealing that you are sitting in a car. There are different ideas on this. Do you sit right underneath a lamp post or away from it?

If you park right under the lamp post the car will be illuminated but the interior will be cast in shadow. So you can use shadow as cover, especially if you lower the seat back to reduce your profile or sit in the rear seats. If you park away from the lamp post, the light will shine into your car to light you up or to make you stand out in silhouette.

Either way it pays to use other cars as cover, rather than you being the only one on the street.

As previously discussed, ensure that your widows are kept clean so you cannot be seen inside. Try to avoid winding your windows down for the same reason. An open window looks just like a black hole, which someone outside the car can see straight into.

- **Touch Red!**

Quite often, the backup or trail will have difficulty seeing where the other team members are in the convoy ahead of them. The call *'Golf, Touch Red'* on the radio is often used to request that the eyeball (or person in front) taps their break pedal twice. This is so those behind see the brighter glow of the brake lights twice which indicates where they are. Be careful, don't ask anyone to 'touch red' on an approach to a junction or roundabout as everyone in the line of traffic will be using their brakes. Once you see the 'double tap' on the brakes, make sure you acknowledge it.

ISS TRAINING LTD

- **Lights Away!**

Let's say that the target has entered a pub car park at night and you can only trigger the car park entrance/exit from a distance or from a standing OP. It will be difficult to identify the target because other vehicles may also leave. So if a vehicle leaves we call *'Possible Standby, Standby, Lights Away'*. This means that a vehicle has departed but cannot be identified, and therefore a team member has to check it and confirm whether it is the target.



SINGLE-HANDED MOBILE SURVEILLANCE

Many private investigators and surveillance operators carry out surveillance single-handed. In the UK this can be very difficult because we live in an environment where we have been educated to be alert. In some countries, single handed investigators have an easier task, but will still encounter the same problems.

In my opinion, if you consider yourself to be a professional investigator and/or surveillance operator, you would not be acting professionally by carrying out a surveillance single-handed. Over the years, experience has shown that a serious client will appreciate the need for two or more surveillance operatives, and will usually take our advice. Therefore, as a professional, the onus is on you to educate and convince your client for the need to have two or more operators to do the job properly. Although it's more expensive, it is cheaper in the long term and your evidence will be much better, especially if you are doing personal injury surveillance. You should always highlight the problems that will be encountered if operating on your own.

Sometimes as a team member, you will find yourself with the 'eyeball' but no back up. This might be because the remainder of your team is detached and so, in effect, you are carrying out a single handed surveillance. I, and many of my colleagues, have had successes during single-handed follows over long and tricky journeys, but not very many. Often the target has been lost in order to avoid a compromise, which is the better of two evils.

Before starting any surveillance on your own, plan for it properly and get know the target's awareness level (has he been followed before?). To minimise the chance of being compromised consider carrying out the surveillance in stages. Let's say that you are trying to establish where a target is working. It may be possible that on one morning's surveillance you make it your objective to: identify the target, establish what vehicle he is using (or other mode of transport), the time that he leaves and the direction he travels in. On the following day, you make it your objective to plot up in the direction he intends to travel and then carefully follow him to his destination.



Keep your glass clean, it makes it difficult for anyone to see into the car.



PLOTTING UP

Do not sit close to the target's address - the further away the better. Be very third party aware and adopt an identity by giving yourself a reason for being there. Don't make it obvious that you are watching a particular address, and use hedges and walls to provide you with some cover to avoid prying eyes.

When the target goes mobile, do not pull out directly behind him because you will be spotted (especially by an aware target). You will only get one chance so if possible, wait until the target is out of view before pulling out. Use another road user as cover, or alternatively cover the first or second junction on his intended route and simply wait for him to pass.



Having to cover a house in an area like this and then follow them can be very risky, especially with drawing attention from third parties.

TYRES 'N' TARMAC

Never close right up to the car in front, if you can see the tyres on tarmac, you should be able to swing out if you get into difficulties.



DURING THE FOLLOW

If you are behind the target and have no vehicles providing cover, peel off at regular intervals and put another road user in between you. Whatever you do, do not rejoin the road if you are still in the target's mirror; if he is aware, he will be checking to see if you pull out again.

Depending on the amount of traffic, you may be able to have two or three cars providing cover. But if you hit a roundabout or junction you need to keep control of the target. These are high risk areas where a loss is possible. If you lose contact it may be difficult to locate him when you are on your own. You should search logically along the most likely travel route, or make your way to any locations that they are known to visit.

Always act naturally; if the target is held in traffic, avoid 'creeping up' behind him in the hope that you will not be noticed - you will be. If the target is held at a junction and indicating to turn, do not indicate yourself - remember, try to avoid 'mirroring' the target's movements.

Same rules apply at night. You can afford to get close to the target in busy traffic, because the target will only see a pair of headlights and not the colour/type of vehicle you are using. Ensure all your lights work correctly. If the roads are sparse with traffic you will have to hang back and turn off frequently.

ACTION ON A STOP

When he stops, don't pull in directly behind him. If you have time, use other vehicles as cover and park behind him. If you're too close don't panic, act naturally, drive past then peel off to one side.

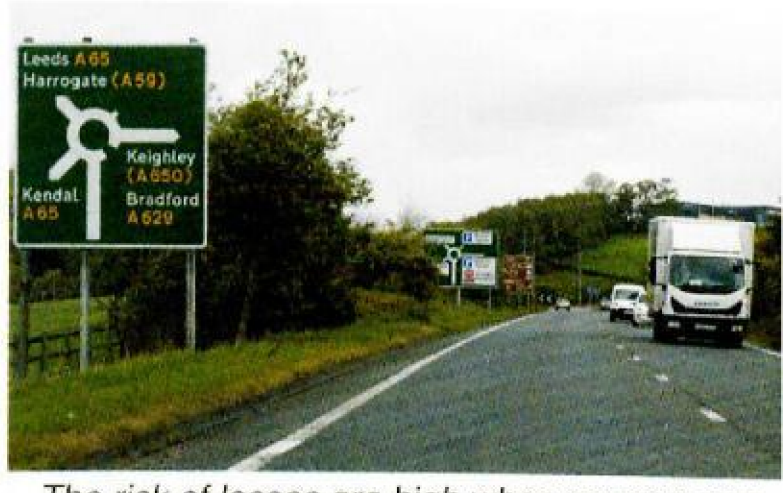
ISS TRAINING LTD

You have to consider whether he will get out on foot or drive off again. Keep your eyes on him and try to anticipate his intentions by reading his body language and actions such as removing a seat belt, turning the engine off or retrieving items from the passenger seat.

Always have your 'working tools' close to hand for use at short notice. Your camera, binoculars, memo recorder, notebook and pen should be within easy reach but remember not to have them in view of passing third parties.

Your target might enter a car park (multi-storey or open) and it's important that you keep him under tight control. When he does you can expect him to get out on foot so be prepared, adopt a sense of urgency parking up quickly before the target disappears. You must decide whether or not to obtain a ticket from the machine. Whilst you are looking for change and putting a ticket on your windscreen, the target could get away and be gone forever. If you get a parking fine, add it to your invoice!

Don't take unnecessary risks or over-expose yourself. Remember the aims and objectives of the surveillance and stick to them. If the brief is to establish what business stationery the target buys at the printers, we don't need to follow him everywhere he goes. Only get in close when it is necessary, think loss versus gain.



The risk of losses are high when on your own.



If your target gets through the lights and you get held.

TRACKING DEVICES

Many operators on the surveillance circuit are now carrying out single-handed surveillance with the assistance of trackers. A tracker can give you a trigger which enables you to keep your distance. And if you lose the target he can be quickly found. If you are forced to carry out a single-handed surveillance, a tracker is imperative.

Many insurance fraud investigators are expected to carry out surveillance on their own.





ROAD TRAFFIC ACCIDENTS

It is likely that you will encounter an accident at some stage in your career because a great deal of time is spent on the road. Being the first person on a scene or arriving shortly afterwards can prevent further accidents and possibly save lives.

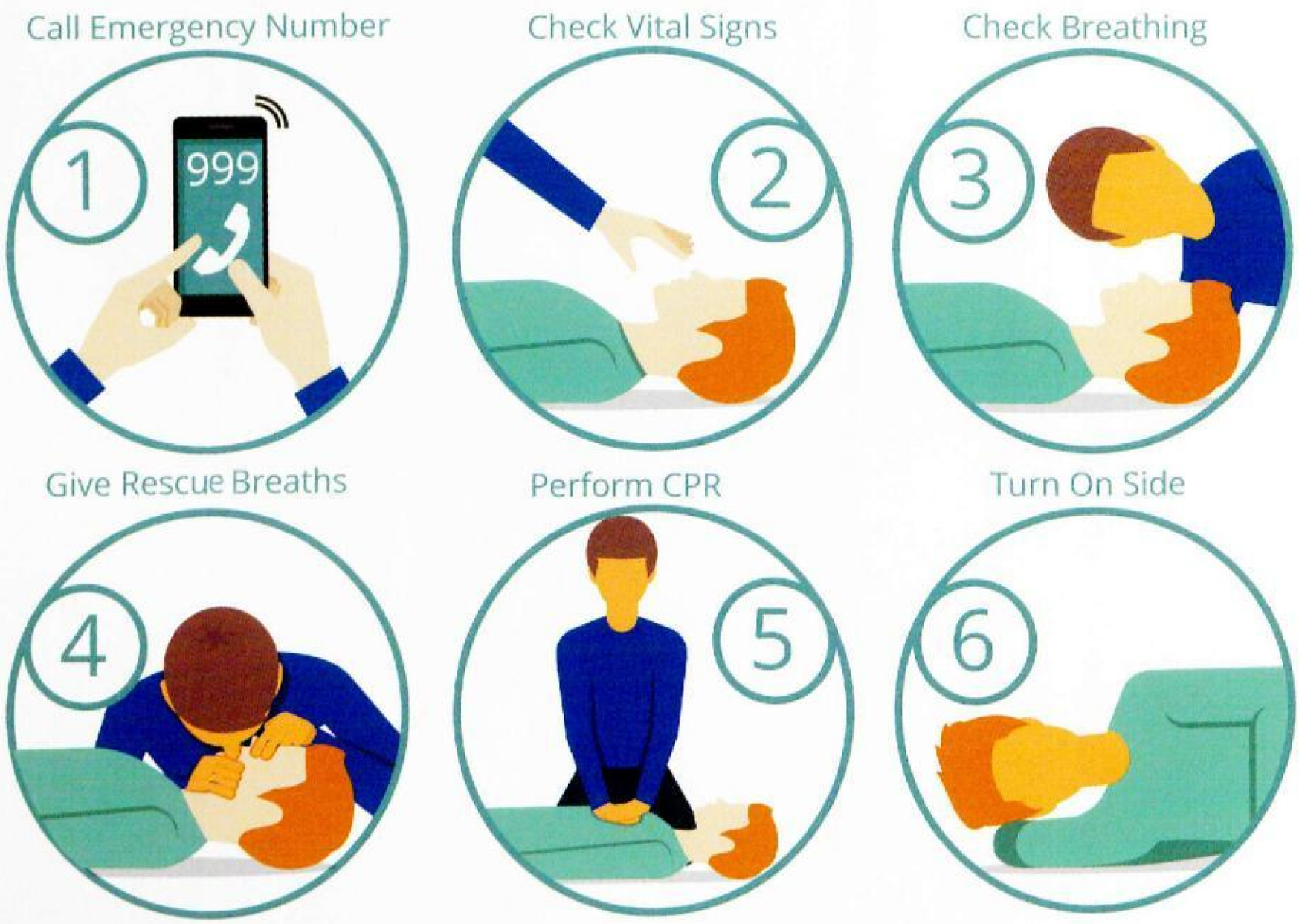
This is not a lesson in first aid and I would strongly recommended that anyone carrying out surveillance work undergo a 'First Person on Scene' (FPOS) medical training course.

WHAT TO DO IF YOU ENCOUNTER A ROAD TRAFFIC ACCIDENT

Call the emergency services, 999 or 112 from a mobile. Try and be specific about where the accident is; note the road number, any adjoining street names and the nearest village or landmark. If you are on a motorway, note the number written on a post because this will indicate exactly where you are. They will also want to know what has happened, how many vehicles and how many casualties there are. The emergency services now have 'What 3 Words' on their systems.

Stay calm, put on a hi-vis vest if you have one handy, this gives you an authoritative appearance, people are more likely to listen to you and follow instructions.

Secure the scene; get passers-by or others to either stop traffic or redirect it past the scene. All cars should switch off engines, put hazard warning lights on, open out warning triangles and look out for hazards such as fuel spillages that may ignite. Try and redirect traffic because the last thing you want is to hold up an ambulance by stacking up the traffic.





Make an assessment, check for casualties. The injured should be prioritised, if anyone is unconscious deal with them first, check their vital signs:

- Pulse (this may be weak)
- Breathing, is their chest rising and falling?
- Pupils, open an eyelid with your thumb, does their pupil contract and dilate in bright light & shade?

AIRWAY

Ensure nothing is blocking their airway; airbags, dentures, teeth or debris from the accident, this is your first priority. If the patient is unconscious, loosen neck clothing, open their airway by tilting their head back gently and lifting the chin.

BREATHING

Check that the casualty is breathing. This may be shallow and difficult to detect. Put your cheek close to their mouth to feel breath, watch for their chest rising. If not, you should commence mouth to mouth resuscitation.

CIRCULATION

Ensure that the patient has a pulse, this may be weak and hard to identify. If not, you will have to start chest compressions. Stem any bleeding from injuries immediately or the patient will go into shock. Apply a haemostatic dressing for excessive bleeding from arms and legs.

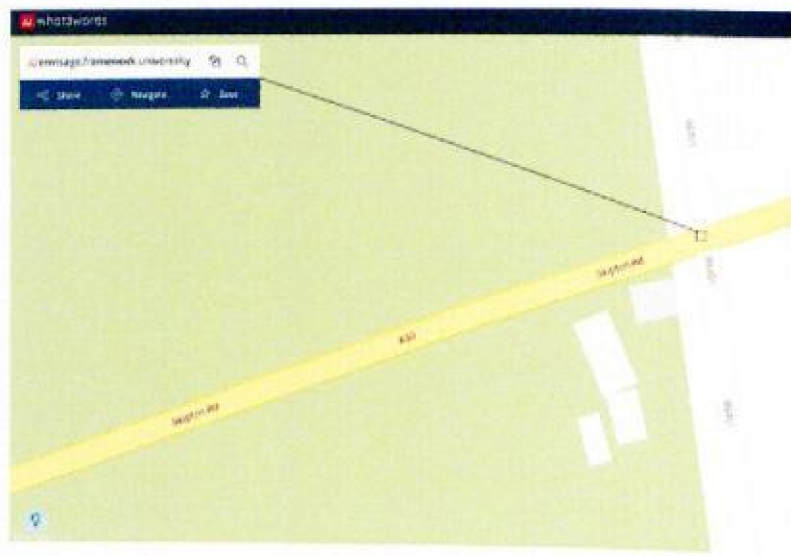
Comfort and reassure concious casualties. Talk to them, give them your name and ask for theirs. Reiterate that medical help is on the way. Unconcious casualties who are breathing must be placed in the recovery position. There are specialist techniques for doing this if you suspect they could have a neck or back injury.

DO NOT move a patient if you do not have to, treat them in the vehicle if necessary. Wait for the emergency services.

Remember; stay calm, take charge of the situation and reassure those injured until the emergency services arrive.

999

THE EMERGENCY SERVICES USE WHAT 3 WORDS



FOLLOW THE QR CODE TO TAKE YOU TO THE QUESTION & ANSWER 'HELP' PAGES.

CHAPTER SIX PART 2 QUESTIONS

1) Illustrate how you would deploy your vehicles if the target entered a railway station and waited for a train (you have identified the destination)

2) Explain what the eyeball should convey to the team upon entering a car park

3) Examine why all of the team should not be within the same car park as your target

4) Explain what you would do if your target pulls over onto the hard shoulder of a motorway

5) Identify what checks must be made to surveillance vehicles, prior to their use on a night mobile surveillance operation

6) Explain what general principles or tactics should you consider during night time mobile surveillance

7) Explain the phrase 'Lights Away'

8) Explain the advantages of using a motorbike on surveillance

9) Identify the hazards when carrying out single-handed surveillance

10) Identify 3 things should you check upon finding someone involved in an accident who appears to be unconscious

ASSESSMENT TIME!

1) Illustrate how you would deploy your vehicles if the target entered a railway station and waited for a train (you have identified the destination).

ISS TRAINING LTD

2) Explain what the eyeball should convey to the team upon entering a car park.

3) Examine why all of the team should not be within the same car park as your target.

4) Explain what you would do if your target pulls over onto the hard shoulder of a motorway.

5) Identify what checks must be made to surveillance vehicles, prior to their use on a night mobile surveillance operation.

6) Explain what general principles or tactics should you consider during night time mobile surveillance.

7) Explain the phrase 'Lights Away'.

ISS TRAINING LTD

8) Explain the advantages of using a motorbike on surveillance.

9) Identify the hazards when carrying out single-handed surveillance.

10) Identify 3 things should you check upon finding someone involved in an accident who appears to be unconscious.

ISS TRAINING LTD

Chapter Seven

STATIC SURVEILLANCE



Whether you are carrying out foot or mobile surveillance, there is always an element of 'static' surveillance, especially at the plot up and trigger phase. You may be tasked to carry out a continuous watch on a premises or even an object or products. The static Observation Post (OP) is where we are in a fixed position with no requirement to follow the target. We could be tasked to observe a warehouse and note all the deliveries made, or to watch a private house and photograph the occupants when they leave. The reasons for carrying out a static surveillance are many, and the methods used to carry out such a surveillance are described in this chapter.

STATIC OBSERVATION POSTS

The static OP may be used to provide a trigger when a mobile or foot team is in position. The surveillance van (if used as an OP) can follow on behind a mobile surveillance (or even take part in it, if used carefully) and move into a new static position when the target arrives at his destination or stops enroute.

WHAT IS AN OP?

A static position from where you can observe, report and photograph activity.

- It can be covert or overt
- Long or short term
- Urban or rural
- Located in vehicles, buildings or rural hides
- Located on foot for short term purposes (night & day)



THE CAR HIDE

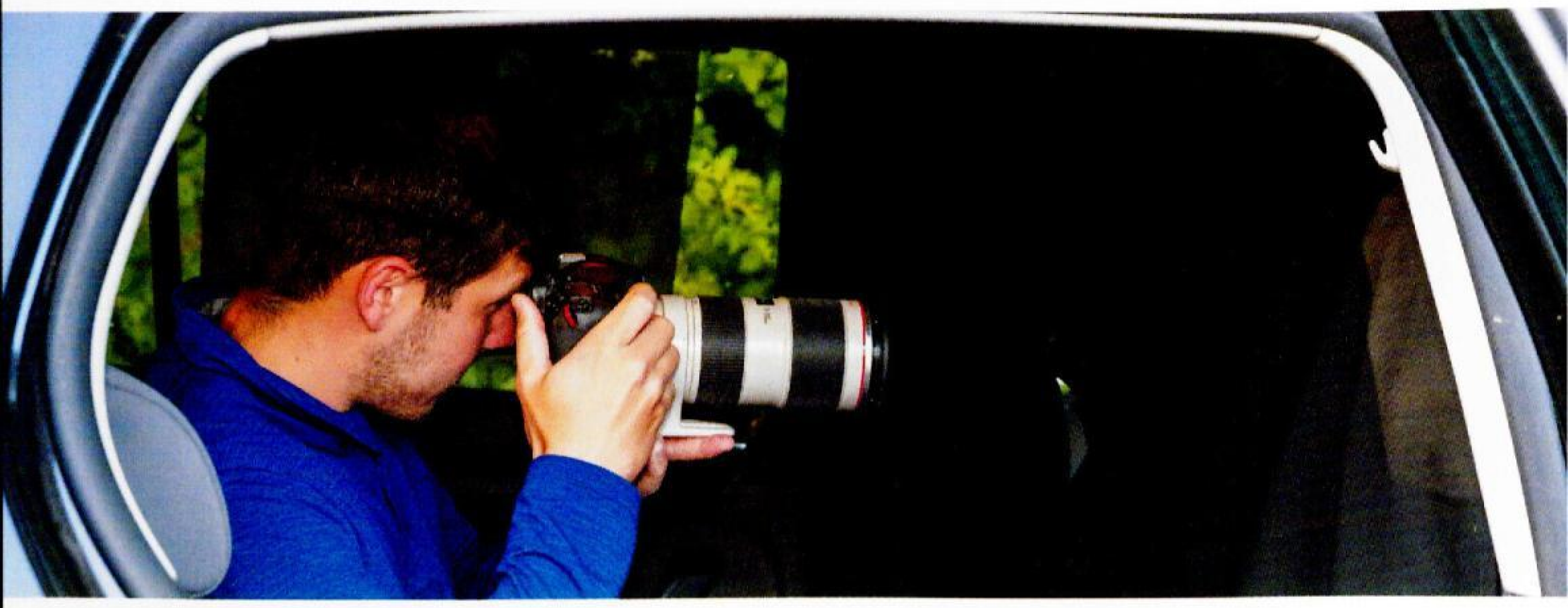
It can be risky sitting in the front of your car for long periods of time before being noticed and approached by a member of the public. Converting your car into a simple 'hide' can be effective for short to medium term triggers and a platform for obtaining imagery.

Tinted windows can look sinister on some cars, but is becoming more popular these days and gives you some level of protection from anyone seeing into your car. Alternatively, portable roll down window blinds also offer some privacy.

Inside you can string a couple of thin black sheets directly behind the front seats to give you cover when sitting in the rear seat and look through a small aperture. Ideally, you should be driven into position (and recovered) by a team member. This is also something that you can use on your own but be cautious and ensure that you're not overlooked when you dive into the back seat.

CONSIDERATIONS

- Ensure your doors are locked and all windows up
- Make sure your lights are off
- Disable the alarm, it may be activated with you in the rear
- Ensure you are parked apprpriately for a quick getaway
- Sit back from your viewing aperture
- Have your phone on silent
- Ensure the front of the car is clear of surveillance 'debris' (maps & brief sheet)
- Remove the keys from the ignition but have them handy



SURVEILLANCE VANS (MOBILE OP)

So you've decided that the only way to observe the target premises is by use of a surveillance van. They should not be too large but more of the 'car derived van' style, so that it's the same height as a car and does not stand out. It is likely that your van will also be used for mobile surveillance and so manoeuvrability is also a consideration.

Surveillance vans do not have to be complicated or expensive. A small sized van that has been panelled inside with plywood (to offer insulation from heat & cold and noise), carpeted, with tinted windows (or some form of cover) and a curtain screen between the front and rear should suffice.

- **Amount of time spent in the van**

Once set up in your observation van you can be completely self-contained and remain there for as long as you wish. It's not uncommon to find observations being carried out for ten hours or more, and it takes a committed operator who can cope with the boring demands of the task.

When operating in a risky area, your backup needs to be close and radio contact is essential. Carry out regular radio checks because at any sign of compromise or trouble, it's wise to terminate the surveillance and leave the area.



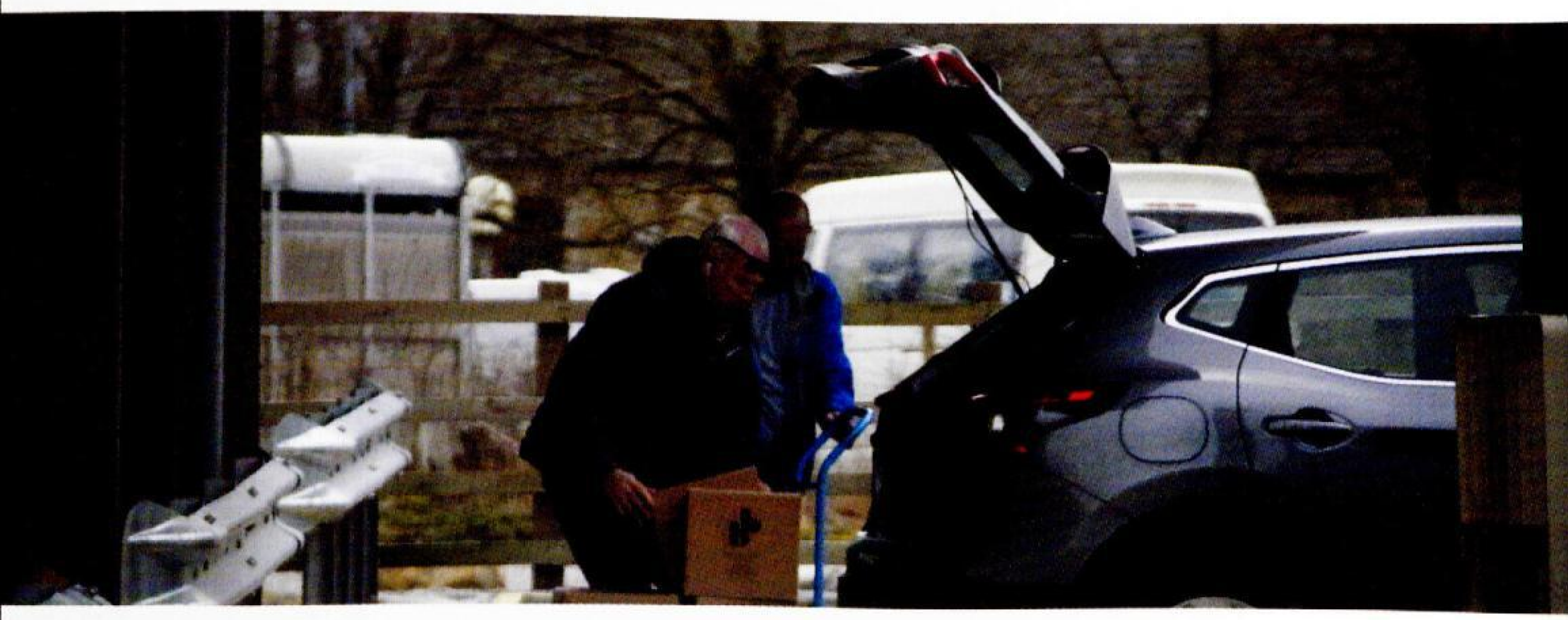
- **The Insertion**

Before moving the van into position, carry out a recce by driving past in another operator's car (not the van). Carry out a walk past if required too. Find the most suitable spot to position the van to get the best possible view.

If possible park the van where there is some cover from the view of others, especially in residential areas.

Ideally, you should be driven into position to avoid suspicion or you can drive yourself and then hop into the rear. Obviously, the first option is recommended and much safer to avoid compromise.

The van is most useful for long term observatoin in industrial areas.





If it's difficult to get a parking position, it might be necessary to park another vehicle in place the day before the surveillance to 'reserve' a space.



A fully equipped surveillance van is worth its weight in gold to the surveillance team. It's great to have the ability to move your OP into a position, observe, photograph the target and then depart, all without arousing any suspicion.

It can be difficult to sit in the front of your car on a housing or industrial estate and carry out observations without arousing suspicion. It is extremely difficult to last for any length of time before you are reported to the police or challenged.

WHEN POSITIONING THE VAN, CONSIDER:

- What is your reason for being there?
- Your OP position in relation to the target; can you see the target clearly, are there likely to be any obstructions? Can you identify who arrives or leaves the property and in which vehicle?
- Is your position obvious? If there aren't any other vehicles on the street, you may show out
- If the target goes 'mobile' are you able to give their direction of travel?
- Does the target have to pass you?
- Does the van intend to join the team and follow the target when he leaves? If so, is the van facing the necessary direction
- Are you in a cul-de-sac with only one escape route? If so, park the van facing towards the exit in case you have to extract quickly
- Is it feasible to 'self-extract' or is it too risky?

Once in position you can set up your OP for your requirements. Start the surveillance log detailing as much information about the target area as possible. Set up the video camera on its tripod, set your camera for the correct exposure and focus, adjust any other special equipment and have it organised ready for when you need it. Also, inform your backup when you are established and report anything of interest. Ensure your radio volume is turned down and your phone is on silent.

- **Use of Vans in Mobile Surveillance**

If the van is to be used as a trigger and then used as a mobile unit, caution should be taken not to 'show out' and it should be used as little as possible during the follow. If the van is required later to act as another trigger, or moved into a position to obtain evidence, it should remain at the rear of the 'convoy' until needed.

- **The Extraction**

When it is time to extract the van, the operator inside may have to 'de-rig' cameras or other equipment. He must do so quietly, without moving hastily and take time - as far as security is concerned the extraction is just as important as the insertion. Inform your backup when you are ready to be extracted. They could carry out a drive past first to check that the area is clear. When approaching the van on foot, your backup should radio their position. If possible, they should always approach the van within your field of vision so that you can see them arrive.

ISS TRAINING LTD

WHY DO VAN OP's BECOME COMPROMISED?



At times the surveillance van will become compromised for a number of reasons, more often by third parties rather than the target. If a compromise occurs, the vehicle should be extracted as soon as possible to prevent any risk to the operator inside.

We can minimise the risk of compromise if we look at the reasons why the van OP is brought to another person's attention.

OPERATORS OWN FAULT

- **Position**

Ensure the van is parked 'naturally' and has a reason for being there. If you feel it will stick out like a sore thumb then do not use it. Attempt to get 'eyes on' by a different method or from a different location. Be aware of 'stealing' someone's parking space, some people are very possessive of a gap in the roadside and will not like someone else parking in 'their' space, even if it is public road

- **Insertion**

Try not to 'self-insert' the van and then climb into the back unless you are absolutely sure that you are safe to do so. When the driver gets out, think 'third party' and don't appear to rush away from the van. Have a reason for being there and walk away using a route that's natural and be prepared if challenged

- **Movement**

When in the back, keep still! There should be no reason for any sudden movement, any rocking of the van will be noticed by an observer

- **Noise**

Noise can be a contributory factor to compromise especially if you are on the radio or a mobile phone

Remember there is only a thin piece of tin (unless insulated) between you and anyone standing nearby and your voice will carry. Be aware of the natural tendency to start whispering but the longer the conversation continues, the louder you become without realising it

- **Sightings**

Make sure no one can see a camera lens poking through curtains. If you have to shoot through the front, try and be a few inches away from the viewing aperture. Don't lean into the front of the van if you have forgotten your mobile phone or map - you will be seen

- **Silhouette**

In some light conditions you can see through reflective mirror or tinted windows, especially when the sun is low

- **Re-supply**

When the van is inserted, it is up to the 'van man' to be totally self-sufficient for the duration. He should have enough to eat & drink as well as a supply of SD cards and batteries, plus toilet facilities.

OTHER PEOPLES FAULT

- **Children**

Children can often be inquisitive and attempt to see through the reflective window out of curiosity. Therefore, use a curtain or blind to prevent anyone from looking through the glass

- **Dogs**

In the past we have had an operator sitting quite happily in the back of a van when a passing dog suddenly went wild and started barking at the van. There are various reasons why a dog will react, your smell, a noise, even the inaudible sounds from your video camera and there is very little you can do to counter it, apart from staying still and quiet until the dog moves away.

THE COVERT CAR OR 'BOOT FIT'





In a similar manner to the surveillance van, an operator is concealed in the boot (trunk) of a car, which is then driven into position. Live monitoring can take place in the most hard and difficult areas because the vehicle appears to be unoccupied. Close up video can be obtained and live reporting can be used to trigger aware targets.

To create a boot fit, a suitable vehicle needs to have sufficient boot space and the spare wheel removed. The boot floor needs to be lined with something comfortable as you could be lying in there for a number of hours.

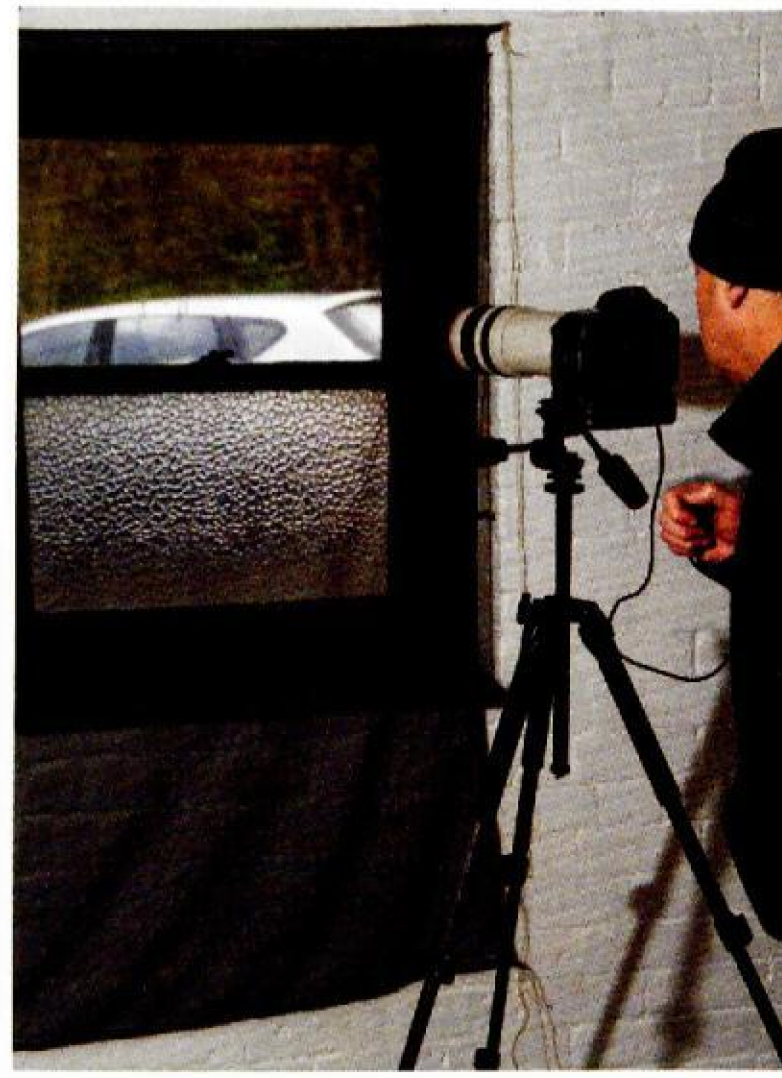
The parcel shelf is then modified so you can get your head through and then it's covered over with a strong frame to form a viewing aperture. You will need to be self-contained with your radio, camera, food, drink and waste bottles. You will also need to modify a boot release catch in case you have to self-extract in an emergency, or you will need to be able to fold down the rear seats to escape into the front.

Excellent identification images of targets have been obtained using this method.

The 'covert car' is able to obtain images and video in tight places against aware targets.



URBAN OBSERVATION POSTS



When we speak of urban surveillance, we mean any situation where a surveillance has to be carried out that doesn't involve the techniques described below or in the section on rural surveillance.

INDOOR STATIC OPS

The indoor or 'room' OP can be any form of building or structure from where you can carry out your observations, in fact anywhere where you are not in a vehicle or a hedgerow such as:

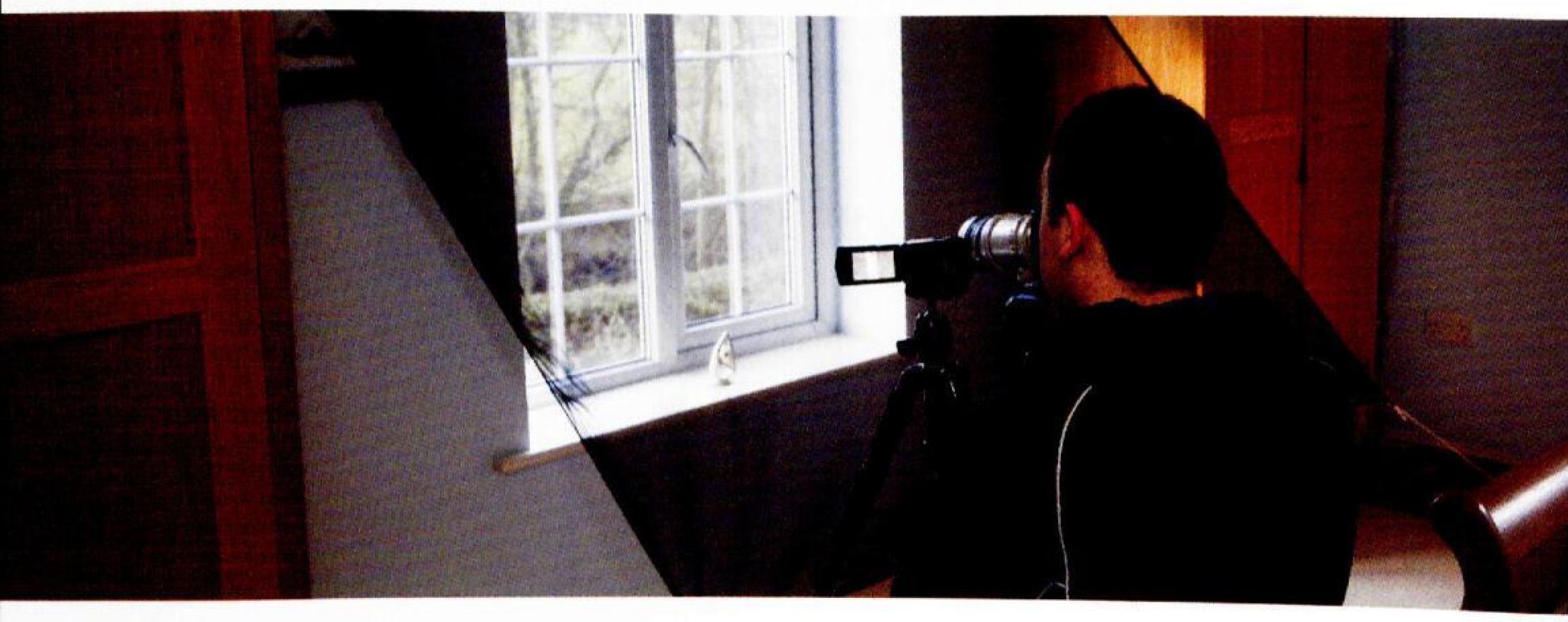
- Derelict building
- Caravan
- Hotel room
- Office block
- Residential property
- Freight container
- Disused property
- Rooftops
- Barns & out-buildings

INDIVIDUAL OP TASKS

The principal tasks of an operator in an OP are to:

- Trigger, to give warning of movement.
- To observe and watch events.
- To video record, photograph and compile logs of activity.
- To operate the radio, to relay incidents to the mobile teams or loggist.
- To act as a sentry, to warn of unwanted visitors to another OP.

An experienced and well trained operator will be able to do all of these tasks to enable a minimum of two men to run the OP. It is not unusual to do all these activities single-handedly in the commercial sector.

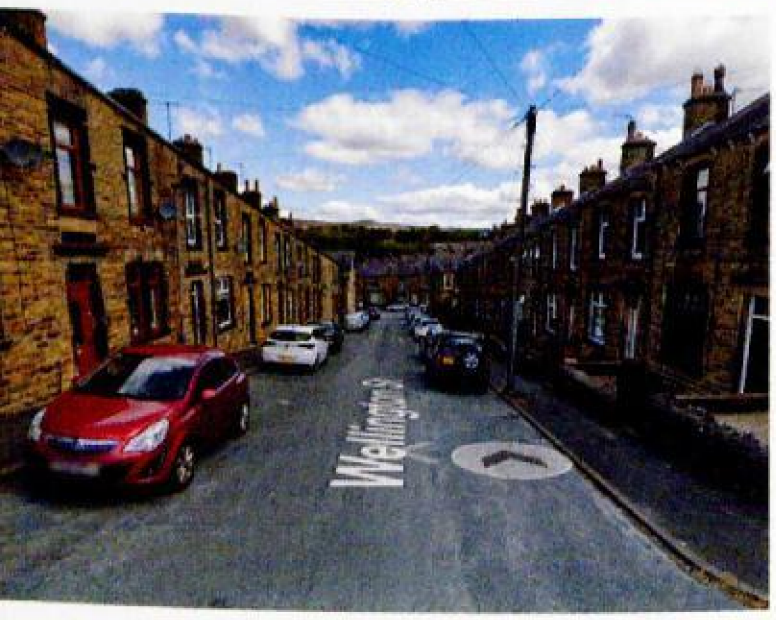


Cover Plan: The diagram shows Hotel & Golf covering the options at each end of the street where the OP is located.

When all is clear, India will drive in and drop off the OP team in the parallel street. The OP will 'self' clear their walk in to the OP site.







SELECTION OF AN OP

The indoor room OP is used less often than the surveillance van as it is not always possible to obtain a good position from where the target can be observed. However, when carrying out your pre-surveillance, always consider the static OP:

- Ensure that your routes in and out of the OP are protected from view. Insertion and extraction are the most vulnerable times. Have your backup positioned nearby after clearing the drop off location. It may be that the insertion is quite overt, perhaps appearing to be dropped off by taxi
- Make sure you can see the target and their approaches to the area. Many room OPs are situated on upper floors and overlook the target area
- Ensure that you are not seen whilst observing. Site your observation position as far back from the window or viewing aperture as possible and use screens
- Do not silhouette yourself by having a bright window behind you. If the room is darkened, wear dark clothing and make a dark background by hanging a length of dark material to form a screen behind you
- Have an escape route planned in case you need to leave the OP quickly
- Check if there is a power supply to recharge batteries. What toilet facilities are available and is there is a water supply?

RESUPPLY

On most occasions you should go into the OP totally self-sufficient, taking with you enough food, water, SD cards and batteries for the duration (because any comings and goings may get you noticed). This is not always possible and so a 'resupply' may be necessary to bring items to you, or you may need to pass out surveillance logs or video films. Most operators are likely to have an internet enabled laptop or phone in order to send back images or video.

ISS TRAINING LTD

RURAL OBSERVATION POSTS

At times a surveillance operation may be required in a rural setting to watch a farm or any other premises located in the countryside. If the use of an observation vehicle is not practical, then a rural OP has to be considered. To establish a watch on the target, an operator may have to be totally camouflaged and concealed in his local surroundings for some time, to achieve his aim.

You do not necessarily have to be in the countryside to mount a rural OP. The techniques and methods described below are equally useful in cities or towns when the only position to carry out observations may be from a hedgerow, ditch, undergrowth or a small wood. Your OP may be required for the sole purpose of providing a trigger for a mobile team.

PERSONAL QUALITIES

For obvious reasons, this type of task is more suitable for someone with former military training and experience. The operator needs to have great personal discipline to work for long periods, often lying down, motionless, in poor weather and in uncomfortable conditions. Your personal camouflage and the concealment of the hide has to remain paramount to avoid detection.

TYPES OF RURAL OBSERVATION POST

As mentioned, the OP can be in a variety of places: a hedgerow, in a bank on an industrial estate, a railway embankment, a ditch at the side of the road or in the edge of a wood. In the commercial sector they are more likely to be short term standing OP's. In most instances it is possible to construct a simple OP using camouflage netting and then covering it with natural foliage.

- **Standing OP**

The standing OP would be a very short-term measure rather than a full long term OP. It is more likely to be used to trigger a surveillance where an operator has little equipment, such as a combat jacket, face veil, radio and binoculars.

- **Surface OP**

As its name suggests, this OP is carried out by lying on the surface without having to dig down in order to create some cover. Ideally the position will be in thick undergrowth or in a dip providing you with cover. Natural cover (foliage) must be used together with camouflage nets to reduce the risk of compromise. The surface OP is used for short-term measures or when the threat of compromise is considered to be minimal because this sort of OP will leave you fairly exposed.



Students on a rural surveillance course.



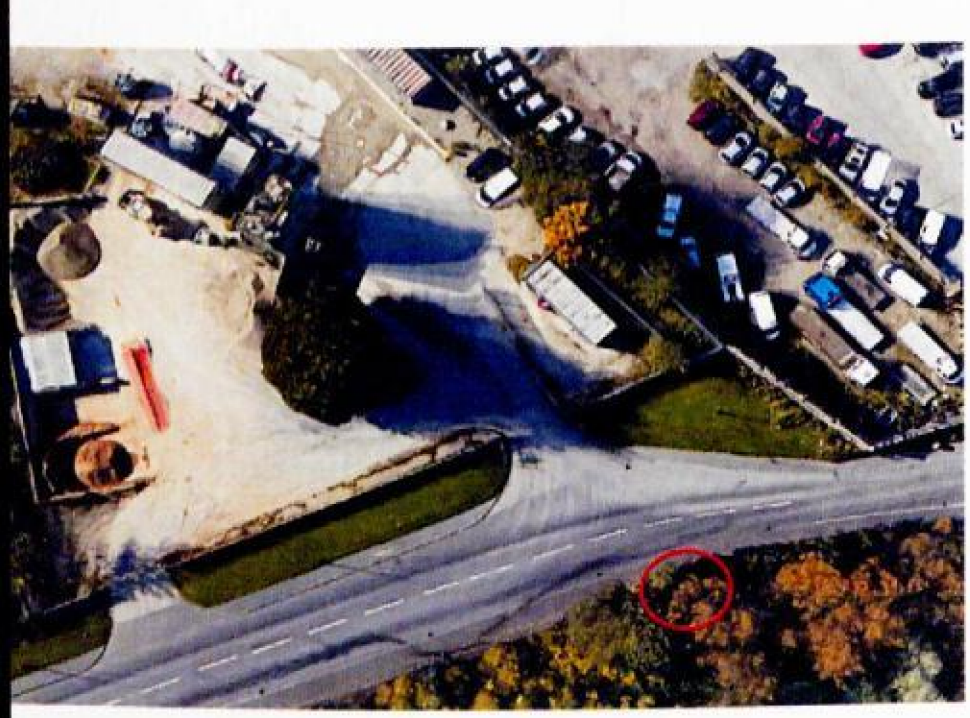


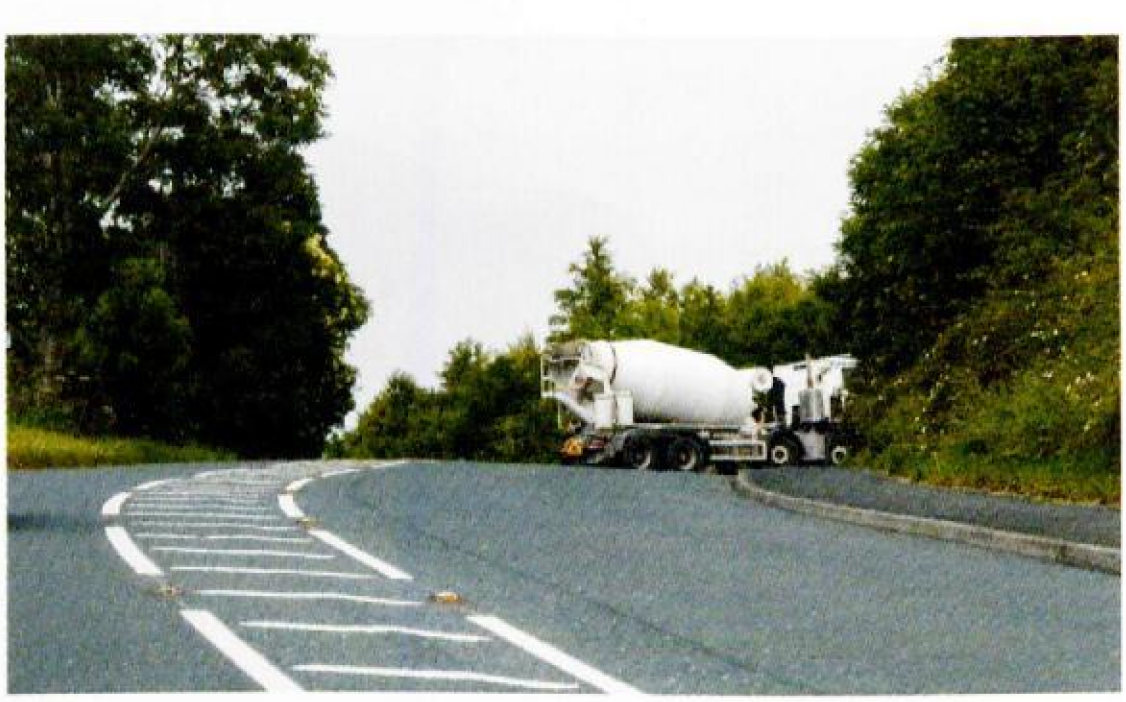
Scan the code to take you there

RURAL OP IN AN URBAN ENVIRONMENT

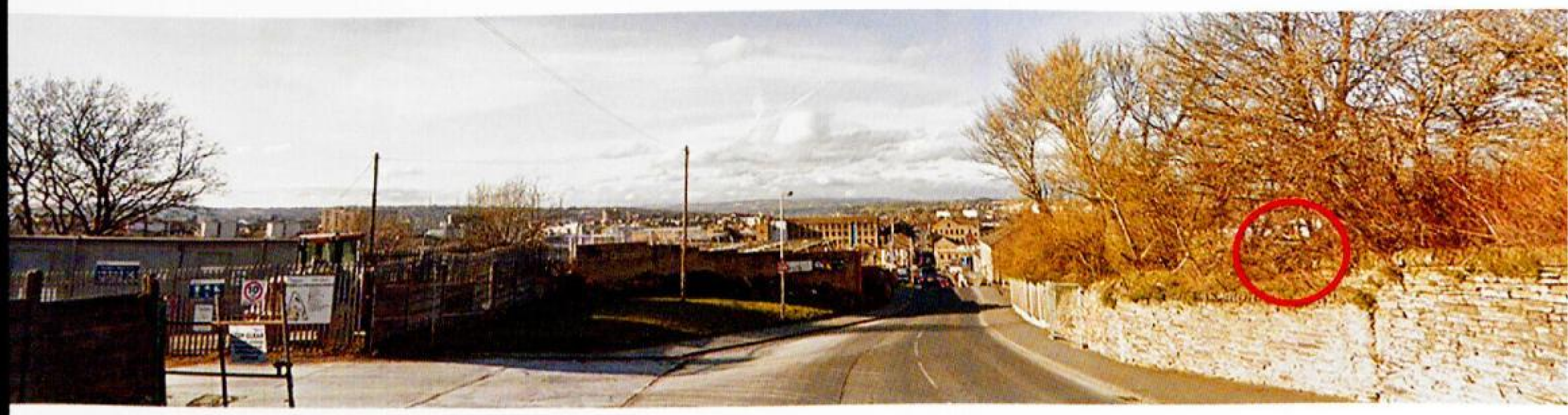
This illustrates where a rural OP was used in an urban environment. The target site was a supplier of wet cement, whose drivers were stealing cement on weekends, and supplying it to builders for cash. The was task to video them loading the cement mixers and establish where they were delivering to.

The trigger was located in the undergrowth directly opposite the site and elevated for a good view. The drivers leaving site would be followed by two mobile callsigns who were positioned suitably nearby.





The OP (circled) looked directly into the site.



THE RURAL OBSERVATION POST (OP)

If, as part of the pre-surveillane planning, you decide the only way to conduct static observations is from a rural OP there are many factors to consider.

You may not always have the advantage of having natural cover immediately available and therefore you may have to create your own in the form of a hide. We teach that two vehicles should be used for the deployment of an OP team. The first vehicle (the cover car) drives ahead, checking that the drop off point is clear, shortly followed by the 'drop off' car which stops and deploys the team. In high risk areas it may be that a third rear cover car is also used to protect the rear during a drop off.



Sometimes a camera left to 'soak' is much easier than a full blown OP in the research stages of an investigation.

PLANNING AND LOGISTICS

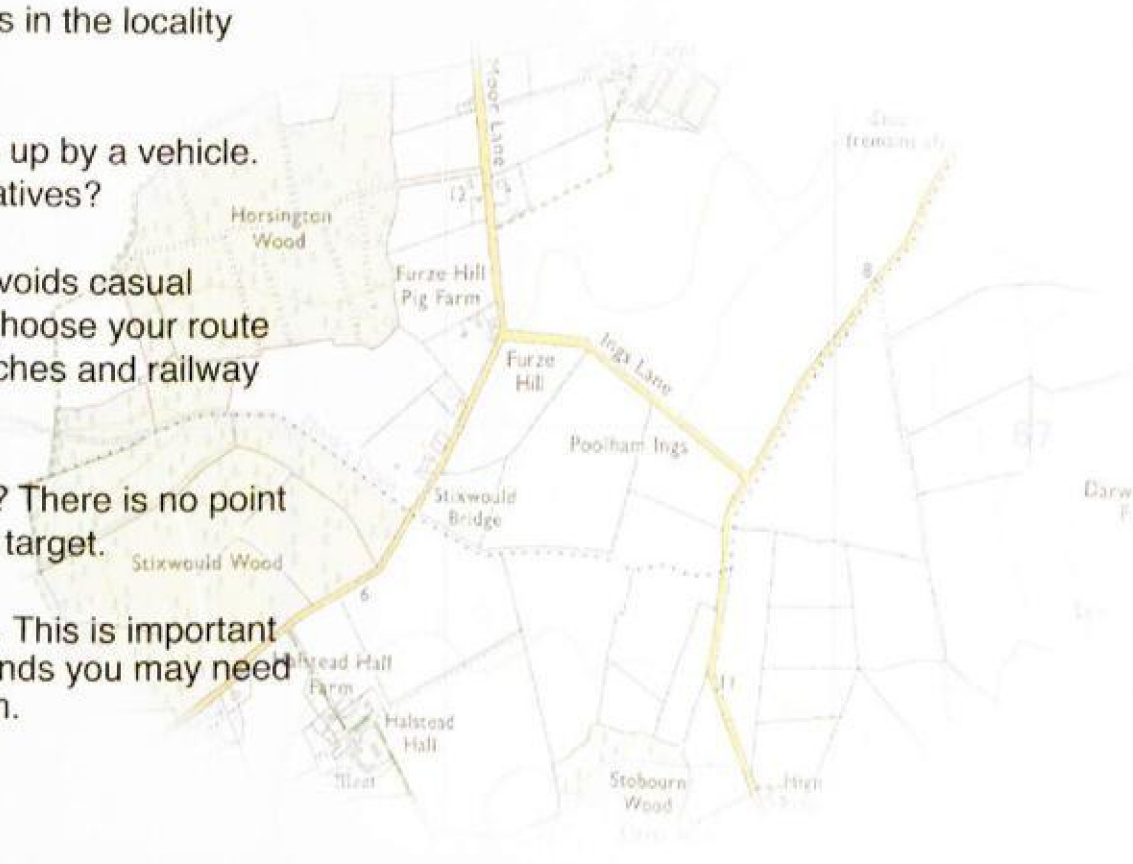
The length of stay in your OP will dictate what comforts or necessities to take with you such as:

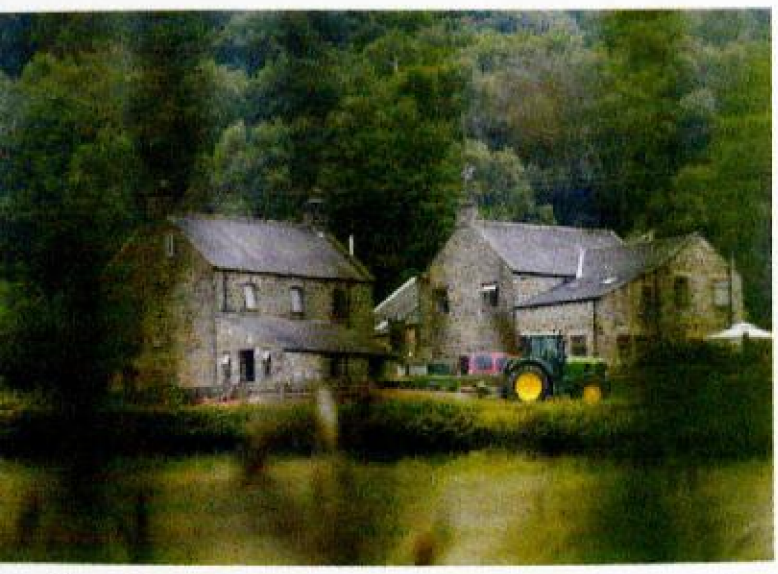
- Food and water; you will need enough for the duration. You should take enough to drink and a flask is essential
- Toilet paper and something to defecate into should be taken. Ziplock type polythene bags are ideal. If the OP position is to be used over a period of time, it is unwise to relieve yourself in the position. Take all waste with you when you leave
- Should you be in the OP for a considerable amount of time, you may need to be resupplied with food and batteries. In addition, you may have to pass out surveillance logs, SD cards and waste. A system should be planned for resupply
- Take enough batteries to supply radios and cameras
- Also think about if you have to walk far carrying heavy rucksacks, batteries and equipment?

RECCE THE OP POSITION

Carry out both a covert day and night-time recce if necessary. Prior to going out on the ground, obtain any relevant information from maps, aerial photographs or any previous reports. You have to pick your point of observation carefully, taking the following into consideration:

- What is the awareness level of your target, and are others in the locality likely to be aware or notice anything out of the ordinary?
- Identify where you will need to be dropped off and picked up by a vehicle. Is there a suitable spot to do this and what are the alternatives?
- Is your walk route (in and out) covered from view? This avoids casual observers wondering where you are going to and from. Choose your route tactically, keep to hedgerows, walls, tree lines, banks, ditches and railway tracks, and avoid crossing open spaces.
- From the OP do you have a good view of the target area? There is no point in having an excellent OP position if you cannot see your target.
- Do you have a good view of the target's approach routes. This is important if the target goes mobile, as it gives you those extra seconds you may need to have your camera up and running or to radio your team.





Not all rural OPs are in a rural environment.

- Is the position obvious or are you overlooked? Do not choose a position where you stick out, always be aware of being overlooked. In addition, you should have a clear view of the approach to the OP in case passers-by come too close

- Where is your ERV in case of compromise and where can your backup be positioned?

- Your backup needs to be positioned where he can get to you quickly. His position also needs to be safe

- Allow for any special equipment that may be required such as a spotting telescope or night vision aid. However, you may find yourself in a confined space so take only the equipment that is necessary for the task

- How long will it take to move into position and to establish the OP? If you are arriving early in the morning add plenty of time to move in and establish or set up the OP and settle in before your task starts. Establish what time the sun rises and sets as well as the state of the moon

- Note any particular hazards. Are there dog walkers, horse riders or farmers in the vicinity?

- Carry out a radio check to your backup location. You must have good comms

DROP OFF POINTS (DOP) AND PICK UP POINTS (PUP)

- **Identify a Drop Off Point (DOP)**

Once you have established where your OP is likely to be sited, you will need to workout where you want to be dropped off.

Try and find a natural place that a car can stop or slow down at night without arousing suspicion. A lay-by, a T-junction, a dip in a road, a wide gate or under a bridge is ideal. The DOP should be able to provide cover for a short period whilst the team to move quickly out of sight, before it moves off.

- **Identify a Pick Up Point (PUP)**

The same considerations have to be made for the PUP, which should be at a different place to where you are dropped off. If you are seen or compromised when getting dropped off, the location might be watched for you to return. .

The PUP should again provide the team with cover as they may have to lie up and wait for a period before they are actually collected.

- **Alternative DOP & PUP**

Normally an alternative DOP has to be identified in the event that the first choice is compromised. Imagine if a courting couple is parked up where you intended to stop! You can either wait for a few hours until it is clear or go into an established plan. We normally teach that the PUP is your alternative DOP, and the DOP is the alternative PUP. This makes sense because with good planning and briefing everyone should know where the DOP & PUP is, and all that has to be done is to switch each location.

ISS TRAINING LTD



- **Identify an Emergency RV**

If the team is compromised at any stage after being dropped off, they may have to bolt and run. Therefore, a location has to be identified that they can head for and wait for the backup to collect them.

- **Identify a Lie Up Position (LUP)**

Once the team has been dropped off, a vehicle callsign may remain in the area to act as a radio relay or as backup. You need to identify a place where he can park safely without attracting attention to himself.

THE ROUTE IN

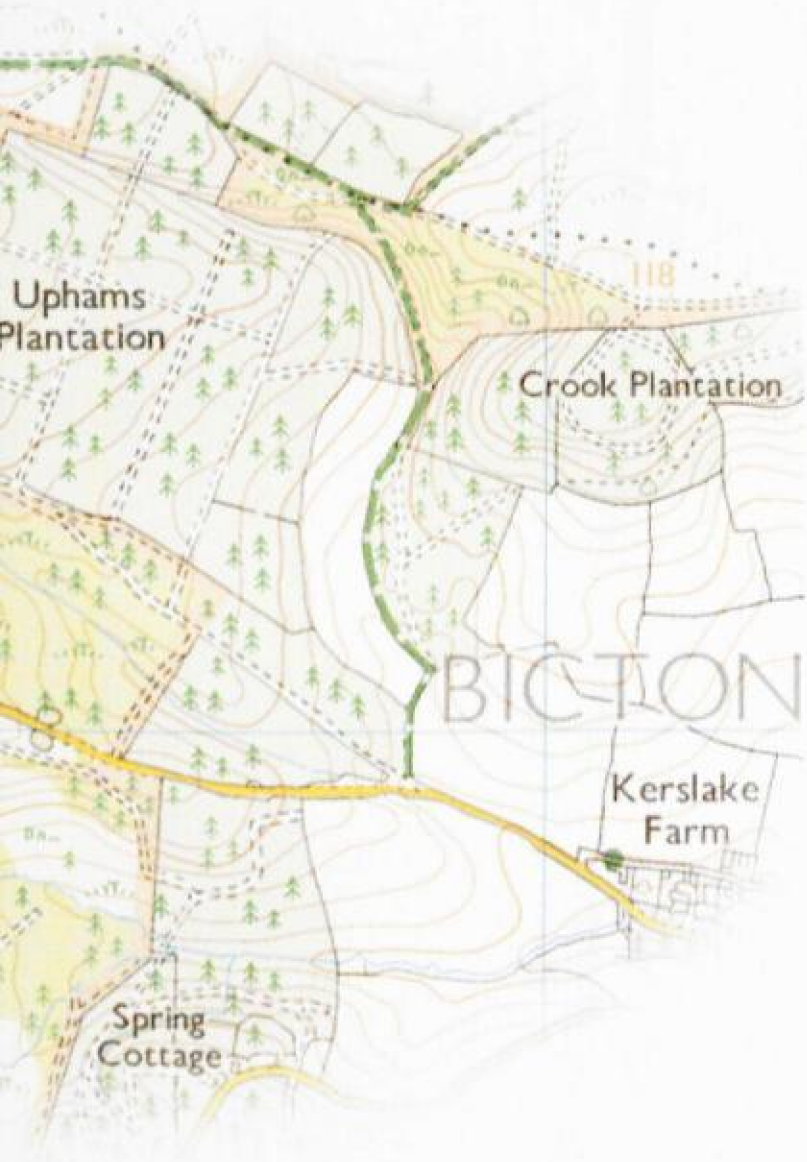
Allow plenty of time to move into your OP position. If you have to be in position before first light, allow enough time to set up and establish the OP and to check its concealment.

Move in with caution; at all times you must:

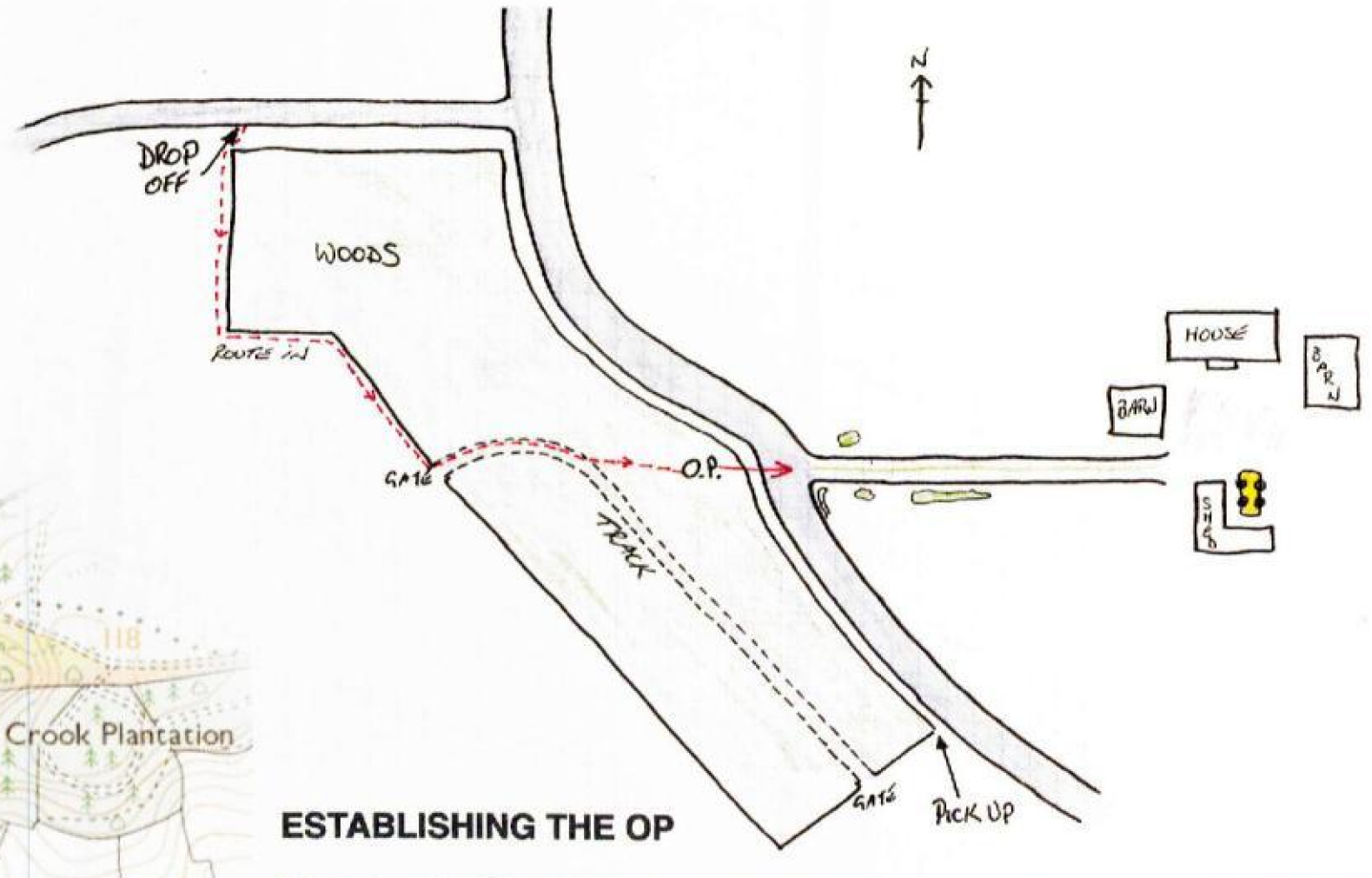
- Remain alert, stop frequently to look and listen
- Do not cross open spaces but keep to hedgerows and wood perimeters to give cover
- One person must lookout and listen if the other is occupied, perhaps checking a map. Both should never be occupied at the same time
- Make use of surrounding noise (such as cars passing) which will give you cover when moving
- If you encounter obstacles such as gates or stiles, do not be in a rush to pass through them
- Only one of you should have an earpiece in, otherwise the teams hearing will be reduced by half. Only one of you should use night vision equipment as it will ruin your eyes night vision
- Enter the OP from the side or behind, keeping the position between you and the target, and be aware of creating tracks that lead to it
- Wait for at least 15 minutes to listen and watch for any activity

Drones can be useful for aerial recces.





A series of six images stitched together to create this detailed panoramic scene.



ESTABLISHING THE OP

Move into the OP position keeping low to the ground. Once there, remain silent and motionless for a 5 to 10 minute period. Listen and observe in case you have been seen or followed into the OP and get accustomed to the local noises and area.

Attempt to hollow out the foliage by pushing back brambles and plants etc. If necessary, use secateurs to snip at the foliage to make a comfortable observation position. Remember, one person should be keeping a lookout whilst the other constructs the OP.

Do not forget to cover the rear of the OP. A camouflage net draped inside the OP at the rear will prevent you from being silhouetted by light shining in from the rear. Establish radio check with your backup as soon as possible.

OP ROUTINE

Once settled in the OP you should adjust your camouflage and make a comfortable viewing area where you can see your target without having to move position.

You should unpack the items you will need to use such as radio, camera, small tripod and a note book & pen or dictaphone. All other equipment should always be stored away in your rucksack in case you have a compromise.





An OP viewing aperture in the mid-left side of this fallen tree.

THE EXTRACTION

At the end of the surveillance you will need to leave the OP, which we refer to as the extraction phase.

You will need to extract for a variety of reasons:

- The task is complete
- You have been compromised
- You cannot see the target
- The OP lacks cover or has collapsed
- The weather is very poor



Stealth is required on the way out just as it is on the way in.

In preparation you will have to:

- Pack away all equipment that will not be needed
- Inform your backup when you intend to leave, he can then assist by observing the area to give you warnings of third parties. You can confirm the estimated time to be at your pick up point
- Dismantle all camouflage and bring natural foliage inside the OP to die
- Leave the position as you found it, taking with you all refuse
- Move out one at a time and never in haste. Be as cautious during the extraction as you were during the insertion
- Inform your backup of your progress along the way out and head for the PUP

THE PICK UP

Once you have arrived at your pick up point, you may have to wait for a short period before your vehicle arrives. Do not become complacent at this time, remain concealed and out of view.

The drill for getting picked up is very similar to how you got dropped off but now takes place in a different spot. The cover car will come through to clear the PUP and warn of any oncoming traffic from the front, whilst the pick up car collects the OP team. By virtue of the fact that the OP team will be first at the PUP and waiting, they will be responsible for checking that it is clear and safe to use.



BRAMBLE HIDE

The Bramble Hide is an effective way of constructing an OP in very thick brambles with a portable camouflaged roof for cover.

To construct the roof, take a piece of chicken wire about 1 metre square and spray it with dark paint. Then attach a camouflage net to it using string or cable ties. It then needs to be folded four times from each side towards the centre so that it is compact when held against your chest, and easy to open lying on your back.

The idea is that when you are in the centre of the thicket, you push the brambles to the side and upwards forming a little cave. The wire mesh (held to your chest) is then unfolded, pushed up and secured to form a concave roof. It offers you protection from view and makes room for you to operate in. If you also sandwich some waterproof material between the chicken wire and the camouflage net, you will be fairly weatherproof from rain.

Q&A

FOLLOW THE QR CODE TO TAKE YOU TO THE QUESTION & ANSWER 'HELP' PAGES.

CHAPTER SEVEN QUESTIONS

1) Explain what the principal tasks are for observations posts

2) Identify and explain the reason why surveillance vans can become compromised

3) Explain two different types of rural OP

4) Identify why the 'pick up point' for an OP team is different from the 'drop off point'

5) Describe what you must do prior to leaving an OP

ASSESSMENT TIME!

1) Explain what the principal tasks are for observations posts.

2) Identify and explain the reason why surveillance vans can become compromised.

3) Explain two different types of rural OP.

4) Identify why the 'pick up point' for an OP team is different from the 'drop off point'.

5) Describe what you must do prior to leaving an OP.

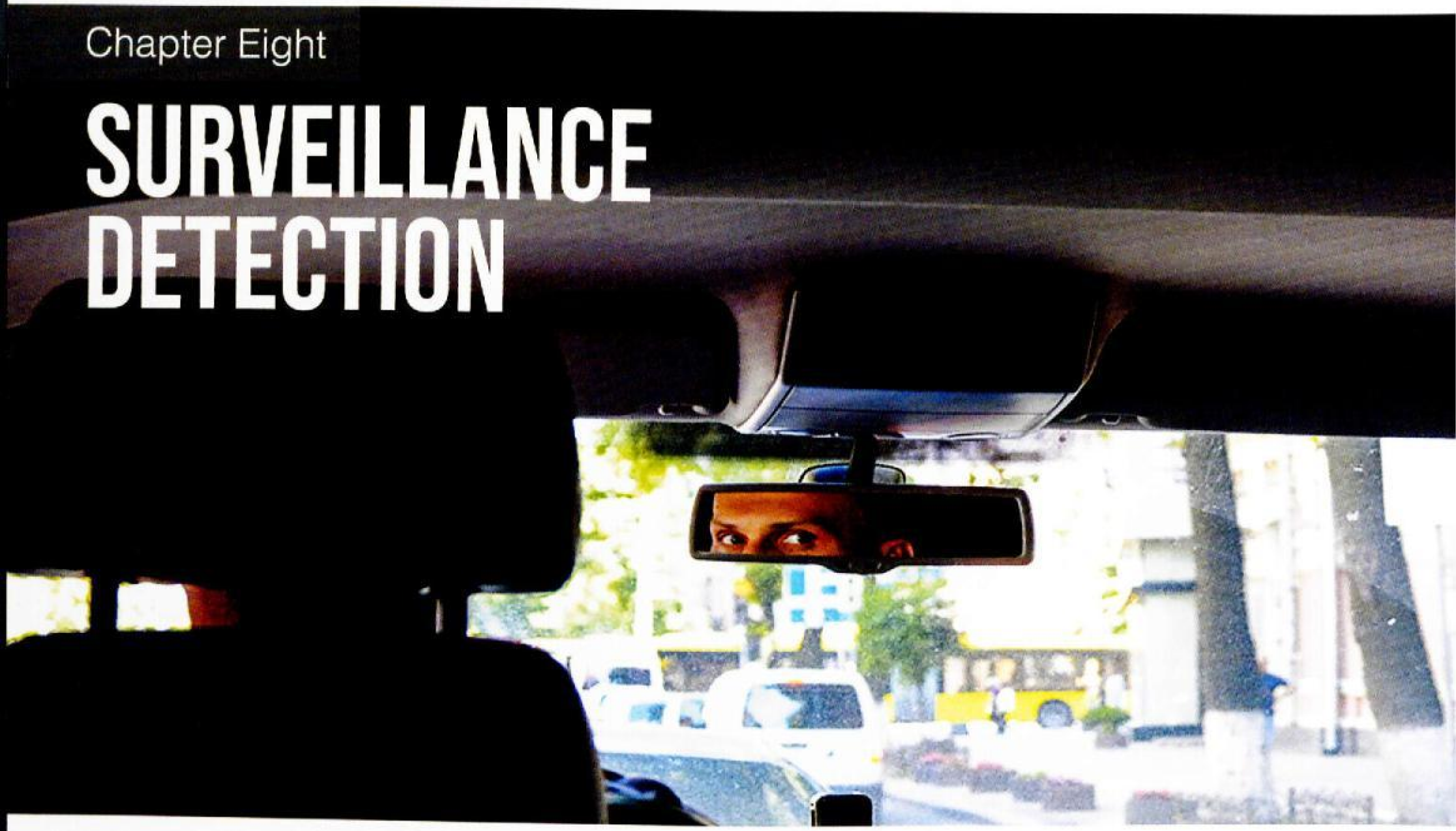
"Surveillance from a van? Don't you think President Nixon would've noticed a van parked outside the White House?"
Gene Hunt, Life on Mars.

Credit: BBC



Chapter Eight

SURVEILLANCE DETECTION



This chapter deals with surveillance detection by using anti-surveillance and counter surveillance. There are measures that you, or the target of a surveillance, can carry out in order to detect and identify if surveillance is present. Anti-surveillance (AS) is a misunderstood practice that is frequently confused with counter surveillance (CS). Anti-surveillance and counter surveillance are two very different types of surveillance detection.

- **Anti-Surveillance**

Anti-surveillance is described as the actions that a person carries out if they suspect they are being followed in order to confirm that surveillance is present. Anti-surveillance manoeuvres (or 'drills' as we call them) will hopefully, draw the surveillance into a position where they can be seen and identified.

- **Counter Surveillance**

Counter surveillance is when we bring in a third party (person or team) to identify the presence of a hostile surveillance team and possibly further identify the make-up of the team members.

In a nutshell, anti-surveillance is what we would do ourselves in order to detect if surveillance is present (we check our own back), and counter surveillance is when we bring in someone else to detect it for us (you get someone to check your back for you).

SDR & TEDD

An 'Americanism' for walking your route is a SDR (Surveillance Detection Route), whether it is planned or unplanned. A colleague in the States summed it up with the acronym 'TEDD' and this applies for both Anti and Counter surveillance.

TIME

ENVIRONMENT

DEMEANOUR

DISTANCE

Simply, if you see the same person repeatedly over a three-hour period (Time), in different places (Environments) and over an abnormal Distance (miles apart), or someone one who displays unnatural body language (Demeanour) you can assume they are surveillance.

For example, imagine you are in an indoor shopping centre: you are in a shoe shop and you are suspicious of being followed by the guy in the blue jacket and red baseball cap who is also in the store.



You leave, and then you see him in the next shoe shop you go in 5 minutes later, and the next... is he surveillance? You spotted him three times within a 20 minute window, you saw him in three different shoe shops, his body language looked normal and the shops were confined to the lower level of the centre. Is he surveillance? It's unlikely.

You then leave the shopping centre, get in your car and drive to the city centre. It takes you 45 minutes and is 25 miles away. You proceed on foot and visit an electrical store where you see the same guy in the blue jacket acting a bit shifty. You head home by driving 17 miles, it takes you 25 minutes on the other side of town and you see the same guy in a car who drives past your house as you pull in. Is he surveillance? Certainly much more likely than in the first instance.

ANTI-SURVEILLANCE

As we have defined, anti-surveillance is described as the actions or manoeuvres that a person carries out in order to get a reaction, whether it is aggressive or subtle. In this way he will confirm that he is under surveillance, and then, possibly evade and lose the team following him. It may be a case that once you have identified surveillance, you will want to know more about them to establish: how many, how well equipped, who they are, who they are working for, what their aims are, how sophisticated are they?

Any surveillance operator will be conscious of avoiding multiple sightings with the target, or being noticed by acting unnaturally in their presence. In anti-surveillance we want to turn this on its head and attempt to create multiple sightings, then lookout for unnatural behaviour in those around us, in order to expose them as being surveillance.

ISS TRAINING LTD

WHO CARRIES OUT ANTI-SURVEILLANCE?

Many people think that anti-surveillance is something a target of surveillance carries out when he thinks he is being followed. Although technically correct, it is also a discipline that a professional security operator would carry out in order to identify if he was subjected to surveillance.

If I am working abroad, after arrival at the hotel, I usually carry out some anti-surveillance measures as I familiarise myself with the area. After an hour or so I may go for a walk around the town or city to get my bearings, but also carry out subtle anti-surveillance drills.

I plan a route that I will walk the following morning to the training venue to include 'surveillance hazards' or choke points. Without becoming paranoid, a simple and effective anti-surveillance routine can be built into your day to day activity without even thinking about it.

Anti-surveillance measures can be carried out covertly or overtly, on foot, by vehicle, public transport and also in combination. Covertly, where you carry out very subtle drills in order to identify a surveillance presence without them realising or, overtly, where you carry out obvious drills to let them know that you are aware.

ANTI-SURVEILLANCE WHILST ON FOOT

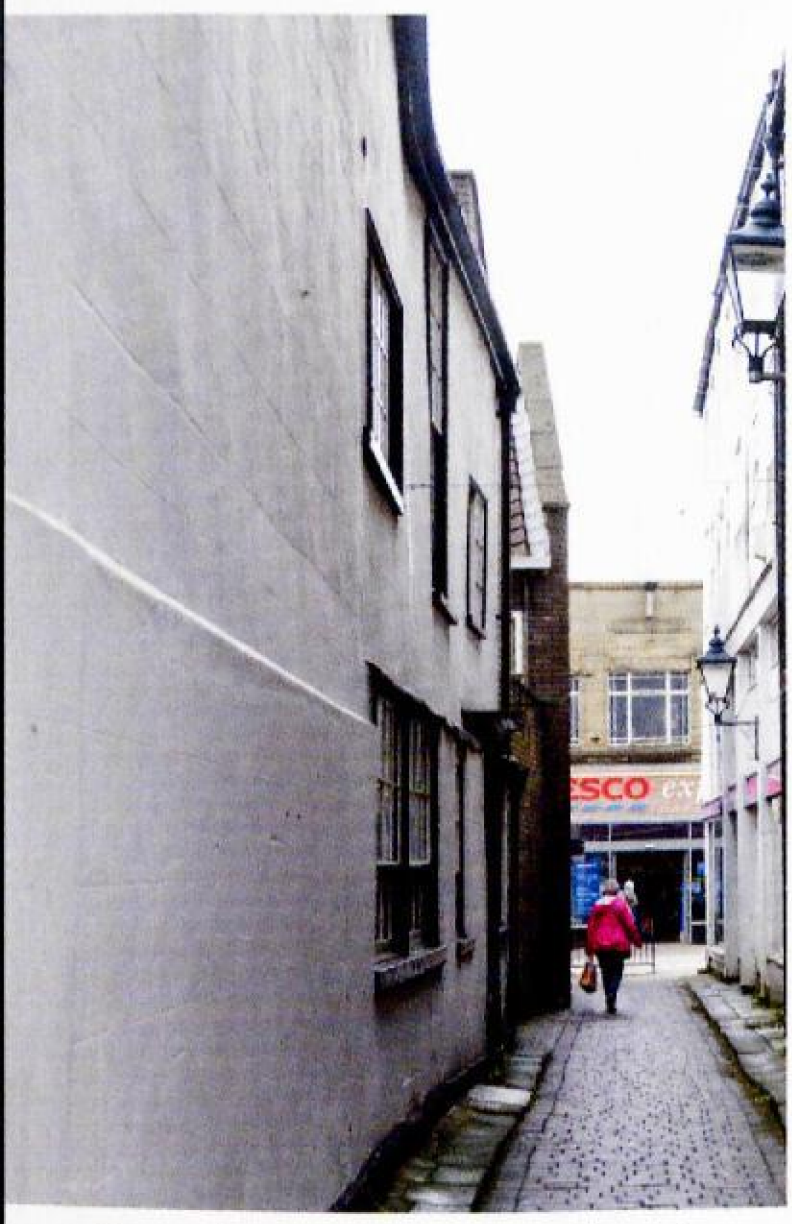
Being followed on foot will mean that any surveillance will be reasonably close to you; so the risk of them being noticed is much greater, and this can be used to your advantage.

A number of drills have to be carried out to identify surveillance. Just looking behind you does not identify surveillance - it simply identifies those who are behind you. However, if you see those same people later on, especially in a different place and you have seen them at least three times, then alarm bells should start ringing.



When trying to identify surveillance, you need to draw any possible team (or individual) into an area where it makes it easier for you to spot them. In London, for example, if you are on Oxford Street where there are hundreds of people close together, it will be difficult to get multiple sightings of someone as they mix in with the crowd. Therefore, you will need to move off that street and into a quiet area where you have the advantage. Do not be too quick to venture into very quiet areas as an experienced team may pick up on this.





Do not be drawn into narrow channels.



Going up an escalator and then coming back down is a very overt AS drill.

FOOT ANTI-SURVEILLANCE DRILLS (DRILLING)

Let us take a look at the various drills you can carry out yourself in order to detect surveillance.

Remember, on foot we are looking for a number of things: multiple sightings in different places and unnatural behaviour. If you recall, surveillance operators will be the 'grey' person, so they have to be drawn out.

THESE ARE VARIOUS 'DRILLS' THAT YOU WOULD CARRY OUT IN ORDER TO DETECT SURVEILLANCE.

- Look directly behind you frequently. This can be overt or covert; overt makes it obvious that you are looking back which will spook the surveillance team. Covertly, you would cross the road (in order to look back) but listen and wait for a stream of traffic to pass first. This gives you the opportunity to look back several times without it being obvious about what you are doing, you are waiting for traffic to clear.

- To be even more covert, cross the road at a pelican crossing, do not press the button but pretend to. This now gives you a reason to stand at the side of the road and look back and forth several times (and for quite a while) because the 'green man' isn't going to change.

- Enter a shop, large store or shopping centre. Politely hold the door open for those behind you giving a chance to look back or use reflections in the doors. If no one follows you in, you can then look out of the store window at the surroundings and the reactions of those in the area. You may see someone going for a trigger such as quickly moving into a phone box, peeping around corners or they may even walk past to see where you are.

- Frequently turn around and change direction, though this is very overt. If you change direction, have a reason for doing so such as looking in a shop window, hopefully this will create multiple sightings of the same person - if they are not carrying out regular handovers.

- Drop a piece of paper and see whether it is picked up and examined. A surveillance team will be wary of doing this but if you provide some juicy bait such as an ATM receipt (a mock receipt), they will attempt to recover it.

- Enter a telephone box and use it to observe your surroundings. When you leave, keep a close eye on it in case a surveillance operator is 'clearing' the box for information. Be aware that most people now carry mobile phones and so using a public phone may alert watchers.

- Walk into areas where there is little pedestrian activity such as a quiet neighbourhood or multi storey car park. If the team is poorly trained, they will be drawn in.

- Use large department stores with many exits and levels. Upon entering, suddenly stop to look at the information board. Look out for unnatural behaviour as someone follows you in and then suddenly realises that you are right there in front of them, they may be forced to walk past you. Use escalators to your advantage, take an escalator up or down, move away from the exit and observe those that follow you. You should be looking for eye contact, use of pressel and an earpiece. If a suspect walks past, watch for them looking back at you.

- Walk through narrow walkways or choke points. If the team are not familiar with the area they will probably send at least one person to follow.

- Walk three sides of a square. Walk along a street, covertly noting those behind you as described. Change direction and take another covert look back, noting those that follow you around the same corner on either side of the street. Now, take a third change in direction, again looking back and noting if you have seen anyone take the same changes in direction.

- A person seen once, is just a person on the street, the same person coming around the same corner is likely to be a coincidence but when seen a third time should arouse suspicions. Combined with a bit of unnatural behaviour should indicate whether that person is surveillance or not.

- An effective method to get a reaction is to create a loss. You can do this by suddenly turning a corner and entering a shop to hide, whilst observing what is happening outside. An inexperienced team will soon be noticed by their mannerisms and apprehensive body language as they desperately try to re-locate you.

- Turn a corner and suddenly stop, a term known as 'corner hanging'. This may force a watcher to go around the same corner and as they do, you observe their actions; do they walk past casually or are they startled like a rabbit caught in headlights? If they do casually walk past you, can they resist the temptation to look back at you?

- My favourite tactic is to go into a café, sit next to a complete stranger and start chatting to them, it doesn't matter if they think you are bonkers. A surveillance team will be considering 'loss v gain' and will possibly send someone in to see who it is and overhear what you are talking about. You wait to see who enters the café, notice their clothes, their demeanour, where they sit etc and do they leave very shortly after you do.

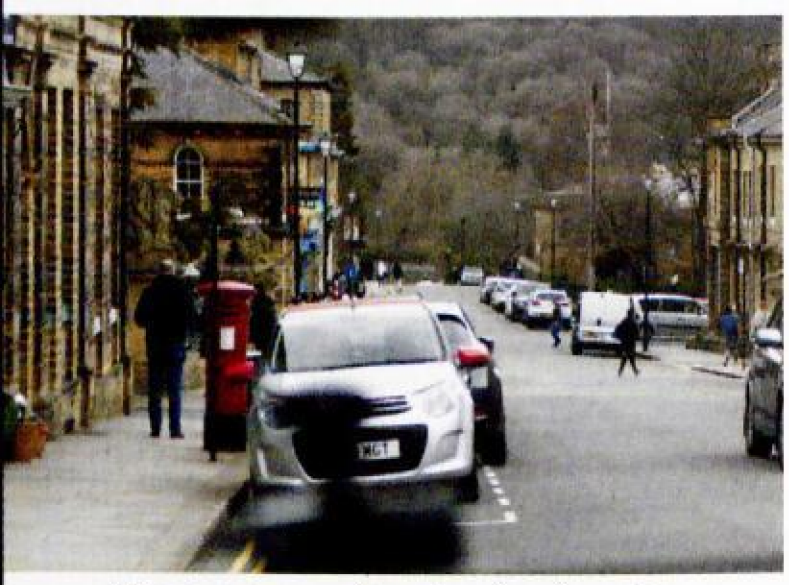
Corner hanging used together with a pelican crossing, gives you the chance to look back.







If you sit on the 'offside' of the bus, you might identify any mobile units that overshoot when the bus stops.



Have a reason for stopping in order to turn around.

PUBLIC TRANSPORT

Using public transport can cause confusion and create anxiety in the team, especially if you are changing from one type of transport to another. At least one of the team is likely to be close in order to keep control. Some tactics are very overt:

- Wait at a bus stop and then don't get on, but let the other people in the queue board
- Stay on the bus to the terminal or final destination, notice who else gets on and remains on the bus with you
- Get on a bus and get off at the next stop
- Stand on a train platform and attempt to be the last person to board it, noticing if anyone else is hanging around on the platform
- Take a train but then get off before to your stated destination
- Get onto a train and then quickly get off before it moves away, see who does the same

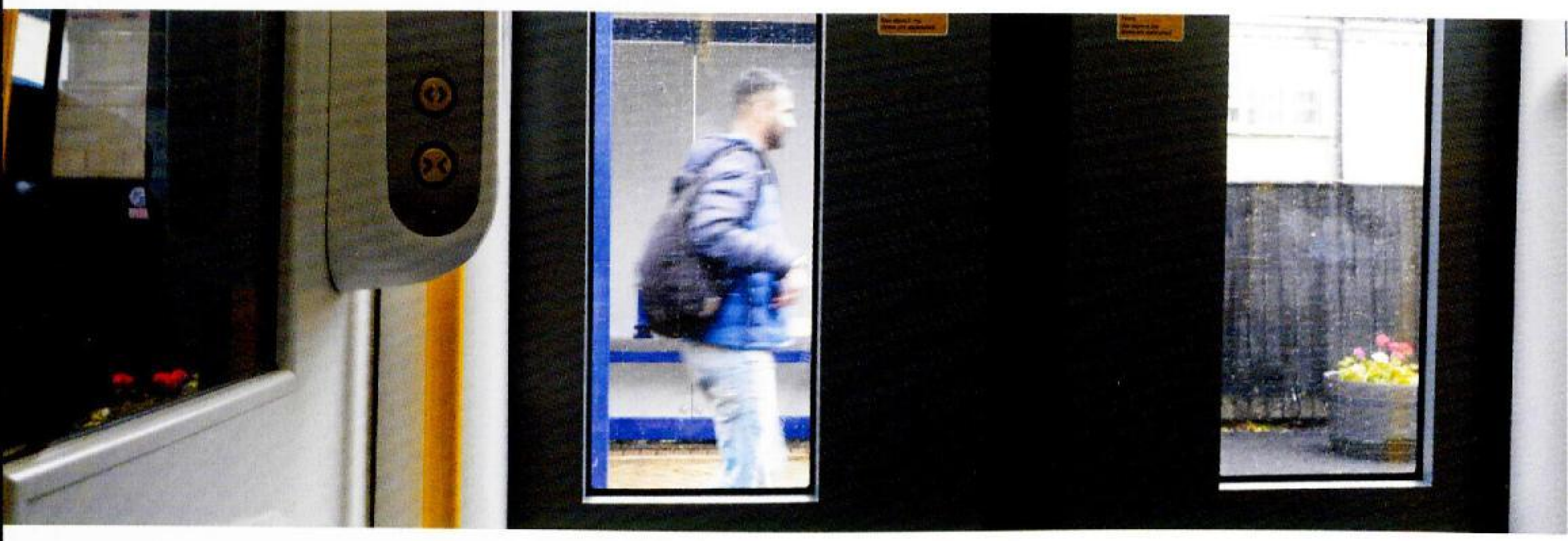
Some of these drills are quite overt and should only be used if you are really struggling to identify a team. Be aware that these drills are likely to make the surveillance team abort what they are doing.

UNNATURAL BEHAVIOUR

In addition to forcing multiple sightings of a surveillance team, we must look out for unnatural behaviour from suspects such as:

- People peeping around corners, over stands, through doors and windows
- Mirroring: someone copying your actions, e.g. you cross the road and they also cross the road. This will identify unsophisticated surveillance
- A person being fixated on you or the target. They have a bad habit of staring at you and not noticing what is going on around them
- Being isolated and standing out without any cover. Look out for the person with no reason for being there and just 'hanging around'. If you move towards them they will feel very uncomfortable and either 'act', or attempt to move into some sort of cover. Are they fidgeting or acting in a dubious manner?
- Are they talking to themselves on the radio? Any serious surveillance team will have some form of covert communication, so you are looking for anyone talking to themselves whilst also noting their body language. Any potential surveillance operators using mobile phones may also be easy to spot as they all have a phone up to their ears at the same time or be using the same white headphones
- Look out for those who continually touch their earpiece. This is a sign of a lack of confidence, as the person is afraid that it may fall out. If you can get close enough, an earpiece is something to be looking out for

ISS TRAINING LTD



- Try to get a look at the suspect's hand or fist. If they are holding a pressel, this can often be seen if you know what to look for. Is the persons hand relaxed or is it clenched tightly?

- Do they have a vacant expression on their face, this is quite a unique look! When an operator is struggling to hear radio transmissions they may stop and appear to look into the distance, with mouth open and a gormless look on their face, especially from novices or amateurs.

- If you carry out a U-turn or hold a door open for the person behind you, do they deliberately avoid eye contact or do they react strangely when close.

- Look out for cross contamination. If you suspect an individual, then keep a close eye on him. He may identify another watcher by hand signals, eye contact, a nod of the head or communicating by mobile phone.

- Indirectly challenge anyone suspected of following you by asking them for directions or the time and note their reaction. If you notice a professional style watch (G Shock etc) this should also add to your suspicions.



Rail stations have many narrow channels.



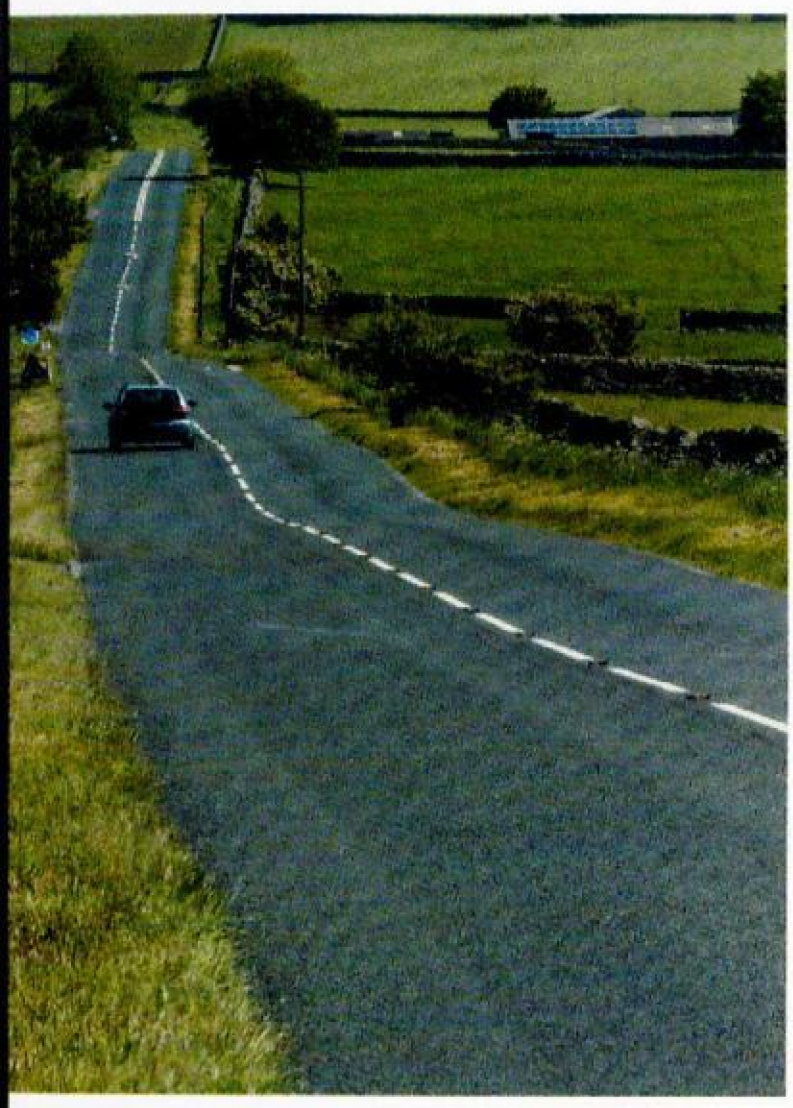
Walking with a purpose, concentrated stare, white headphones.

CHALLENGES

You may also want to make a direct challenge to someone you suspect as surveillance. *"Are you following me?"* can really put off a surveillance. The operator will now have to pull off from the team and it is likely that as a consequence, the whole team would also have to lift off. If you really want to put them off, take a photograph!

If challenged indirectly, *"Excuse me, can you give me directions to..."*. This will spook the operator and raise his concerns of compromise; he will want to get out of the way soon afterwards. His response and body language should tell you a lot (military & police types are often quite succinct in the way they give directions).

An unprofessional team is easily spotted and very easily caught out because they act unnaturally, and they do not carry out the correct procedures to prevent multiple sightings. An experienced surveillance team is more likely to carry out tactics to ensure they are not spotted. And if they suspect they are being drawn into a compromise, they are more likely to 'lift off' from the surveillance and let the target run, rather than risk confirming his suspicions.



Suddenly stopping on long straights is very agressive and will alert any surveillance team.

ANTI-SURVEILLANCE WHILST MOBILE

We now look at the anti-surveillance measures carried out when mobile in a vehicle or on public transport. We shall also look at the various ocassions when a target or person will conduct anti-surveillance drills in order to detect surveillance, which is quite important.

Remember that anti-surveillance is defined as the actions that a person would take or do, in order to detect if surveillance is present. The person is aiming to draw the surveillance in, by generating two things; multiple sightings and unnatural behaviour, in different places at different times.

MOBILE ANTI-SURVEILLANCE DRILLS (DRILLING)

In a similar fashion to the drills carried out on foot, these drills can also be covert or overt. Again, drills have to be carried out in order to identify any surveillance, (at least three) and negate coincidences.

Consider the following:

- Note any suspicious vehicles in the street or watchers that may be providing a trigger, especially if they are 'two up'

- Whenever you first set off, note if anyone pulls out immediately behind you, this is amateurish and very unprofessional, which may tell you the level of sophistication of the surveillance team. Make a note of the vehicle behind you as you encounter the first or second turning after departure

- After you depart, continue in your original direction for a short distance and then make a turn to see if that same car is still present. If it is, it may be a coincidence, so you now have to create a third drill in order to confirm or deny that it is surveillance

- Stop suddenly without indicating. If this is done quickly at the side of the road it would appear to be a very overt drill. If you were to indicate, park up in a space outside a shop and then enter, you are giving the impression of having a natural reason for stopping, thus making it more covert

As you stop you should be noting the vehicle that overshoots and drives past (unless he suddenly pulls in somewhere behind you). You are looking for specific signs; the driver looking at you, the driver talking to himself, a small antenna on the back of the vehicle, the driver looking back as he passes you.

Once passed, he may turn off at the next side road and an amateur is likely to do this quite aggressively as he rushes to 're-plot'. Also note the type of vehicles that pass you. A yellow Mustang convertible is unlikely to be surveillance. If a car passes you and parks up in front, take note if the driver actually gets out of his car or whether he just sits there.

Also, don't forget to keep an eye on what is going on to your rear. You may notice other vehicles peeling off the main road or manoeuvring to park up and get a trigger.

- As you depart, continue in your original direction for a distance and then do a U-turn, taking you back past the spot you have just left. You should look at the other vehicles as they pass you to observe the body language of the oncoming drivers. Ensure that you travel some distance first otherwise you will not 'break the box' and will not draw in the surveillance

ISS TRAINING LTD

- Drive around a roundabout several times to throw watchers into chaos. This is a very aggressive drill and will immediately alert the team to your drilling

- Jump a red light to see if you are followed across. Again this is a very unsophisticated and obvious drill; unless you time it right so that you arrive at the junction just as the lights change after a 'stale green'

- At a junction or crossroads, indicate to turn but then move off in a different direction. If the cars behind you also indicate, then cancel their indicators and follow, you can suspect possible surveillance

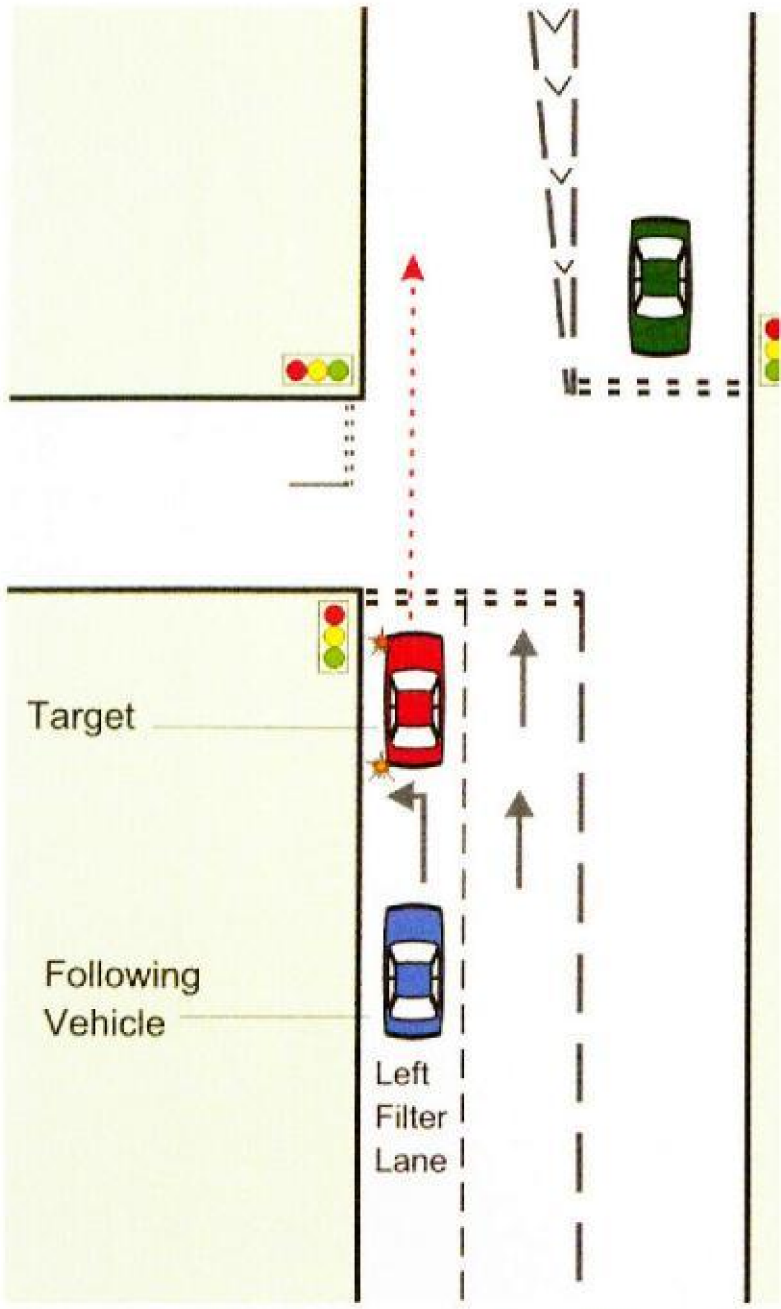
- On an approach to a junction with multiple lanes and a filter lane - such as a crossroads controlled by lights, manoeuvre into the filter lane as if you are going to turn. When the lights go green, continue straight (rather than turn) and this will force the watchers to either go with you (and thus identify themselves) or they will be forced to make the turn and consequently lose contact

- Frequently alter your speed by slowing down then speeding up, watch if the following cars overtake you or keep to the same speed and mirror your actions. This can be an obvious drill but if you use slow moving traffic on a dual carriageway to deliberately slow down, you can be more subtle about it. Likewise, drive up a long hill and slow your speed down. The cars behind will be forced to close up on you and possibly overtake

- Stopping immediately after taking a left turn may cause at least two of the cars to overshoot, again this is quite an overt drill. To give a reason for stopping, get out of the vehicle or pretend to look at a map or make a mobile phone call

- If held in traffic, examine the car behind you closely and also its occupants. If it is 'two up', look for their body language or look for signs of talking into a radio. Watch out for the driver that 'creeps up' behind you when coming to a halt at traffic lights and note if the sun visor is down

- Take the motorway, changing speed frequently from high to slow. Come off at an exit and then rejoin the carriageway to see the actions of the cars behind you. This is another very aggressive manouvre



Filter lanes can help you but be aware of the dangers.





Pretending to breakdown or stop on a hard shoulder can be challenging to a surveillance team.

- Pretend to break down on a motorway to see if anyone stops behind you, they shouldn't but an amateur would. A more professional team will continue to the next junction and wait there

- Drive into more rural areas using narrow lanes whilst observing the vehicles behind you. Driving at a slow pace along very straight roads is really difficult for the surveillance team (unless they have a tracker deployed)

- Lane hop. This is where you have multiple lanes and switch from one to the other. This is an overt drill but may force someone on their own (or an amateur) to mirror your actions

- Driving into dead ends or a cul-de-sac can often be effective, especially if the road is not marked as being so. This may force one of the surveillance cars to follow you in and you will be able to note the reactions of the driver

BE AWARE OF THE LOST DRIVER

If a target drives around a roundabout twice he may not be drilling - he simply missed his exit. If he then suddenly hops from one lane to another, he still might not be drilling - he is trying to find his way but, if he carried out a third manoeuvre, alarms bells should alert you to the fact that he has now carried out three drills, which is more than a coincidence. A sophisticated person will carry out the drills over a period of time or distance, making them much more difficult to detect. Whereas an amateur will do them one after another in close proximity to each other.

Think to yourself, what actions will a lost driver carry out? He will:

- Suddenly stop at the side of the road
- Frequently change direction
- Go around a roundabout twice
- Enter a dead end or one way street
- Go twice around the block
- Indicate to go one way and then suddenly go another
- Switch from one lane to another
- Speed up then slow down

All of these are classic signs of someone carrying out anti-surveillance. Therefore we can establish at an early stage whether a target is lost or is carrying out anti-surveillance. If a target starts to carry out these 'odd' drills in his home town, there is a chance that he is drilling as he should know his way around. Whereas if he were miles away in an unfamiliar area, these manoeuvres might indicate that he is lost; so be careful.

Loss v Gain.
To draw in any surveillance, you must make it worth their while.



ISS TRAINING LTD

ANTI-SURVEILLANCE ROUTES (SURVEILLANCE DETECTION)

Anti-surveillance routes can be unplanned or planned. The former, if you are out and about and then suddenly suspect that you may be under surveillance; in this case you will want to carry out some subtle drills as described previously. Or the latter, if you suspect you may be the subject of surveillance. You may want to pre-plan an anti-surveillance route on foot, by car or even using public transport.

Often when working abroad, the team will go out for the evening on arrival to see the local area. During this evening we will carry out some subtle anti-surveillance without really planning or even thinking about it. We might take note of various choke points where a surveillance team could be drawn into a trap.

A bodyguard, working on his or her own, may plan a simple anti-surveillance route in order to chauffer their Principal from a hotel to a conference. The route should be simple and straight forward, not deviating from the main route too much. It should be devised in order to create multiple sightings.

This type of anti-surveillance route is okay if used with caution. If I were to do this every day, a surveillance team will note that it is part of my daily routine and they are most likely to let me 'run'.

MOBILE ANTI-SURVEILLANCE ROUTES

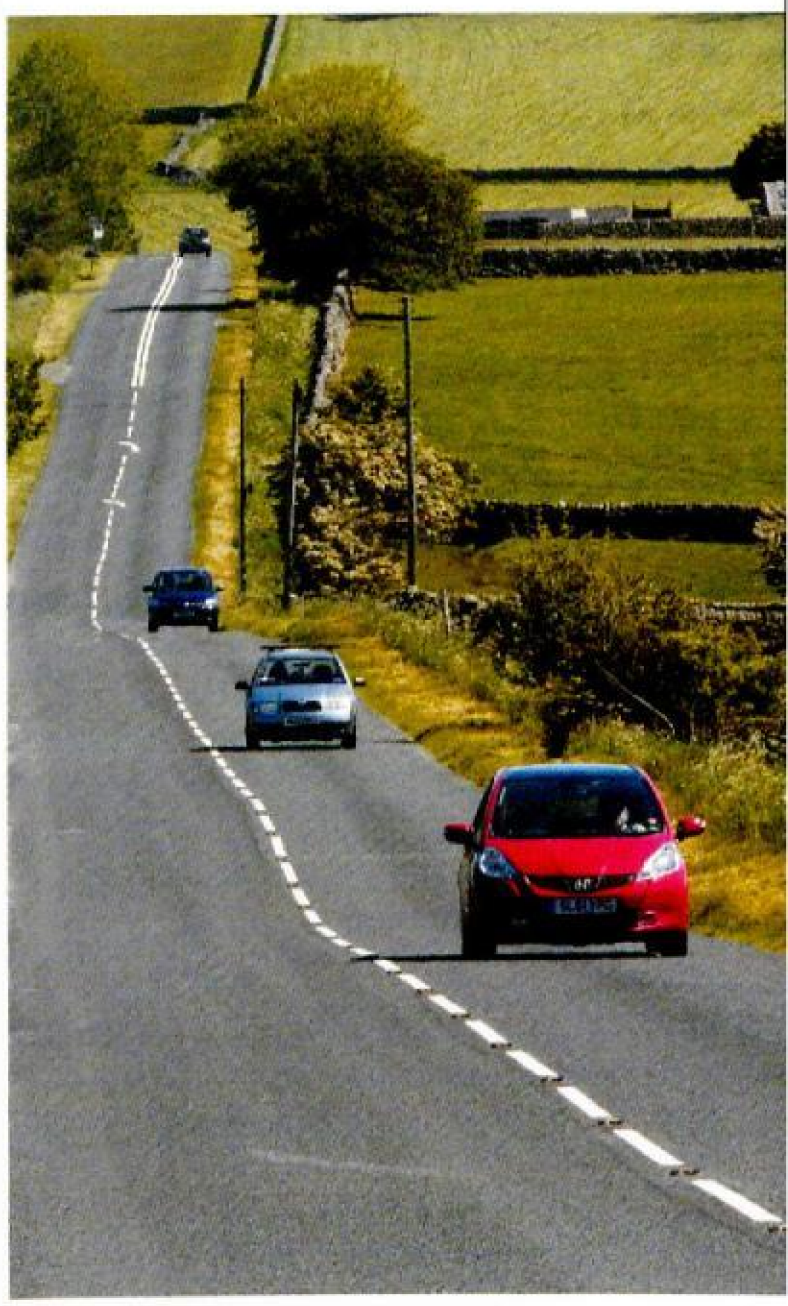
If you want to drive from A to B, you need to choose a route that is straight forward, does not deviate from the main route and can harness a number of covert anti-surveillance drills.

As you set off, check your mirrors and note the first and second cars that appear behind you. Change direction, again keeping note of the few cars that are still behind you but do this a good distance away from your start point otherwise you may not have broken the surveillance 'box'. Carry out a number of the drills described and if you want to create a stop, have a reason for doing so (such as a petrol station or a shop). After this, drive on for a short while, carry out another stop - with a reason - and observe.

Use slow and heavy vehicles in front to make you slow down, this will force a surveillance team to 'bunch up'. Then overtake the slow mover to see the reaction in your mirrors; but remember, anyone else on the road is likely to do the same.

If it is covert, try not to be too aggressive, do not use the drills such as going around a roundabout, changing direction or stopping without a reason.

MAKE A CONSCIOUS EFFORT TO REMEMBER WHAT SHOES ANY HOSTILE SURVEILLANCE IS WEARING. WHILST IT IS EASY TO CHANGE APPEARANCE AND CLOTHING, SHOES ARE RATHER BULKY AND THEREFORE DIFFICULT TO DISGUISE.



A seasoned operator should be able to quickly identify any hostile surveillance. You need to understand surveillance in order to detect it.

WHEN WILL A TARGET START DRILLING?

This is so important and will tell you a lot about your target's state of mind if they start to drill. Remember that a security professional will carry out a form of drilling for his own security, just as much as a target of surveillance would. Drilling will occur at various times and it can be planned or unplanned.

Targets are likely to drill:

- When they first appear
- Prior to any activity
- After illegal activity
- On returning to their haven
- When they suspect surveillance

- **When they first appear**

On leaving the house he will be looking up and down the street for anything suspicious. He gets into his car and drives away looking for anyone moving off at the same time, or pulling out behind him (unprofessional surveillance). After that, he may circle the block or carry out any of the drills mentioned previously. A professional team should pick up on this drilling activity immediately

- **Prior to any activity**

A target may carry out some form of drilling prior to carrying out any activity to ensure watchers are not present. A close protection officer may also carry out some subtle drilling prior to delivering his Principal at his destination

- **After illegal activity**

Savvy criminals will do this after an illegal activity just as much as prior to it. A criminal may be happy that he is not under surveillance before the criminal act but he may have picked up a surveillance at the activity site by a team watching the other party who then switch targets

If an intelligence officer does not have counter surveillance deployed he will also carry out anti-surveillance prior to, and after a meeting for the same reason.

- **When returning to his haven**

Before to returning to his home, office or wherever, a person may also carry out some form of drilling in the event they have picked up a surveillance. Drivers of security vehicles, or those that work in banks or run the risk of kidnap, should do this as part of their daily routine on their way home, in case criminals are trying to identify where they live.

- **When the target suspects surveillance**

This will occur if the target notices 'unnatural behaviour' or has 'multiple sightings' of the same person or car. If 'spooked' and they suspect surveillance is present, they will start to drill. Keep in mind that there are others in the world than just the surveillance team. It may be a case that the target is so alert because he has already been spooked by someone totally unconnected with your surveillance

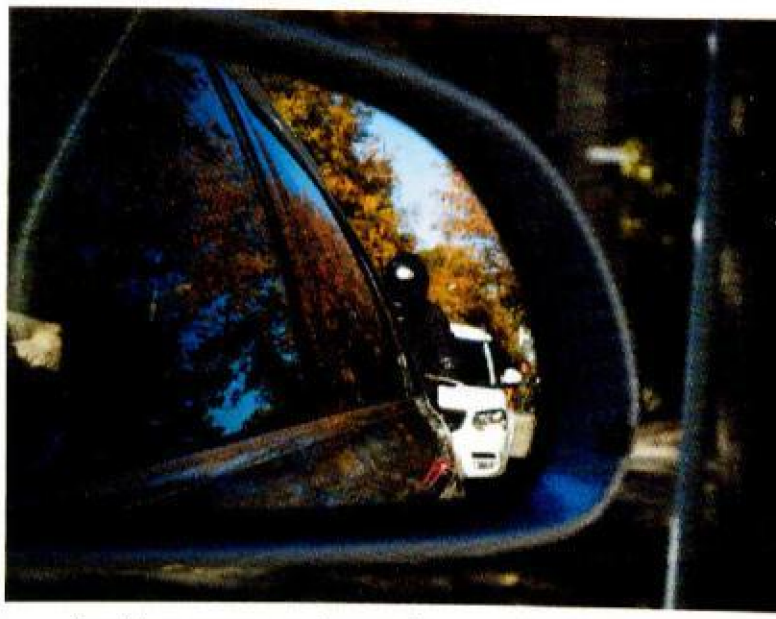
On a recent task we had a serious compromise and couldn't work out why. We found out a few days later that the target had been sent death threats and someone totally unconnected was seen photographing his house.

COMPROMISED

ISS TRAINING LTD

DON'T LIFT OFF!

As we have just mentioned, a target will drill just prior to an activity so therefore a surveillance team should detect the drilling at an early stage, this drilling is what we call a 'switch on'. You have to 'switch on' because something is about to happen. Inexperienced investigators do not realise this. They notice drilling and think that they will be spotted and so 'lift off' when they should really be doing the opposite. They need to switch on because things are about to happen and they need to keep control (but with caution).



Just because a target is conducting overt or covert anti-surveillance, it does not mean you will be detected!

WHAT TO DO IF YOU FIND YOURSELF BEING FOLLOWED

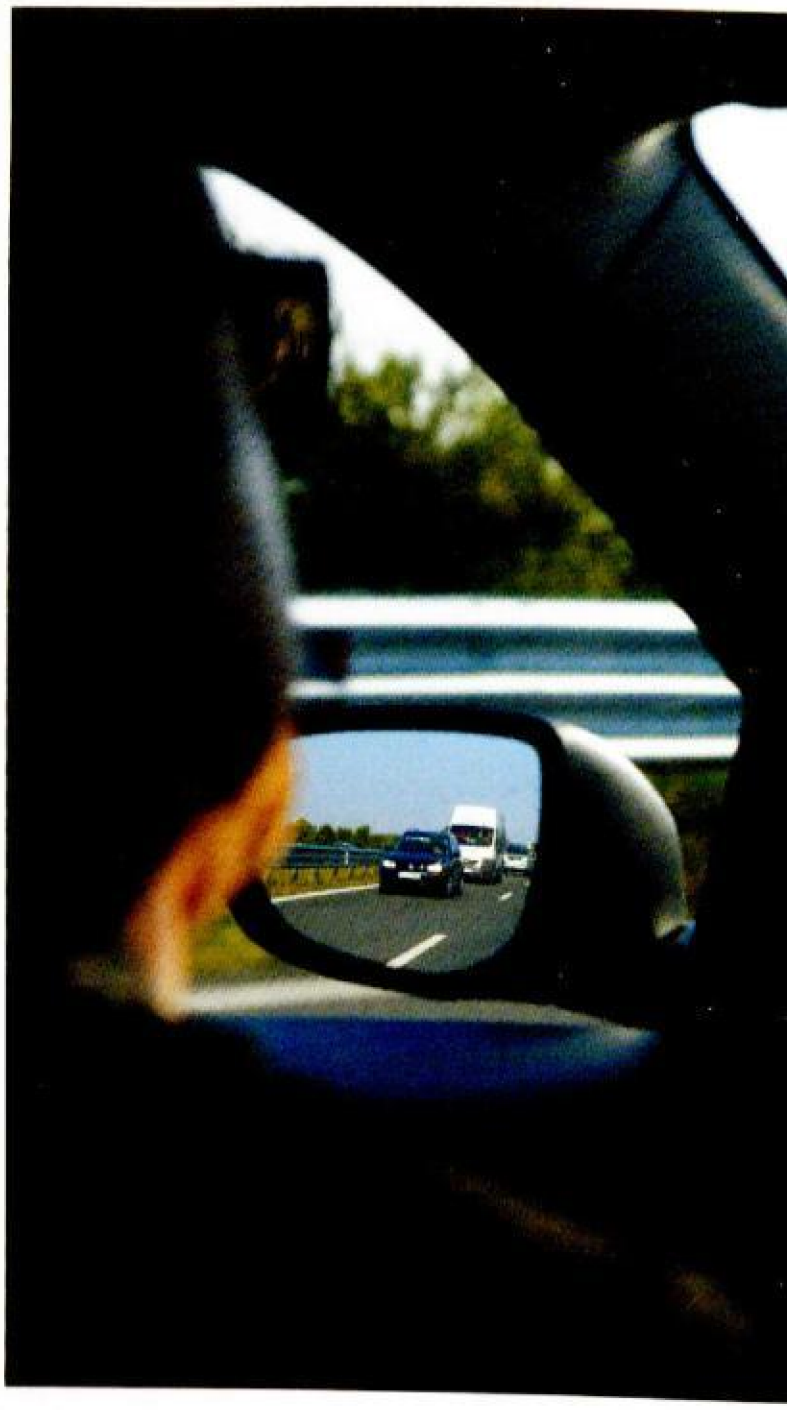
If you have carried out a number of drills and have confirmed or strongly suspect that you are actually under surveillance - so what are you going to do, what are your options?

First of all, stay calm and do not panic. You have to decide, do you want to identify the followers and the make-up of the surveillance team or do you want to evade them?

A number of things can be done:

- You can try to out race them but this would immediately alert them and they are most likely to let you run. You will not achieve much and possibly cause an accident in the process
- Inform someone: your team, the police or a friend who may be able to help you. If you are really concerned inform the police that you are being followed, and pass the details of the surveillance team to them with a reasonable excuse for them to react
- Keep driving until you are in a safe area such as a public place or a police station, but do not go to your destination. That may have been the aim of the surveillance and you have just given it to them on a plate
- Make a written note of any vehicles and details of the drivers, photographs are even better!
- Challenge them but think twice before you do, whether directly or indirectly, because they could be dangerous
- Continue but deviate from your route in order to identify more of the team - but this should be treated with caution
- Continue but lead the followers into a trap by telephoning for hel.
- Arrange for simple counter surveillance in order to identify the surveillance team and to learn how sophisticated they are

Slowing down on fast roads will either cause people to stack up behind you or force them to overtake.



If you decide to evade any followers; rather than just 'bolt' it and give away your intentions, you are much better off doing it in a subtle manner to give the impression that they have lost you, rather than you have escaped them.

A target, or person, may leave his home totally unaware but remember that the two most important things that will get a surveillance noticed: multiple sightings and unusual behaviour. The first time you notice someone, you are none the wiser. The second time could just be coincidence, but the third time is a positive identification, so any anti-surveillance has to be a combination of at least three drills.

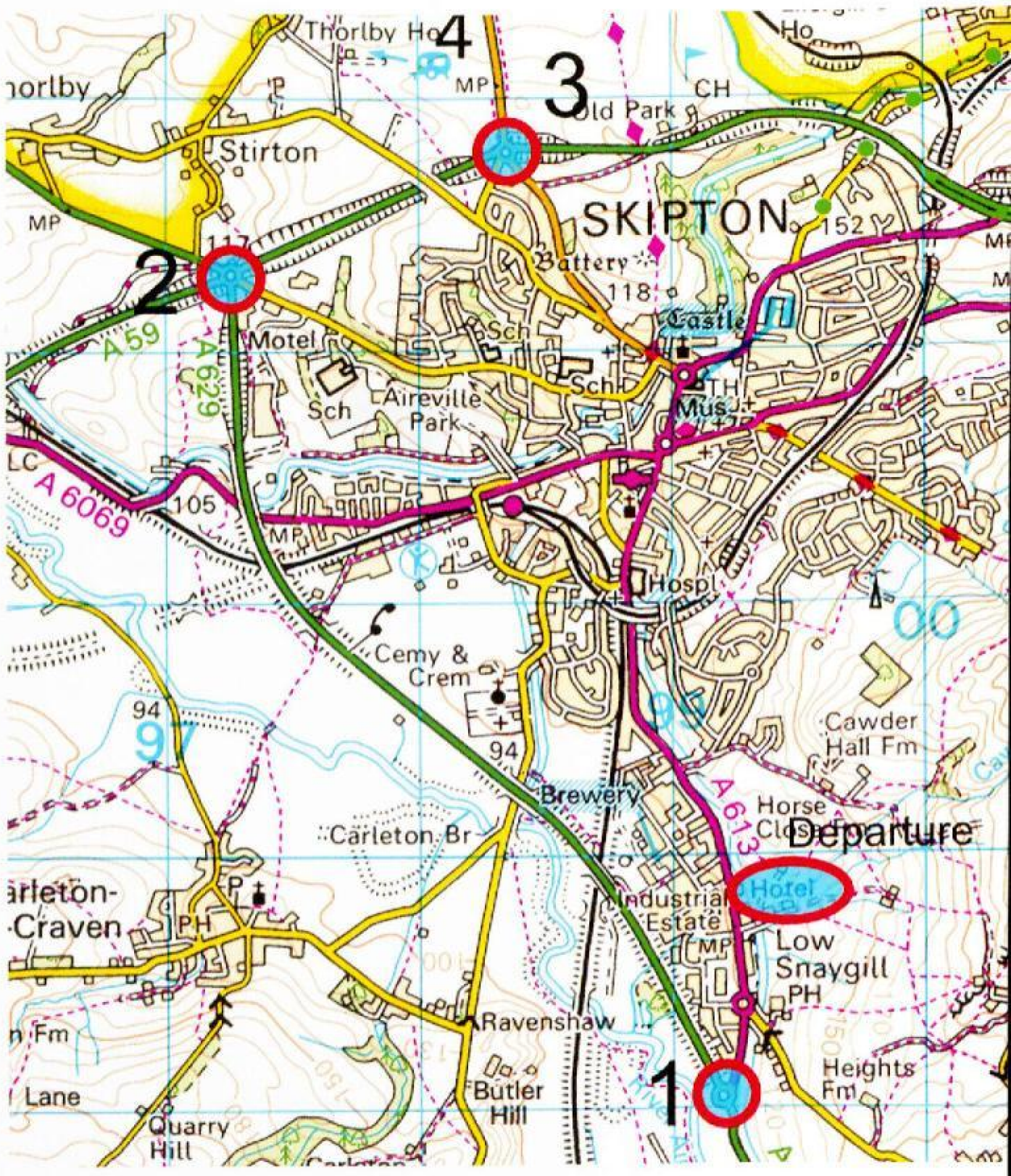
CONCLUSION

An unprofessional team is very easily spotted and therefore caught out. An experienced surveillance team is more likely to carry out tactics to ensure that they are not spotted. If they suspect that they are being drawn into a series of drills, they are more likely to keep their distance, not be drawn in and deploy a tracking device at the earliest opportunity.

It is better to let the target run rather than suffer a compromise. A target left to run can be picked up another day. One that has noticed you will be on his guard for a very long time afterwards.

DON'T FORGET TRACKERS!

The use of tracking devices are imperative when conducting surveillance on very aware targets or targets who carry out drilling as a matter of routine. A target can go around a roundabout as many times as he wishes or jump from one lane to another but it doesn't matter, because the surveillance team can keep their distance, back off and let the tracking system do the work it was designed to do.



ISS TRAINING LTD

COUNTER SURVEILLANCE

As we defined earlier, counter surveillance can be defined as the actions that a person (or team) carries out, in order to detect that someone else is under surveillance, and to identify the composition and make-up of a hostile surveillance team.

These actions can also be planned or unplanned and can be carried out either covertly or overtly. Or in other words, we let the watchers know you are aware of their presence, or not, by letting them appear to carry on undetected.

For ease of reference I shall refer to the 'principal' as the person potentially under threat of surveillance.

- **Unplanned**

Unplanned is when a principal realises he may be under surveillance and calls upon a team to confirm or deny if surveillance is present, by running him through a CS route on the hoof. This may switch to a planned operation later

- **Planned**

This is where a principal walks or drives (or is driven) a pre-planned route, through a series of choke points which are monitored by a third party, to either confirm or deny if surveillance is present by multiple sightings. These choke points have to be a tactical distance apart in order to rule out multiple sightings of third parties and minimise coincidental sightings of them

PROTECTION

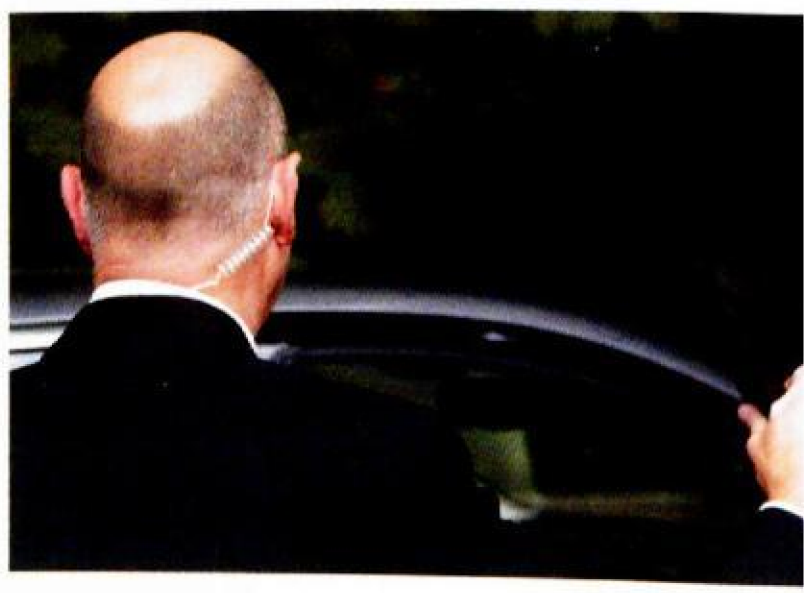
Bodyguards that are responsible for their principal's safety, often carry out counter surveillance, especially when there is a high threat level. Anyone who is a serious threat and intends to carry out an attack or kidnap will most probably do his homework and carry out some reconnaissance and surveillance before attack.

The Counter Surveillance Team (CST) will carry out various checks and observations in order to establish whether there is a surveillance presence in the area where the principal is housed, and also when the principal is on the move. The CST should be very alert, very observant and fully understand the principles of surveillance. You have to know surveillance and understand the various methods in order to detect it.

THE HOSTILE PLANNING CYCLE

Many readers of this book will be bodyguards or those involved in static or residential security teams. They are employed for one reason - to protect. To protect their principal or premises from attack, kidnap, intrusion or theft.

There is no doubt that anyone (or place) that is targeted for attack will have had surveillance conducted on them at some stage. Whether it is an attack by sophisticated terrorists, an assassination by a stalker, a burglary by low level criminals or even a journalist trying to get their money shot. All incidents would have gone through some prior planning in a process what is known as the 'hostile planning cycle'. As part of this cycle, surveillance is present, and it is at these times when the attackers are vulnerable (if they can see you - you can see them) and can therefore possibly be identified before an attack takes place.





The cycle is made up of the following phases:

PHASE 1: PRELIMINARY TARGET SELECTION

The threat will initially decide who to attack and why. For example, to attack the base of an occupying military unit in order to disrupt and obtain publicity. It may be that the attackers have a list of potential targets, therefore they will now move into the next phase

PHASE 2: INITIAL SURVEILLANCE

The threat will now conduct their probing recces of a target in order to identify weaknesses and strengths. They will not necessarily be going in close but they will be looking for: overt & covert security patrols, perimeter protection, access control, CCTV, alarm systems, vulnerabilities, routines such a shift patterns and also escape routes. If they discover that their target is too well protected and too risky to attack, they go back to Phase 1 and start again. During this initial surveillance phase, the attackers will be vulnerable to detection, mainly by multiple sightings or behaving unnaturally in the vicinity

PHASE 3: FINAL TARGET SELECTION

Once the threat has carried out their basic intelligence gathering recces, they will select a vulnerable target to attack. They will now proceed to gather as much information as possible to make a successful plan, some of which will again be surveillance led (the next phase)

PHASE 4: PRE-ATTACK SURVEILLANCE

The threat will now probe deeper at their intended target to obtain detailed intelligence. Rather than just carrying out 'drive-bys', they may conduct static observations of the site, follow individuals such as VIPs, staff, or delivery vehicles. They may even infiltrate the site itself under the guise of carrying out deliveries or even obtain employment there. Again, during this phase the attackers will be vulnerable and open to detection

ISS TRAINING LTD

PHASE 5: PLANNING

All of the intelligence obtained by the threat will be collated and used to form the basis of an attack plan; what weapons or explosives to use, how to get in, how to carry out the attack (normally by surprise) and how to escape

PHASE 6: REHEARSALS

The attackers will conduct rehearsals. They may do this at a safe site with similar characteristics to the target or it may be done over a plan, map or a model. The plan will need to be fine-tuned to rehearse; routes, timings, RV's, deceptions, the attack itself and also escape routes in the event things go wrong

PHASE 7: EXECUTION

If the threat gets to this phase, there is a chance that they will succeed in their attack plan as it is now too late. However, their mission can still be disrupted by vigilant security

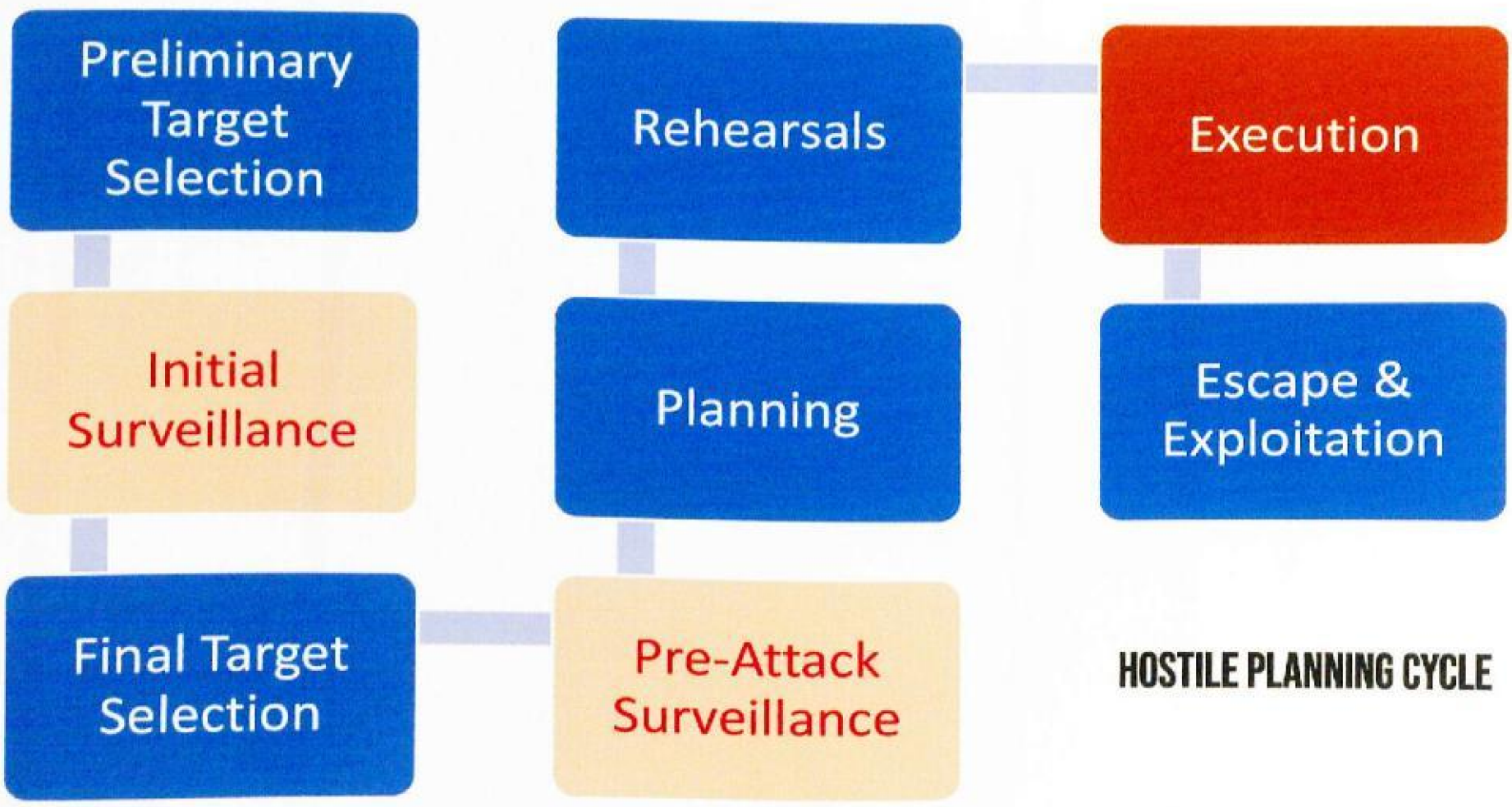
PHASE 8: ESCAPE & EXPLOITATION

The attackers will want to escape capture and will have planned an escape route. It is also likely that they will have a pre-planned public statement or video in order to maximise publicity for their cause.

Having looked at the different phases of a surveillance; the Stake Out, the Pick Up, the Follow and the Housing, there are procedures that we can use at each phase in order to identify and detect watchers. The counter surveillance team have to 'think surveillance' and if they were to carry out a surveillance on their principal, how would they do it?



Counter surveillance is a very important part of close protection training but often neglected by some.



HOSTILE PLANNING CYCLE

THE SALISBURY NOVICHOK AFFAIR

On 4 March 2018, Sergei Skripal, a former Russian military officer and double agent for the UK's intelligence services, and his daughter Yulia Skripal were poisoned in Salisbury, with a Novichok nerve agent. Luckily they both survived the attack.

UK Counter Terrorism Command released a detailed track and log of the activities taken by the two individuals who carried out the attack over the 48 hours they were in the UK. This covered their arrival from Moscow at Gatwick Airport, a trip to Salisbury by train the day before the attack, (their pre-attack recce), a trip to Salisbury by train on the day of the attack and return to Moscow, via Heathrow Airport. All sounds familiar - the hostile planning cycle?

In these infamous CCTV images of them in Salisbury, you can see they have 'military' written all over them.



Yulia & Sergei Skripal.



The day of the attack.

- Upright bearing (possibly former military)
- Their confident demeanour
- Outdoor branded puffa jackets
- Walking boots / trainers
- Beanie & baseball caps
- Short tidy haircuts
- Small backpacks / messenger bags

News agency and open source intelligence experts at 'Bellingcat' revealled that the two suspects who travelled under the fake identities of Alexander Petrov and Ruslan Boshirov, were in fact Russian military intelligence officers Anatoliy Chepiga and Dr. Alexander Mishkin. They also revealed that a third officer was also involved in the UK.

Attackers arriving at Gatwick.



Reconnaissance time is seldom wasted.



Scan this to read Bellingcats story

THE NEED FOR COUNTER SURVEILLANCE

The reasons why people and vehicles are subjected to counter surveillance are many:

- To identify if a principal is being targeted prior to attack/ kidnap by a hostile element
- To identify if a person's back is clear before or after a meeting. It could be a company CEO involved in a buy out or merger
- To identify journalists and paparazzi so that a principal can go about their normal life unhindered
- To clear (or clean) an intelligence agent prior to conducting clandestine operations
- To clear an undercover operator (or even a journalist) as he arrives or departs from a sensitive meeting
- To check that an informant's back is clear before a meeting with his handler
- To identify any potential criminal activity such as robberies on 'cash in transit' vans



Counter surveillance is essential for diplomatic security teams.

SURVEILLANCE DETECTION ROUTE (SDR)

Your principal wants to get from A to B. Before arriving at B he wants to make sure that he is not under surveillance and his back is clear; therefore he has to be run through a counter surveillance route, also known as a Surveillance Detection Route (or SDR).

This route should be as natural as possible without deviating from the most logical route, otherwise it will be identified by the surveillance. It will require at least three separate choke points that can be monitored by the counter surveillance team when the principal passes through them. From experience, I would always choose four because we are trying to create and establish multiple sightings of people or their cars, to ensure the sightings are more than just a coincidence.



If choke points are very busy, you will have problems recording everyone that comes through.

Counter surveillance can either be carried out by a full team or by a single person. Carried out single-handedly it can prove to be hard work, and is likely to need the principal to stop on one or two occasions (or the CS has to somehow get ahead), which may not always be practical or safe to do so. The CST should be armed with a camera or video recorder to film any activity and scrutinise it for unnatural behaviour. In addition, potential sightings can be recorded for cross referencing against further sightings.

Each choke point should be observed for routine activity and you should get a feel for the environment. Should a surveillance team arrive, you should be able to notice the difference in tempo and activity from certain individuals or vehicles. Do not have your first choke point close to either the start or departure locations because any surveillance team may be disjointed. Human error also comes into consideration; On a 'standby', one team member may have gone the wrong way or may have had a comms problem. Either way, you want the choke point to be far enough away to allow a surveillance team to settle down in their convoy in order to catch all the cars.

THE START POINT

Some CS teams make the mistake of plotting up where they can see the principal's house or premises. This in some respects is wrong because they are probably sitting where a surveillance person would. The CS operator should take a look at the area and think to themselves, 'if this were under surveillance, where would someone sit and get a trigger from, where would the team plot up?' You then have to take one pace back and be able to observe where they are likely to be.

It is this principle that forms the basis of counter surveillance when trying to prempt where and what an operational team would do. If you carry out a walking patrol in the area of the principal's home, you should be looking for:

- Likely trigger positions that a surveillance team may use. Remember: vans, cars, buildings or rural OP's

- People sat about in vehicles who try to avoid your gaze or people on motorbikes

Make a note of empty vehicles and their contents, things to look out for are:

- Paperwork on seats
- Radios or antennas
- Maps
- Fast food wrappings
- Old newspapers
- Cars that are reversed parked
- The small detail on registration plates that may tell what area it is from

- Approach and confront anyone you find suspicious and note their reactions or any indicators which suggest that they could be surveillance

- Widen your search area and check along the escape routes

Whether it is a home address, hotel or even a petrol station, when the principal moves, so do the surveillance team and you should be aware of any sudden movements from other vehicles or people in the area.



MOBILE CS ROUTE WITHOUT STOPPING

Let us say that we have a diamond courier who collects diamonds from a secure unit at an airport and delivers them to his company on a weekly basis. His company premises are unmarked and the location is secret. He uses a plain vehicle so that he does not attract attention. The courier wants to go straight from the airport to the company without having to stop en-route.

The CS team (comprising of three operators) should look at the route and choose four 'choke points' that can be easily monitored with one operator observing each choke point when the principal passes through. This can be carried out by examining a map of the route before actually going out on the ground for a more detailed recce.

If you have four choke points but only three operators, the person manning Choke Point 1, should 'leapfrog' ahead after the principal has passed through the first location.

ISS TRAINING LTD

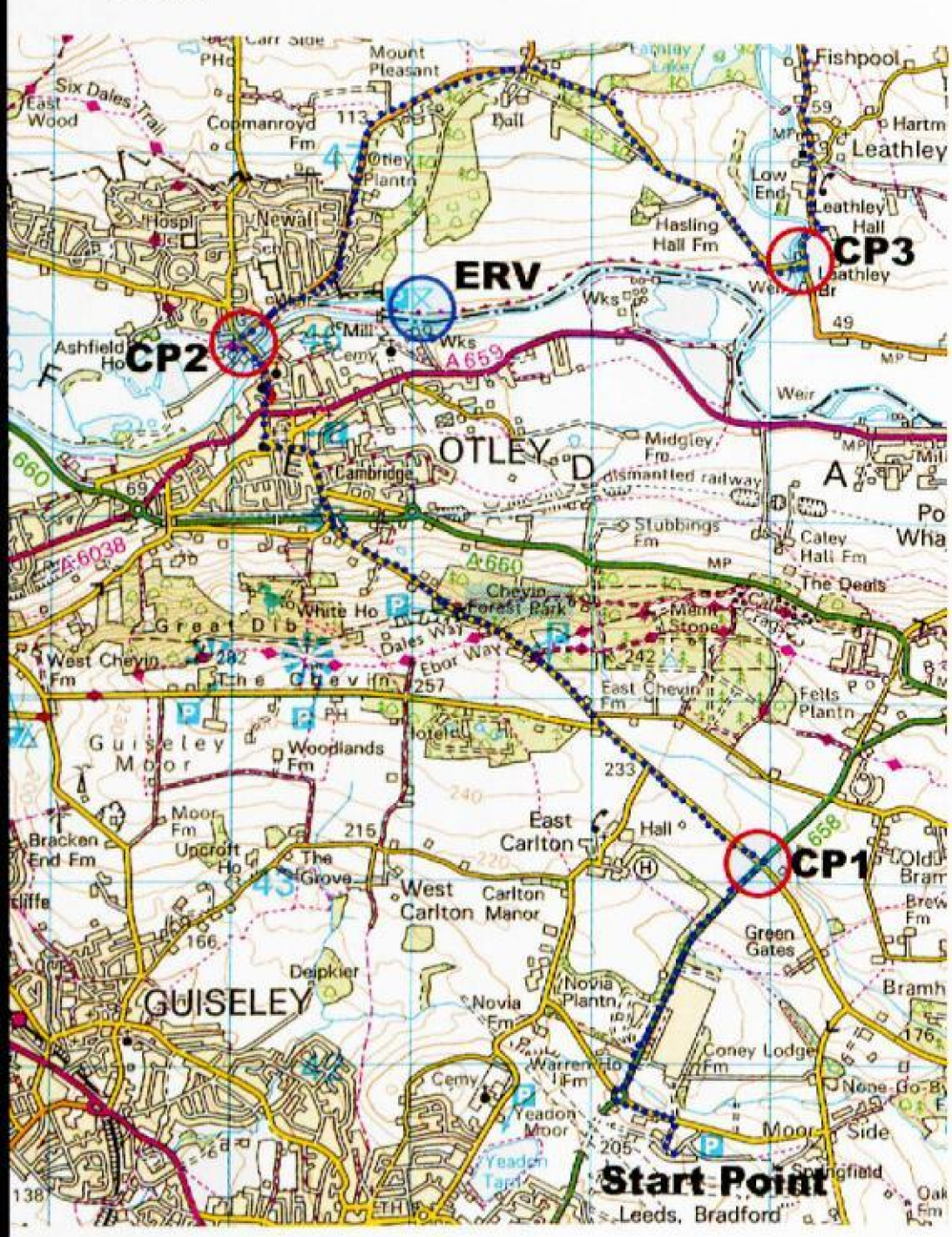
Ideally, the route should not be one continuous road over a long distance as there is a fair chance that other 'innocent' road users are using the same route. Therefore, keep the route as natural as possible; put in at least two changes of direction to minimise third parties and to draw in the surveillance team.

A choke point does not necessarily mean a narrow channel such as a bridge but needs to be somewhere that you can monitor securely and which gives you the maximum possibility for identifying any surveillance vehicles.

Mobile choke points can be:

- Road junctions
- Roundabouts
- Bridges
- One way streets
- Long straight roads
- Retail Parks
- Quiet roads
- Entry to a motorway or service stations

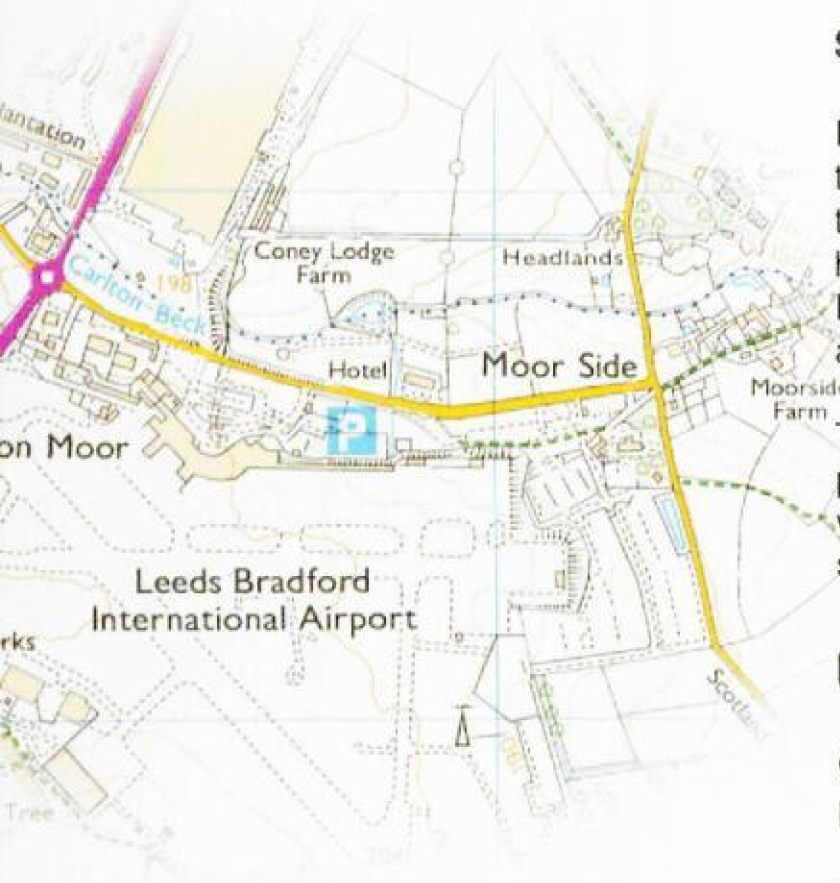
You can monitor the choke points from wherever you feel is a good position. You can be in your car, on foot, in a café or other building close enough to identify vehicle registration details. Try to avoid choke points at very busy roundabouts, busy junctions or on fast roads as it will be difficult to note vehicle details.



The counter surveillance route as described overleaf.

Leeds Bradford Airport.





SAMPLE OF A THREE CHOKE POINT CS ROUTE

START POINT

If the principal were to be subjected to surveillance from the airport, it is likely that any team would be plotted up close to the vicinity with a callsign covering the only roundabout on the exit. It may not be beneficial to put a choke point here as you may not 'trap' all of the team (because they should be spread out). It is more beneficial to have Choke Point 1 (CP1) some distance away so that any hostile surveillance team can 'settle down' and adopt a classic convoy.

The CS team leader will decide how the information is to be collated so that a pattern of multiple sightings is identified. Normally each person at a choke point will report his findings to the team leader or a controller. This must be done as soon as possible.

CHOKE POINT 1

CP1 is in a lay-by just after a crossroads junction controlled by lights where the principal's route takes a left turn. This point is chosen because:

- It is likely that the hostile surveillance would have settled down and be looking for a handover by this stage. It is doubtful they will handover at the lights because of the risk of getting held by them. Therefore they should all get though this change of direction before considering a handover

- Identify the cars that make the left turn in the same direction of the principal

- Remember, someone may have been held at the lights turning left and so a second wave of traffic should also be noted.

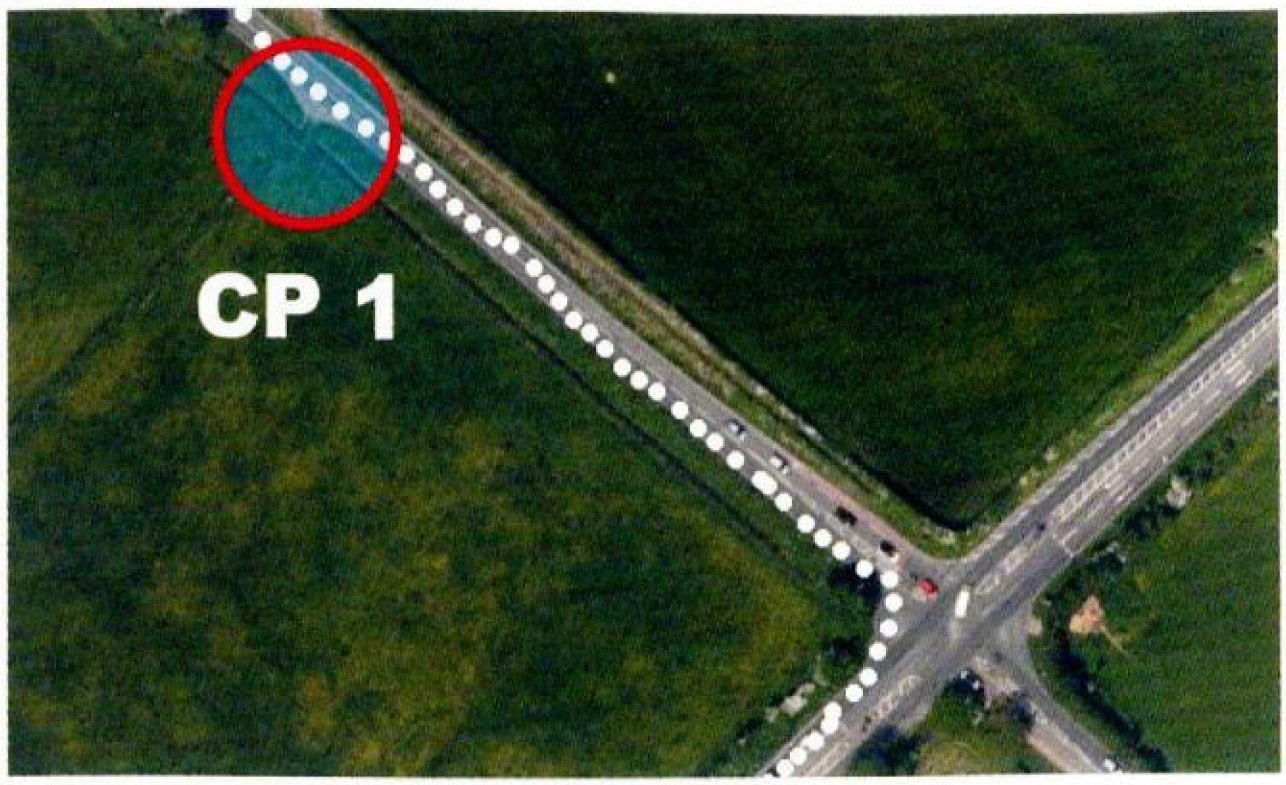
- They may handover at the lay-by you are in

- They should be going relatively slowly as they travel away from the junction to assist with obtaining vehicle details. Identify the details of at least 8 to 10 cars that are behind the principal (colour, make, registration)

- Log and record all sightings, transmit the list to the team leader on WhatsApp



Choke Points on long straights. Traffic travels too fast to obtain the details.



ISS TRAINING LTD

CHOKE POINT 2

The route has travelled through the town of Otley, crosses the River Wharf and then takes a right turn. CP2 is the right turn after the bridge, this point is chosen because:

- All surveillance will have to cross the bridge, there is nowhere to parallel and go around, so should be a 'catch all'
- When turning right, the principal has to wait for any oncoming traffic to clear, which means there is a chance he will be held at the junction, and so traffic behind stacks up. This gives you the opportunity to identify and record potential surveillance vehicles
- A surveillance team may carry out a hand-over here, so watch for someone continuing straight on and then carrying out a U-turn to get back into the follow
- This callsign is also in a good position to 'leapfrog' ahead if it's decided to throw in a fourth chokepoint
- Log and record all sightings, transmit the list on WhatsApp



CP2, cars slowing to turn right after being forced over the bridge.

Scan here to take you there



CHOKE POINT 3

This is a junction where the principal turns left. Immediately before the junction is a narrow bridge where oncoming traffic has a right of way. This point is chosen because:

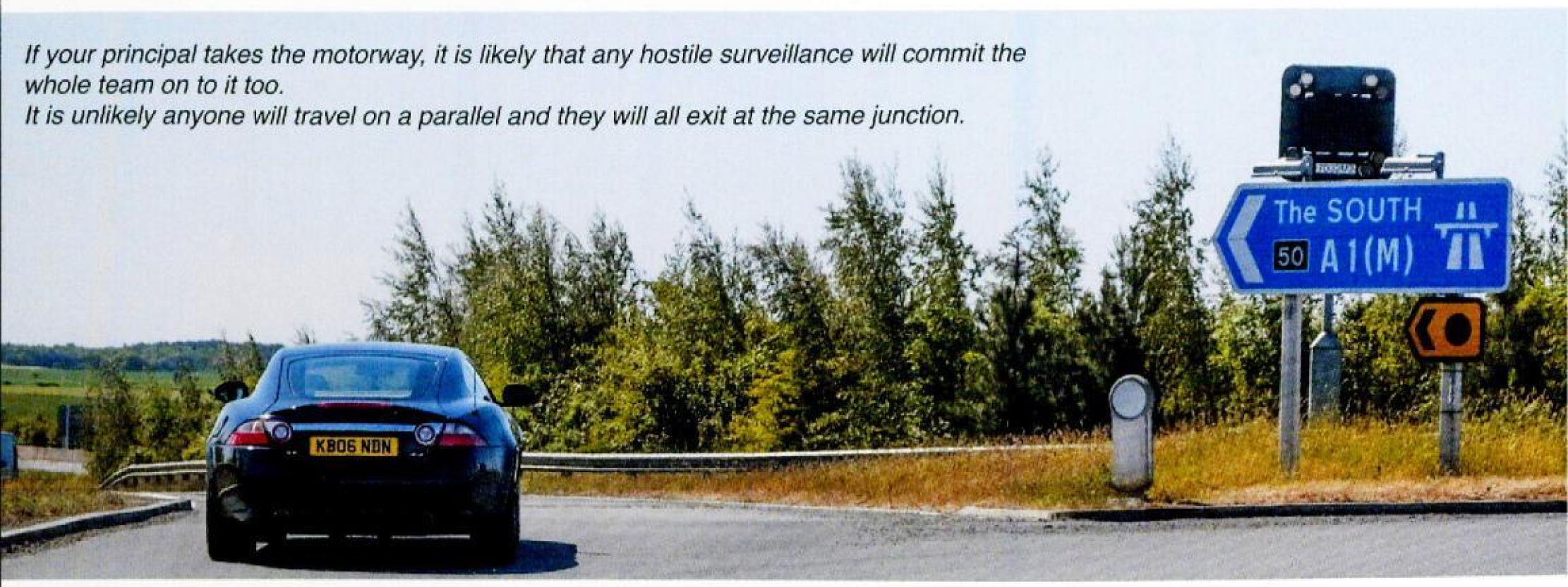
- Traffic will be forced to close up if the principal is held at the bridge waiting for traffic to clear
- If the principal gets over and then turns left, it is possible part of the surveillance team will be held at the bridge. As a consequence, you may see some aggressive driving in order for them to make ground
- Log and record all sightings, transmit the list on WhatsApp





As intended, cars stacking up at CP 3.

If your principal takes the motorway, it is likely that any hostile surveillance will commit the whole team on to it too.
It is unlikely anyone will travel on a parallel and they will all exit at the same junction.





COLLATING & REPORTING

All sightings and details of vehicles from each choke point are now collated. The controller will cross refer the sightings at CP1, CP2 and CP3 to identify if any of the cars sighted are the same. An assessment will then be made to decide whether the principal is under surveillance or is clear to carry on with his journey unimpeded.

THE EMERGENCY RV (ERV)

Somewhere along the route you have to identify a location as an ERV, where each person from each choke point can move to until the operation has finished. It would be foolish to return to the office as soon as the principal has been through your location.

THOSE PESKY DIVERS WATCHES

These images are taken from a recent counter surveillance in a European city. Photographs of four of the hostile surveillance team were obtained. One was detected by cross contamination and look what they have on their wrists!







COUNTER SURVEILLANCE EXERCISE DEBRIEF

SIGHTINGS FROM EACH CHOKE POINT

CP1	CP2	CP3
NX58 YDK Black VW Golf	BT62 UPG Red Honda	OW15 UCW Grey Volvo S90
PE13 FRR Black Ford Focus	OW15 UCW Grey Volvo S90	YM64 JUY Mercedes 4X4
PE67 AFU White Toyota	YJ66 OCM White BMW	NX58 YDK Black VW Golf
KU08 FON Grey VW Passat	NX58 YDK Black VW Golf	OV53 WUK Blue Honda
OW15 UCW Grey Volvo S90	PB15 YKK Red Porsche	AJ02 PXE Grey Nissan
YD61 LBL Blue Mazda 2	AK12 RTT Blue Fiat Punto	P80 HCB Black Audi A3
YH18 ADM Orange Suzuki	BR07 THL	AJ67 KWZ Audi Q2
YE14 CHL White Ford Transit	OW12 THH	MT63 YYU VW Blue 4X4
PK18 AMV Green Mini Cooper	DN12 UUT	HN12 BNU Grey BMW X3
AK12 AMN White VW Polo	AF55 OMC Black Mondeo	BN62 CNN Grey Ford Focus

ANALYSIS NOTES:

- **Intelligence**

A Grey Volvo S90 registration, OW15 UCW and a Black VW Golf Registration NX58 YDK was seen at all three chokepoints.

CP1:

Choke point 1 saw a handover when the Black VW pulled into the lay-by to let the Grey Volvo come through. The VW Gold then quickly pulled out onto the road again. Only the first sighting and unnatural behaviour has given good results.

CP2:

The grey Volvo came through first directly behind the principal. When the principal turned right the Volvo continued straight and handed over to the VW Golf. The Volvo then made an aggressive three-point turn to get back into the follow. The driving skills appeared to be rather amateurish.

CP3:

CP3 worked perfectly and had the desired effect. The principal was held for quite a while due to oncoming traffic and the grey Volvo was right behind. The VW followed across the bridge and was 'pipped' by an annoyed motorist coming the other way who had a right of way.

- **Operational**

The three different choke points allowed the team to achieve the result they desired by confirming the principal was in fact under surveillance. All choke points were a sufficient distance apart and in reasonably good positions. The third choke point could be moved to the junction on the other side of the bridge, as the CP position was quite tight to park up in.

ISS TRAINING LTD



MOBILE CS ROUTE WITH STOPS

Surveillance detection routes with stops can pose a risk to the principal because he has to stop, therefore any stop has to be logical, consistent and should have a purpose. By stopping we can force a surveillance team to react in a certain way and so possibly identify them. The principal can also proceed on foot when he stops, which again will force the surveillance team to react as they deploy on foot. A mobile CS route with stops can also be covered with a minimum number of personnel if planned correctly.

Prior to the operation, the principal should be briefed on the time he is to depart and the exact route he is to take. If he has to make changes in direction, these turns are to be given in detail and at easily identifiable places i.e. opposite a large advertising board or a petrol station. He is told exactly what to do at each stop.

After the briefing he should leave feeling confident of what he has to do. If his instructions are written down, care has to be taken that any surveillance does not see him constantly referring to notes, as it will make them suspicious.

The principal should be briefed to:

- Depart on schedule
- Drive normally, not faster or slower
- Fully understand the route being taken
- Make no attempt to try and spot surveillance himself
- Do not react or start to carry out anti-surveillance drills
- Do not speed in order to make ground if he gets held up in traffic, this could be considered as drilling
- Do not carry out U-turns or make aggressive manoeuvres if he misses a turning. Again this may be considered as drilling
- Follow the instructions to the letter
- Understand the procedure if surveillance is present

Ideally, the principal should not know or be able to recognise any of the CS team. Should he get lost or confused it is possible that he may approach one of them to ask directions and thus compromise them by association.

Whoever plans the route has to consider changes in direction and also the reasons for stopping.

Consider various choke points to stop at:

- A café or shop, make sure that it will be open when the principal comes through. Ensure he has cash
- If you use a car wash or a petrol station, ensure that the car is dirty and not already full of fuel
- If you use a florist to stop and buy flowers don't let the principal leave them on the back seat to die or leave them in the car for three days
- If you visit a launderette, take in something to be cleaned

ISS TRAINING LTD

Your stops can have a theme to them but do not make it appear odd or unusual. For example, stopping at one electrical goods shop and then visiting another and then another would not seem out of place - you're comparing prices. Whereas, a coffee shop, followed by another and then another, would seem odd.

MONITORING STOPS

By monitoring a stop choke point what may we achieve. In this example, a stop at a Starbucks café

- Identify the next 8-10 or so cars that are behind the principal
- Observe cars that quickly turn off after the location or just before it as the surveillance team plot up
- Identify cars that follow into the same car parking area or appear to be manoeuvring for a trigger from across the street or nearby
- Note erratic manoeuvring from cars as they position themselves, reverse park, nose forward to get a view, or carry out a drive past
- See unusual body language from drivers in cars, anxiousness, constant head turning, talking to themselves or visible radios
- Look for people getting out on foot and acting odd without doing anything
- Observe anyone going into the coffee shop (it may be that a surveillance team would not follow him in if they are considering 'loss v gain')
- When the principal departs, you could remain in situ to look for activity and sudden movements from cars.

MOBILE CS ROUTE AT NIGHT

Consider all of the above points when selecting a detection route to be carried out at night time. Obviously, it will be more difficult for you to identify colours of vehicles and registrations and so you may have to be right on top of your chosen choke point. If at all possible, attempt to observe the choke point, and vehicles from behind, otherwise the cars headlights will blind you making it difficult to obtain details.



COUNTER SURVEILLANCE EXERCISE SIGHTINGS

The images below identify three hostile surveillance vehicles coming through four different choke points.

The surveillance team comprises of a black Jeep Renegade, a brown Ford Fiesta and a silver Hyundai i30. All three were seen at all four choke points..

CHOKE POINT 1





CHOKE POINT 2





CHOKE POINT 3





CHOKE POINT 4




If planned correctly, a CS team should identify any hostile surveillance team.

DETECTED OR NOT DETECTED

If no surveillance is detected, you can call your principal by mobile phone and tell him that he is clear to run and that is the end of the job.

If surveillance is detected, you now have several options open to you. The priority may be to go overt to protect and escort your principal to safety. The other option, (which could be risky) is to run the principal through a fifth choke point (that you have either planned or improvised) in order to further establish the make-up of the surveillance team and take photographs or video - if you have not already done so. It could be that you want to run them into a trap to effect an arrest or just approach them and cause a compromise.

You now might want to investigate the threat further and follow the surveillance. If this is your decision, do so with extreme caution and not do so single-handedly. Ensure that you keep well back and use as much distance as you can at the back of the hostile team. Ensure that you don't get in between any of them and watch out for stragglers, especially after they have carried out a handover. If they have a biker it is likely that he will be hanging at the rear of the convoy, so be aware of any motorbikes that hang behind traffic.

If the hostile team is followed, you will either take them back to their base (hotel or office) or it is likely that they will lift off and RV at a suitable spot, quite often a café or fast food outlet where they will carry out a quick debrief over coffee. At this stage they will probably drop their guard as they switch off and therefore you can use this to your advantage to obtain closer identities of the team. It is very satisfying when this happens!

CONCLUSION

Having learnt most tactics relating to surveillance, you should be able to think to yourself, *'If I was to be put under surveillance, what would I do in order to identify the watchers and what would I do to draw them out into the open?'*

An unprofessional team is easily spotted and very easily caught out. An experienced surveillance team is more likely to carry out tactics to ensure they are not spotted. If they suspect that they are being drawn into a compromise, they are more likely to 'lift off' from the surveillance and let the target run.

DON'T FORGET TRACKERS!

Remember to carry out a thorough search of the principal's car (and yours) for tracking devices.

You may have planned and executed an excellent counter surveillance route and established that surveillance is not present but if there is a tracker fitted, you will never see them because they won't be there.



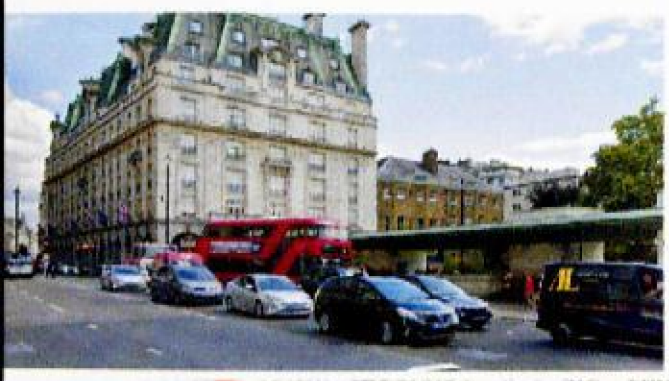


A tracking device in situ under the rear of a car.

If it had been placed in an old sock, dirt and grime would adher to it offering some form of camouflage.

SAMPLE STUDENT FOOT COUNTER SURVEILLANCE ROUTE LONDON

EXERCISE 'JESTERS TEARS'





- Continue straight — Concert Hall Approach towards Waterloo
- Turn Left out of RFH — Down steps by Nelson Mandela
- Into RFH building — Royal F' Hall — Depart by side exit
- Browse 10 Minutes — FOYLES — Depart by Rear Exit
- 50m Right — Into Foyles book store
- Over bridge — Over the Bridge, down and under bridge
- Thames — River
- 200m Right — Over the Hungerford Bridge
- 200m Left — On the Embankment
- 400m Right — On Horse Guards Ave
- 150m Left — On Parliament St
- 400m Straight — Cross road & up steps to Whitehall
- St James Park — Over Blue Bridge & turn Left
- 200m Right — Into St James Park
- 530m Left — Onto The Mall
- Green Park
- 20m Left — Into Green park

KATE @ CP 3







SAMPLE COUNTER SURVEILLANCE TEAM BRIEF

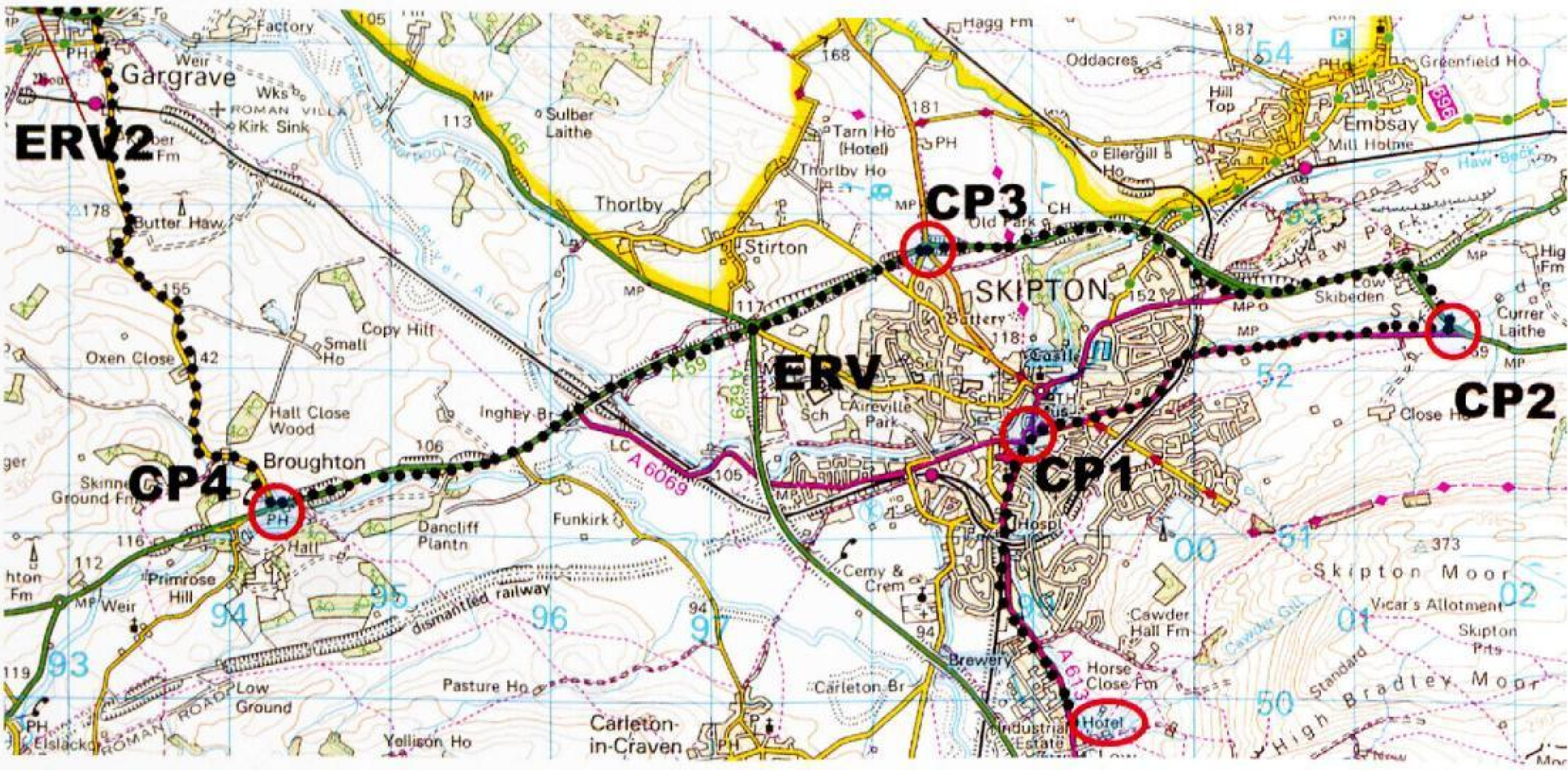
EXERCISE 'SECONDS OUT'

PRELIMS

CALL SIGN	VEHICLE	CREW	RESPONSIBILITIES
GOLF	Grey Vauxhall Mokka - VN68 GWG	Phil C	TEAM LEADER
HOTEL	Cream Renault Captur - HV68 VEW	Tony B	
INDIA	White Fiat Van - ME19 CXA	Mike R	

BRIEF

To conduct a counter surveillance in order to identify whether the principal is under surveillance. This will be continuous, without stops using four choke points with a three man car team.





AREA

The start point is from the Rendezvous Hotel on the south side of Skipton and the principal needs to be clear (or not) by the time they reach Gargrave village to the north.

Choke points will be placed at:

CP 1 Small roundabout in Skipton centre (Yellow 7)

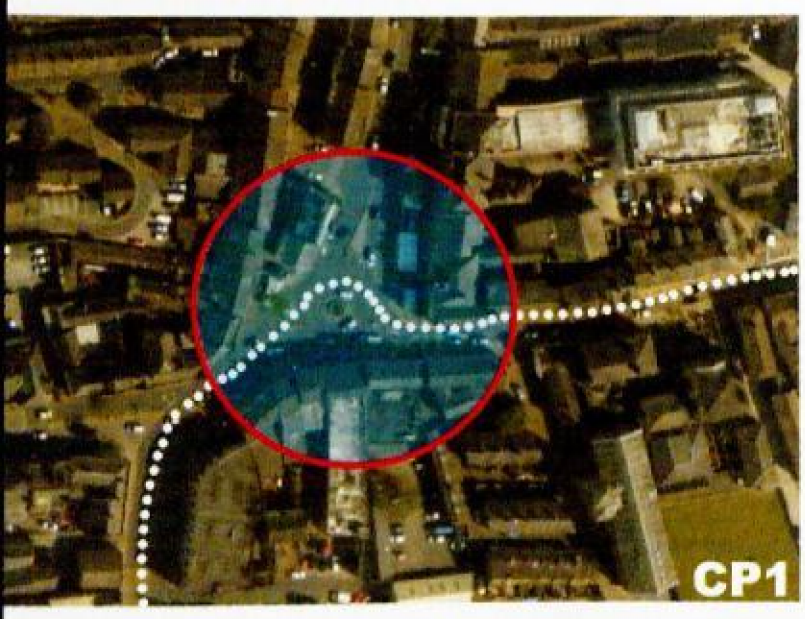
CP 2 Junction of The Bailey B6131 and the A65 (Yellow 11)

CP 3 On the A65 roundabout (Yellow 5)

CP 4 On the A59 Airton Road junction, 3Km after at Yellow 4 at the Bull pub

ERV Travelodge Hotel car park at Yellow 4

Principals ERV – Gargrave Garden Centre car park





SITUATION

Our client principal is a journalist who is meeting a confidential informant. He has asked us to mount a counter surveillance in order to identify whether he is under surveillance when he attends his meeting.

EXECUTION – GENERAL OUTLINE

A three car team will deploy to cover four choke points.

GOLF CP 1 SKIPTON CENTRE

HOTEL CP 2 JUNCTION OF THE BAILEY B6131 AND THE A65

INDIA CP 3 ON THE A65 JUST YELLOW 5 ROUNDABOUT

GOLF CP 4 ON THE A59 AIRTON ROAD JUNCTION, 3KM AFTER AT YELLOW 4 AT THE BULL PUB

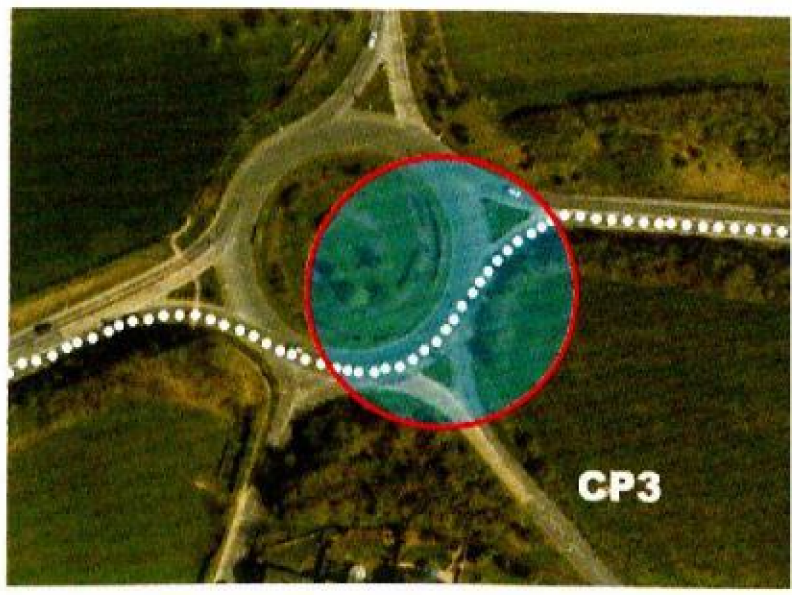
ISS TRAINING LTD

EXECUTION – IN DETAIL

We will depart at 15:50hrs to be in position for 16:00hrs. Notice will be given when the principal leaves the Rendezvous Hotel.

The route expected to take is:

- Right out of the hotel into Skipton town centre on the B6131
- At the bottom of the high street take the second exit at the roundabout signposted Leeds (A65)
- At the next T-junction go left on the A65 signposted 'Kendal & The Lakes'
- At the roundabout (Y10) take the first exit signposted, 'Kendal & The Lakes (A65)
- At the second roundabout take the second exit signposted, 'Clitheroe' on the A59
- After three Km turn right opposite the Bull Pub on the minor road towards Airton & Gargrave



CHOKE POINTS

GOLF CP 1 ///wreck.pixies.deduct

In Skipton centre covering the roundabout at Yellow 7. A good position is to park in the Unicorn Hotel car park and cover CP 1 from Café Neros. Assume that a surveillance team will be closed up as travelling though the town centre.

Once the principal has been though CP 1, you are to move to CP 4. It takes approximately 9 minutes for the principal to get to CP1 from the start point.

HOTEL CP 2 ///escapades.magazines.spires

To cover the junction of Otley Road A60691 and the A65. Easy to cover from a layby prior to the junction. You may identify a handover or aggressive driving as a surveillance team has to turn left towards a roundabout. It takes approximately 8 minutes to get to CP2 from CP1.

INDIA CP 3 ///estimates.sofas.crimson

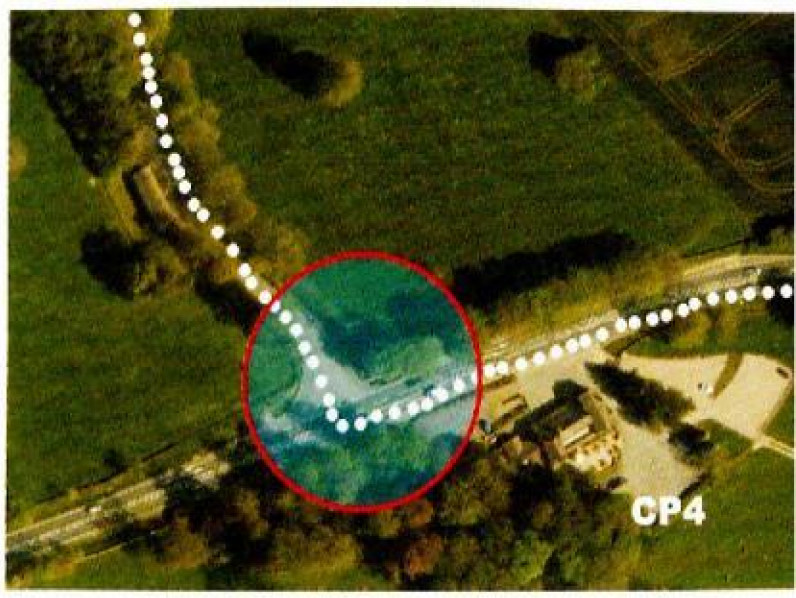
On the Yellow 5 roundabout. This can be covered from a minor road (Raikes Road) and can identify any vehicles behind the principal. Note that any surveillance might also carry out a handover at the roundabout. It takes approximately 3 minutes to get to CP3 from CP2.

GOLF CP4 ///mysteries.seasons.printer

Covering the A59 / Airton Road junction, 3Km after at Yellow 4. This is easy to cover from the Bull pub on the south side of the junction. It takes approximately 11 minutes to get to CP4 from CP3. You should be able to identify anyone else turning right at the junction and also any cautious driving or handovers. Note anyone that overshoots and then returns, turning towards Airton.

ERV ///golden.suppers.rats

All call-signs. Once the principal has been through your choke point, you are to move to the Team RV point at the Travelodge car park at Yellow 4 roundabout on the A65 / A59 to await further instructions.





View of CP 4 junction.



The Emergency RV

REPORTING PROCEDURE

Sightings of at least 10 vehicles behind the principal are to be handwritten on the log sheet and posted on WhatsApp. CS Golf is to collate all sightings and make a decision on whether surveillance is present or not.

CS Golf is then to report the findings to the principal by mobile phone on 07768 123456.

ACTIONS ON:

- **Principal being clear**

CS Golf will relay the information to the principal and the team will lift off and head back to the briefing room.

- **Actions on Surveillance Present**

Report the findings to the Principal who will then divert to Gargrave Garden Centre on the A65. All callsigns will head for the garden centre and a decision will be made by the team leader whether to:

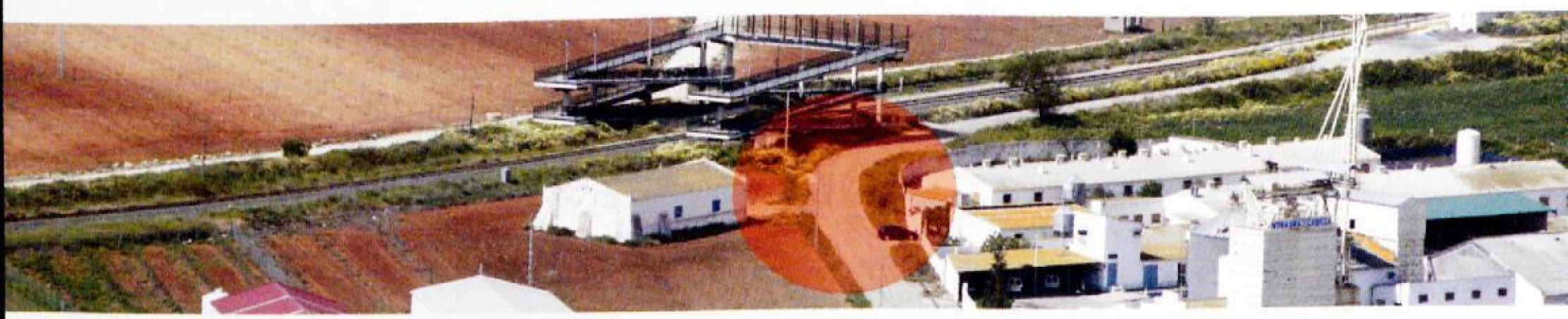
1. Put the hostile surveillance under surveillance themselves in order to gather any information about them.
2. Whether to intercept them and take ID photographs or video.
3. Let the principal return to the Rendezvous Hotel without alerting the hostile surveillance.

ADMINISTRATION

All callsigns to know everyone else's task in the event they have to cover it in an emergency or change of plan.
Medical pack is in CS Hotel.
All call signs to have a video camera and DSLR camera.

COMMAND & CONTROL

Phil C is team leader in CS Golf.
All telephone numbers as listed and all callsigns to check in on WhatsApp now showing their live location.
We are working on channel VHF 3, and mobile phone signal in the area is good.



CHAPTER EIGHT QUESTIONS

1) Explain the dynamics of the TEDD principle

2) Explain the stages of the Hostile Planning Cycle

3) Define the term Anti-Surveillance

4) Explain four of the various anti-surveillance measures that a target may carry out on foot

5) Explain four of the various anti-surveillance measures that a target may carry out whilst mobile

6) Evaluate the options that are open to a target who has identified that they are being followed

7) Explain when is a target more likely to carry out drilling?

Counter Surveillance

8) Define the term Counter Surveillance

9) Explain the key principles and objectives of counter surveillance

10) Illustrate why a minimum of three chokepoints should be used on a counter surveillance route

11) Explain why the counter surveillance route should not be along the same linear road

12) What should the first two chokepoints consider after the principal has been through their position

13) Produce a recce report for a counter surveillance operation to be used in a briefing

14) Produce a counter surveillance debrief report

Q&A

FOLLOW THE QR CODE TO TAKE YOU TO THE QUESTION & ANSWER 'HELP' PAGES.

ASSESSMENT TIME!

1) Explain the dynamics of the TEDD principle.

2) Explain the stages of the Hostile Planning Cycle.

3) Define the term Anti-Surveillance.

4) Explain four of the various anti-surveillance measures that a target may carry out on foot.

ISS TRAINING LTD

5) Explain four of the various anti-surveillance measures that a target may carry out whilst mobile.

6) Evaluate the options that are open to a target who has identified that they are being followed.

7) Explain when is a target more likely to carry out drilling?

8) Define the term Counter Surveillance.

9) Explain the key principles and objectives of counter surveillance.

10) Illustrate why a minimum of three chokepoints should be used on a counter surveillance route.

ISS TRAINING LTD

11) Explain why the counter surveillance route should not be along the same linear road.

12) What should those manning the first two chokepoints consider after the Principal has been through their position.

13) Produce a recce report for a counter surveillance operation to be used in a briefing.

14) Produce a counter surveillance debrief report.

Chapter Nine

EVIDENCE & LAW



In 2020 we can go out and put someone under surveillance. Anyone we like, take their photograph, video them or put a tracking device on their car without their permission. However, there are various pieces of legislation in place that give 'us', and the public, certain rights to privacy and you must be aware of them. Once we have conducted a surveillance, the result is that we may now hold personal and private information (data) about a person and that must be handled properly.

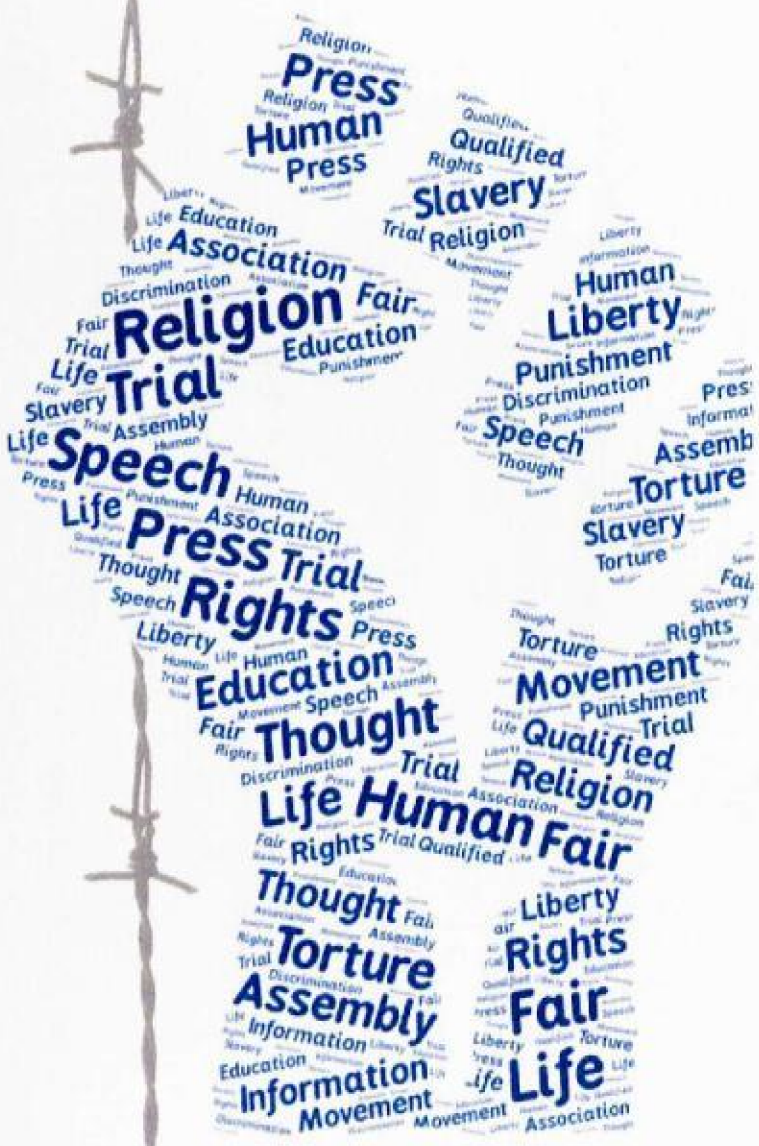
If we are going to carry out a surveillance, we obviously have a reason for doing so; the ultimate aim might be to gather information which may be used in a court of law as evidence. That evidence has to be accurate, fair, credible and accountable. We must record our observations in a manner that is accepted by the courts and in particular the by Criminal Procedures Investigations Act 1996 (CPIA), especially as our evidence will most likely be disclosed.

We may have carried out a surveillance which required detailed planning, took place over a number of days and achieved a positive result. But if we have not recorded our evidence correctly (especially if it is a criminal matter) then the whole case could be thrown out of court on a procedural matter.

These subjects are often very monotonous but are essential knowledge for the professional surveillance operator.



ISS TRAINING LTD



Scan the code for more detailed information

EUROPEAN CONVENTION ON HUMAN RIGHTS

In 2002 in the United Kingdom, we saw the introduction of the Human Rights Act 1998 (HRA). This gave us certain rights of protection. These rights stem from the European Convention on Human Rights (ECHR) which came into being in 1951 after the atrocities of the Second World War.

If someone's rights are breached, they can take their complaint to a UK court. It should be noted that the European Court of Human Rights is part of the Council of Europe and not the EU, so even having left Europe under 'Brexit' the legislation still applies.

The 14 Articles (or sections) under the HRA are:

Article 1: Obligation to respect human rights

Article 2: Right to life

Article 3: Freedom from torture and inhuman or degrading treatment

Article 4: Freedom from slavery and forced labour

Article 5: Right to liberty and security

Article 6: Right to a fair trial

Article 7: No punishment without law

Article 8: Respect for your private and family life, home and correspondence

Article 9: Freedom of thought, belief and religion

Article 10: Freedom of expression

Article 11: Freedom of assembly and association

Article 12: Right to marry and start a family

Article 13: Right to an effective remedy

Article 14: Protection from discrimination in respect of these rights and freedoms

ARTICLE 8: RESPECT FOR YOUR PRIVATE AND FAMILY LIFE, HOME AND CORRESPONDENCE

Article 8.1 states: Everyone has the right of respect for his private and family life, his home and his correspondence.

Article 8.2 goes on to state: There shall be no interference by a public authority with the exercise of his right except such as in accordance with the law and is necessary in a democratic society in the interests of national security, public safety or the economic well-being of the country, for the prevention of disorder or crime, for the protection of health or morals, or for the protection of the rights and freedoms of others.

Although Article 8.2 of the HRA uses the phrase 'Public Authority', private individuals should be aware of the Article which deals with the Right to Respect For Private and Family Life (Article 8.1).

In broad terms, the HRA affords people protection from surveillance but only applies to 'Public Authorities', not commercial or professional investigators.

ISS TRAINING LTD

REGULATION OF INVESTIGATORY POWERS ACT 2000 (RIPA)

In a way, the HRA prevents Public Authorities from carrying out surveillance unless they comply with another piece of legislation called the 'Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act 2000' or 'RIPA' as it is known.

RIPA ensures that a 'Public Body' has to be accountable for carrying out surveillance in order to prevent a person's human rights being violated, especially when personal and private information is being collated such as surveillance.

By Public Body we mean any organisation that comes under the 'Public' umbrella such as:

- Police
- Security Service
- Local Authorities
- Customs & Excise
- Environment Agency
- Trading Standards
- Department of Work & Pensions (Social Security)
- Royal Mail
- National Health Service

Private Investigators, Surveillance Operators or Security Consultants are not public bodies and so technically they do not have to seek any approval or authorisation in order to mount a surveillance. However, if a private investigator is carrying surveillance work on behalf of a public body, that body should still obtain authorisation in accordance with RIPA.

Prior to RIPA, any public body could put someone under surveillance for whatever reason, without authority and not be accountable to anyone. Since 2002, someone in public authority has to be made accountable in the event of things going wrong, procedures not being adhered to correctly or in the event of miscarriages of injustice.

To be accountable, public bodies need to:

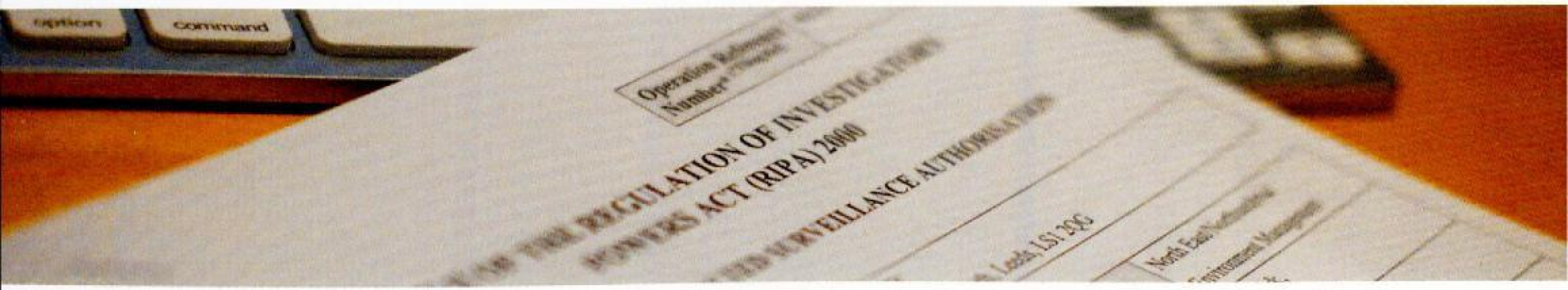
- Apply for authorisation
- Have tried all other investigative means
- Authorisation has to be granted by a person of rank, grade or a qualified authorising officer
- Receive authorisation and carry out surveillance in accordance with RIPA 2000

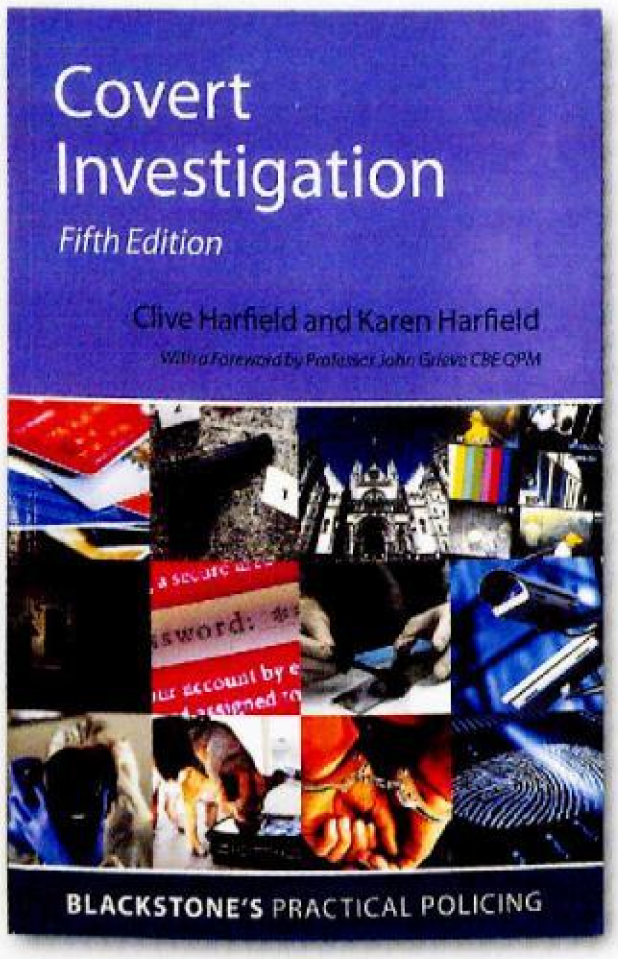


Scan the code for more detailed information about RIPA 2000

SECURITYSERVICE
MI5

Even MI5 has to comply with the RIPA process.





When a public body seeks authorisation, the Act requires them to follow human rights principles. In particular, they will be required to justify why they propose to use the powers in terms of legality, necessity and proportionality.

The case officer, or 'authorising officer' in relation to the application must ask the following questions:

- Is my proposed action lawful?
- Is it necessary?
- Is it proportionate?
- Is my action non-discriminatory?

An authorisation for directed surveillance may be granted:

- When needed for a particular case (no other means)
- In the interests of national security
- To prevent and detect crime or prevent disorder
- In the interests of the economic well-being of the UK
- In the interests of public safety
- To protect public health
- To assess, collect any tax, duty, levy or other charge payable to a government department

Authorisation is not required when immediately 'responding to an event'. For example, an Environmental Crime Officer is on his way home from work and sees someone fly tipping from their car into a lay-by; so he follows them in order to confirm the vehicle registration and establish the address of the offender. This would not need authorisation as he is responding to an event. However, if the officer needed to protract the surveillance for a few more hours he would be able to obtain verbal authority over the phone from his superior. He would not be allowed to return and continue the surveillance the following day as that would then be 'directed' surveillance and would warrant full authorisation.

Authorisations for surveillance are normally granted by a specially trained and designated authorising officer. Local Authorities applications have to be granted by a Magistrate.

Many corporate security teams for large organisations and corporations do not have to comply with RIPA as they are not a public body. However, they do carry out their own internal authorisation procedures based on RIPA in order to ensure 'best practice'.

ISS TRAINING LTD

KEY DEFINITIONS

SURVEILLANCE UNDER RIPA 2000 (SECTION 48 (2))

- Monitoring, observing or listening to persons, their movements, their conversations, activities or communications
- Recording anything monitored, observed or listened to in the course of surveillance and surveillance by or with the aid of a surveillance device
- It is covert
- If it is carried out in a manner that is calculated to ensure that the persons who are subject to surveillance are unaware that it is, or may be taking place

DIRECTED SURVEILLANCE

Surveillance is 'directed' if it is covert but not intrusive and is undertaken:

- For the purposes of a specific investigation or specific operation
- In such a manner as it is likely to result in the obtaining of private information about a person

AND

- Otherwise than by way of an immediate response to events or circumstances, the nature of which is such that it would not be reasonably practicable for an authorisation under this part to be sought for carrying out the surveillance

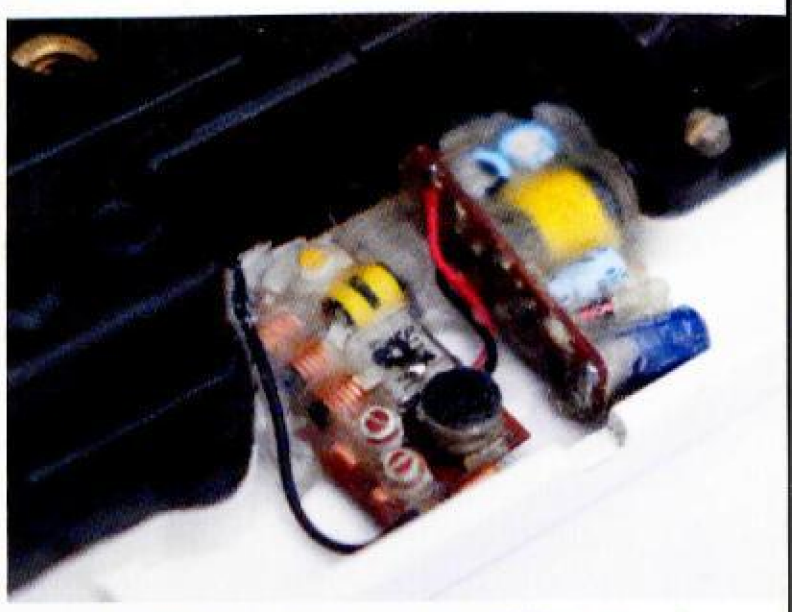
INTRUSIVE SURVEILLANCE

Surveillance is intrusive if, and only if, it is covert surveillance that:

- Is carried out in relation to anything taking place on any residential premises or in any private vehicle

AND

- Involves the presence of an individual on the premises or in a vehicle or is carried out by means of a surveillance device.



Bugging is intrusive surveillance and requires the Home Secretarys approval.



RESIDENTIAL PREMISES

"Any premises occupied or used by a person, however temporarily, for residential purposes or otherwise as living accommodation, including hotel or prison accommodation that is so occupied or used. Such accommodation might be in the form of a house, yacht, a railway arch or other makeshift shelter. It includes hotel rooms, bedrooms, barracks and prison cells but not any common area to which a person is allowed access in connection with his or her occupation."

PRIVATE VEHICLE

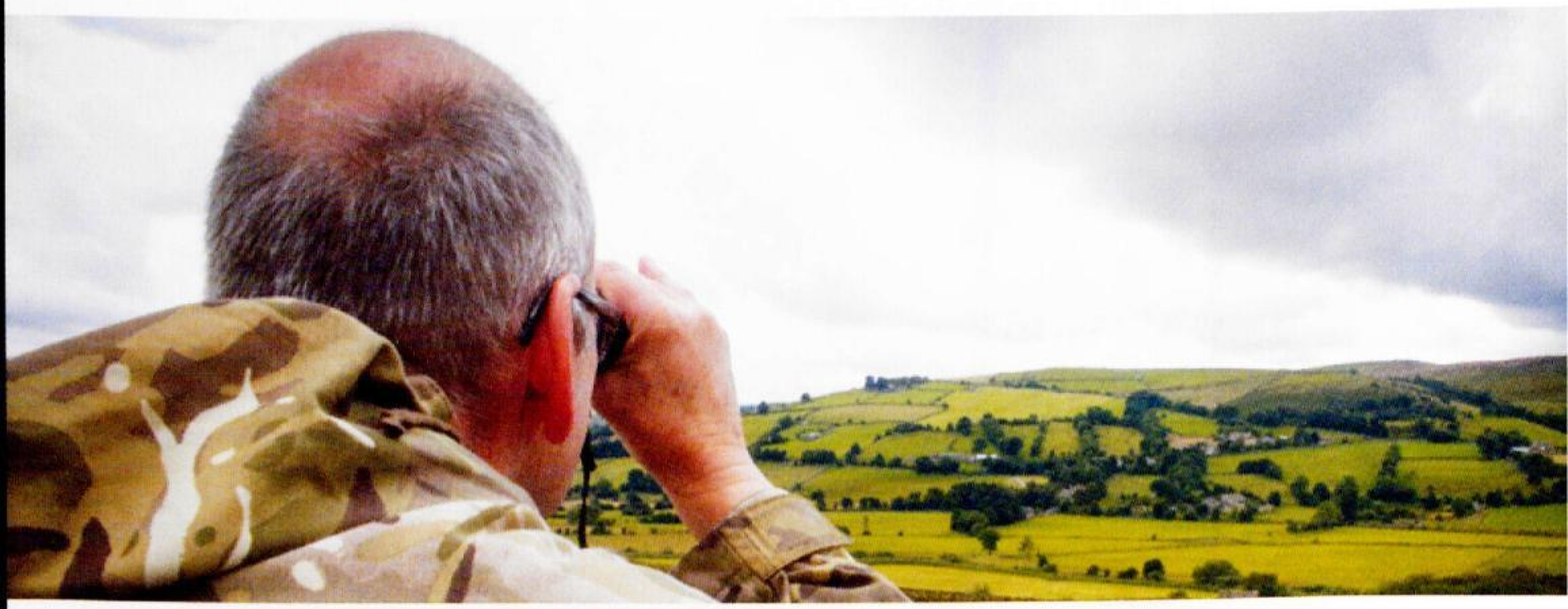
"Any vehicle which is used primarily for the private purpose (family, domestic & leisure use) of the person who owns it or of a person otherwise having the right of use to it. This does not include a person whose right to use the vehicle derives only from having paid, or undertaken to pay, for the use of the vehicle and its driver for a particular journey. A vehicle includes any vessel, aircraft or hovercraft."

"Intrusive surveillance must only be used in cases of serious crime where there are reasonable grounds for believing it is necessary for the specified action to be taken. The evidence obtained is likely to be of substantial value in the prevention or detection of serious crime and where the action it seeks to achieve cannot reasonably be achieved by any other means."

We mention these Acts because the private surveillance operator should be aware of them in the event that he is asked to carry out surveillance on behalf of a public body. Any public body or enforcement agency involved in investigation or surveillance work should already be familiar with procedures involved in obtaining authorisation, the HRA 1998 and RIPA 2000.

PRIVACY

The Human Rights Act 1998 together with the Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act 2000 can be a minefield and very confusing to the lay person. In summary, I would suggest that you continue with your surveillance as you have been in the past but keep in mind what you would consider as morally acceptable, fair and how you would expect to be treated in the same circumstances.



ISS TRAINING LTD

RIPA MISCONCEPTIONS BY THE MEDIA

The media are often found exclaiming in the headlines, 'Local Council using 'Controversial Anti-Terror Laws to catch Fly Tippers'. The reporters and their newspapers are sensationalising a story without really understanding the process and what RIPA is all about. First of all, its only controversial because the media make it so. Secondly, it is not 'anti-terror' legislation, it's human rights legislation.

Whether you are a terrorist, a fly tipper or you let your dog foul the street, the same legislation applies equally to all Public Bodies who conduct surveillance.

Fly tippers were around well before Al Qaeda but we do not see the headlines 'Al-Qaida Terrorists Apprehended Using Anti Dog Fouling laws'!



Credit: SIRA Studios



Revealed: British councils used Ripa to secretly spy on public

Local authorities used Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act to follow people, including dog walkers, over five years



NEVER LET THE TRUTH
GET IN THE WAY OF A GOOD STORY...
THE JOURNALISTS CHARTER.

Covert surveillance powers designed to combat terrorism and organised crime have been used by councils to spy on people feeding pigeons and failing to clean up dog mess, an investigation found.

Local authorities were granted permission to carry out more than 55,000 days of covert surveillance over a five-year period using the Government's Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act (Ripa).

A Freedom of Information request has revealed that two-thirds of the 283 councils that responded had used the powers to gather evidence on members of the public.

The councils using terror law to spy on barking dogs and people who feed pigeons: Local authorities given permission to carry out 55,000 hours of surveillance over the past five years

- An investigation uncovered that some councils have been spying on the public
- Councils launched 2,800 separate surveillance operations lasting up to 90 days
- Former Metropolitan police chief Brian Paddick called it 'absurd'

Mirror FANTASY FOOTBALL £50k up for grabs in our free-to-play game›

Mirror

Download our FREE mobile and tablet apps›

Most read · Live feeds · ★ Recommended for you · News · Football · Celebs · TV & Film · Weird News

TRENDING · CLIFF RICHARD · JAMES FOLEY · EBOLA · ISIS · FLIGHT MH370 · MUST SEE

Sport · Technology · Money · Travel · Motoring

News · UK News · Education

Experienced teacher followed by council snoopers who reported on her 'flamboyant shoes' during sick leave

Nov 01, 2013 15:21 By **Gareth Evans**

She had 28 years' experience but was watched as she shopped in Asda and Wilkinson

With our free fast-track parcel drop off service

Private detectives were paid £3,600 by a school to spy on a suspended English teacher who had taught there for 28 years.

English teacher Kim Shaw, 56, was followed by a professional private surveillance team for three days after she went on stress-related sick leave, an employment tribunal heard today.

Mrs Shaw, who taught English at Pontllanfraith Comprehensive School, near Caerphilly, South Wales, was suspended after allegations about 'irregularities' in her GCSE student coursework.

She was suspended for discussing it with colleagues and was accused of a 'breach of confidentiality', the tribunal in Cardiff heard.

Mrs Shaw went on sick leave for stress-related conditions following her suspension.

She was then spied on by Caerphilly Council officials, who paid the private security team.

Caerphilly County Council obtained RIPA authority to have Mrs Shaw covertly followed and filmed - she suffered from stress. When the CCC RIPA Application was scrutinised it had many faults and should not have been authorised.

CCC responded stating that they did not actually need RIPA authority and quoted the 'IPT' Case'as their reason.

Mail Online

Home · News · U.S. · Sport · TV&Showbiz · Australia

Latest Headlines · Coronavirus · Royal Family · Boris Johnson

School spent £3,600 putting its own teacher under surveillance after she went on sick leave with stress

- **English teacher Kim Shaw was followed by private detectives for three days**
- **Officials at Caerphilly Council paid £3,600 to have her followed**
- **She had gone on stress-related leave after being suspended from working at Pontllanfriath Comprehensive School**
- **The council thought she wasn't stressed because she 'was wearing shoes with flowers on them', Mrs Shaw claimed**

By DAILY MAIL REPORTER

'She went to Wilkinsons in unusual kitten-heeled shoes': Undercover council snoopers' report on sick teacher with 28 years' experience

- **English teacher Kim Shaw, 56, was followed by a professional private surveillance team for three days in an operation that cost £3,600**
- **Was on stress-related sick leave from Pontllanfraith Comprehensive School in South Wales when Caerphilly Council authorised the surveillance**
- **Say mission was to see whether Mrs Shaw was 'defrauding the authority's sickness absence system'**
- **Report by Conquest Surveillance Services noted Mrs Shaw wore 'unusual' kitten-heeled shoes during shopping trip and walked 'bow-legged' up a hill**

By LUCY OSBORNE FOR THE DAILY MAIL

NOT A LOT OF PEOPLE KNOW THIS...

Investigatory Powers Tribunal Case No: IPT/03/32/H

Not a lot of people know this, but public authorities don't always need RIPA authority to put someone under surveillance. This particular case is very complicated but here is a summary.

In 2001 a police officer retired after a long career on medical grounds (for an accident two years earlier) when he tripped on a carpet, fell and injured his back at the police station. He retired in receipt of his full pension.

He made a claim for damages, and in July 2002 he received £100,000.

He also made a claim for an 'enhanced injury on duty award' under the Police Pension Regulations 1987 which he was to receive with a disability of 24%. He felt the enhanced pension was not enough (in retirement he was going to be a driver) and so appealed to the Police Pensions Appeal Tribunal and his disability level of fitnes (or otherwise) was increased to 53%.

In August & September 2002, the police force were suspicious of his disability claims and so instructed a firm of private investigators to put him under surveillance.

He wasn't subject to any criminal investigation or internal disciplinary proceedings, but the police suspected he was exaggerating his claims. The surveillance revealed that he was fit enough to mow his lawn, could walk unimpeded and drive his car.

In light of the surveillance video, the police removed the 'enhanced' portion of his pension. As a consequence the officer appealed; his main claim was that the police (including the PI firm) had carried out an unlawful covert surveillance in breach of his right to respect for his 'private and family life and his home' under Article 8 of the ECHR and Section 6 of the Human Rights Act.

His appeal was presented on the basis that the police did not follow correct procedure and obtain authority in accordance with RIPA.

THE FULL IPT CASE CAN BE DOWNLOADED BY CLICKING ON THE QR CODE



Surveillance is often used to identify fraudulent disability insurance claims.

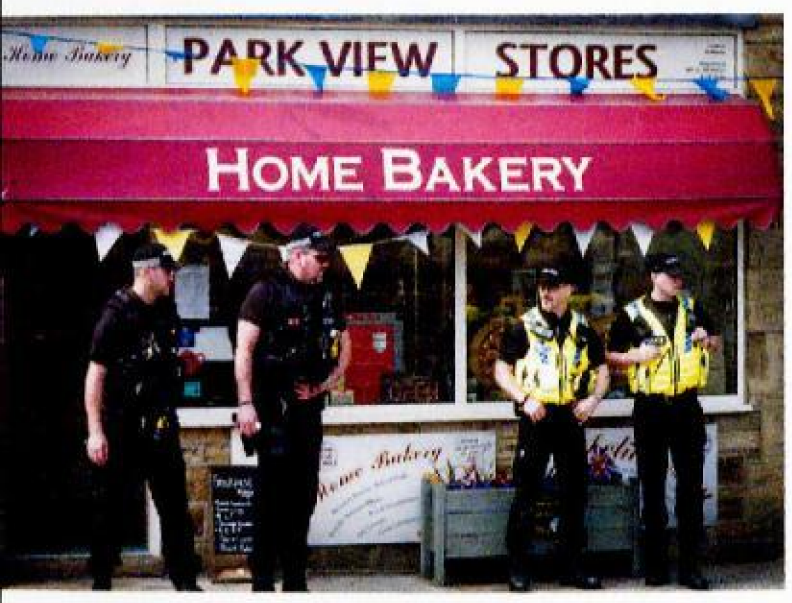
POLICE LINE - DO NOT CROSS \\\ POLICE LINE - DO NOT CROSS \\\ POLICE LINE

C. vs. The Police

IPT/03/32

This ruling relates to an open hearing held to determine whether the Tribunal had jurisdiction under RIPA to determine a claim made by a retired police officer against his former police force. The claim was for unlawful covert surveillance in breach of his right to respect for his private and family life and his home under Article 8 of the European Convention on Human Rights (the Convention) and section 6 of the Human Rights Act 1998 (the 1998 Act). The Tribunal ruled that, as the case related to the use of Private Investigators to undertake directed surveillance in relation to an employment dispute, no public interest would be served by giving the Tribunal exclusive jurisdiction over such a case. Therefore the Tribunal concluded this was not a case of directed surveillance within RIPA. It therefore fell outside the jurisdiction of the Tribunal.

Judgment dated : 14 Jul 06



No comment...

Note: Although RIPA provides a framework for obtaining internal authorisations of directed surveillance, there is no general prohibition in RIPA against conducting directed surveillance without RIPA. Lack of authorisation under RIPA does not necessarily mean that the carrying out of directed surveillance is unlawful.

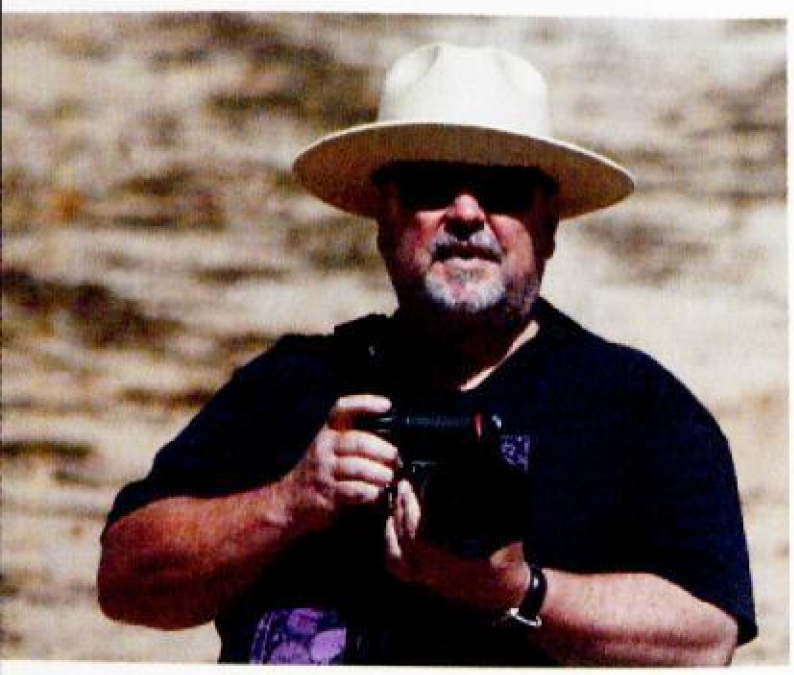
You would expect a police force (service) to fully comply with the provisions of RIPA to conduct a covert surveillance, this is the norm; but at the appeal, the IPT claimed that in this instance, RIPA was not required.

The police contended that the activities objected to by the Applicant were lawful; that they did not require any authorisation under RIPA, as the activities had not been carried out in the exercise of the specific or "core" public functions of the police. Simply put, the police were not investigating him as part of their 'normal duties' (catching criminals) but it was an 'internal' issue concerning one of their own. In addition, it was argued that RIPA is only required on the grounds of:

- In the interests of the economic well being of the United Kingdom
- The interests of national security
- For the purpose of preventing or detecting crime or preventing public disorder
- In the interests of public safety and protecting public health

It was none of the above. The point highlighted by the police was that surveillance of an employee in the circumstances of this kind of case is unlikely to justify the use of a procedurally restrictive regime and special safeguards, which are tailored to the needs of the public interest and national security (RIPA).

The officer lost his appeal and his enhanced pension.



PROTECTION FROM HARASSMENT ACT 1997

This Act is briefly mentioned as a number of investigators have been threatened with being taken to court for harassment by a target who had compromised them.

This act has often been referred to as the 'Stalker's Act' and is designed to catch all types of harassment, not just offences such as stalking. It can also include neighbourhood disputes, anti-social behaviour, racial hatred, bullying and domestic violence. Extracts here are taken from the Protection from Harassment Act 1997, Chapter 40.

The Act states that a person must not pursue a course of conduct which he/she knows (or ought to know) amounts to the harassment of another. It is not necessary to prove that the person intended that his/her conduct amounted to harassment. The test is whether a reasonable person, who had the same information would think that it amounted to harassment.

It does not apply to a course of conduct if the person who pursued it shows:

- That it was pursued for the purpose of preventing or detecting crime
- That it was pursued under any enactment or rule of law or to comply with any condition or requirement imposed by any person under any enactment

OR

- That in the particular circumstances the pursuit of the course of conduct was reasonable

ISS TRAINING LTD



DEFINITION

Harassment is not defined by the Act, the courts will probably have to rely upon the dictionary definition (to worry, pester, annoy, distress). Factors which may be taken into account:

- Where and when the conduct (harassment) occurred
- The relationship between the harasser and victim, and
- The previous dealings between the parties

Scan here for more informatiion about the Protection From Harassment Act 1997

In criminal proceedings, harassment must have occurred on at least two occasions, although a civil claim may succeed where there has only been one incident especially if there are reasonable grounds to believe that the harassment may occur again.

CRIMINAL OFFENCE OF HARASSMENT

The Act creates two criminal offences:

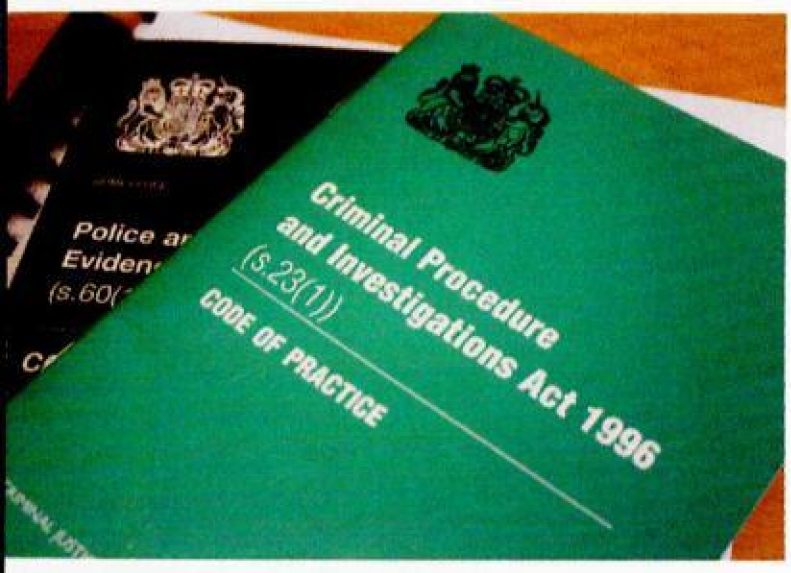
- **Harassment**

It is an offence to pursue a course of conduct which amounts to the harassment of another when the harasser knows (or ought to know) his conduct amounts to harassment. The offence is arrestable and is dealt with in the Magistrates Court. If convicted a person can be sentenced to up to six months imprisonment or fined up to £5,000, or both

- **Causing Fear of Violence**

This is a more serious offence. The offence is committed if a person's course of conduct causes another person to fear, on at least two occasions, that violence will be used against him/her. This offence can be tried at the Crown Court





CIVIL OFFENCE OF HARASSMENT

A person who is, or may be, the victim of a course of conduct amounting to harassment can bring a civil action. This claim will be heard in the County Court or in the High Court. The Court can award for damages including anxiety and any resulting financial loss.

The victim or potential victim can also ask the Court to grant an injunction restraining the person from any conduct which amounts to harassment. If the person does anything which is prohibited by that injunction, he or she can be sentenced to imprisonment for contempt of Court.

IN YOUR DEFENCE

It is a defence to show that the person's course of conduct was instigated for the prevention or detection of crime, or was authorised by statute (bailiff), or it was reasonable for purposes of protecting him/herself or another person or property.

If the Secretary of State certifies that in their opinion anything done by a specified person on a specified occasion related to:

- National security
- The economic well-being of the United Kingdom, or
- The prevention or detection of serious crime

And was done on behalf of the Crown, the certificate is conclusive evidence that this Act does not apply to any conduct of that person on that occasion. The Act, like any other, is hard to understand but nevertheless, important.

SURVEILLANCE

Surveillance may be carried out in any public place so long as trespass is not committed (see page 323). A public place can be defined as a place or premises to which the public has access or has access subject to conditions, and where a reasonable person would have no general expectation of privacy, or would expect privacy to be significantly reduced.

This extends to private land which is capable of being overseen by the general public such as driveways and gardens. A public place also includes private areas that are open to the public such as parks, zoos and fairgrounds, whether by free admission or by payment.



Credit: HIT

Wildlife Persecution, the killing of a snared badger:
Imagery taken from public land onto private land approximately 800m away.

OBSERVATION POSTS

R V RANKINE 1986 & R V JOHNSON 1988



In the case of Rankine, he was a drug dealer whose activities were being observed by police officers in an OP. They radioed a colleague who made the arrests to preserve the security of the OP and the identities of those who allowed the police to use it.

At the hearing, the judge made a decision that the Defence were not allowed to cross-examine the officers and ask questions that would identify the location of the OP and thus reveal the informant's details.

Not so much for the private individual, but a public body, when carrying out surveillance should be familiar with the R-v- Rankin and Johnson rules where there are set guidelines for carrying out surveillance in public places. This is essential when carrying out surveillance from an observation post on someone's private property such as in a house, and with special regards to the disclosure of the evidence obtained. All evidence obtained must be revealed, as it will be required to be disclosed. However, surveillance methods, tactics and in particular the location of observation posts do not have to be disclosed for fear of reprisals against the owner of the property.

TRESPASS

In the UK, entry to land or property which is unauthorised is the civil offence of trespass, even if no damage is caused. You cannot be prosecuted for trespass as it is a civil tort and you would have to be sued in the County Courts. If you are on private property and asked to leave, then leave. The owner does have certain rights which allows them to use minimum reasonable force to remove you or prevent you from entering.

The distinguishing feature of trespass in modern law is that it is a direct and immediate interference with person or property, such as striking a person, or entering his land without his consent. The act of trespass is a 'tort' (a civil wrong) not a crime and therefore it is not necessary to prove that it has caused damage. The sign 'Trespassers will be Prosecuted' is therefore usually misleading and should actually read, 'Trespassers will be Sued'.

The placement of a tracking device on a vehicle parked on private land such as a driveway would be deemed as trespass to land. As opposed to it being attached in a public place such as a supermarket car park. However, by attaching the device to a car you would also be considered to be interfering with property and so also causing a trespass.

There are three types of trespass: to the Person, to Goods and to Land. Trespass to land, usually takes the form of entering it without permission; remaining on land after the owner has withdrawn his permission for you to be there, is also a trespass.

Sometimes, committing trespass outweighs and justifies the means. Therefore, if you site a rural OP on private property and you can substantiate that it was necessary and proportionate, you should not have a problem if it is justified.

In the case R v William Jackson and others (Newcastle upon Tyne Crown Court), the Environment Agency deployed a covert video camera on a target's property to observe and record the site. The defence accused the Agency of committing trespass.

Huntsman found guilty of animal cruelty after activists' secret filming

Footage shows then master of hounds Paul Oliver taking fox cubs into kennels



▲ Fox cubs allegedly used to train hounds in hunting kennel – video

A senior huntsman has been found guilty of animal cruelty and given a 16-week suspended jail sentence after activists secretly filmed him apparently preparing to throw fox cubs to a pack of baying hounds.

Animal rights campaigners claim the conviction is significant because it shows a master of hounds "blooding" the animals – training them to kill foxes – 15 years after the ban on hunting with dogs was introduced.

The footage was obtained by members of a group called HIT (the Hunt Investigation Team), who say they include ex-services personnel who have had training in covert investigative methods.

They obtained evidence for the prosecution by fixing a tracking device to the vehicle of a man they believed to have connections to the South Herefordshire Hunt and mapping his movements out into the wilds, where they suspected he was catching fox cubs.



Credit: Hunt Investigation Team

The activists also set up cameras at the hunt's kennels and obtained footage that showed the then master of hounds, Paul Oliver, taking fox cubs into the kennels.

Though the footage does not show what happened inside the kennels complex, the prosecution at Birmingham magistrates court claimed he was blooding the hounds.

Oliver, 40, and kennel maid Hannah Rose, 30, both of Spalding, Lincolnshire, were found guilty of causing unnecessary suffering to fox cubs. Joanna Dickens, the district judge, convicted Oliver of four counts of animal cruelty and Rose of three counts of the same charge.

The pair and two others who pleaded guilty were due to be sentenced later on Monday.

The Judge's comments were: *"It follows that I am not satisfied that the placement of the camera or indeed the associated recording equipment amounts to trespass at all. While the EA officers may have momentarily strayed onto the land already identified, that act was so limited in time and degree as to warrant no further consideration. It did not extend beyond doing any more than was necessary to facilitate the surveillance and was entirely incidental to the process of installation of the camera".*

"The trespass complained of was extremely limited, there is no evidence of deliberate wrongdoing, or deliberate contravention of executive powers or guidance. There is a total absence of bad faith". (HH Judge John Evans, 14 December 2012).

Therefore, the trespass was deemed lawful and was proportionate to achieve the desired result.

Environment Agency

AND FORGIVE US OUR TRESPASSES,
AS WE FORGIVE THOSE WHO TRESPASS AGAINST US

10th June 2019

South Herefordshire Hunt accused sentenced for fox cub cruelty



Hannah Rose and Paul Oliver leaving Birmingham Magistrates' Court last week. Picture: Matthew Cooper/PA Wire

50 comments

A senior huntsman convicted of allowing his hounds to kill four fox cubs has been handed a 16-week suspended jail sentence for causing their "painful, terrifying" deaths.

Paul Oliver, who was master of hounds with the now disbanded South Herefordshire Hunt, was not banned from keeping animals because he would lose his job at a stud yard.

Passing sentence at Birmingham Magistrates' Court today, District Judge Joanna Dickens also imposed a 12-week suspended sentence on Oliver's partner, Hannah Rose, the hunt's kennel maid.

Police Say To Carry This

Police say everyone should carry this new safety device that protects against attackers

OPEN

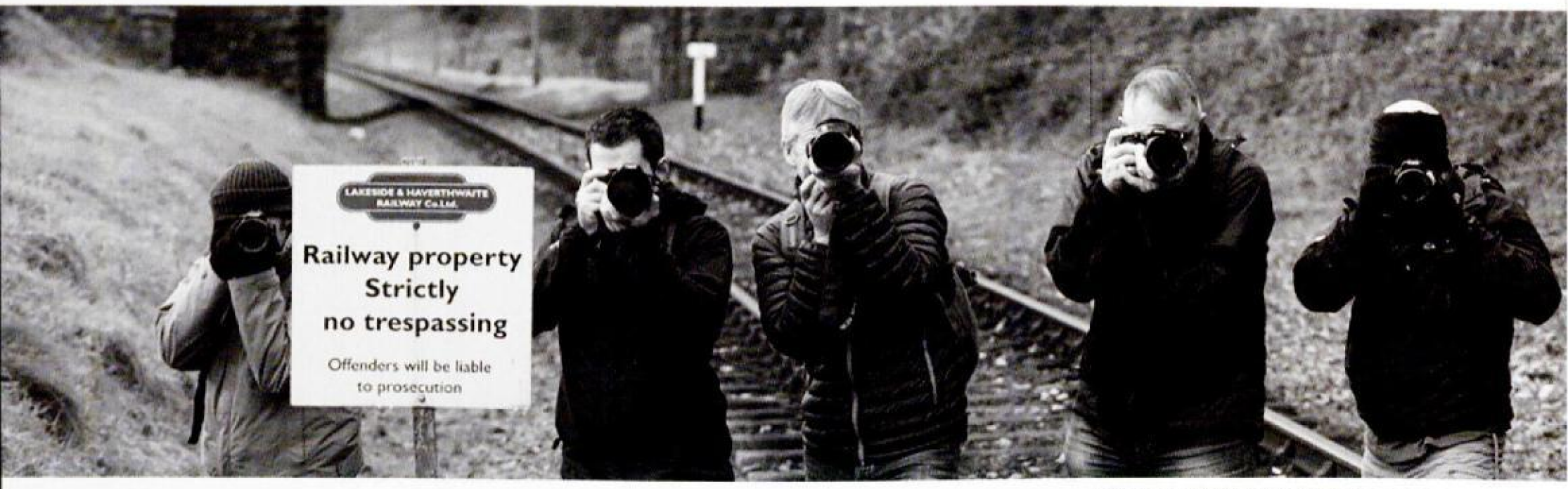
MOST READ COMMENTED

1 Driver caught traveling over 130mph was 'familiarising

Credit: Hereford Times

The Defence in the case of the 'South Herefordshire Hunt' attempted to discredit how the video evidence against them was obtained, proclaiming that the investigators comitted trespass when deploying covert cameras.

Two defendants pleaded guilty, two others were found guilty of animal cruelty.



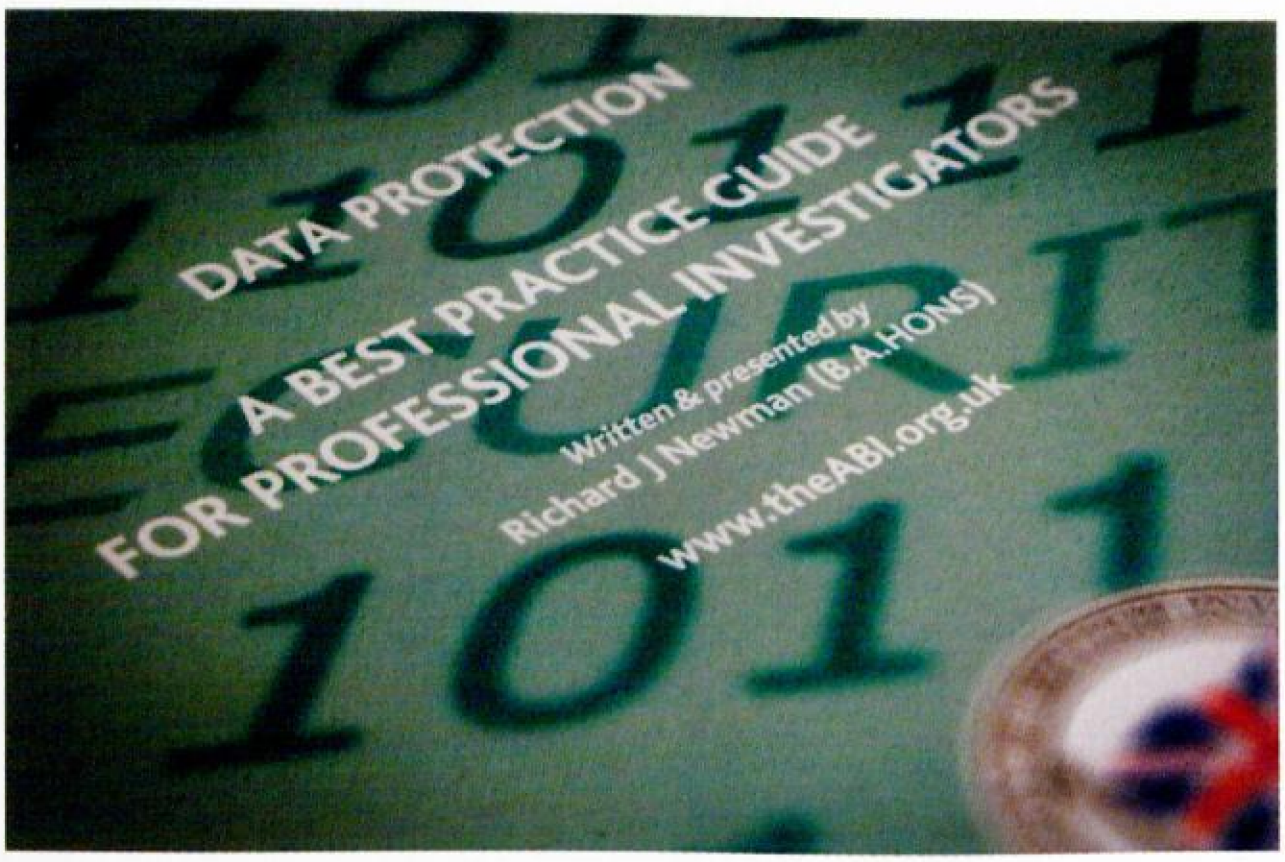
Only on British Rail property can you be prosecuted for trespass.

DATA PROTECTION ACT 2018

The Data Protection Act 1998 came into force on 1st March 2000 and then in 2018 it was revised with the introduction of the General Data Protection Regulations (GDPR). It sets rules for processing personal information and applies to some written paper records as well as those held on computers. The Act applies to 'personal data' that is about identifiable living individuals.

The Data Protection Act is extremely complicated and therefore only the fundamentals that would affect the surveillance operator are covered here. The Act declares that in the United Kingdom, any person who compiles or holds private information, whether you are a private investigator, security consultant or even the owner of a cycle rental shop (who may store names and addresses) are required by law to be registered with the Data Protection Registrar. Failure to do so can result in heavy fines and/or imprisonment.

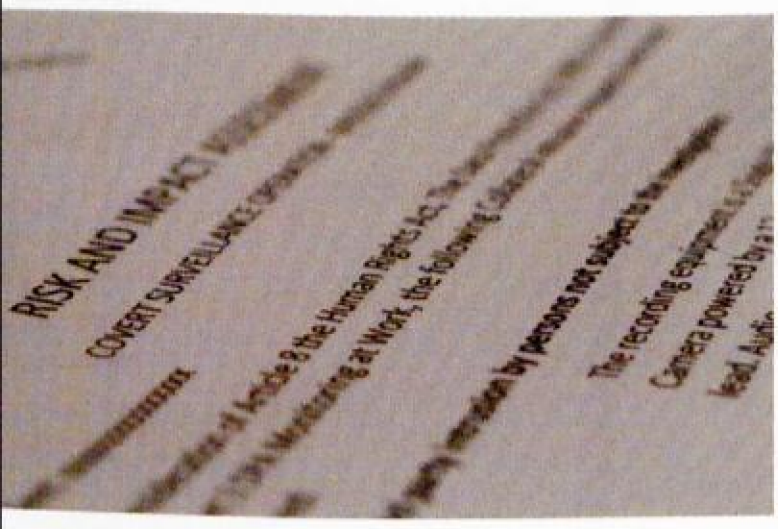
With the introduction of the GDPR, certain additional aspects were introduced which meant that Data Controllers must have a GDPR policy in place which details; how, where, when & why data is kept together with information on how long it is kept for, how it is stored plus how and when it is deleted etc.



Scan here for more informatiion about the Data Protection Act 2018 & GDPR.



Scan here for more informatiion about the Information Comissioners Office.



Anyone processing information or personal data (be it on computer, video, photographic or written on paper) must comply with the eight enforceable principles of good practice, which states that information is:

1. Fairly and lawfully processed
2. Processed for one specific and limited purpose
3. Adequate, relevant and not excessive
4. Kept accurate and up to date
5. Not kept for longer than necessary
6. Processed in accordance with the data subject's rights
7. Acceptable security measures are used to prevent unauthorised use or misuse of data
8. Not transferred to foreign countries without adequate protection

The person holding the information is referred to as the 'Data Controller', the person which has information stored about them is referred to as the 'Data Subject'. Personal data covers both facts and opinions about the individual and also includes information regarding the intentions of the Data Controller towards the individual.

THE DATA SUBJECT'S RIGHTS

The reason and concept of the Data Protection Act was to partially provide some sort of fairness and security for the 'Data Subjects' or 'us', the general public. As so much information is being stored and processed by many organisations, it was deemed that this information should be kept accurate, truthful and fair. The Act also makes provision for the 'Data Subject' so that he or she is able to find out what information is held about themselves on computer and/or on paper files. This is known as the 'right of subject access'.

The Act also allows individuals to apply to the Courts to order a Data Controller to rectify, block, erase or destroy personal details if they are inaccurate or contain expressions of opinion which are based on inaccurate data.

ICO PRIVACY IMPACT ASSESSMENT (PIA)

The Information Commissioners Office (ICO) have produced a guide to the way the data processors and controllers comply with their data protection regulations. As part of which, some surveillance organisations conduct a privacy risk assessment before any operations, in order to minimise collateral intrusion and reduce the collection of data. Conducting a PIA is not a legal requirement.

ISS TRAINING LTD

DATA PROTECTION ACT IN RELATION TO COVERT CCTV

The DPA takes into account the use of domestic CCTV systems for your own private security and does not expect every householder to register with them. However, the Act gives certain exemptions to the eight enforceable principles for a CCTV camera mounted on private and domestic property.

Section 36 of the DPA states that:- Personal data processed by an individual only for the purposes of that individual's personal, family or household affairs (including recreational purposes) are exempt from the Data Protection Principles.



If a person enters the property covered by CCTV the owner does not need to put up notices stating that the person is entering a CCTV covered area. Nor is he required to provide a copy of the film he has taken to the Data Subject if they make a formal request.

If that CCTV camera picks up images outside the premises, such as a pedestrian walking past, or a camera overlooks his neighbours garden then the above eight principles have to be considered and a sign put up. However, if your camera is 'covert', Part 1 of the DPA CCTV Code of Practice states:

In exceptional and limited cases, if it is assessed that the use of signs would not be appropriate, the user of the scheme must ensure that they have:

a) Identified specific criminal activity
b) Identified the need to use surveillance to obtain evidence of that criminal activity
c) Assessed whether the use of signs would prejudice success in obtaining such evidence
d) Assessed how long the covert monitoring should take place to ensure that it is not carried out for longer than is necessary
e) Documented (a) to (d) above



Information must only be obtained for prevention or detection of criminal activity, or the apprehension and prosecution of offenders. It should not be retained and used for any other purpose. If the equipment used has a sound recording facility, this should not be used to record conversations between members of the public.

Therefore, you are able to install covert CCTV so long as you comply with the above codes of practice and the enforceable principles of the DPA.



TRACKER DEPLOYMENT LEGAL LOOPHOLE OR THE LAW?

Legal loophole exposed after activist not prosecuted for 'planting' tracker on hunt vehicle



Credit: Daily Telegraph

Follow

By Valerie Elliott and Patrick Sawer, SENIOR NEWS REPORTERS

18 JANUARY 2020 • 8:06PM

Countryside groups have called for tougher rules on the use of tracking devices after a huntswoman allegedly caught an anti-hunt activist planting one under her horse trailer.

The incident has prompted calls for the Home Office to close a loophole in the law after it emerged that the activist is to face no charges over the incident

LEGAL LOOPHOLE?

Reported in the Daily Telegraph in 2020 and repeated on the Countryside Alliance's website they have called for tougher rules on the use of tracking devices after a huntswoman allegedly caught an anti-hunt activist planting one under her horse trailer.

Hunt saboteurs were attempting to track her horse trailer in order to establish where the Wynnstay Hunt were riding but the device was compromised.

The hunt and in particular Mary Wynne-Jones, Market Drayton claim that there is a legal 'loophole'. She stated, "I really cannot believe this. I think it has to be an illegal act for someone to put a tracker on someone's vehicle without their consent. It was obviously intended to follow me so saboteurs could find out where I was going hunting which is a legal activity. This should be a criminal offence."

There isn't a loophole, there is the law. The incident was reported to the Police who stated, "As the female (saboteur) made it quite clear the alleged tracker was NOT placed there to commit theft, no crime has been committed." PC Perrin, of Rhos police station added that various other offences had been considered "but these circumstances did not fit any."

Tim Bonner, chief executive of the Countryside Alliance, described the episode as "incredibly sinister and worrying". North Wales Police declined to comment but said in a statement: " A private individual placing a tracker on another person's vehicle is not in itself a criminal offence.

The Association of British Investigators (ABI) produced a policy document for all its members concerning the use of tracking devices and is available to download on their website.

Credit: Sunday Telegraph

The Countryside Alliance are calling for tougher rules on the use of tracking devices after a hunt follower allegedly caught an extremist hunt saboteur planting one under her horse trailer.

The story has been covered by the Sunday Telegraph.

The legal loophole was identified when Mary Wynne-Jones, 68, from Market Drayton, discovered a hunt saboteur brazenly trying to fix a tracker to her Land Rover and trailer. The shocking incident took place on December 6 2019, shortly before Christmas.

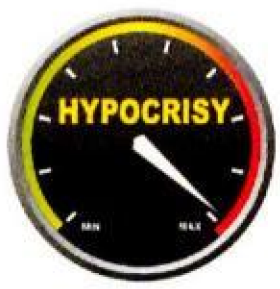
Realising she had been caught in the act, the saboteur, who is known locally, quickly claimed she was thinking about buying a trailer and wanted to see if she could manage one, before disappearing.

Suspecting something was wrong, Mrs Wynne-Jones searched her trailer only to discover a tracker in the chassis.

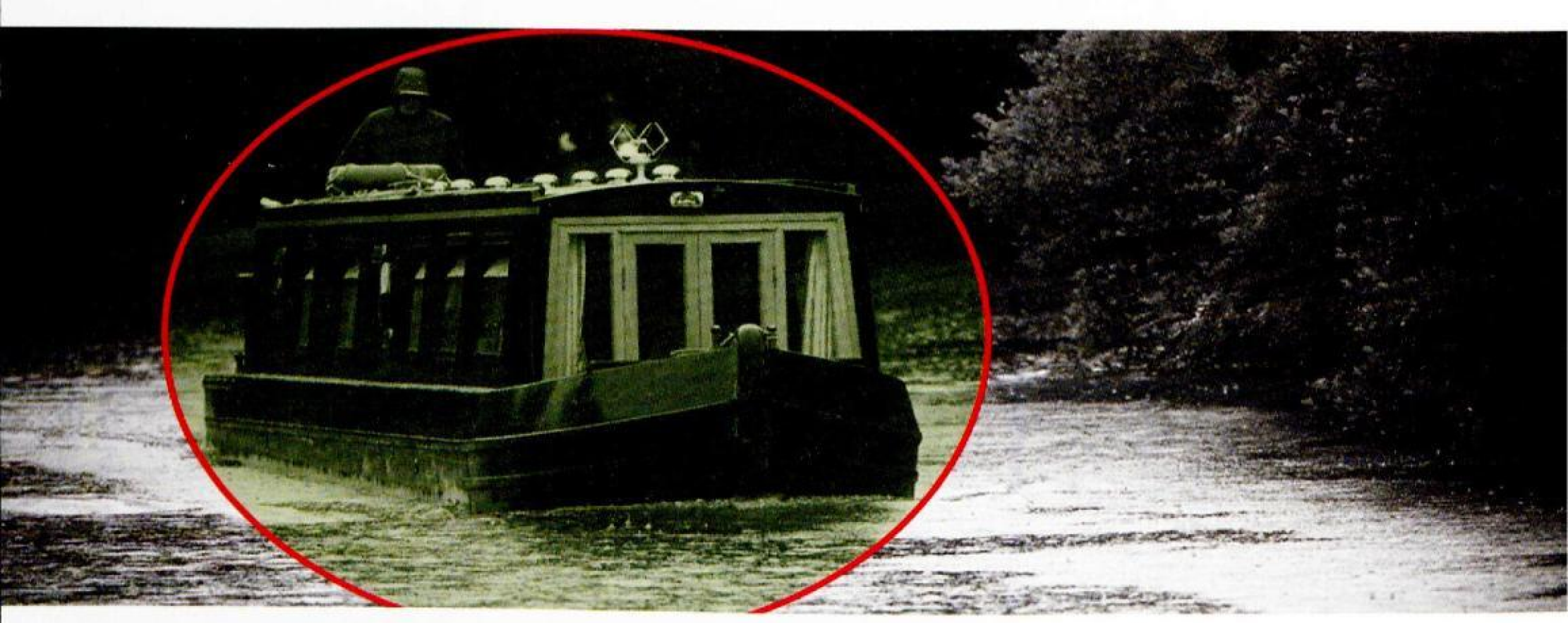
Unexpectedly, the female saboteur then returned only to admit to Mrs Wynne-Jones and two police officers that she had placed the tracker.

Speaking to the Sunday Telegraph, Mrs Wynne-Jones said: " She told me it was uncharacteristic and a spur of the moment thing."

However, despite the shocking admission, Mrs Wynne-Jones received a short letter from North Wales Police stating: "As the female made it quite clear the alleged tracker was NOT placed there to commit theft, no crime has been committed."



What is ironic is that other individuals from the hunt fraternity approached our company to place a tracker on a hunt saboteurs vehicle...
 # thepotcallingthekettleblack



USE OF TRACKERS

The use of trackers by the public in the UK is open to examination for the previous reasons stated in relation to trespass. The use of a tracking device only provides information regarding the location of what it is attached to. It does not provide any personal or private information about an individual and therefore cannot infringe a person's human rights.

Some would argue that a tracking device is considered 'intrusive' rather than 'directed' surveillance as far as RIPA is concerned. However, the Surveillance Commissioner has stated that the use of trackers (not manufactured or adapted to capture & send an audio or video signal) is not intrusive, provided that the surveillance itself is lawful, and no offences are committed in attaching or removing the tracker (trespass).

He views the use of a tracking device as a surveillance tool, and therefore no different than a camera.

However, Part 3 of The Police Act 1997 states that property interference, entry onto or into any private property (including deploying surveillance devices (trackers)), on vehicles trespassing on private land is considered intrusive. This only concerns the Police (its's the Police Act after all) and not private individuals.

The Act recognises that surveillance will encroach on the privacy of an individual and therefore imposes strict controls over the authorisations of those operations which involve interference with private property.

Some would argue that deploying a tracker on a vehicle is classed as 'Vehicle Interference'. However, vehicle interference comes under the Criminal Attempts Act 1981 which is where an offence is committed by a person interfering with a motor vehicle or a trailer (or with anything carried in it or on it), which is more than merely preparatory to the commission of a theft. Therefore, if you are deploying a tracking device, you are not intending to commit theft.

Scan here to download a copy of the ABI Policy on Tracking Devices

EVIDENCE GATHERING

Let us now examine various aspects which help us to notice events and recognise and describe people.

TARGET DETAIL

On arrival at the target address, make a note of the surroundings detail. If you are keeping a house under surveillance, it is possible that you may not see any sign of life for many hours. This can be disheartening and make you doubt that there is anyone at home, but the target could be a late riser or might have left home prior to you arriving.

Rather than make a pretext visit or phone call to the house, your powers of observation will tell you if anyone is present.

Things to look out for are:

- The state of the curtains and windows
- Are there any lights on?
- Chimney smoke
- A newspaper sticking out of the letter box
- Dry patch on the driveway after rain
- Cats waiting to be let in or dogs barking
- Steam from bathroom window or vents
- Birds flying off when disturbed
- Noise from machinery such as tools or lawnmowers

You may not always be in a position to observe any of the doors and so any of the above indicators will tell you if someone is present and may give you prior warning of them leaving.

If there are two exits from the property you may have to put a 'trigger' on each. Alternatively, consider putting some sort of 'tell-tale' marker on the rear gate/ door such as a stone or stick against the gate. It will be disturbed if the gate has been used.



ISS TRAINING LTD

DESCRIBING PEOPLE

It is not always possible to obtain a photograph of your target and so a full description of him should be taken from those instructing you, so that he is immediately recognisable. In addition, you may need to describe the target in your written reports and so the list below should help you memorise the identifying characteristics.

Whenever possible obtain photographs or video of your target, obviously the more recent the picture the better and establish whether your target has changed since it was taken, for example, has grown a moustache, now wears glasses or has altered their hair style.

The military use a mnemonic 'A to J' in order to describe people:

A AGE

B BUILD

C CLOTHING

D DISTINGUISHING MARKS

E ELEVATION (HEIGHT)

F FACE (RESEMBLANCES)

G GAIT

H HAIR (COLOUR/LENGTH/STYLE)

I I.C. CODE

1. WHITE EUROPEAN
2. DARK EUROPEAN
3. AFRO-CARIBBEAN
4. ASIAN
5. ORIENTAL
6. ARABIC
7. PACIFIC ISLANDER
8. SOUTH AMERICAN INDIAN

J JUST LIKE...



Just Like: Harry Hill!



Standby, Standy: That's Alpha 1 out and dressed like Coco the Clown!

DESCRIPTIONS

Quite often you will have to describe certain persons in your reports. Even if you recognise your target from a photograph, it is always wise to add a description of that person to your log or report. The A-J descriptive list shown above should be sufficient for most purposes.

Characteristics and features vary and could be described in the following ways:

AGE

To estimate age, compare the target's age with your own or someone that you know. If you find this difficult, try to 'bracket' their age. If you feel that they cannot be older than 50 but are not as young as 40, we can estimate that the target is approximately 45 years old. When making notes in your surveillance log, do not be too precise when estimating ages and put them down in brackets (35-40 years). Be aware that beards and baldness can make men appear much older.

BUILD

Build could be considered as: Slim, Medium, Heavy, Well Built, Proportionate, Stout, Stooped, Small, Athletic, Muscular, Curvaceous.

Be aware that people's clothes can often alter your perception of build, especially heavy coats.

CLOTHING

Smart, Casual, Business-like, Sporty, Industrial, Construction, Designer.

DISTINGUISHING MARKS

Tattoos or skin marks. Obtain the design of any tattoos and their locations. Tattoos are designed for showing off and are often found on the forearms. Some people have very distinguishing marks such as birthmarks, blemishes and scars.

Spectacles and Jewellery

- Spectacles: round, square, horn rimmed, metallic, bi-focal, tinted
- Jewellery: rings, necklaces, medallions, broaches, earrings, hair slides, piercings

ELEVATION (HEIGHT)

Height can be estimated in a similar manner as we do for age. Compare the target's height to yourself or someone you know and bracket it accordingly. In addition, you can compare the target against his surroundings such as a door frame (6 feet 6 inches) or a car roof. Height can sometimes be difficult to estimate as the person's build can often alter our perception especially if they are higher up than you, such as on a doorstep.

ISS TRAINING LTD



OVAL SQUARE HEART ROUND RECTANGLE

FACIAL FEATURES AND COMPLEXION

SHAPE OF FACE
When looking at faces there are many features that make up the face apart from the overall shape. Facial shapes could be described as: Round, Thin, Pointed, Angular, Square, Oval, Sallow, Small.

COMPLEXION
Pale, Fair, Tanned, Olive, Rosy, Dark, Gaunt, Freckled, Spotty.

EYES
Large, Small, Bloodshot, Hooded Lids, Wide, Colour.

EYEBROWS
Thick, Thin, Bushy, Arched, Plucked, Narrow, Joined, Slanted, Straight, Pierced.

NOSES
Small, Large, Button, Hooked, Roman, Bumpy/Textured, Wide, Pointed, Squashed.

TEETH
White, Discoloured, False, Capped, Chipped, Crowned, Missing & Gaps.

LIPS
Full, Thin, Colour, Pale, Pouted.

CHINS
Square, Round, Pointed, Long, Angular.

FACIAL HAIR
Moustaches: Military, Handlebar, Bushy/Thick, Tooth- brush, Mexican, Thin, Walrus, Clipped.
Waxed Beards: Stubble, Unshaven, Pointed, Long, Short, Designer.





GAIT

Most people have a unique and identifiable gait in the way they carry themselves and move whilst walking.

POSTURE AND BEARING

Upright, Slouched, Stooped, Round Shouldered, Head Hung Low.

GAIT AND PACE

Fast, Slow, Bouncy, Marching, Skipping, Plodding, Springy, Dainty, Lethargic, Limping, Shuffling.

HAIR

Hair can be described in many ways but we divide hair styles into three sub-categories:

COLOUR

Light, Dark, Fair, Streaked, Bleached, Tinted, Coloured, Black, Brown, Grey.

LENGTH

Cropped, Short, Balding, Collar/Shoulder Length, Long.

STYLE

Tidy, Wavy, Permed, Straight, Thick, Thin, Curly, Receding, Fringed, Styled, Spiky, Bobbed, Tied Back.

IC CODE OR ETHNIC ORIGIN

Your description of origin should be treated as being descriptive. Terms to be used could be: White, Afro-Carribean, Asian, Arabic, Hispanic, Oriental, Latin, Scandinavian, East European.



Speech & Accent

Regional accents are not always distinct but attempt to put the accent to an area, even if it is only North, South, Midland or West Country. Consider the tone and volume such as Quiet, Soft, Loud, Slurred, Educated, Clipped.

Just Like...

Does the target resemble anyone famous? A TV or sports personality or a politician, for example. If you use this method to describe a person, ensure that it's someone that most people will recognise!

ISS TRAINING LTD

VEHICLES

Any vehicle details that you can obtain regarding the target will be extremely useful. When vehicles arrive on the scene of an observation, or you arrive there to find a vehicle, it is important that you record as much detail as possible about them.

- **Shape**

In addition, there are variants such as estates, saloons, hatchbacks and convertibles. If you do not know what make it is, provide a detailed description.

- **Colour**

Colours are fairly straight forward with variants in shades and metallic finishes.

- **Registration Marks and Numbers**

Registration numbers are unique to every vehicle and are the best means of recognition. There are various phone apps available that will identify the vehicle full details from the registration number.

- **Identifying Features**

Make a note of the state of repair and body work, does it have any modifications? Note any unusual marking or ornaments such as stickers, furry dice, nodding dogs and tow hooks.

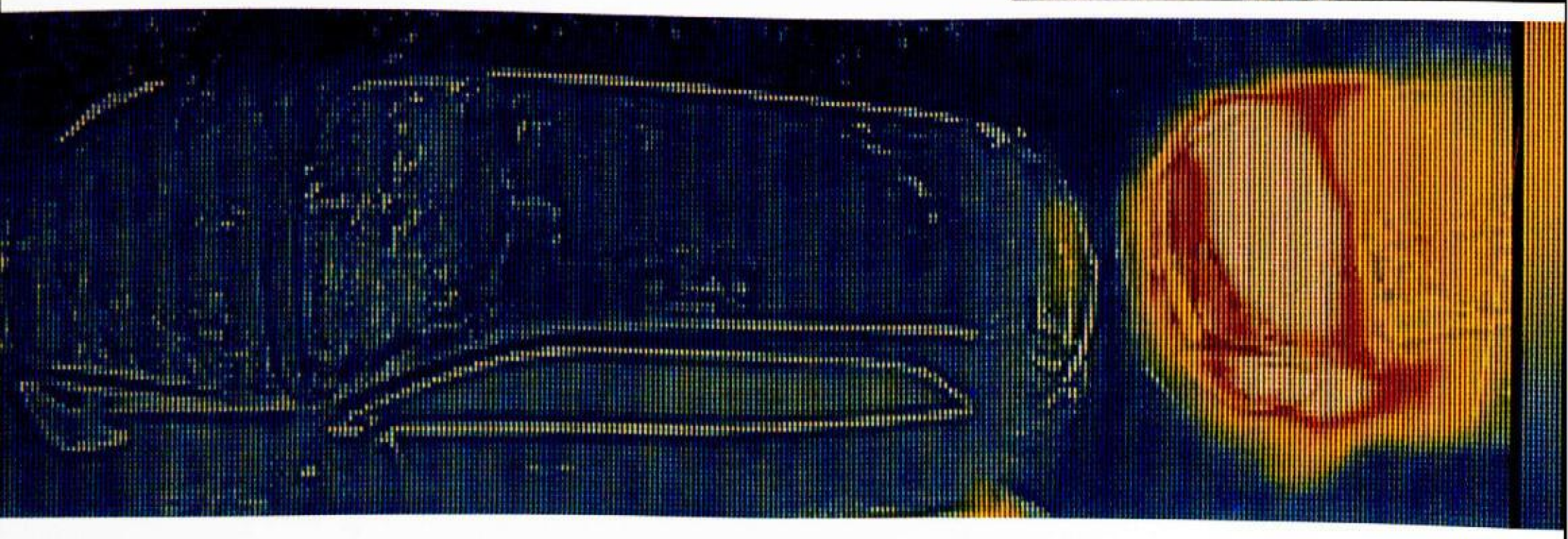
- **Make and Model**

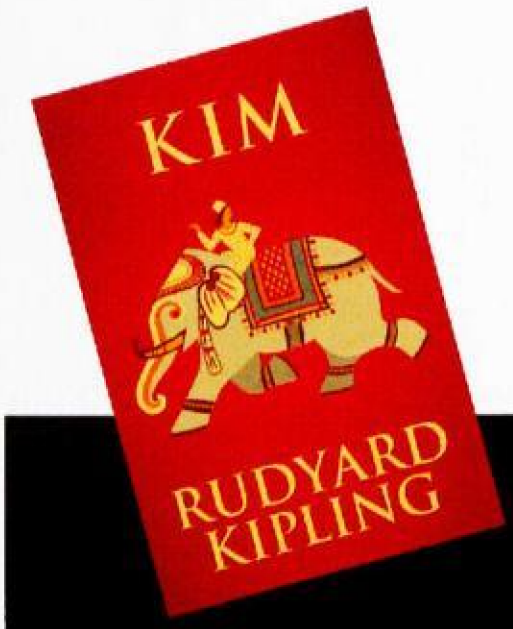
The make could be either a VW, Ford or a Vauxhall, the models possibly being a Golf, Focus or Vectra respectively.

Scan here to see the Vehicle Smart App



Thermal imager shows that the car on the right has recently been driven due to it's heat signature.





MEMORY AND PERCEPTION

Try to educate your memory. There are three different ways in which we memorise detail. On surveillance courses we show a number of items to the students; they have one minute to look at them and remember them, after which they have to write down and describe what they can remember. A number of tests carried out over a few days certainly improves their memory and their attention to detail.



Scan the code to improve your memory.

KIMS GAME

LOOK AT THE OBJECTS FOR 30 SECONDS. TAKE A MINUTE'S BREAK AND THEN WRITE DOWN WHAT YOU CAN REMEMBER BUT PAY ATTENTION TO DETAIL.



SURVEILLANCE LOGS AND REPORTS

As a member of a surveillance team, you should keep an accurate log of exactly what occurs and what action is taken. The team leader may keep a more detailed log of team events (Master Log). It is important that all team members synchronise their watches and timers on photographic equipment so that the surveillance logs coincide with each other and there are no discrepancies. Remember that any discrepancies may be brought to the attention of a court and could discredit your evidence.

If you are in a static OP, you may be able to write down a fair amount of detail about the target area and the events taking place. If there are two operators on the same task, there is no reason why one keeps the log, so long as the other one signs and witnesses it on completion.

Depending on the nature of the enquiry, it will affect how you log and produce your written reports. It is recommended to have the surveillance logs typed up and submitted with accompanying photographs or video. Reports in this format should include all details and log the events in a chronological order.



Scan here to download a sample of a Surveillance Report & Log

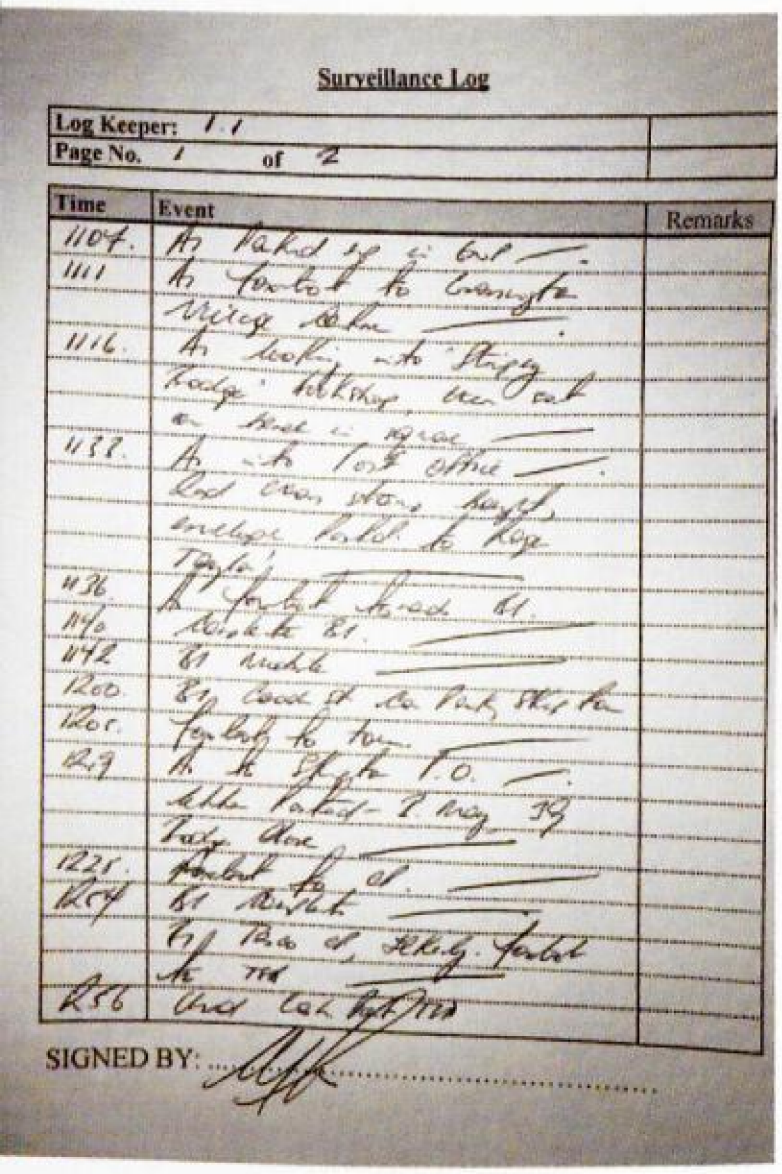
SURVEILLANCE LOGS

All timings, incidents and information should be recorded in a chronological order and preferably written down in note form. The notes that you make will be regarded as contemporaneous and could possibly be used as evidence and would have to be produced in court. Your notes can be written on anything at the time of the incident; pocket book, log sheets or even the back of a cigarette packet, but once written they should be preserved as evidence, especially if you are investigating a criminal activity.

All entries into the log should be made as soon as practically possible after the event takes place. If there is a large time span between an event taking place and the entry being made, it may be worth mentioning this in your log. Try and use block capitals when recording names, addresses and place names. It makes them clearer to read and it is important information that easily stands out on the page.

It's not always necessary to use prepared log sheets but they are simple, easy to read and make life easier when they have to be typed up.

Sometimes it's not practical to handwrite a log, and so a running commentary, or details of an event may have to be kept on a memo recorder. The details on the recording should be written up as soon as possible.



Surveillance Log

Log Keeper: I.I

Page No. 1 of 2

Time	Event	Remarks
1107.	At Naked if i bar —	
1111	At Contact to Cranagh	
	Arrive Scene —	
1116.	At look into Shop	
	Lodge Hotshop, Man Seat	
	on Road is Agreed —	
1158.	At into Post office —	
	Red Man stood Nearby	
	envelope Posted to Lodge	
	Target —	
1136	At Target Arrived Bl.	
1140	Bl Mobile —	
1200	By Coach at Co Park, Shop Pc	
1205.	Target to Van —	
1209	At Pc Shop P.O. —	
	Male Posted - 2 Mag Pkg	
	Target Alone	
1215.	Target to Car —	
1219	Bl Mobile —	
	Fly Bus at Shop. Target	
	At TM	
1256	Arrest Col Bystreet	

SIGNED BY: .....

The log is for your benefit to refresh your memory.

NO ELBOWS!

When compiling our surveillance log sheets, there are certain guidelines that can help preserve the integrity of the log and its content and we use the mnemonic **'NO ELBOWS'** to remind us.

There should be no:

ERASURES

If you make a mistake, you should not obliterate the mistake with pen, rub it out or use correction fluids. If you make an error, draw a single line through it (so that the error can be read) and write the correction at the bottom of the log. The loggist should initial any mistakes and all entries should be made in ink.

LOOSE LEAFS

Ideally the sheets of a logbook should be bound with glue and each page serial numbered (as are the Police and Enforcement Agency Logs). In this way entries are made in a chronological order and it cannot be open to suggestion that extra pages were added at a later time, and also any pages removed can be identified.

BLANK SPACES

Some people leave a blank line in between log entries in order to make it clearer that it is a separate event. This is in fact bad practice as it could be suggested that you have left the line clear in order to add an entry at a later time. If an entry leaves a large gap, it should be struck through the remaining space to prevent any further additions. A line drawn straight across the page normally indicates the end of the surveillance or day's entries.

OVERWRITING

As mentioned above, if you make a mistake, do not write over the top of the error or cram the correction into the text.

WRITING BETWEEN THE LINES

Do not cram words in between the lines of text if you realise there is an addition you need to make to your log. If you realise that you have made an error or there is something else that you wish to include in the log, then add it to the end of the log beginning with the phrase 'Belated Entry' and timed at the time the event took place and also noting when the belated entry was made.

SEPARATE PIECES OF PAPER

Use bound surveillance logs if at all possible. Separate log sheets are acceptable but they can be left open to abuse and the suggestion that they were not the originals.

If you use separate log sheets, ensure that you number the pages 2 of 2 etc. If for some reason you record your observations on a scrap piece of paper because it was the only thing to hand, then this must be preserved and retained with the log sheets. An entry should also be made in the log referring to it as an exhibit.

ISS TRAINING LTD

If your surveillance logs are maintained keeping all of the above in mind, they will be more readily accepted as reputable evidence. Remember, if you are using a dedicated loggist, the accuracy of your reporting over the radio net has to be precise. If there is a stop, say exactly where it is as the loggist will be relying on you to pass this information back to them.

WITNESS STATEMENTS

If you are providing a surveillance service for a solicitor or insurance company, it is most likely that they will require a statement to accompany your report and surveillance logs. It is highly likely that the statement will be served upon the other parties to the proceedings.

A surveillance log or report cannot just be put into a legal file to be used in Court proceedings as evidence. A system is in place under the Criminal Justice Act 1967, Section 9, whereby a 'Statement of Truth' launches your evidence into the legal system. In the police world, this statement form is often referred to as 'Form MG11'.

R V SEKHON 1987

In this court case, giving evidence; a police officer kept an observation log based on his own observations and those of other police officers reporting to him over the radio.

The Defence argued that the notes were inaccurate or fabricated because the log keeper did not witness all of the events. When retiring, the jury had requested to see the log which had been used by the officer to refresh his memory in the witness box.

The judge decided that such a log, (which was a memory-refreshing document), must be available for inspection by other parties for the purpose of cross-examination. And where it was suggested that the witness was making up his evidence and had concocted his notes, the notes might be admissible to show consistency. Generally however, the notes are not admissible to prove the truth of their contents and are only relevant to credibility.

The Court set out a series of propositions concerning documents used to refresh memory. It considered the police log was admissible but described it as a 'tool' to assist the jury to evaluate the truth of the evidence given in the witness box by the witness. It went on to say: *'Although normally the document when admitted is not evidence of the truth of its contents, in those cases where it provides, because of its nature, material by which its authenticity can be judged, then in respect of that material and only for the purpose of assessing its authenticity it can amount to evidence in the case.'*
(Ref: Swarb.co.uk)



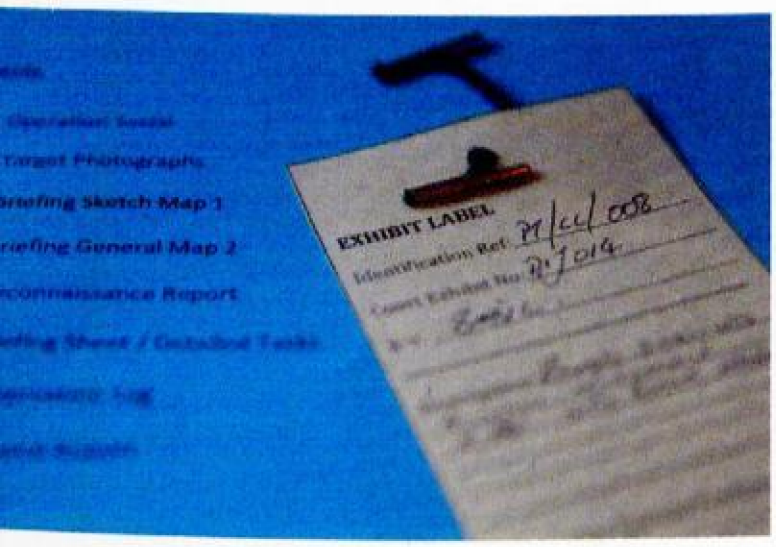
Log Keeper: [redacted]	
Page No. 1 of 2	

Time	Event	Remarks
11.15	On plot at C1, trigger on B1	
11.26	A1 Black on blue, on foot to Grassington	Images
11.32	Wine purchased in off licence	Images
11.39	A1 to B1, E1 remained in B1	
11.43	Standby, L to Skipton	
12.05	Stop Manningham Car Park	

Log Keeper: [redacted]	
Page No. 2 of 2	

Time	Event	Remarks
13.12	A1/E1 out of B1 ~~to~~ towards town.	Images
13.25	Total Loss of A1/E1 at end of high street.	
13.52	Relocated A1/E1 in Costa Coffee	
13.59	Out of Costa, along High Street and into M&S.	

ISS TRAINING LTD



Credit: Hunt Investigation Team



Identification of suspects has to be accurate.

EYE WITNESS TESTIMONY AS EVIDENCE

If you find yourself in court giving evidence, it is possible that the Defence barrister will attempt to discredit your evidence or put your 'witness testimony' in some doubt in order to confuse a jury, especially when there is a doubt about a person's identity.

R v TURNBULL AND CAMELO 1977

Turnbull and Camelo were convicted of conspiracy to burgle after a retrial. A series of thefts from night safes had taken place after thieves had put notices over the safes, stating they were out of order and asking customers to post takings through the letterbox. The thieves' bag was taped inside the letterbox. One evening a bank employee alerted the police and observations were kept. A man attempted to remove the bag and was seen and chased by staff and police. A detective stated that the man was Turnbull. At the time, the Detective was ten yards from Turnbull and in a well-lit street. The officer saw the suspect's face in full. Although the suspect got away his description was circulated.

Approximately one mile away a van was stopped and as it did so, Turnbull came out of some bushes and attempted to get into the van driven by Camelo. Several witnesses gave identification evidence relating to the scene of the offence, and other instances including the arrest. Both Turnbull and Camelo were charged and convicted.

They appealed on the grounds that the guidance given by the Judge to the jury was wrong in relation to the reliability of identification evidence, but was dismissed.

In summing up, the Judge Lord Widgery, informed the jury that there should be a special need for caution when considering eye witness evidence and said that a single witness can make mistakes, several witnesses are likely to paint a more realistic picture of events but they can also still be mistaken.

The following is known as the 'Turnbull Rules' and are now regarded as authoritive and MUST be considered when utilising identification evidence.

Using the mnemonic **ADVOKATE** we remember the points which need to be made in detail which you may be cross examined about.

Remember a defence barrister will want to:

- Shorten the time span that the target was in your sight
- Extend the distance between you and the target
- Cloud your view
- Prove that the view was fully or partially obstructed for a short period of time
- Intimate or suggest a wrong identity
- Question your judgement and memory
- Put to you any discrepancies, such as errors in your log keeping
- Put doubt in the minds of a jury

ISS TRAINING LTD

ADVOKATE

A AMOUNT OF TIME

- How long was the subject actually in view for?

D DISTANCE

- How far away was the subject from you?
- Were you using optics such as binoculars or telephoto lenses?
- Was the subject so close that you had to avert your eyes?

V VISIBILITY

- What was the weather like? Was it foggy? Was the sun in your eyes?
- Were you having to look in your rear view mirror, was it a back to
- front image?
- Do you wear glasses? Were you wearing them at the time?

O OBSTRUCTIONS

- Were you looking across a busy street, heavy with passing traffic?
- Were you having to peer through heavy foliage?
- Was there a lot of pedestrian activity?
- Did the subject go out of sight at any time?

K KNOWN OR SEEN BEFORE

- Had you seen the subject before? Was he known to you?
- Did you have a photograph to recognise him from?
- Had you carried out surveillance on him before?

A ANY REASON TO REMEMBER

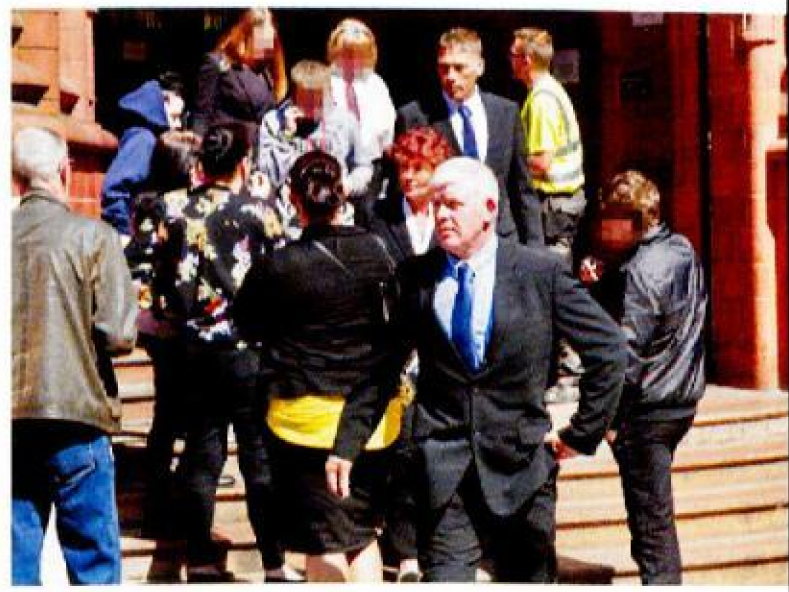
- I had reason to remember because that day in question was my birthday.
- I remember the jumper he wore because I have one exactly like it.
- I remember him because he was the spitting image of (someone famous).

T TIME LAPSE

- What was the time span between seeing the incident and making your notes?
- What was the time span between seeing the incident and making a statement?
- What was the time span between seeing the incident and the identity parade?

E ERRORS OR DISCREPANCIES

- Is it possible.....?
- Is it possible that you are mistaken?
- You have stated this, another witness has stated that, could you be wrong?

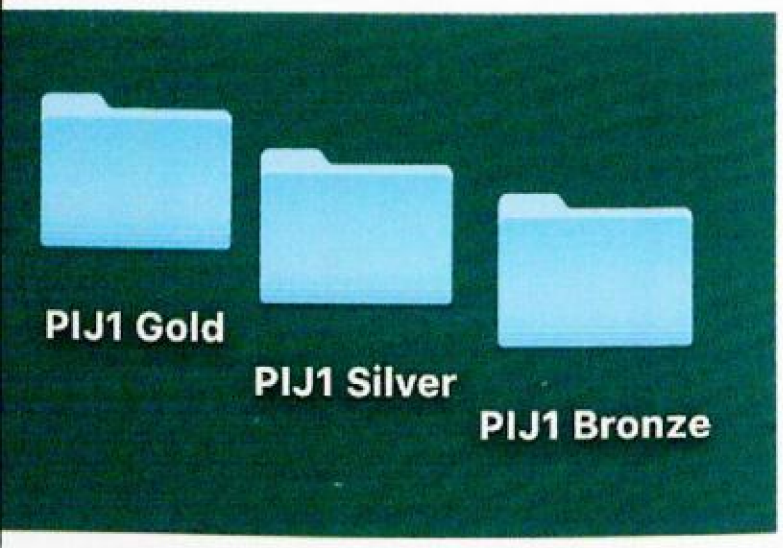


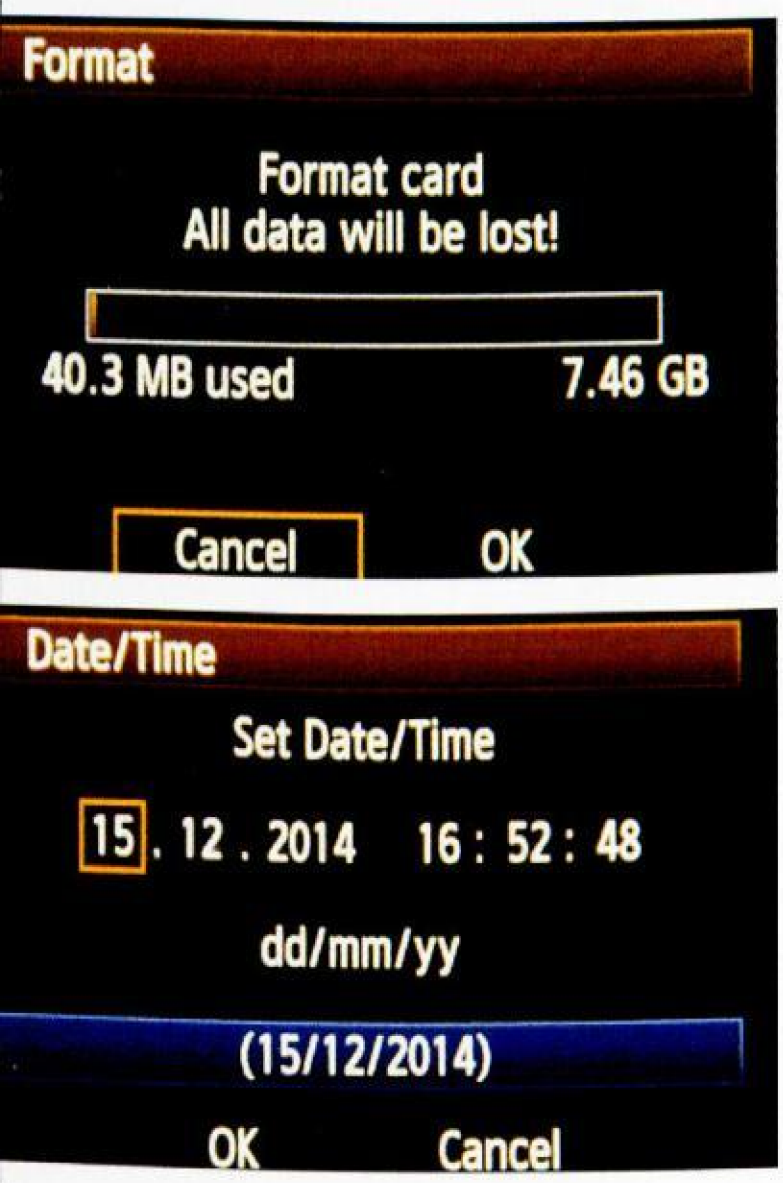
Defendants leaving court to await sentencing.

Credit: Hunt Investigation Team



What distance was he from you?
How fast was he going?
What was the visibility like?







Scan here to see a short video about RAW processing

PRESERVATION OF PHOTOGRAPHIC & VIDEO EVIDENCE

The aim of the majority of surveillance tasks is to obtain photographic evidence of an event taking place or to prove that a person was in a particular location at a certain date and time.

Should these photographs (or video) be used in legal proceedings then they should be handled, preserved and exhibited as any other evidence would be. There should be a documented record and audit trail of the evidence when it is transferred from one person to another for reasons of continuity. This is essential when handling evidence to be used in criminal proceedings.

PRESERVATION OF PHOTOGRAPHIC EVIDENCE

Having taken the photographs on a digital camera, you can do one of a number of things to preserve the integrity and continuity. You could retain the medium that it was recorded on (such as an SD card) and preserve this as your 'original' and then print off the pictures. However, this can be quite costly if you carry out a lot of surveillance.

The most common and accepted way is to transfer and burn the images directly to a CD or DVD and retain this as your original (Gold Copy).

You can then make another copy in its entirety from which you can work from (Working/Silver Copy) and then choose images from here, which you need to adjust brighten or sharpen etc. Then save these adjusted images for use in your reports. These edited images will be referred to as your Bronze Copies. The Gold Copy should be labelled, given an exhibit number if necessary, sealed and retained as evidence. In the matter of video evidence, the same rules apply with the SD card. It will be likely that you produce a written statement supporting your exhibits.

A point to note, under law in England and Wales, if the original documents (or photographs) have been erased, destroyed and no longer exist, copies of them are still admissible as evidence under what is known as the 'Best Evidence Rule'.

DATE & TIME SETTINGS

All digital still and video cameras record the date and time into the META Data of the image, therefore ensure that you synchronise the camera's clock to the correct time and to any other operators on the team each time you use it.

A photograph with an incorrect time could be disadvantageous if it is to be used in legal proceedings. This function also assists when matching up photographs with your surveillance logs.

iShoot1RAW

ISS TRAINING LTD

RAW V JPG

Many enforcement agencies (especially the Police) shoot in RAW, this is not just because they are professional photographers but because the integrity of the original photograph is preserved. A JPG image can be altered and tweaked can be difficult to prove what it looked like when it was originally taken and therefore discredited as evidence. It is accepted that images need to be enhanced by brightening, darkening or sharpening, so long as the original is retained.

A RAW image cannot be altered and then saved again as a RAW file. Once it is opened and altered, it will be saved in a different format such as a JPG, TIFF, PDF or PNG file. The original RAW file goes untouched, which also adds to the integrity of the original images on your memory card.

As long as they are on your master copy you can choose the relevant images to be used for your working copy of exhibits.



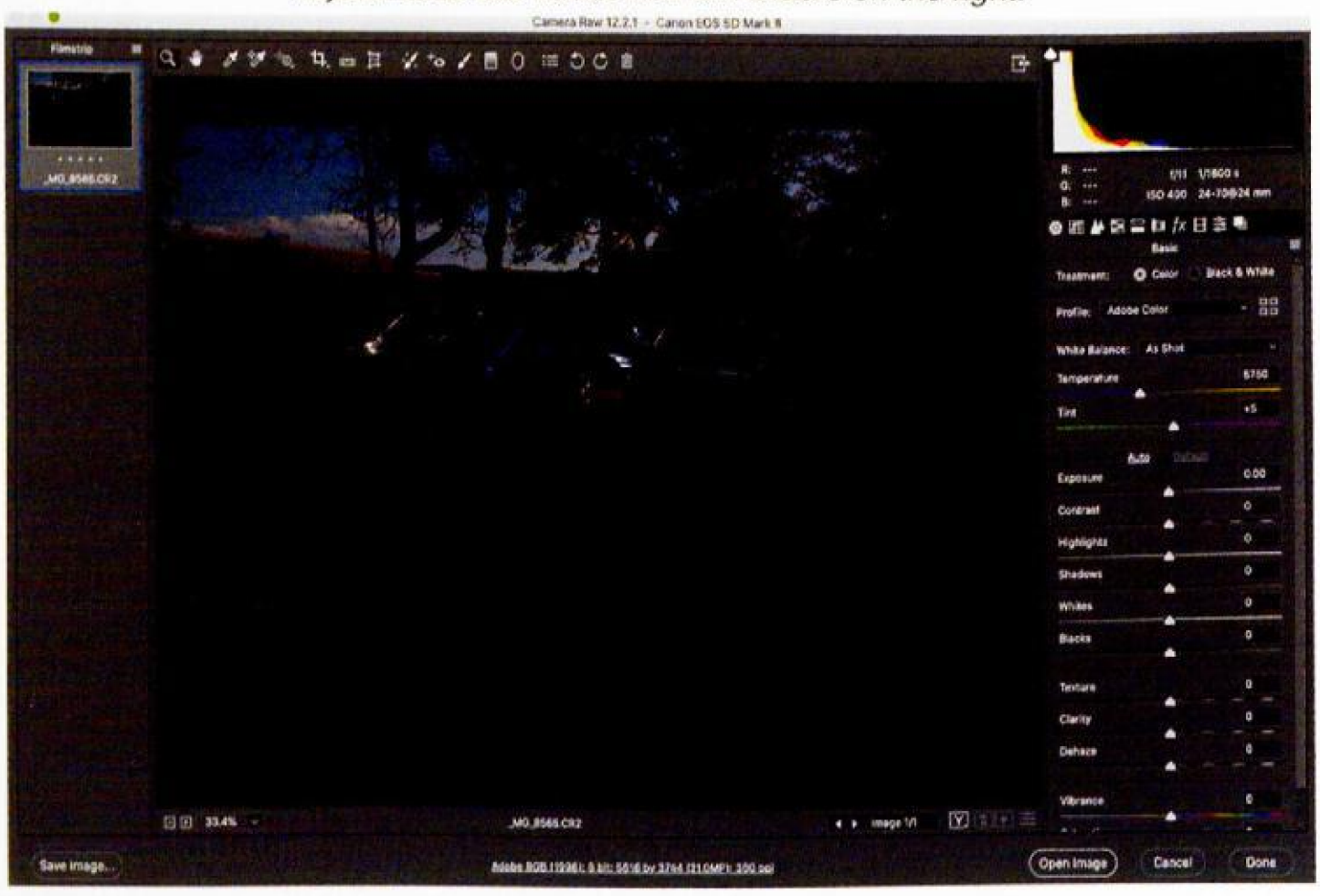
Image above is very under exposed and shot in RAW and then processed in Photoshop to reveal detail below.

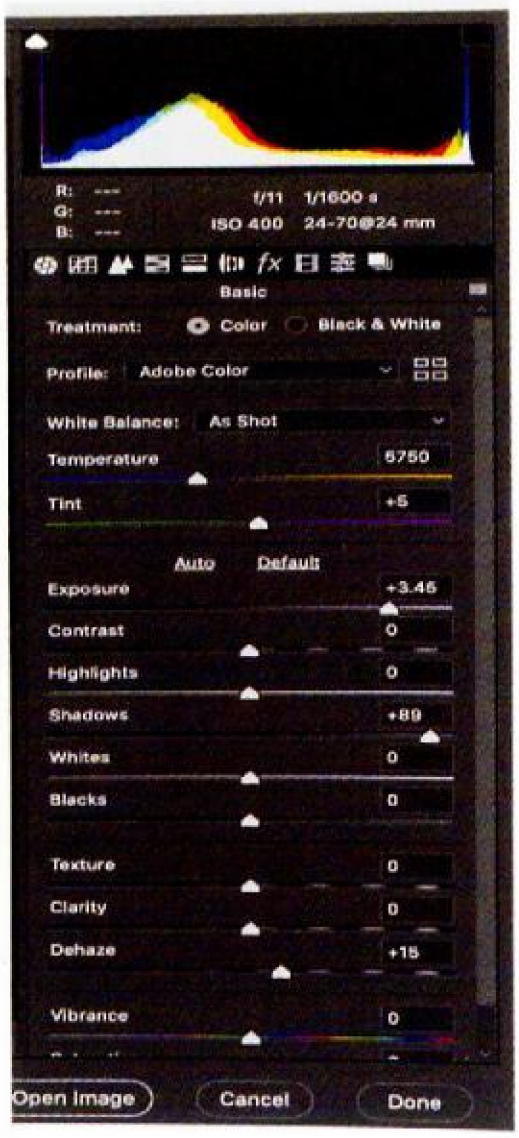


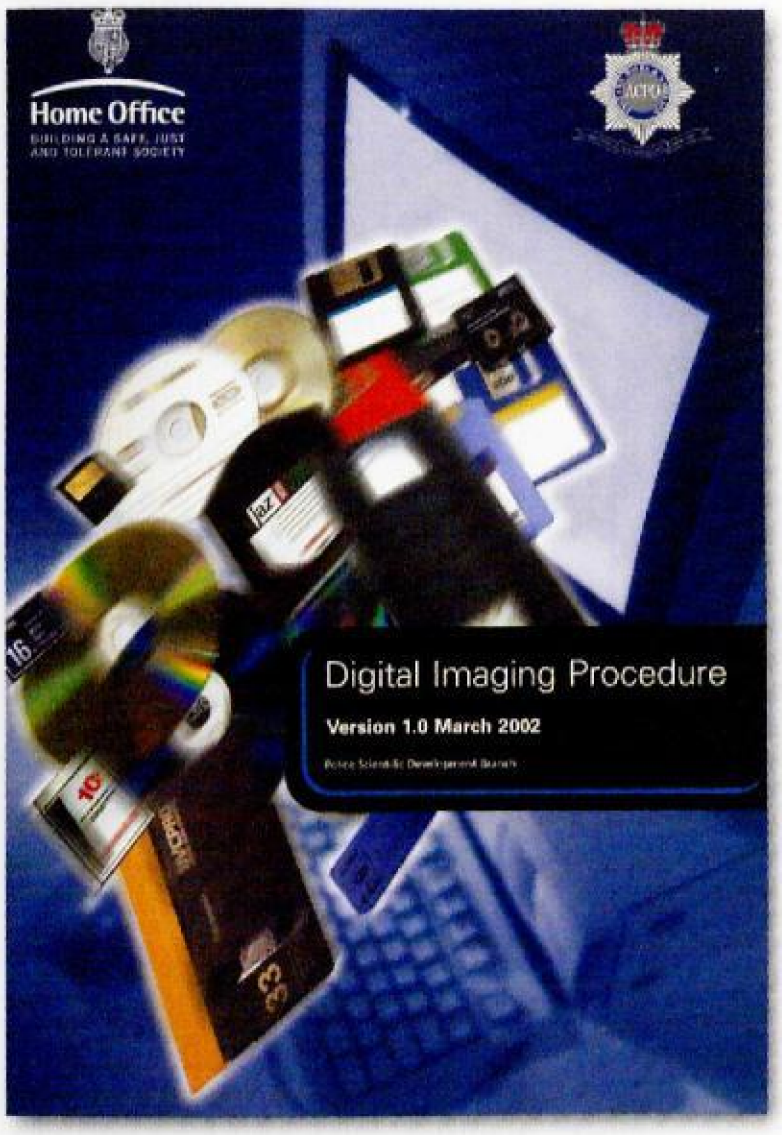
Some Guidelines

- Always format your memory card for every task so that each image is stored numerically starting with 01
- You will often look though the images on the camera for exposure or information such as descriptions etc. Do NOT delete any, especially if they are incorrectly exposed, blurred or just not needed. If you were to take 22 images and numbers 6,7 & 8 are missing, it may be questioned in Court as to why the images have been omitted or erased.
- Try not to get other surveillance operators or team members in the shot. If the images are disclosed, you do not want to be compromising the team's identities or their vehicles. Test shots should not be of team members or in your office where there could be sensitive material in the background.

Processing RAW images in Photoshop.
Adjustments are made with the sliders on the right.







Scan here to download a copy

UK HOME OFFICE DIP PROCEDURE 2007

The Home Office 'Digital Imaging Procedure' is a useful document and states;

"With conventional photography, the negatives are often referred to as the 'primary' or 'original' images and the prints are all made from them. Similarly, with video and analogue recording the first tape is sealed as a Master once the first copy has been made from it. A copy of an analogue tape is always a degraded version because noise is added at each copying. This is compounded by the physical wear and tear of the tape.

However, it is possible to make a bit-for-bit identical copy of a digital image file. In evidential terms there is no distinction between the copy and the primary or original file because the files are the same and have the same evidential weight. It is not important whether the file is on a stand-alone or networked computer, a server, or on any type of storage medium. This assumes the operation of adequate security against unauthorised and unrecorded access".

It goes on to state:

"If no discipline is applied there can be any number of identical files. For evidential purposes it is essential to be able to demonstrate that the images are authentic and have originated from the files captured in the camera and recorded to the first medium.

Digital image files can be used in exactly the same way as conventional photography and video with written audit trails. Electronic audit trails, if available, can augment or replace the written audit trails.

Digital images should not be thought of as replacements for conventional photographs and videos but as alternative technologies. It has to be recognised that digital images are not necessarily better than conventional ones. Some lower resolution digital images displayed on a computer screen or as hard copy might not appear very lifelike – but then neither do many simulations. The important and overriding factor is that the content of the image should be fit for purpose and that the quality is adequate. To this end the use of desktop printers for hard copies of stills and low resolution video footage must not be ruled out. It is not always necessary or feasible to produce the highest quality images to demonstrate the facts required for evidence".



Audit Trail for Preservation of Evidential Images from Digital Stills & Video Recordings

Obtain Authority if required (RIPA)

Start an Audit Trail

Check & Test Equipment

Take Images & Video Footage
(Never Delete Any)



Re-Usable Medium
(SD or CF Cards)

Removable Tapes
(Write Protect)

Non Removable Medium
(Hard Disk)

Transfer to Hard Medium (CD ROM) or Secure Storage

Define the Master (Gold) and Produce a Working Copy (Silver)

Master Copy

Working Copy

Document & Secure Store
Master

Produce Working Copies to be
Adjusted (Bronze)

Retain as an Exhibit for Court

Use in Statements for
Prosecution/Defence

Present Exhibits for Court

Retain for Statutory Period or as DPA Permits

Dispose of Exhibits and Close the Audit Trail

ISS TRAINING LTD

INTEGRITY VERIFICATION V AUTHENTICATION

These two terms are frequently confused and often misused.

INTEGRITY VERIFICATION

Integrity Verification is the process of confirming the data (image, CCTV clip, etc) that's presented is complete and unaltered since time of acquisition. Relevant questions concerning integrity might include: *"Has data been added to, or removed from the file?"; "Has the data within the file been changed?".*

AUTHENTICATION

Authentication however, is the process of substantiating that the data is an accurate representation of what it purports to be. Relevant questions concerning authentication would deal with issues such as: *"Was the image taken at the time stated?"; "Was the image taken at the place stated?"*

It should be noted that standard image processing techniques such as lightness or contrast changes would affect the image integrity but not the image authenticity; however, a change to the clock on a CCTV system could affect the image authenticity but not affect the image integrity. Robust audit trails are required in order to maintain image authenticity.

The above is taken from the Home Office 'Digital Imaging Procedure', which can be downloaded from the Internet using the QR code and is a very useful document for all investigators.



The top image was used by the BBC whilst reprorting on the violent protests in London in June 2020. It purports to show the police grabbing a protestor.

The image below is the 'uncut' version showing a protestor weilding a large stick at officers.

This is a classic case of the media manipulating the authenticity of the situation.







Credit: Reuters/John Sibley

CHAPTER NINE QUESTIONS

Tracking

1) Explain why you should not go on someone's private driveway in order to deploy a tracking device on a vehicle

2) With reference to the deployment of trackers, explain the case law that exists that permits trespass if you consider proportionality and necessity

3) Explain how you should treat a downloaded copy of a tracking route data file in respect of privacy

4) Explain who has to adhere to the Home Office, 'Covert Surveillance and Property Interference Code of Practice' (Pursuant to section 71(4) of the Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act)

5) Explain where you can obtain a policy document on the use of tracking devices

Legislation

6) Explain Article 8 of the Human Rights Act 1998

7) Identify under which legislation a Public Body has to obtain authority to conduct covert surveillance

8) Give examples of who does and who doesn't have to comply with this legislation?

9) Identify under the code of practice drawn from the above Act, what are the two types of surveillance and explain the difference between them

10) State where can you obtain copies of RIPA authorisation forms

11) Specify under what four provisions surveillance is authorised under RIPA 2000

Data Protection

12) State who has to comply with the Data Protection Act 2018

13) State how long a surveillance report, log and video footage are retained for

Q&A

FOLLOW THE QR CODE TO TAKE YOU TO THE QUESTION & ANSWER 'HELP' PAGES.

FOLLOW THE QR CODE TO TAKE YOU TO THE QUESTION & ANSWER 'HELP' PAGES.

Log Keeping

14) With reference to the acronym (NO) ELBOWS, identify the general rules should you follow in order to preserve the integrity of what is written when recording your observations in a log or notebook

15) Identify when should we write or record a note of our observations

16) Specify what document supports your surveillance log to make it legally binding and allows it to be used in evidence

17) With reference to the acronym ADVOKATE and consideration of the case of R v Turnbull 1976, what important considerations have to be made in respect of the accuracy of reporting and log keeping?

18) Identify why there is a special need for caution when obtaining eye witness testimony or giving evidence

19) How would you describe a person (using the 'A to J' method)

Digital Imagery

20) Explain a continuity audit trail and the process of retaining the original data with reference to digital images

21) Explain the difference between Integrity Verification and Authenticity

22) Explain why it is important not to delete unwanted or irrelevant images that you have taken on a surveillance

23) Explain what you should be cautious of when taking 'test' shots with a camera

ASSESSMENT TIME!

1) Explain why you should not go on someone's private driveway in order to deploy a tracking device on a vehicle.

2) With reference to the deployment of trackers, explain the case law that exists that permits trespass if you consider proportionality and necessity.

3) Explain how you should treat a downloaded copy of a tracking route data file in respect of privacy.

4) Explain who has to adhere to the Home Office, 'Covert Surveillance and Property Interference Code of Practice' (Pursuant to section 71(4) of the Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act 2000).

5) Explain where you can obtain a policy document on the use of tracking devices.

6) Explain Article 8 of the Human Rights Act 1998.

7) Identify under which legislation a Public Body has to obtain authority to conduct covert surveillance.

8) Give examples of who does and who doesn't have to comply with this legislation.

9) Identify under the code of practice drawn from the above Act, what are the two types of surveillance and explain the difference between them.

10) State where can you obtain copies of RIPA authorisation forms.

11) Specify under what four provisions surveillance is authorised under RIPA 2000.

12) State who has to comply with the Data Protection Act 2018.

13) State how long a surveillance report, log and video footage are retained for.

14) With reference to the acronym (NO) ELBOWS, identify the general rules should you follow in order to preserve the integrity of what is written when recording your observations in a log or notebook.

15) Identify when should we write or record a note of our observations.

16) Specify what document supports your surveillance log to make it legally binding and allows it to be used in evidence.

17) With reference to the acronym ADVOKATE and consideration of the case of R v Turnbull 1976, what important considerations have to be made in respect of the accuracy of reporting and log keeping?

18) Identify why there is a special need for caution when obtaining eye witness testimony or giving evidence.

19) How would you describe a person (using the 'A to J' method).

20) Explain a continuity audit trail and the process of retaining the original data with reference to digital images.

21) Explain the difference between Integrity Verification and Authenticity.

22) Explain why it is important not to delete unwanted or irrelevant images that you have taken on a surveillance.

23) Explain what you should be cautious of when taking 'test' shots with a camera.

Chapter Ten

SURVEILLANCE WORK & TRAINING



THE LICENSING ISSUE

THE SECURITY INDUSTRY AUTHORITY (SIA) LICENSING

Back in 2014 the Government stated that all Private & Professional Investigators will be required to be SIA licenced by the Autumn of that year. It didn't happen.

The SIA ensures that all individuals undertaking licensable activities are licenced. This includes:

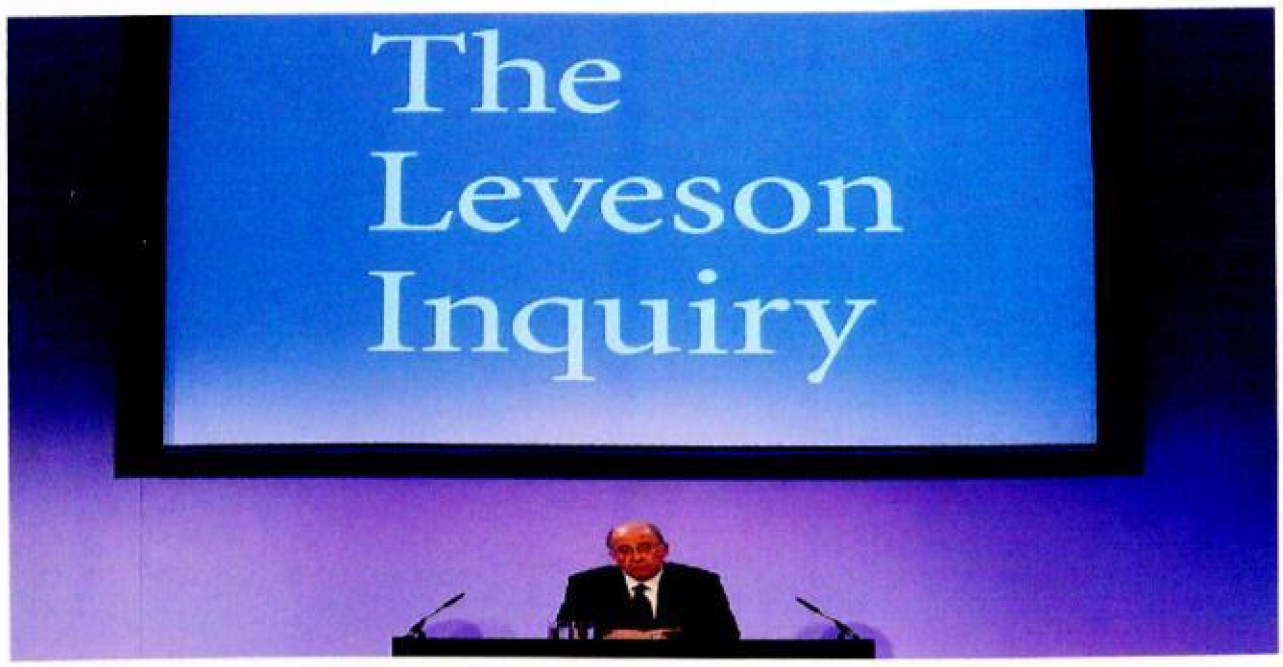
- Manned Guarding
- Door Supervision
- Close Protection
- Cash in Transit
- Public Space Surveillance (CCTV)
- Key Holding

Note this list does not include, 'surveillance operators' or 'private investigators' but those who do carry out commercial surveillance, are considered as 'Professional Investigators' in the eyes of the SIA. They have said you will require a licence: 'if you are involved in any surveillance, inquiries or investigations that are carried out for the purposes of:

'Obtaining information about a particular person or about the activities or whereabouts of a particular person; or obtaining information about the circumstances in which, or means by which, property has been lost or damaged'.

Security Industry Authority

In addition to journalists and the press, the Leveson Inquiry also scrutinised private investigators.



This is still yet to happen and the SIA stated that 'if and when' PI's were to be licenced, their specification for applying would be:

- To prove identity
- Have no criminal record
- Have a Level 3 Award in Professional Investigation

Any previous qualifications that are security or investigative related (including Police qualifications and experience), will not be accepted by the SIA: you still require the Level 3 Award. However, if you can prove experience, you are permitted to sit the assessment test, rather than undergo a full course.

So at the moment there are no legal requirements to be licenced. Although not licensable, the SIA have still drawn up a Code of Practice for investigators.



The News of the World folded after the Inquiries. No pun intended.

SIA STANDARDS OF BEHAVIOUR FOR PROFESSIONAL INVESTIGATORS.

CODE 1

An investigator must ensure that they confirm client's identities and establish that they have the legal and moral right to commission an investigation.

CODE 2

An investigator must agree in advance with client's the objectives of the service and the fees, terms and conditions which will apply.

CODE 3

An investigator must deal with client's and others with discretion and courtesy and in ways which do not bring the reputation of either themselves in particular or their profession in general, into disrepute.

CODE 4

An investigator must respect and protect clients and others' privacy and lawful confidentiality.

CODE 5

The investigator must objectively disclose to the client's all the information arising from an investigation whether it is advantageous or disadvantageous, unless the law dictates otherwise.

ISS TRAINING LTD

CODE 6
An investigator must ensure that investigation specific and business records, administrative systems and procedures comply with legal requirements, protect against accidental disclosure and reflect best practice.

CODE 7
An investigator must carry out investigations in ways that are moral, honest, truthful and fair whilst adhering to legal and regulatory requirements.

CODE 8
An investigator must accept only those commissions which they consider themselves qualified to carry out.

CODE 9
The investigator may only seek advice from or refer clients to those who have experience, knowledge and skills needed to carry out work, meet necessary legal requirements and operate same or similar codes of ethics.

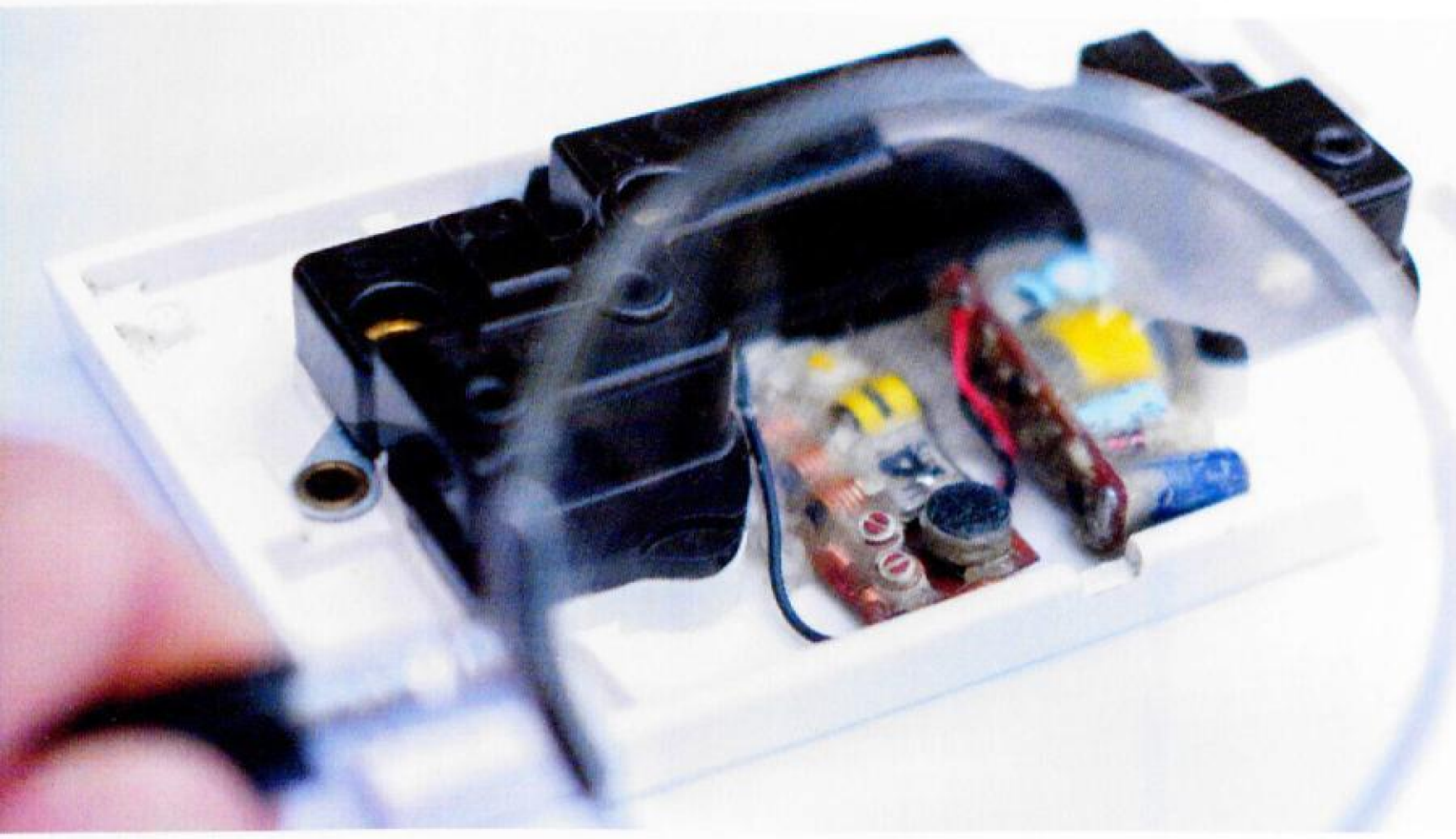
CODE 10
The investigator must assist, when required by law to do so, the legal and regulatory authorities.

CODE 11
The investigator must act fairly and not discriminate on the grounds of gender, sexual orientation, marital status, race, nationality, ethnicity, religious beliefs, disability or any other differences in individuals which is not relevant to the professional investigator's responsibility.

CODE 12
Investigators must promote, through their general demeanour and in dealings with clients, the general public, colleagues and the authorities, the professionalism and integrity of the professional investigation community.

ISS TRAINING LIMITED

Bugging is illegal.



CODE OF PRACTICE FOR THE PROVISION OF INVESTIGATIVE SERVICES BS 102000:2018

In 2011/12, two government inquiries took place in the wake of the News of the World 'phone hacking scandal'. The Parliamentary Home Affairs Select Committee (PHASC) inquiry and the 'Leveson' inquiry.

The inquiries were mainly concerned with the practices of the 'gutter' press, but the private investigation sector was also scrutinised quite heavily by the PHASC. As a result, both inquiries were in favour of licensing for investigators.

In response to the recommendations of the Parliamentary Home Affairs Select Committee, the British Standards Institution (BSI) created BS102000/2018, which is a Code of Practice for the Provision of Investigative Services. Licensing was expected to start in 2015 but it never happened, and it has been reviewed a few times since.

What is interesting about the recommendations is that it identifies the issue over the definitions. Section 50 of the SIA review 2016/2017 states:

'There has been interest in regulation of private investigators for some time. The 2001 Private Security Industry Act included provision to licence PI activity, however this has not been brought into force. The legislation does not define a particular person as a PI, for example by their professional qualification or job. Instead it defines private investigation activity and anyone carrying out that activity under certain circumstances would be required to be licensed by the SIA. In short, it would capture those working under a contract to obtain information about a person (or about lost or damaged property) where the information was obtained from private sources and where the subject of the investigation, or those people with an interest in any property being investigated, did not give their consent.'



NEWS OF THE WORLD

Glenn Mulcaire was not a private investigator but the PI industry was tarred with the same brush over his activities.

Phone hacker Glenn Mulcaire bankrupt over tax on News of the World earnings

Private investigator faces losing his family home after failing to pay tax on estimated payments of £500,000-plus from paper



Credit: Luke MacGregor/Reuters

▲ News of the World phone hacker Glenn Mulcaire has been made bankrupt, the Old Bailey has heard. Photograph: Luke MacGregor/Reuters

Association of British Insurers

GUIDELINES
on the instruction and use of PRIVATE INVESTIGATORS

September 2014

As licensing never materialised, BS102000/2018 got put on the back burner by many. The Association of British Insurers appeared to get a bit twitchy in the wake of the two inquiries and began to tighten its belts in the event their 'private investigators' were going 'rogue'. As a consequence, the Association devised the 'Code of practice for the provision of investigative services', which has to be adhered to if you are investigating on behalf of insurance companies.

Some of the recommendations in the Guide appear a touch draconian but these are their rules. As an example, whilst they state that tracking devices are perfectly legal, they do not approve of using them. They also state that for every job where video is obtained, a brand new 'virgin' SD card should be used and not a re-formatted old one.

Personally speaking, I feel you can have all the codes of practice, certain standards and licensing in place but someone will still take a shortcut and break the law.

The irony is that there are investigation & surveillance companies out there who have this in place, but the standard of surveillance by some of their investigators is very poor. The standards do not say that you actually have to be good or proficient at anything, just keep a record of how you do it.

The Association of British Investigators (ABI) was rebuked at the Leveson Hearings after they suggested the they should become the self-appointed regulator for the entire Sector.

The ABI have stated 'The market is unregulated and plagued by rogue operators'.

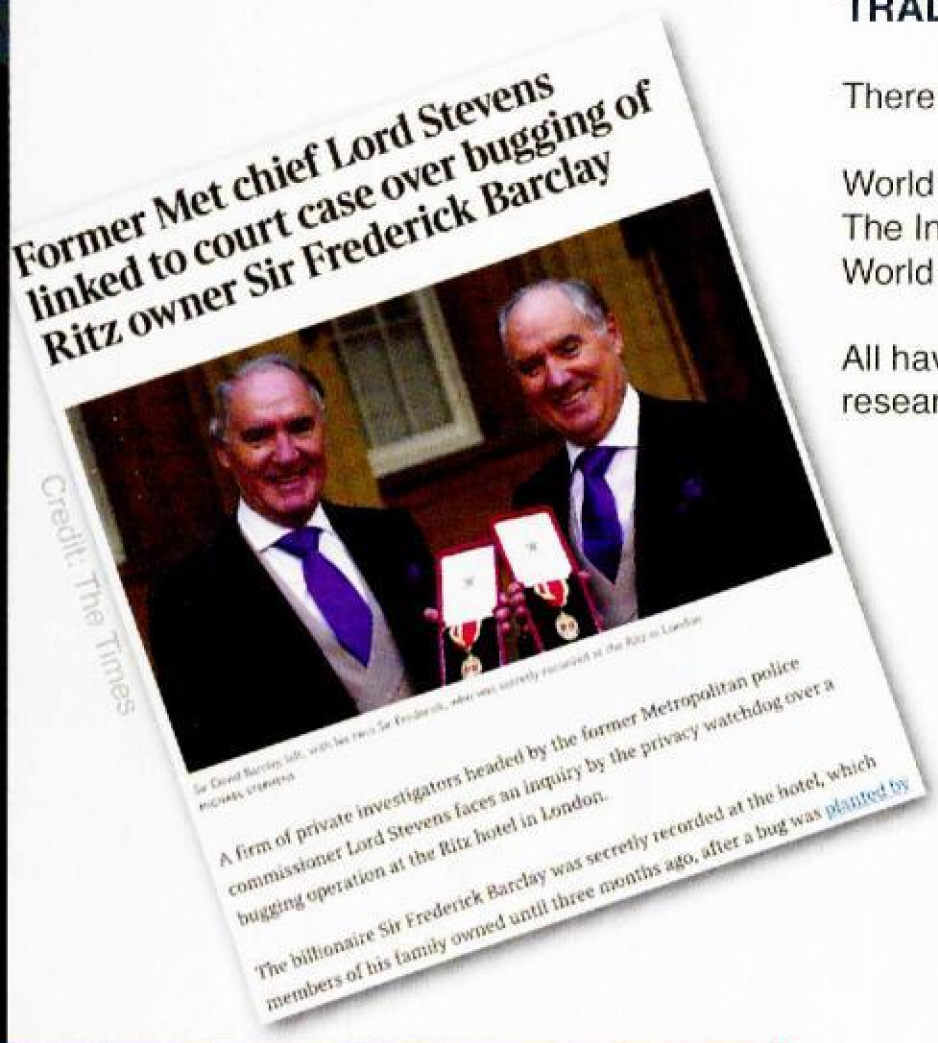
This is offensive to the many credible investigators who do not want to belong to their private association. The ABI only represents 5% of all UK investigators.



No wonder insurance premiums are so high, all of us are paying for SD cards!



Private investigators as portrayed by the media.



Former Met chief Lord Stevens linked to court case over bugging of Ritz owner Sir Frederick Barclay

Credit: The Times

A firm of private investigators headed by the former Metropolitan police commissioner Lord Stevens faces an inquiry by the privacy watchdog over a bugging operation at the Ritz hotel in London.

The billionaire Sir Frederick Barclay was secretly recorded at the hotel, which members of his family owned until three months ago, after a bug was planted by

It doesn't matter if you're the former head of the Metroploitan Police or a member of an Association, it does not give you licence to break the law.

TRADE ASSOCIATIONS

There are various trade associations that you may wish to consider joining.

World Association of Private Investigators (WAPI)
The Institue of Private Investigators (IPI)
World Association of Detectives (WAD)

All have varying levels of membership, benefits and costs, so carry out your research for the one that suits you most.

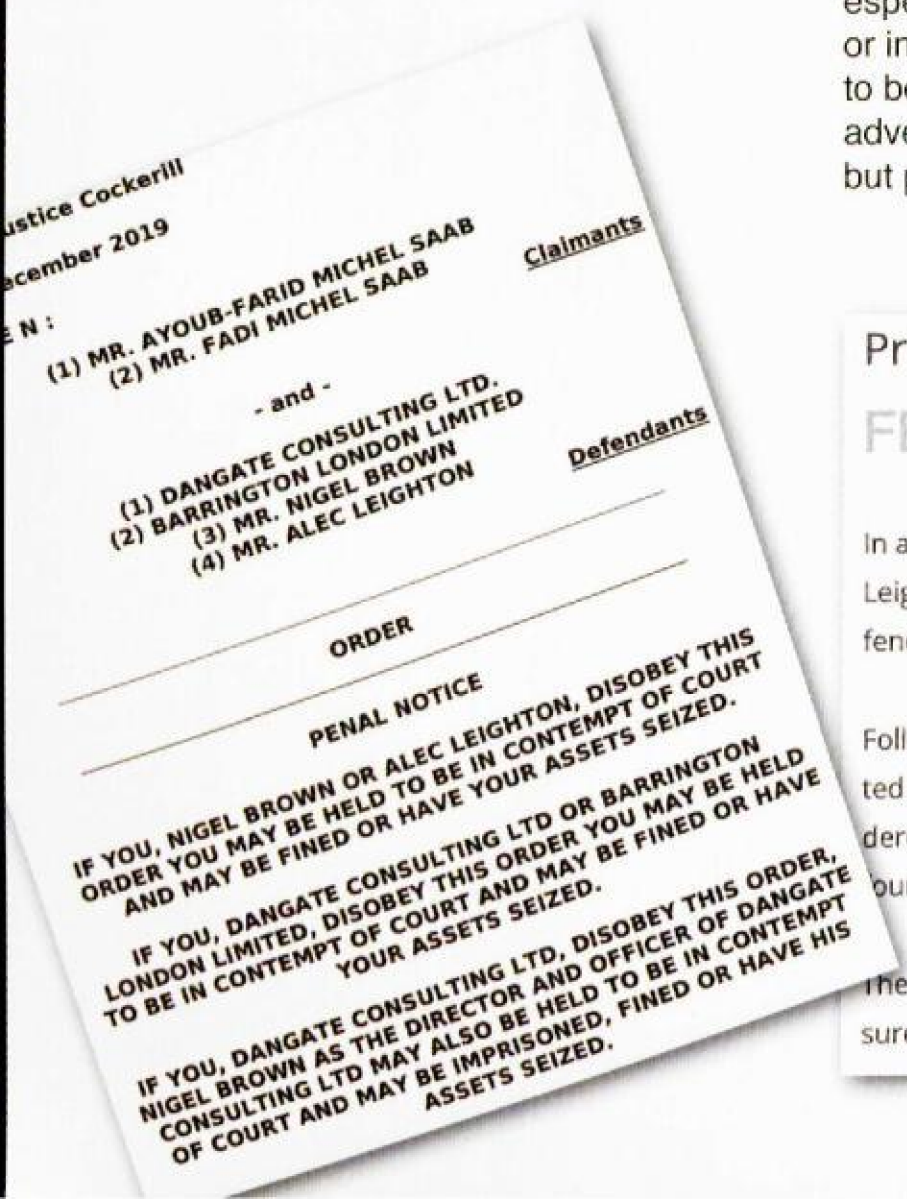
DATA PROTECTION ACT

Ensure that you are registered with the Data Protection Act. If you are carrying out investigations where you are obtaining private information about individuals, you are required by law to be registered. The cost is in the region of £40.00.

INSURANCE

It isn't compulsory but it is recommend that you obtain some insurance, especially professional indemnity insurance. Should you carry out a surveillance or investigation and the information you provide your client with was found later to be incorrect, they could sue you, especially if the information has had an adverse effect on them. It would be for them to prove that you were negligent but professional indemnity insurance covers you for this eventuality.

Investigators found in contempt of court after not disclosing information relating to breeches of confidentiality in a major legal case.



ustice Cockerill
ecember 2019
E N :

(1) MR. AYOUB-FARID MICHEL SAAB
(2) MR. FADI MICHEL SAAB — Claimants

- and -

(1) DANGATE CONSULTING LTD.
(2) BARRINGTON LONDON LIMITED
(3) MR. NIGEL BROWN
(4) MR. ALEC LEIGHTON — Defendants

ORDER

PENAL NOTICE

IF YOU, NIGEL BROWN OR ALEC LEIGHTON, DISOBEY THIS ORDER YOU MAY BE HELD TO BE IN CONTEMPT OF COURT AND MAY BE FINED OR HAVE YOUR ASSETS SEIZED.

IF YOU, DANGATE CONSULTING LTD OR BARRINGTON LONDON LIMITED, DISOBEY THIS ORDER YOU MAY BE HELD TO BE IN CONTEMPT OF COURT AND MAY BE FINED OR HAVE YOUR ASSETS SEIZED.

IF YOU, DANGATE CONSULTING LTD, DISOBEY THIS ORDER, NIGEL BROWN AS THE DIRECTOR AND OFFICER OF DANGATE CONSULTING LTD MAY ALSO BE HELD TO BE IN CONTEMPT OF COURT AND MAY BE IMPRISONED, FINED OR HAVE HIS ASSETS SEIZED.

Private Investigators in contempt of court

FBME Ltd Reports....

7 February 2020

In a new development in our legal battle against the private investigators (Nigel Brown, Alec Leighton and their related investigations companies), the English Court has now found the defendants to be in contempt of court for failing to comply with court orders.

Following the English Court's judgment last year that the investigators had unlawfully committed breaches of confidentiality (as described in our update in June 2019 below), the Court ordered the investigators to provide FBME and its shareholders full disclosure of the information found by the court to have been unlawfully disclosed by the investigators.

The finding of contempt of court affirms that the investigators have failed to make full disclosure of their wrongdoing and are now in serious breach of their obligations to the court.

Credit: FBME Ltd

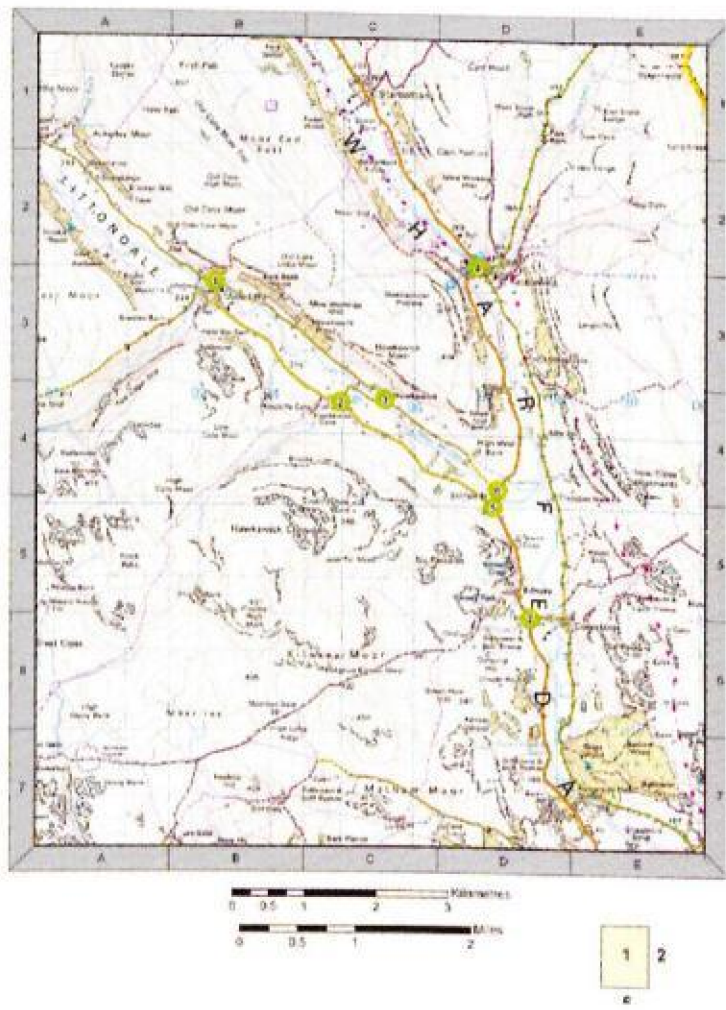
WHERE THE WORK COMES FROM

If you are new to the industry, surveillance work can be obtained through many different channels. You can work on a self-employed basis (full or part time) or full time for an employer. Working full time for one of the major employers offers security as you will receive a steady salary; you are also likely to be provided with a car, radio and camera equipment but will be worked very hard. It is certainly a place to cut your teeth in the industry.

If you have an enforcement background, most major brand names have an internal security team and there are also the local authority & government enforcement agencies who conduct surveillance as part of their investigations.

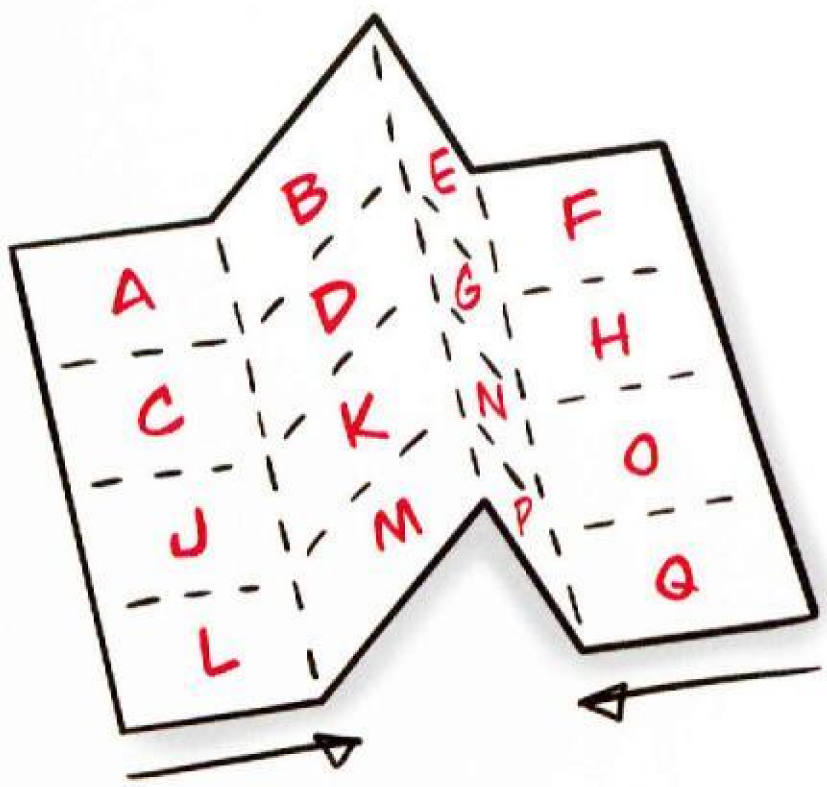
Many people on the 'Surveillance Circuit' are self-employed and manage to obtain enough work by networking with others. This gives them the freedom to work but you do run the risk of sometimes not having enough work. However, if you are good at what you do and put in sufficient effort into networking, there should always be work for you.

If you decide to go it alone and work on a self-employed basis, you are technically running a business. You will need to be driven, self-motivated and honest in your dealings. You will need to deal with clients, sub-contractors and co-workers in a professional manner. You will also need to consider budgets, advertising & marketing and equipment, just like in any other business. The effort you put in will reflect on your success.

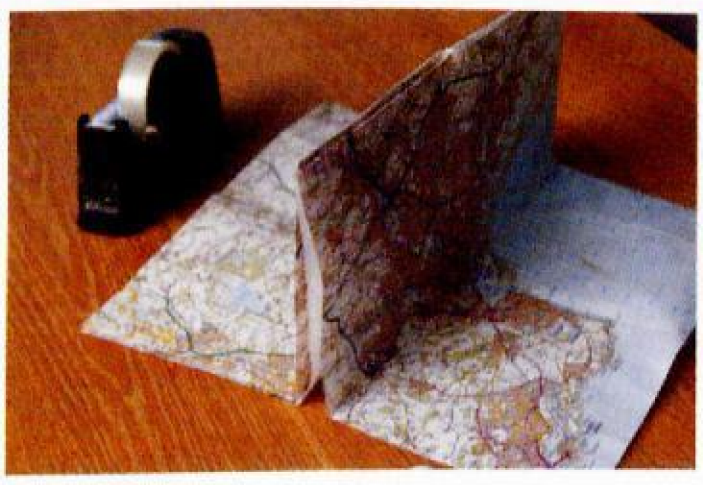


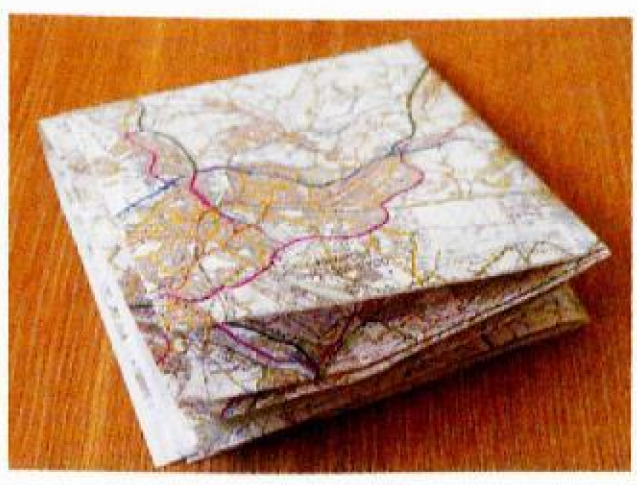
TACTICAL MAP FOLDING

An easy way of tactically folding a map to make it manageable to use in a car or carry on your person. If made properly, it flips from page to page both horizontally and vertically.





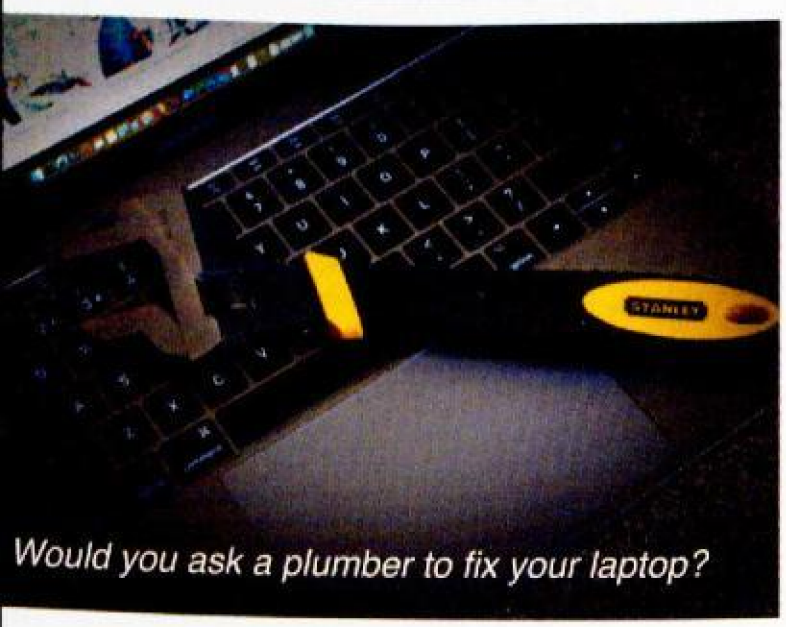




Scan the code for the map folding instructions

Up to date digital radio equipment, not mobile phones.





Would you ask a plumber to fix your laptop?

#APTITUDE

YOUR TRAINING

If you are reading this book, you must have an interest in surveillance. If you are new to surveillance and wish to enter the investigative sector to carry out surveillance work, it is imperative that you undertake some form of training. Anyone employing you will ask who you trained with, it's not always just about the certificate.

There are many companies that advertise surveillance training and choosing one can be difficult. The author is director of surveillance training company, ISS Training Limited; it is probably the longest established surveillance training company in the United Kingdom. Since 1998, ISS has trained over 4,000 surveillance operators from all over the world and from various backgrounds. Remember, they were also instrumental in writing the NQF courses.

ISS have taught in: Canada, United States, Norway, Sweden, Mozambique, South Africa, Germany, Poland, Czech Republic, Bulgaria, Ukraine, Switzerland, Finland, Northern Ireland, Eire, Singapore and the UK. Many of these courses have been for military Special Forces units, Intelligence Sections and Close Protection Teams.

When researching a training provider, ensure you enquire about the experience of their training staff. Ensure they have real life experience of conducting surveillance in teams. Do not be hoodwinked.

YOUR TRAINING COURSE

Treat with caution any training provider that promises you work after completing their course. Look at it this way and do the maths: ABC Training company have a course and there are 10 people on it. Is that company really going to have 10 jobs going at the end of the course? And if they run 10 courses a year, that's a lot of people to promise work to.

If you speak to ISS, they won't promise you anything except for realistic training and support afterwards. After a course, you will also be added to their closed social media network (only if you wish to be) which is where former students network for work, seek advice and other related matters. Former students get support and help afterwards from all the staff and many remain good friends. There's no fancy acronym for it, we just like to see everyone progress, but it is surprising how many get work afterwards.

AM I GUARANTEED A PASS?

It depends who you train with. Here at ISS, we fail people and make no bones about it. We endeavour to pass everyone on ISS courses but not everyone has the aptitude for surveillance, therefore not everyone will be successful.

The Level 4 courses are accredited by IQ, designed by ISS and high standards are set. As a percentage, approximately 90% of our students will pass the course. This is intense training, we have high standards and take our job seriously. Our instructors will try their best to pass their knowledge on and help you to achieve the grade – the rest is down to your own hard work and aptitude!

ISS TRAINING LTD

TRAINING COURSES

ISS run a selection of training courses which can be delivered in-house at your own location or conducted at our training venue in Yorkshire. If you are from outside the UK, we frequently travel abroad to deliver this training.

In addition to the standard basic and advanced surveillance training courses as featured throughout this book, ISS also provide training in the following.

LEVEL 3 AWARD IN PROFESSIONAL INVESTIGATION

This Level 3 Award for Professional Investigators is based on the SIA specifications of core competency training for Private Investigators. This five-day course far exceeds the minimum 39 hour requirements set by the SIA.

This course not only covers the basic standards required to obtain a Private Investigators licence but also covers additional and useful skills to operate as an effective investigator.

These topics are covered in some depth:

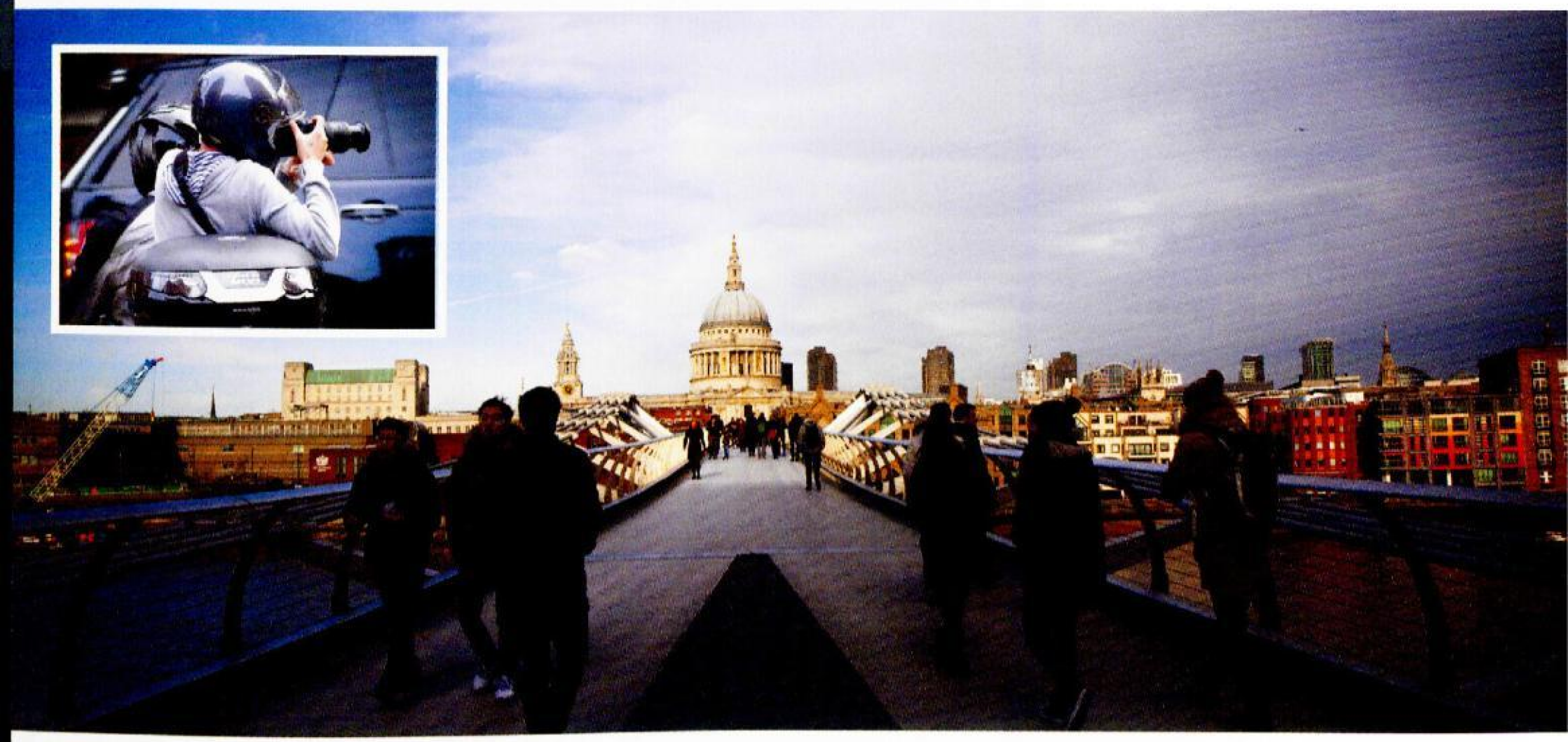
- Running an Investigation Business
- Open Source Intelligence & Tracing
- Surveillance Planning
- Private Investigations
- Theft & Fraud Acts, Human Rights Act, RIPA 2000
- Process Serving
- Statement Taking
- Continuity of Evidence
- Data Protection Legislation
- Test Purchasing
- Report Writing
- Interviewing Witnesses
- Covert Photography



Fully covert communications.



Serious training but fun at the same time.







A good way to learn your way around London.

FOOT SURVEILLANCE TRAINING IN LONDON

This course is for those who will be conducting surveillance and intelligence gathering in London or major cities where the target of surveillance is likely to use public transport networks and travel on foot rather than by car.

ISS have also provided this training to static security staff responsible for the security of major complex sites, public buildings, indoor shopping centres and major events where covert security is necessary. This course qualifies you for obtaining Units 3 & 6 of the IQ Level 4 Award in Covert Surveillance Operations.

This training, based in Central London will test the student's ability to conduct surveillance on foot in challenging and realistic situations whilst operating in residential, commercial and tourist areas: on foot, by train, bus, taxi and underground rail.

This course is suited for security professionals, commercial & private investigators, close protection teams, event security or site security teams.

- Foot Surveillance
- Covert Communications
- Covert Video
- Public Transport Surveillance
- London Underground
- London Bus Network
- Parks & Open Spaces
- Department Stores & Museums

The course is taught by qualified and experienced former intelligence instructors.

OPEN SOURCE INTELLIGENCE (OSINT)

This two day open source intelligence course is open to members of the public, investigators and enforcement officers who need to gather intelligence and information via the internet. It provides the students with the knowledge to research individuals, companies, organisations and internet traffic.

Over the two days you will carry out hands on research, the subjects covered include:

- Understanding the Internet
- Understanding email traffic
- Obtaining the identity of email sender & recipients
- Effective use of search engines
- Searching social networking sites, forums and blogs
- Open sources of information and intelligence
- Research of telephone numbers, addresses and individuals
- Research of company and business information
- Identity of website ownership
- Setting up covert websites and email addresses
- Monitoring of websites and keywords of special interest
- Continuity of electronic evidence

The course is taught by qualified and experienced former Police intelligence instructors. This internet intelligence training can be held at your venue or ours in North Yorkshire and London.

Open source intelligence skills compliment your surveillance. Prior to any surveillance taking place, you must carrry out thorough research into your target, their associates, places, business and social activities. This is more than just 'Googling' the name of your subject, but being conversant with the many search engines and how to use them properly.

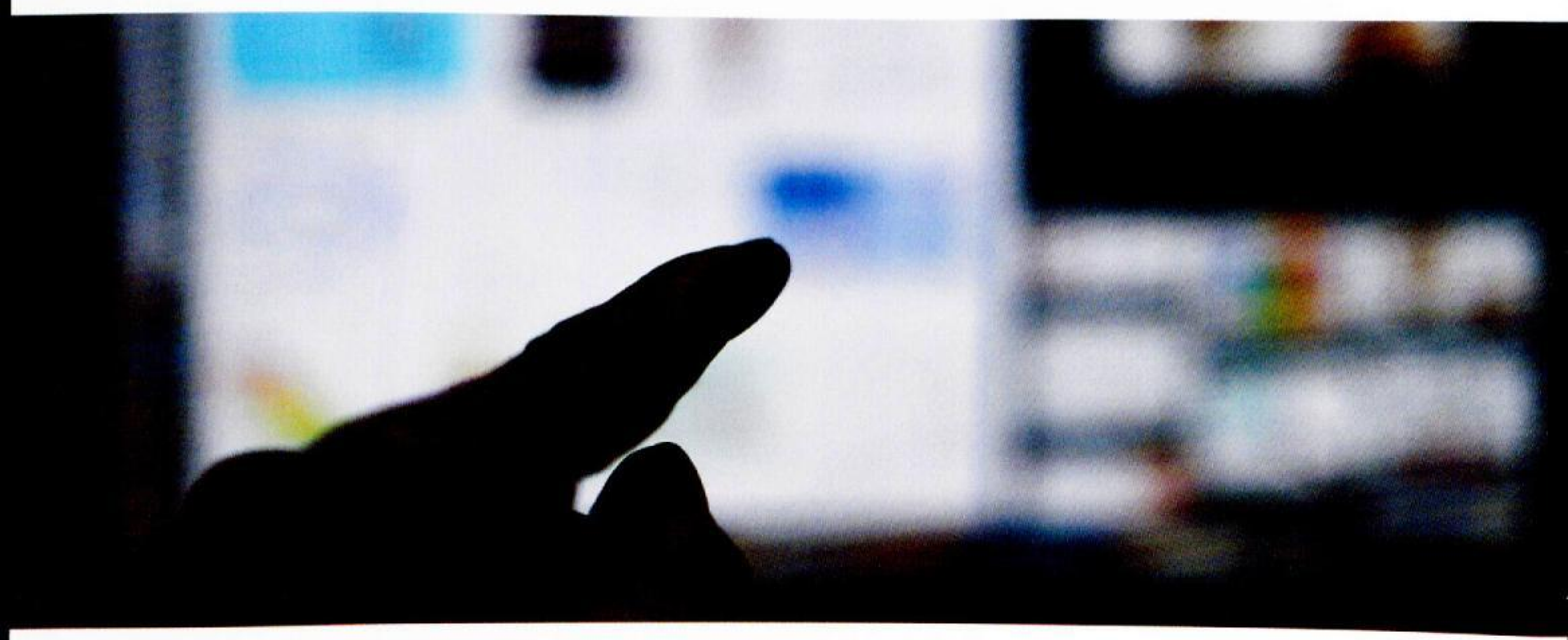
Scan here to take you to the MI5 observation skills tests.



TIP OF THE DAY

Always use three search terms and use "speech quotes" to combine important search terms like this...

"surveillance training" ISS





The Author teaching in Eastern Europe and the United Kingdom.



Counter surveillance in Switzerland.

SURVEILLANCE DETECTION (COUNTER SURVEILLANCE)

This course is designed to teach students primarily with a close protection background, how to protect their principal against sophisticated threats through anti and counter surveillance. Counter surveillance is often neglected as part of close protection training.

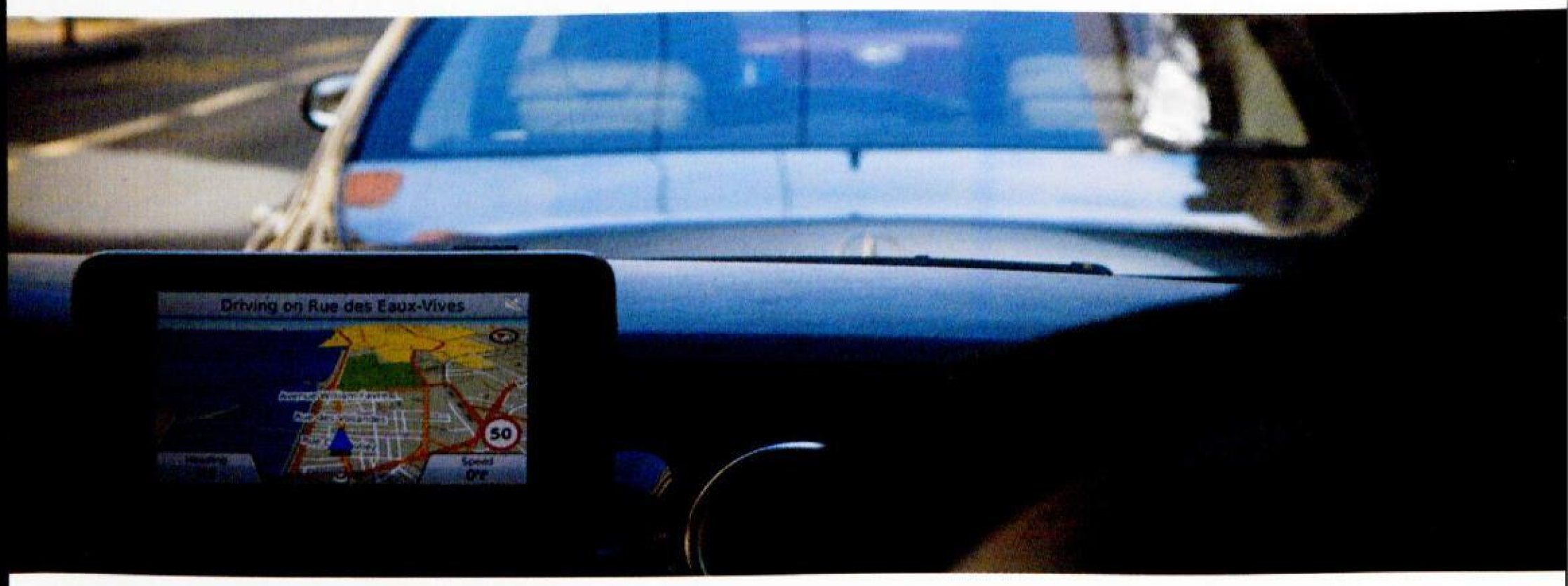
If a surveillance team is observing your principal they are possibly gathering intelligence prior to carrying out an attack or kidnap. Either way, any surveillance team identified shadowing your principal poses a very significant and immediate threat.

On this course you will learn how to detect if your principal has been placed under surveillance. You will learn what to look out for and how to lay traps to confirm your suspicions by designing and implementing counter surveillance routes. By the end of the course you will be able to carry out sophisticated 'overt' and 'covert' drills to either evade, deter or gather intelligence on the most sophisticated of surveillance teams.

The course instructors have a wealth of experience teaching these same techniques to both British and foreign Government personnel including embassy/consulate security staff.

- The Surveillance Threat - Hostile Planning Cycle
- Planning & Briefing
- Foot & Mobile Surveillance Methods
- Recognising Surveillance Teams
- Covert & Overt Anti-Surveillance
- Counter Surveillance Detection Routes
- Satellite Vehicle Tracking
- Realistic Practical Day & Night Exercises

This three to five day course is held in Yorkshire, London and often abroad.



RURAL SURVEILLANCE

This specialist training course is designed to teach students how to insert, establish and run observations posts from rural hides in order to gather evidence and intelligence. This course includes:

- Reconnaissance, Planning & Briefing
- Rural Navigation & Route Selection
- Camouflage, Concealment & Movement
- Methods of Insertion & Extraction
- Rural Hide Construction
- Close Target Reconnaissance (CTR)
- The Static Follow
- Legal Issues & The Continuity of Evidence
- Risk Assessments & Health and Safety
- The Surveillance Codes of Practice & RIPA 2000
- Realistic Practical Exercises

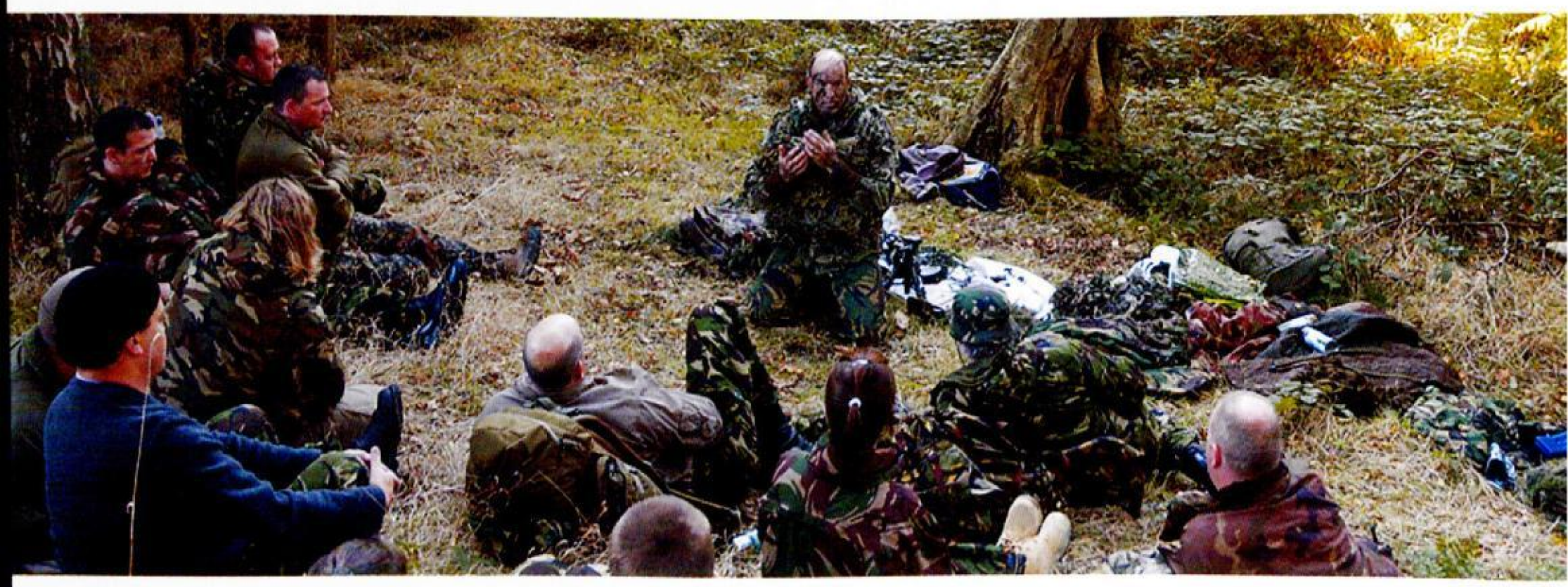
This course is conducted mainly outdoors where you are likely to be working in wet, dirty and uncomfortable conditions.

CTR Training in Europe

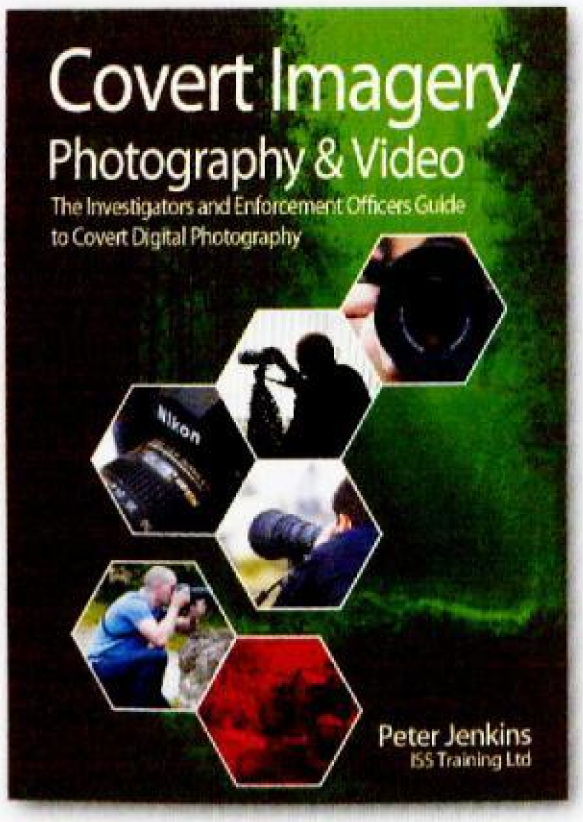




Students are taught camouflage, concealment and rural hides.







An international best selling book on Covert Photography.

SURVEILLANCE PHOTOGRAPHY

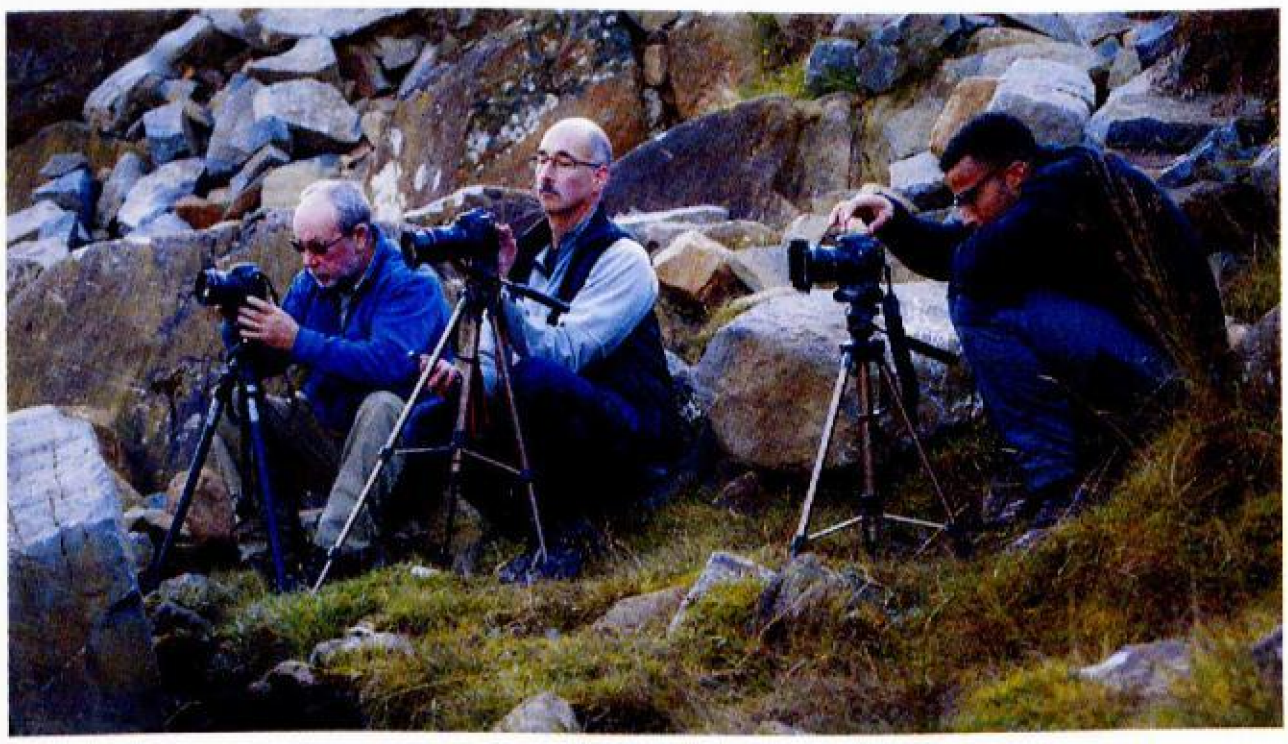
If you are new to digital photography, this course will teach you more than just the basics in order to become proficient with your camera and to improve your technique.

This two day photography course is primarily designed for investigators and enforcement officers who use digital SLR cameras in order to obtain photographic evidence.

Many investigators often fall into the trap of obtaining photographic images which are of poor quality and of little evidential value. This two day 'hands on' course is suitable for the non-technical person who wishes to learn and improve their photographic technique. Ii includes daytime and night time exercises taught not just by photographers, but photographers who have worked and operated in covert environments.

The training will teach you:

- Basic principles of still photography (exposure, speed, apertures, focal length)
- Basic photographic skills
- Advanced photographic skills in relation to surveillance (low light, telephoto lenses)
- Day & night practical photographic exercises
- Night Photography
- Infrared photography & imagery
- Covert methods & techniques
- Post processing in Photoshop
- Transfer of digital images to computer or hard drive
- Manipulation and processing of digital images using for printing and emailing
- Continuity of evidence



Photography course students experimenting with long exposures.

PROFESSIONAL WITNESS TRAINING



This two day course is for investigators and local authority officials that carry out evidence gathering in relation to anti-social behaviour or trading standards officers.

Not only does the course teach urban static surveillance techniques but also involves legislation relating to the recording of evidence that will be accepted by the Courts. References are made to the Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act 2000, Criminal Procedure and Investigations Act 1996 and the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984.

- Planning, preparation and reconnaissance
- Static surveillance methods
- Report and log writing
- RIPA Authorisation
- Log Keeping
- Covert CCTV
- Preservation and continuation of evidence
- Eye witness testimony
- Legal procedure

You will spend a lot of time in the cars on mobile surveillance. Dashcams are used in every vehicle to monitor students' performance and to ensure safety.

Any training provider who expects everyone to use white iPhone earpieces isn't teaching you covert surveillance.







All equipment is provided.







Building covert camera hides.

CONCEALED COVERT CCTV

This one day workshop is open to those who need to deploy covert video cameras in both urban and rural settings, or in warehouses and premises in order to gather video evidence.

The course is very practical in content and involves setting up covert camera systems for indoor and outdoor use whether it is for long term monitoring or a rapid deployment.

The course includes:

- External Urban & Rural Concealments
- System design
- Setting up covert video cameras & their limitations
- CCTV Systems
- Rapid deployment systems
- Use of infrared illumination
- Low light and night time recording
- Motion detection
- Timed recordings
- Use of Wi-fi to recover data
- Video over Wi-Fi
- Camouflage & Concealment
- Covert camera deployments in rural areas



ISS TRAINING LTD

VIDEO EDITING FOR SURVEILLANCE OPERATORS

This one-day workshop is primarily designed for investigators and surveillance operators who use video cameras for obtaining filmed video evidence. It covers the continuity of evidence from camera to court and teaches you how to edit raw footage to present it to your client in a professional manner.

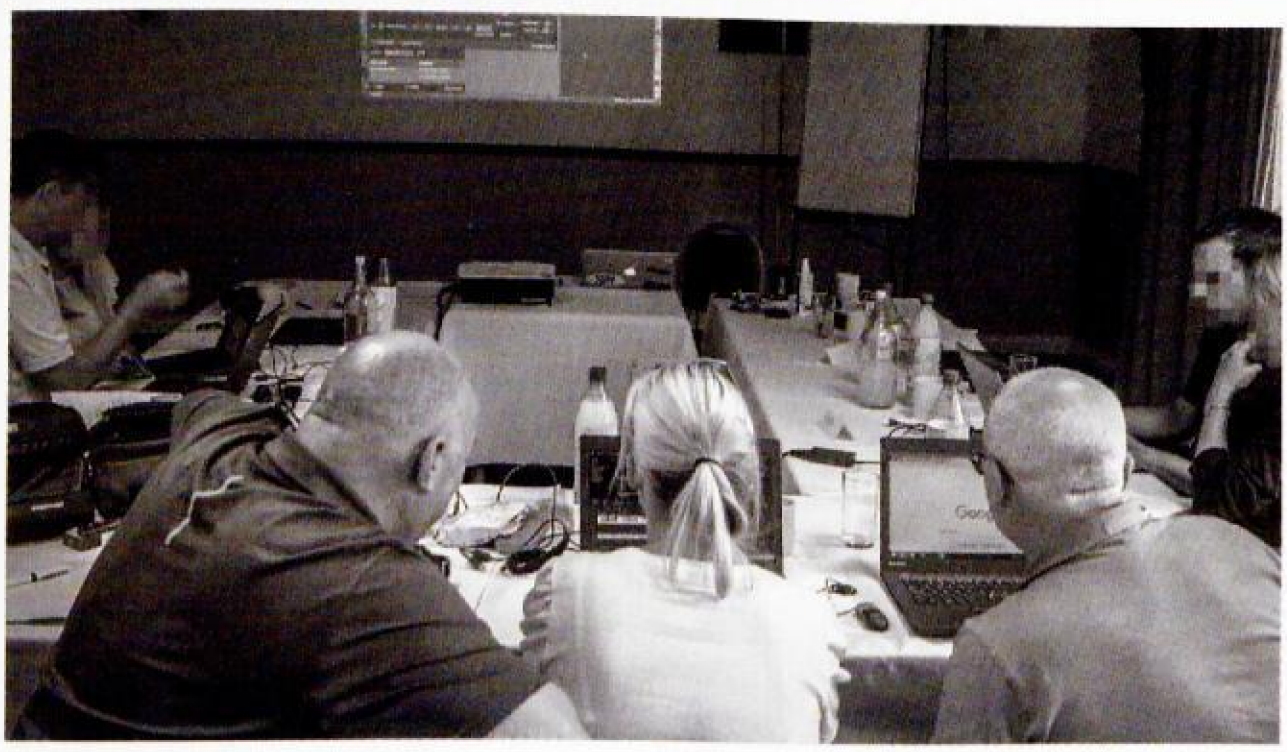
This course is very practical and covers;

- Correct settings for video cameras
- Use of covert & overt video cameras
- Continuity of evidence from camera to court
- Video editing software
- Practical video editing
- Minimising collateral intrusion
- Adding date & time
- Taking stills from video
- Image Enhancement
- Exporting & saving video
- Data Protection

Image enhancement is also covered which uses Photoshop to bring out the detail in poor quality images.







Students editing video film they have shot on the course.





INDUSTRIAL ESPIONAGE TRAINING & WORKSHOPS

The phrase 'Industrial Espionage' stirs up the imagination and makes you think of corporate spies lurking in the shadows, planting bugs in offices and using micro cameras to photograph documents. In fact, bugging probably only plays a very small part when obtaining commercial intelligence.

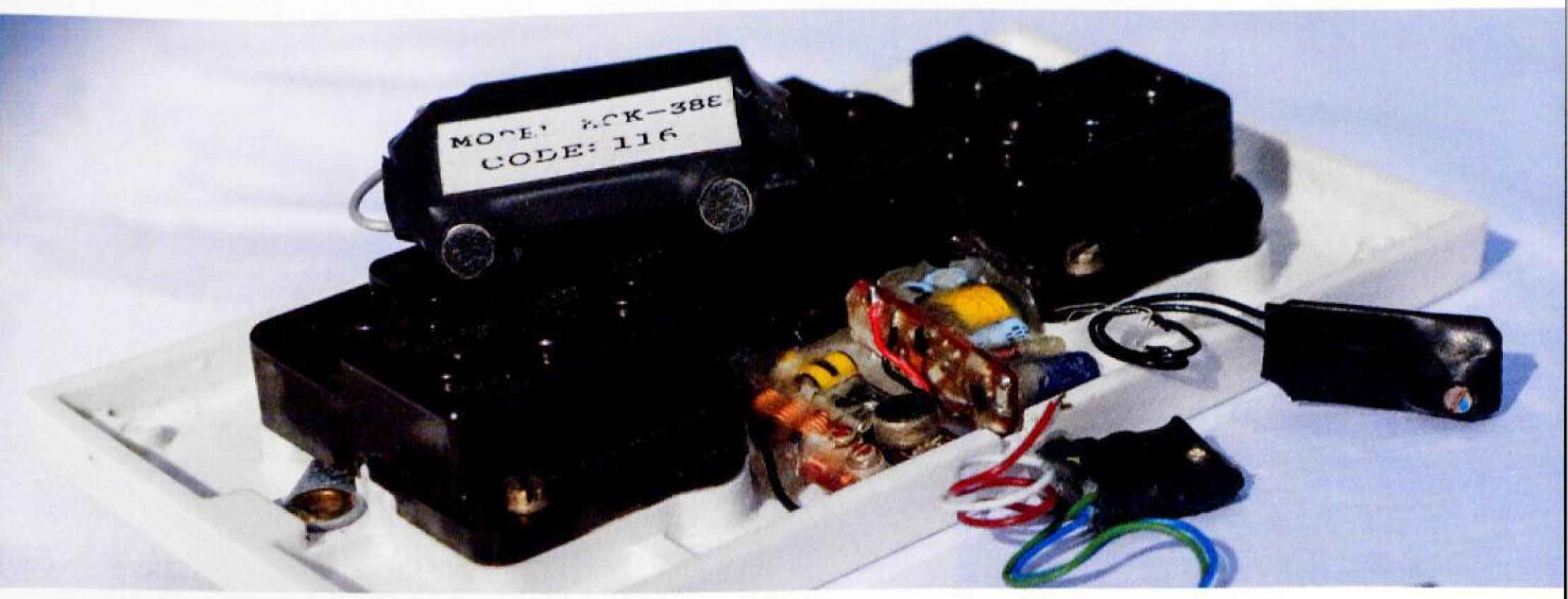
It all sounds very 'cloak and dagger' but if we exchange the words 'espionage' and 'intelligence' for the word 'information', the concept of company information gathering becomes more realistic. The fact is, in the commercial and corporate world, it goes on, all of the time, especially when company legal proceedings are imminent. Industrial espionage is legal in the UK (depending on how it's done) and is conducted by private investigators, freelance spies, competitors, radicals and journalists to name a few.

This one-day course is designed for the business professional and corporate employees who may be at risk from threats of intelligence gathering at home, whilst travelling or in the workplace.

The training is classroom based using PowerPoint, the Internet and specialist surveillance equipment. Real scenarios are used to reinforce training by tutors who have conducted corporate intelligence and investigations over the past 25 years.

The training will provide the learner with knowledge to understand the principles and concepts of:

- Threats to the company, individuals & stakeholders
- How private and confidential information is leaked and how it is obtained
- Methods used by intelligence gatherers such as: private investigators, journalists, reporters, corporate spies, competitors, radicals, head hunters, infiltration and stalkers
- How to take measures to protect yourself and the company's interests
- What to do when discovering a threat



SPECIALIST MILITARY TRAINING

These specialist courses are designed for special military and government enforcement units whose remit is to carry out surveillance as a means of intelligence gathering in hostile areas. Our mobile training team has trained many operators all over the world.

The courses we provide:

- Basic Covert Surveillance
- Intermediate Covert Surveillance
- Advanced Covert Surveillance
- Counter Surveillance & Surveillance Detection
- Close Target Reconnaissance (CTR)
- Covert Imagery & Long Range Photography

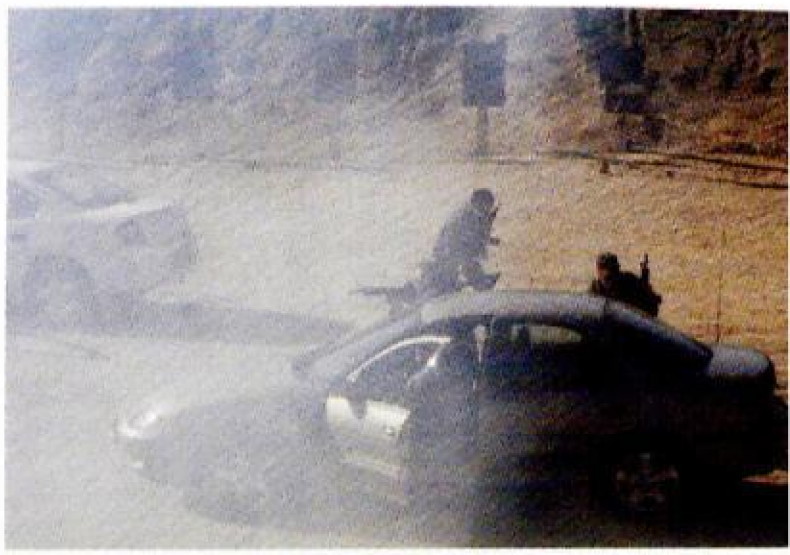


A Close Target Recce (CTR) lesson during a training course for Special Forces.



SOF

Covert search training for Special Operations Forces.



Anti ambush drills.



ISS Training's YouTube Channel.

ISS Training's LinkedIn.

ISS Training's Facebook Page.

A FINAL WORD

Many other training companies have evolved and followed our lead in order to provide a similar training product. ISS have been carrying out both surveillance and surveillance training for a long time and we like to think we have got it right! We constantly strive to improve our product, to keep it updated and relevant in today's changing times. We also strictly adhere to quality assurance procedures.

The success of ISS is mainly due to the expertise of the training team that instruct on our courses. Our instructors are drawn from various backgrounds such as Military Intelligence, Special Forces, Police and other enforcement agencies who have also operated in the commercial sector.

If, after reading this book, you decide that you wish to learn more and put your skills into practice, then get in touch. The 'open' courses are normally delivered at our training facility in North Yorkshire but we also travel to your venue to deliver this training if you prefer.

And remember one thing – Practise, practise, practise. You can't learn it from a book or by watching a video!

Peter Jenkins
Director ISS Training Ltd
During Covid19 'Lockdown' 2020

ISS Training Ltd





TOP 10 MISTAKES OF THE SURVEILLANCE OPERATOR

1. CARRYING OUT SINGLE HANDED SURVEILLANCE
2. OVER EXPOSURE BY NOT APPRECIATING 'LOSS V GAIN'
3. ACTING UNNATURALLY
4. HAVING MULTIPLE SIGHTINGS WITH THE TARGET
5. NOT BEING THIRD PARTY AWARE
6. WRONGLY ASSUMING WHAT THE TARGET WILL DO
7. NOT KNOWING THEIR EQUIPMENT
8. LACK OF PREPARATION AND UNDERESTIMATING THEIR TARGET
9. LACK OF CONCENTRATION WHILST ON THE TASK
10. NOT GETTING ON THE GROUND EARLY ENOUGH

GLOSSARY OF TERMS USED IN SURVEILLANCE VOICE PROCEDURE

EXPRESSION TO BE USED	MEANING OF EXPRESSION
ADVANCE WARNING	Given in the text of 'Advance Warning - traffic lights' or 'Advance Warning - roundabout'. A specific hazard.
BACKING	Used by the Backup vehicle when they are 'Backing' the Eyeball and in a position to take.
BRAKE ACTION	Sometimes used to state that the target is braking.
BUS REQUEST	To be used instead of the term 'Bus Stop' in order to eliminate confusion.
CAN YOU AT...?	Asking the backing callsign to handover at a specific place.
CAN YOU NOW?	Initiates the actual handover
CANCEL MY LAST	Ignore my last message.
COME THROUGH	Given after 'Hang Back' to bring the team through.
COMMITTED, COMMITTED	Means the target is committed to travelling on a dual carraigeway or motorway.
CHECK, CHECK	Used instead of STOP STOP when it is obvious that the halt is only a brief one, such as a person on foot window shopping or someone being dropped off from a vehicle.
COMPLETE	Returned or Inside. E.g. 'India Complete' indicates that the car, callsign India has their foot person back in the vehicle. Also used to indicate when a person has entered a building.
CONVOY	All vehicles comprising the surveillance team.
CONTACT CONTACT	Used when contact is regained after a total loss. NOT to be used in military terms.
FOXTROT	When someone is walking they are referred to as going 'Foxtrot'.
GOING ROUND AGAIN.	Indicates that target vehicle is commencing a second, or subsequent circuit of a roundabout.
GONE....	Indicating movement, i.e. 'Gone Left, Left.' Or 'Gone towards...'
HANDLING	The person driving a vehicle is said to be 'Handling'.
HOLD BACK	Instruction from the Eyeball, indicating to the team that they should 'hold back' as the target vehicle is slowing and may stop.
HELD	Indicates a temporary stop by target vehicle, and will normally be followed by an explanation why they are being held, i.e. Held at a pedestrian crossing.
INTENDING	States in which direction the subject is pointing or intending to move or is likely to travel.
I HAVE..	Used to indicate that an operator has control of the target and will provide a commentary. Normally prefixed with their callsign.

ISS TRAINING LTD

LOOK ALIKE	Used to alert the team there is a similar vehicle/person in the vicinity close to the target.
LEFT, LEFT	Indicates that the target or target vehicle has turned left.
LIGHTS AWAY	At night, if you are unsure that it is the targets vehicle that has moved, Light's Away is called in order for another operator to check and confirm that it is the target.
LIMA CHARLIE	Loud & Clear, a response to a radio check.
MANOEUVRING	Indicating that the target vehicle is manoeuvring within a car park or confined area as the terms 'left' or 'right' are only used when they exit.
MAKING GROUND	Call from another callsign who is attempting to get back to the team after becoming detached.
MOBILE	Indicates that the target is moving in a vehicle.
NEARSIDE, OFFSIDE INDICATION.	States nearside/offside indicator is operating on the subject vehicle.
NO DEVIATION	Used when the subject is committed to the same road without turning. 'Still Straight' is also used.
NOT ONE, NOT TWO ETC.	Indicates that the target vehicle negotiating a roundabout has passed first, second etc., exit.
NO LONGER BACKING	Call from the Backup to the Eyeball to let them know that he is not in a position to actually 'back' due to being held or blocked. This prevents the Eyeball from asking for a handover and getting a 'no' response.
ONE UP, TWO UP, ETC..	Indicating the amount of people in a vehicle.
ORIGINAL	The term used when the target has resumed moving after a stop and is continuing in the Original (same) direction prior to the stop.
OPTION	Indicates a possible turning or route that the subject can go. i.e. '2nd Option on the nearside' rather than saying 'Left'.
OUT, OUT	Indicates that the target is alighting from a vehicle or is leaving premises.
RECIPROCAL	Indicates that target has done a U-turn and is returning BACK along the same route. Often abbreviated to 'Recip'.
PERMISSION	Where an operator asks the eyeball for 'Permission' to interrupt the commentary to pass on a message.
POSSIBLE	To be used on a Standby if you are unsure (50/50) that the person seen is the target. The team should not react but remain alert until confirmed.
PROBABLE	To be used on a Standby if you are unsure that the person seen is the target but are 90% sure that it is. The team should react and check to confirm.
RADIO CHECK	Request from Eyeball to test comms with the remainder of the team. Call signs should respond in alphanumerical order.
ONE EIGHTY	Sometimes used instead of 'Reciprocal'.

EYEBALL REGAINED	Indicates the target is again in view, following temporary loss or temporary unsighted.
ROGER	Used to acknowledge a message. DO not use as 'yes' when respondong to a question.
RELAY	The vehicle with the responsibility of relaying or repeating the Eyeball's messages. A car normally relays a foot persons messages.
RIGHT, RIGHT	Indicates that target vehicle has turned right.
SO FAR?	When the transmitting long messages, the term "So Far" is used to break up a message.
STAND DOWN	Indicates cancellation of whole operation.
STOP, STOP, STOP	Indicates that target has stopped in circumstances other than a 'held' situation.
STILL STRAIGHT	Used when the subject is committed to the same road without any deviation.
STANDBY, STANDBY	Instruction issued by the Trigger, alerting the team to possible movement of the target. Also used when contact is regained after a total loss.
SUBJECT	Person who is the subject of the surveillance. Identifier codes can also be used.
TAKEN FIRST, TAKEN SECOND...	Indicates that the target vehicle has taken first, second, etc, exit off roundabout.
TAIL END CHARLIE	Rearmost vehicle in convoy. 'TRAIL' is also used.
TRIGGER	Term used for the Eyeball prior to movement at the Stakeout phase.
TEMPORARY UNSIGHTED	Indicates a temporary loss of Eyeball, due to terrain, traffic or other conditions.
TOTAL LOSS	A total loss will normally be followed by a search procedure to regain the subject.
TOUCH RED	A call asking a team member to 'double tap' his brake pedal so that operators behind can see his position at night.
UNSIGHTED TO ME	Indicates that the subject is out of your view and the Eyeball is up for grabs.
WAIT	Used to tell operators should not to transmit for the time being and to wait for a further transmission. The normal radio term "STAND BY" has a clearly defined meaning within surveillance and this should never be used instead of 'Wait'.



THERE ARE NO RULES IN SURVEILLANCE, ONLY GUIDELINES.

RULES ARE MADE FOR THE GUIDANCE OF WISE MEN AND THE OBEDIENCE OF FOOLS.

PAUL BRICKHILL - REACH FOR THE SKY

ISS TRAINING LTD

PRIVATE INVESTIGATOR TRAINING



LEVEL 3 AWARD FOR PROFESSIONAL INVESTIGATORS

This Level 3 Award for Professional Investigators is based on the SIA specifications of core competency training for Private Investigators. This five day course far exceeds the minimum requirements set by the SIA and is accredited by IQ-SFJ Awards.

Subject Matter and Content

The course not only covers the basic standards required to function as a professional investigator but also covers additional and useful skills to operate as an effective operator. In addition to the core subjects, you are also taught the aspects of setting up and running your own investigation agency.

The topics covered are

- Open Source Intelligence
- Surveillance Planning
- Running an investigation business
- Private Investigation
- Theft & Fraud Acts
- Human Rights Act & RIPA 2000
- Process Serving
- General Enquiries & Investigations
- Statement Taking
- Continuity of Evidence
- Data Protection Legislation
- Test Purchasing
- Tracing & OSINT
- Report Writing
- Interviewing Witnesses
- Covert Video Photography

For further information, scan the code.

The staff at ISS Training have been conducting surveillance and investigations for many years and the instructors teaching this course have a wealth of operational experience from the police, military and enforcement sector.

ACROSS

1. Part of the GDPR
4. A turning off the road
5. I hate having these
9. Two for No
12. Not Anti
14. Obtain detailed intelligence
16. Type of alphabet
21. Something you may have to cross
22. Covert device
23. Video film
25. Within A to J
26. 60 hours learning
27. Fuzzy pictures
29. Helps transmit & receive
30. Not urban
31. Spies apply this
35. Instead of a loop
36. Inside
38. Supports testimony
40. A way of communicating
45. DSLR
48. Part of a recce report
49. Who gives evidence
50. Contemporaneous notes
51. Type of camera
52. Electronic surveillance
55. Authorisation legislation
56. First phase
57. Bracket it to get it correct
59. Remember
60. Female
61. An OP
63. You can't be prosecuted for this
66. Early phase
67. Worn around the neck
69. He's wearing it
71. Mobile equipment
72. Not in your Log
73. Shadow car will do this

DOWN

1. Not analogue
2. Historically called ASA
3. Planning cycle
6. Ghostly spy
7. Describe a car
8. See in the dark
10. Don't talk in clear
11. Award
13. As opposed to practical
15. Tim's callsign
17. If you work hard, you'll earn one
18. Many sightings
19. They're in control
20. Location reference
24. Good binoculars
28. Floating car
32. A type of detection
33. Prickly hide
34. The authors first name
37. A good skill
39. Amount of photographic light
41. R-v-Turnbull pneumonic
42. Not overt
43. The other way
44. Briefing time
46. Not covert
47. Hole that lets in light
53. The way you walk
54. Accrediting Body
58. Target vehicle
62. Score all your lives
63. Eyeball when static
64. What this is all about
65. Male target
68. Between you and target
70. Style, length & colour
71. One of your car checks

ISS TRAINING LTD



COFFEE TIME CROSSWORD

FOLLOW THE QR CODE TO TAKE
YOU TO THE ANSWERS
NO CHEATING!

INDEX

A: ALPHA

ABC system 157
ADVOKATE 341
Age 332
Airwave radio 107
Alpha 109
Antennas 104
Anti-surveillance 271, 272
ASTEAC 83
A to J 331
Authority 314

B: BRAVO

Backup 159, 207
Being noticed 51
Binoculars 128
Blind corner 163
Boot fit 258
Bramble hide 268
Bravo 109
Brevity codes 109
Briefings 83
Buses 173

C: CHARLIE

CCTV 327
Cafes 169
Callsigns 110
Camcorders 127
Car hise 254
Car parks 221
Charlie 109
Choke point 289, 292
Clearing phone box
Click system 118
Close target recce
Compromises 95, 257
Cornering drill 163
Count down markers 239
Counter surveillance 271, 285
Covert car 258
Covert radio 105
Covert video 129
Cross contamination 51,152

D: DELTA

Data protection 325
Debriefing 83
Definition 35
Deploying on foot 180
Descriptions 331, 332
Detection 271
Detection route 281, 289
Directed 315
Drilling 274, 282
Drones 143
Drop off point 264

E: ECHO

Earpiece 105
Echo 109
Edexcel 11
ELBOWS 338
Encryption 107
Equipment 125
Escalators 171
Evidence 311
Exposure 52
Exposure levels 91, 93
Eyeball 159, 207
Eye witness 341

F: FOXTROT

Foot tactics 154, 161
Foxtrot 110
Frequencies 102

G: GOLF

Gait 334
Ghillie suit 267
Glossary 378

H: HOTEL

Hair 334
Handovers 162, 215
Harassment 320
Health & Safety 79
Heat states 91
Hostile planning 285
Housing 54

I: INDIA

IC code 334
Ideal car 193
Ideal operator 41
Image intensifier
Inductor 105
Industry Qualifications 15
Intelligence debrief 91
Intrusive 315
IPT Case 319

J: JULIET

Just like 341

K: KILO

Known before 341

L: LIMA

Leapfrogging 181
Legal issues 311
Leveson 358
Logs 337
London underground 177
Look alike 212
Loss of contact 166, 224
Loss v Gain 52
Lost driver 280

M: MIKE

Magnification 128
Maintenance 195
Map folding 363
Memo recorder 126
Memory 336
Methods 38
Military training 375
Mirroring 239
Mobile surveillance 191
Mobile to foot 180
Motorbikes 236, 237
Motorways 238
Multi-storey car parks 234
Multiple exits 167
Multiple sightings 51, 152

N: NOVEMBER

Networks 110
Night surveillance 242
Night vision 142

O: OSCAR

Objectives 37, 60
Observation post 253
Operational debrief 91, 92
OP extraction 260, 267
OP insertion 260, 264
Overt 36

P: PAPA

Parallels 235
Personal appearance 44
Personal qualities 41
Phonetic alphabet 115
Photographic evidence 342
Photography 370

ISS TRAINING LTD

Pick up point 267
Planning 59
Plotting up 220
Primary stakeout 102
Privacy 326
Public body 313, 314
Public transport 172

Q: QUEBEC

Qualifications Framework 15

R: ROMEO

Radio check 110, 111, 112
Radios 102
Radio security 109
Railways 174
Rapid deployment 132
RAW images 343
Recce report 65, 74
Relay 114
Resemblances 341
Reverse parking 220
RIPA 313
Risk assessment 79
Road traffic accident 246
Rolling stakeout 181
Roundabouts 214
Rule of three 159
Rural OP 261, 263
Rural surveillance 261

S: SIERRA

Safety equipment 196
SDR 272, 289
Secondary stakeout 203
SCRIM 335
Shadow car 167
Shopping malls 170
SIA 357, 358
Single handed 243
Sources of information 63
Speed 212, 238
Spot codes 116
Stages 52, 53
Stakeouts 157, 200
Stalking 320, 321
Start point 64
Statements 339
Static surveillance 253
Stops 219
Supermarket 222

T: TANGO

Taxi 172
Team debrief 91
Technical surveillance 125
Technical triggers 69, 70
TEDD 272
Tertiary stakeout 205
The target 46, 41
Thermal imager 142
Third party awareness 48
Touch red 242
Tracking 143, 135, 329
Tracking devices 134
Trade associations 362
Trail 116
Training 364
Trespass 323
Trigger positions 154, 198
Triggers 68, 71
Turnbull 340
Two up 182
Types of target 46
Types of surveillance 38

U: UNIFORM

Unnatural behaviour 51, 152
Uniformity 44
Urban OP 259

V: VICTOR

Vans 255
Vehicles 193, 335
Vehicle shapes 193, 335
Vehicle smart 63
Vehicle tracking 134, 135
Verification 346
Video camera 127
Voice procedure 114

W: WHISKY

Walkpst 66
Windows 195
Witness statements 339
Witness testimony 341

X: X-RAY
Y: YANKEE

Z: ZULU

Zello 107, 108

ISS TRAINING LTD

Published by the Surveillance Archive